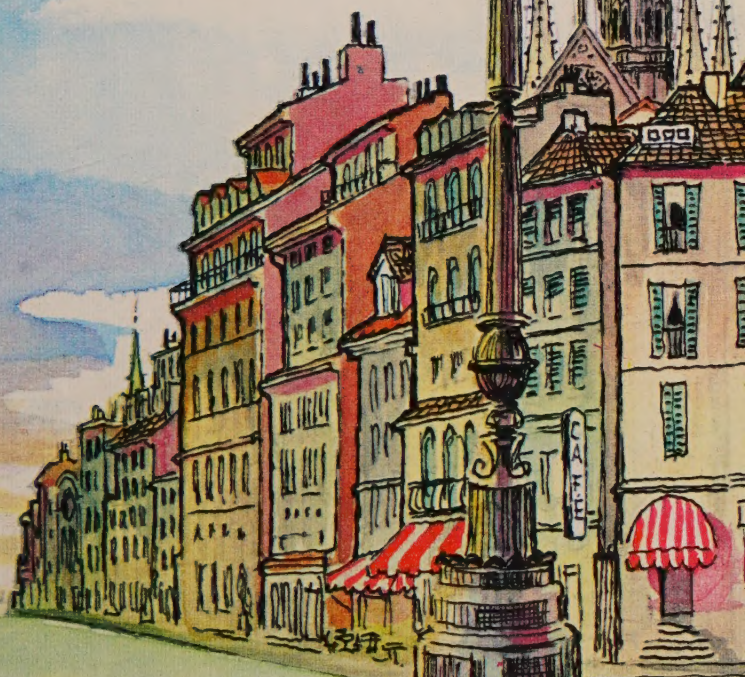


CURRENT FRENCH



ST. JOHN, JONES, STICKLAND



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

Current French

Current French

Helen B. St. John

Russell J. Jones

William A. Stickland



THE COPP CLARK PUBLISHING CO. LIMITED
VANCOUVER TORONTO MONTREAL

Current French

Helen B. St. John

Russell J. [1267]

William A. St. John



Copyright, Canada, by The Copp Clark Publishing Co. Limited. All rights reserved. No part of the material covered by this copyright may be reproduced in any form without written permission of the publishers. Printed and bound in Canada by the publishers.

Preface

Current French is a review grammar. Its aim has been to gather together all the grammatical material and vocabulary that a student requires for a command of the French language. The grammatical rules are fully illustrated by examples which, at the same time, serve to build a vocabulary of words and expressions in common use. The translation exercises, while requiring a general knowledge of grammar, are designed to drill particularly the topic of the lesson in which they occur; the vocabulary of these exercises is limited to words which have occurred up to that point.

The verb exercises fall into three series: Lessons 1 to 18 provide a complete review of the conversational forms; Lessons 19 to 30 provide a second complete review in a different form; in Lessons 31 to 34 there are exercises on changing the past historic to the present perfect.

Certain English words which present special difficulty and which require a fuller treatment than can conveniently be given in the vocabulary, have been put in the section entitled SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS. In each lesson there is an exercise based on one or more of these words.

The two reference books which the authors have found most useful in the preparation of *Current French* are:

GREVISSE, M., *Le Bon Usage*, 5th edition, Paris, Guethner, 1953.

FOUCHÉ, P., *Traité de Prononciation française*, Paris, Klincksieck, 1956.

Of the other works consulted, the most important are:

CAYROU, G., LAURENT, P., LODS, Mlle J., *Le Français d'aujourd'hui*, 2nd edition, Paris, Colin, 1949.

DAUZAT, A., *Grammaire raisonnée de la Langue française*, (Collection «Les Langues du monde»), 3rd edition, Lyon, Éditions I.A.C., 1952.

MANSION, J. E., *A Grammar of Present-day French*, London, Harrap, 1919.

MARTINON, PH., *Comment on parle en français*, Paris, Larousse, 1927.

BÉNAC, H., *Dictionnaire des Synonymes*, Paris, Hachette, 1956.

Dictionnaire Pratique Quillet, 2 vols., Paris, Quillet, 1956.

Harrap's Standard French and English Dictionary, 2 vols., London, Harrap.

Larousse du XX^e Siècle, 6 vols., Paris, Larousse, 1928.

Mon Premier Larousse en couleurs, Paris, Larousse, 1953.

Nouveau Larousse Classique, Paris, Larousse, 1957.

Nouveau Petit Larousse Illustré, 113th edition, Paris, Larousse, 1952.

PETIT, CH., *Dictionnaire anglais-français*, Paris, Hachette, 1934.

PETIT, CH., SAVAGE, W., *Dictionnaire français-anglais*, Paris, Hachette, 1946.

- ROBERT, P., *Dictionnaire alphabétique et analogique de la Langue française*, vols. I and II, Paris, Presses Universitaires de France, 1953.
- THOMAS, A. V., *Dictionnaire des difficultés de la langue française*, Paris, Larousse, 1956.
- DAMOURETTE, J., *Traité moderne de ponctuation*, Paris, Larousse, 1939.

The authors wish to express their appreciation to Mr. R. B. Britton-Foster of the Copp Clark Publishing Company Limited for his many helpful suggestions and careful editing of the manuscript.

H. B. St. J.

R. J. J.

W. A. S.

Contents

LESSON	PAGE
1. The Definite Article (Part One)	1
2. The Definite Article (Part Two)	6
3. The Definite Article, (Part Three)	11
4. The Indefinite and Partitive Articles	18
5. The Omission of the Articles (Part One)	23
6. The Omission of the Articles (Part Two)	31
7. Personal Pronoun Subjects	40
8. Personal Pronoun Objects (Part One)	43
9. Personal Pronoun Objects (Part Two)	50
10. The Interrogative Pronouns and the Interrogative Adjective	57
11. The Demonstrative Adjective and the Demonstrative Pronouns	63
12. The Relative Pronouns	72
13. The Possessive Adjectives and the Possessive Pronouns	78
14. The Indefinite Pronouns	82
15. The Position of Adjectives	88
16. The Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs	94
17. Negation	102
18. Interrogation	106
19. The Verb (Present, Imperfect, Present Perfect, Past Perfect)	113
20. The Verb (Future, Future Perfect, Future in the Past, Future Perfect in the Past, Conditional Mood)	121
21. Conditional Sentences	127
22. The Depuis Construction (and Equivalents)	130
23. Pronominal Verbs	136
24. The Auxiliaries Avoir and Être and the Agreement of the Past Participle	143
25. Impersonal Verbs	150
26. Semi-auxiliary Verbs	156
27. The Past Participle and the Passive Voice	162
28. The Infinitive	167
29. The Present Participle	177
30. The Subjunctive Mood (Part One)	181
31. The Subjunctive Mood (Part Two)	189
32. The Subjunctive Mood (Part Three)	196
33. The Faire Causative Construction	204
34. The Literary Tenses	211
Special Translation Problems	214
Supplementary Translation Exercises	270

APPENDIX

1. The Definite Article	281
2. The Indefinite and Partitive Articles	282
3. Interrogative Adjective and Interrogative Pronouns	282
4. Relative Pronouns	283
5. Possessive Adjectives and Possessive Pronouns	283
6. The Masculine Forms of Adjectives	284
7. The Feminine Forms of Adjectives	285
8. The Formation of Adverbs	287
9. Geographical Names	288
10. Cardinal Numbers	290
11. Ordinal Numbers	295
12. Fractions	296
13. Length of Time	297
14. Time of Day	297
15. The Date	299
16. Dimensions	300
17. Punctuation	300
18. Syllabification	301
19. Liaison	302
20. Mute <i>E</i>	308
21. Vowel Harmony	311
22. The Verb: Tense, Voice, Mood	312
23. Regular Verbs	313
24. Verbs with Orthographic Changes	323
25. Irregular Verbs	327
French-English Vocabulary	339
English-French Vocabulary	391
Index	447

Current French

Lesson 1

The Definite Article (Part One)

(For the forms of the definite article, see Appendix 1, page 281.)

1.1 The definite article accompanies a noun denoting a specific person or thing.

Voilà le fils de mon voisin.

There is my neighbour's son.

Parlez-moi de l'école que vous fréquentez.

Tell me about the school you attend (or go to).

L'avion endommagé est stationné près du hangar.

The damaged (air)plane is parked near the hangar.

Le nouveau bébé ne ressemble pas aux parents.

The new baby does not look like (or is not like) the parents.

Ne riez pas des fautes des autres élèves.

Do not laugh at the other pupils' mistakes.

1.2 The definite article accompanies a noun used in a general sense.

La mort est inévitable.

Death is inevitable.

Croyez-vous aux fantômes? — Mais non!

"Do you believe in ghosts?" "Of course not!"

Les enfants aiment les bonbons.

Children like candy.

On dit que les loups ont peur du feu.

They say (that) wolves are afraid of fire.

1.3 The definite article accompanies nouns denoting languages, subjects of study, and meals.

Saviez-vous que le hongrois appartient à la même famille de langues que le finnois?

Did you know that Hungarian belongs to the same family of languages as Finnish?

Quelles matières M. Smith enseigne-t-il? — L'anglais et l'histoire.

"What subjects does Mr. Smith teach?" "English and history."

Est-ce que le déjeuner (le dîner) sera bientôt prêt?

Will lunch (dinner) soon be ready?

1.4 Following the verb **parler**, the name of a language is not usually accompanied by the definite article, unless the verb is modified.

Ici on parle français.

French (is) spoken here.

Un(e) de mes camarades de classe parle très bien l'allemand et le russe.

One of my class-mates speaks German and Russian very well.

1.5 In phrases introduced by **de** and **en** which are the equivalents of adjectives or adverbs, no article is used with names of languages or subjects of study.

Nous avons un nouveau professeur de mathématiques.

We have a new mathematics teacher.

Ma sœur est très forte en espagnol.

My sister is very good in Spanish.

1.6 The definite article is used with the names of the days of the week. The exceptions to this rule are expressions such as (*next*) *Monday, etc.*, (*last*) *Monday, etc.*, *Today is (Yesterday was, Tomorrow will be) Monday, etc.* (The indefinite article is used, as in English, when the meaning requires it.)

Est-ce que le dimanche est le premier jour de la semaine ou le septième?

Is Sunday the first day of the week or the seventh?

Ce musée est fermé le mardi.

This museum is closed on Tuesday(s).

Nous nous réunissons le dernier lundi de chaque mois.

We meet (*or* get together) the last Monday of each month.

Si nous allons à l'exposition jeudi (prochain)?

What (*or* How) about going to the exhibition (*next*) Thursday?

Quand êtes-vous arrivé? — Mercredi (dernier).

"When did you arrive?" "(Last) Wednesday."

Nous sommes (*or* C'est) aujourd'hui vendredi, n'est-ce pas?

Today is Friday, isn't it?

Cette année ma fête tombe un samedi.

This year my birthday falls on a Saturday.

1.7 The definite article is used with the names of the seasons, except in the adverbial expressions **en été**, **en automne**, **en hiver**.

Quand l'hiver est tardif, le printemps est froid.

When winter is late, spring is cold.

La nature s'endort en automne et se réveille au printemps.

Nature goes to sleep in (the) autumn and wakens (*or* wakes up) in (the) spring.

Il a fait froid l'hiver dernier.

It was cold last winter.

Où allez-vous l'été prochain?

Where are you going next summer?

1.8 The definite article is not used with the names of the months.

Janvier est le premier mois de l'année.

January is the first month of the year.

L'année scolaire commence en septembre.

The school year begins in September.

On fait la récolte du blé au mois d'août.

Wheat is harvested in the month of August.

Quand est-ce que vous allez vous marier? — En mars prochain.

"When are you going to get married?"
"Next March."

1.9 The definite article is used with the names of religious festivals except **Pâques**. **Noël** sometimes has the article but generally does not.

L'Assomption (le 15 août) et la Toussaint (le 1 novembre) sont des jours fériés en France.

The Assumption (August 15th) and All Saints' Day (November 1st) are public holidays in France.

Nous avons toujours quinze jours de vacances à (la) Noël et huit à Pâques.

We always have two weeks' holiday at Christmas and a week at Easter.

Savez-vous la date de l'Épiphanie?

Do you know the date of Twelfth Night?

1.10 The definite article is used with the ordinal number **premier** for the first day of the month, and with the cardinal numbers **deux** to **trente et un** for the other days.

Le premier janvier s'appelle le jour de l'an.

The first of January is called New Year's Day.

On danse dans les rues de Paris le quatorze juillet.

There is dancing in the streets of Paris on the fourteenth of July.

1.11 The definite article is used in such expressions as:

le matin	in the morning
l'après-midi	in the afternoon
le soir	in the evening
la nuit	at night
la semaine dernière	last week
le mois dernier	last month
l'année dernière	last year
la dernière fois	(the) last time
la semaine prochaine	next week
le mois prochain	next month
l'année prochaine	next year
la prochaine fois	(the) next time
la veille (de)	the day before, the evening before
le lendemain (de)	the day after

Les enfants se déguisent la veille de la Toussaint.

Children dress up on Hallowe'en.

Sortez-vous souvent le soir?

Do you often go out in the evening?

Avez-vous manqué (l'école) souvent l'année dernière?

Were you absent (from school) often last year?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

(*Italicized words in brackets, as in sentence 9 of exercise D, serve as a guide to the translation of the preceding word or expression.*)

A. 1. Our neighbours speak German but they don't speak English very well. 2. Aren't you afraid of wolves? 3. We went to the museum last week. 4. One of my cousins attended your school last year. 5. My sister will be here on Thursday. 6. We often go out on Wednesdays. 7. Is the first of July a public holiday? 8. The first of November is called All Saints' Day. 9. Tell me about the new baby. 10. They say our French teacher is going to teach English and history next year.

B. 1. "Autumn and spring are not very cold here." "Is it cold in winter?" 2. Wheat is harvested in the fall. 3. Our history teacher is going to get married next month. 4. September is the first month of the school year. 5. "When are you going to Paris?" "Next summer." 6. My son and his family will be here at Christmas. 7. One of the pupils was absent from school twelve days last month. 8. Don't park here next time. 9. Whom does the plane belong to? 10. Is Spanish like French?

C. 1. In the morning it is very cold in my room. 2. "Do you like languages?" "I like French and Spanish but I don't like German." 3. There's the school I go to. 4. "Will the museum be closed the day after Christmas?" "I don't know." 5. My parents are going to arrive on the thirty-first of January. 6. What is the date of Hallowe'en? 7. It was cold on Tuesday. 8. To what family of languages does Russian belong? 9. We have two weeks' holiday in the winter, ten days in the spring and two months in the summer. 10. Is it cold in Paris in November?

D. 1. August is the eighth month of the year. 2. The new school will be ready next September. 3. Are you going to the exhibition this year? 4. Do the children often wake up at night? 5. Are you afraid of ghosts? 6. He's good in mathematics, but he doesn't like history. 7. The Easter holidays start next week. 8. The new pupil is called Smith. 9. On New Year's Eve (*The evening before New Year's Day*) I'm going to go out with three of my class-mates. 10. Where are the children? Dinner is ready.

VERB REVIEW

avoir

être

faire

Remplacez l'infinif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Comment peuvent-ils faire ce voyage s'ils ne (*avoir*) pas d'argent? 2. Je (*avoir*) dix-sept ans le mois prochain. 3. Je ne veux pas que vous (*avoir*) froid. 4. Pourquoi pleuraient-ils? Qu'est-ce qu'ils (*avoir*)? 5. Bien qu'il (*avoir*) un gros rhume, il ne veut pas rester à la maison. 6. Tu (*avoir*) déjà trois morceaux de tarte. Cela suffit. 7. Ils (*être*) en retard trois fois ce mois-ci. 8. À quelle heure voulez-vous qu'ils (*être*) ici? 9. Est-ce que tu (*être*) content de ta nouvelle voiture? 10. Je me demande où il (*être*) l'année prochaine. 11. Ne (*être*) pas si difficile! 12. (*Être*)-

vous fâché si je refusais l'invitation? 13. Quand nous (*être*) petits, nous avions toujours un chien ou un chat. 14. Ils (*faire*) la récolte du blé demain. 15. Vous réussiriez si vous (*faire*) un plus grand effort. 16. Que (*faire*)-vous? — J'écris une lettre. 17. Qu'est-ce que tu (*faire*) si tu voyais un fantôme? 18. Combien (*faire*) dix-huit et vingt-trois? 19. On nous a dit qu'il (*faire*) froid tout le mois d'avant. 20. Que faut-il que je (*faire*)?

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

(Words which present special difficulty in translation are dealt with, in alphabetical order, in the section headed SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS, pages 214 to 269.)

14. day

15. evening

46. morning

51. night

1. Take the evening plane and you'll be in France before eleven o'clock in the morning. 2. I'm tired tonight. The baby didn't sleep well last night. He woke up about midnight. 3. How about speaking French all evening? 4. I often wake up at night. 5. You can't park here in the morning between seven and nine thirty. 6. "Why are you tired this morning?" "I didn't sleep well last night." 7. We are writing the mathematics exam in the morning and the German exam in the afternoon. What a day! 8. The morning is long when you start your work at seven o'clock. 9. She says she'll be here in the morning. 10. When it is cold at night, I put on another blanket. 11. It snowed all morning. 12. The night begins when the day ends. 13. What about going to the museum some day? 14. "Do you know what day it is?" "Wednesday." 15. I'll have to work all evening. 16. The days are longer in summer than in winter. 17. The children are going to get dressed up tomorrow night. They always like to go out on Hallowe'en. 18. I'll be able to sleep tonight. I'm taking a berth. 19. Our school day begins at nine o'clock and ends at half past three. 20. The museum is closed in the evening.

Lesson 2

The Definite Article (Part Two)

2.1 The definite article is used in expressions denoting cost per pound, per foot, *etc.*

Ces bas coûtent six francs la paire.	These stockings cost six francs a pair.
J'ai payé ces oranges deux francs quinze (centimes) le kilo.	I paid two francs fifteen (centimes) a kilo for these oranges.
Ce tissu se vend (à) dix francs le mètre.	This material sells for ten francs a yard (<i>lit. a metre</i>).

2.2 Cost (or income) per hour, per day, per week, per month, is expressed by **par** without the article.

Les infirmières gagnent quatorze dollars par jour.	Nurses earn fourteen dollars a day.
L'essence et l'huile lui coûtent quinze dollars par mois.	Gas(oline) and oil cost him fifteen dollars a month.
Combien un ouvrier français gagne-t-il par an (par heure)?	How much a year (an hour) does a French workman earn?

2.3 Speed is expressed by **à** with the definite article.

Elle tape soixante-seize mots à la minute.	She types seventy-six words a minute.
---	---------------------------------------

2.4 In other distributive expressions, if the unit of reference is a singular noun, the article may be used (as in 2.1); but **par** without the article (as in 2.2) is commoner. If the unit of reference is a plural noun, the article is used, preceded by **tous, toutes**.

Je travaille quarante heures par semaine.	I work forty hours a week.
Ils viennent nous voir deux fois par an.	They visit us twice a year.
Il y a un autobus toutes les dix minutes.	There is a bus every ten minutes.
Prenez trois gouttes de ce médicament toutes les quatre heures.	Take three drops of this medicine every four hours.

2.5 With nouns which refer to parts of the body, and with nouns such as **la raison** (reason), **la mémoire** (memory), **la voix** (voice), **la vie** (life), there is the problem of whether to use a possessive adjective or the definite article.

2.6 In general, the definite article is used.

Le bébé ferme les yeux, ouvre la bouche, et se met à hurler.	The baby closes its eyes, opens its mouth, and begins to howl.
Il s'est cogné la tête contre la porte.	He bumped his head against the door.
Je lui ai mis la main sur l'épaule.	I put my hand on his shoulder.
Tu as les mains qui tremblent.	Your hands are trembling.
J'ai froid aux oreilles.	My ears are cold.
J'ai mal au doigt.	My finger hurts (<i>or is sore</i>).
La pauvre vieille femme a fini par perdre la raison.	The poor old woman finally went out of her mind (<i>or lost her reason</i>).
Vous lui avez sauvé la vie.	You saved his life.

2.7 A possessive adjective is used if the noun is the subject or the subjective completion, or if it is in a phrase modifying the subject or the subjective completion.

Mes cheveux poussent très vite.	My hair grows very quickly.
Ça ne peut pas être Guillaume; ce n'est pas sa voix.	That can't be William; it isn't his voice.
La grandeur de ses pieds la gêne.	The size of her feet embarrasses her.

2.8 A possessive adjective is used in most cases where the noun is modified by a qualifying adjective.

Pourquoi lui a-t-on coupé ses beaux cheveux?	Why did they cut (off) her beautiful hair?
---	--

2.9 Even where the noun is modified by a qualifying adjective, the definite article is used:

- (i) if the noun follows the verb **avoir**;
- (ii) if the adjective is **droit** (right), **gauche** (left), **supérieur** (upper), **inférieur** (lower).

J'ai les pieds glacés.	My feet are as cold as ice.
Levez le pied gauche et la main droite.	Raise your left foot and your right hand.

2.10 Apart from certain fixed expressions, such as **perdre la mémoire**, **perdre la raison**, **perdre la tête**, a possessive adjective is used where the action is mental or emotional rather than physical.

Avez-vous remarqué (la couleur de) ses ongles?	Did you notice (the colour of) her nails?
---	---

Ma grand-mère est très fière de sa mémoire. My grandmother is very proud of her memory.

2.11 A possessive adjective is used if the construction is such that a conjunctive pronoun object cannot be added to indicate the possessor of the part of the body.

L'enfant voulait s'asseoir sur mes genoux. The child wanted to sit on my lap (*lit. knees*).

2.12 A possessive adjective is used with the noun **vie** when it refers to one's activity, manner of living, *etc.* (rather than to the force which keeps one alive).

Il a passé sa vie à chercher l'impossible. He spent his life seeking the impossible.

2.13 In contemporary French, both spoken and written, there are frequent examples of deviation from the preceding rules. This deviation consists in the use of a possessive adjective where one would expect the definite article. (The reverse is not likely to occur.) Such examples are not necessarily wrong; the possessive adjective may be required in a fixed expression, or it may be used for a special effect. One should be cautious in imitating such usage and not take it as justification for always using a possessive adjective.

2.14 The above rules do not preclude the use of the indefinite or partitive articles if the meaning requires them.

Elle a de belles dents et un joli nez. She has beautiful teeth and a pretty nose.

2.15 The definite article is used with the proper name of a person, when the name is preceded by a noun indicating rank, title, or profession. (This rule does not apply in the case of **saint, sainte**.)

Le général Wolfe et le général Montcalm se sont battus dans les plaines d'Abraham. General Wolfe and General Montcalm fought on the plains of Abraham.

Le prince Charles et la princesse Anne sont les enfants de la reine Élisabeth. Prince Charles and Princess Anne are the children of Queen Elizabeth.

Le docteur Schweitzer a reçu le prix Nobel de la Paix en 1952. Dr. Schweitzer received the Nobel Peace Prize in 1952.

Ne saviez-vous pas que saint Nicolas est le patron des petits enfants? Didn't you know that St. Nicholas is the patron saint of little children?

2.16 The nouns **oncle, tante, cousin, cousine, grand-père, grand-mère**, followed by a proper noun, are not accompanied by the definite article in speaking directly to the person. In speaking about the person, the article was once commonly used, but the current tendency is to omit it.

Bonjour, oncle François. Comment va tante Marguerite? Hello, Uncle Frank. How is Aunt Margaret?

2.17 Except in direct address, the definite article is used with a proper noun indicating a person when such a noun is accompanied by a modifier.

Chère Julie,

J'ai reçu ta lettre ce matin.

Dear Julia,

I got your letter this morning.

La pauvre petite Jeanne s'est foulé le poignet.

Poor little Joan sprained her wrist.

2.18 The definite article accompanies nouns such as **ligne, phrase, paragraphe, page, chapitre, numéro, chambre, etc.**, when they are followed by a number. (This does not apply to headings.)

Ouvrez le livre à la page soixante et un, et commencez à lire à la ligne dix.

Open the book at page sixty-one, and begin reading at line ten.

J'ai retenu la chambre trois cent un.

I have reserved room three hundred and one.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. I paid four dollars a yard (*metre*) for this material. 2. General Wolfe lost his life on the plains of Abraham. 3. Did you know that Queen Anne had seventeen children? 4. Raise your hand if you know the date of Easter this year. 5. The baby has gone to sleep on your shoulder. 6. That room is costing him fourteen dollars a week. 7. His voice is not very beautiful. 8. How many words does she type a minute? 9. Hello, Aunt Jean. How are you? 10. We have room four hundred and seventy-six. Where are you?

B. 1. When the baby opens his little mouth, you'll see his two teeth. 2. Little Margaret has beautiful eyes. 3. My shoulder hurts. 4. There will soon be a bus. They arrive every five minutes. 5. I believe he's afraid. His hands are trembling. 6. Who is the grandmother of Prince Charles? 7. I have spent my life teaching mathematics. 8. He didn't open his mouth. 9. Do nurses work eight hours a day? 10. It's my nose that embarrasses me.

C. 1. Do these oranges cost two francs a kilo? 2. "Who is Princess Margaret?" "Queen Elizabeth's sister." 3. What is the date of the death of Saint Joan? 4. I'm going to cut her hair this afternoon. 5. She has a pretty little mouth. 6. My cousin earns three dollars an hour. 7. Next time we are going to read chapter ten. 8. I go out two evenings a week. 9. Her hands are always cold. 10. "How much are you paying for your room, Uncle Charles?" "Nine dollars a day."

D. 1. Doctor Durand told me to take this medicine three times a day. 2. My sister typed a hundred words a minute yesterday. 3. My hands are as cold as ice. 4. "Do you see her often?" "Every six months." 5. "Why were you absent (from school) this morning?" "I sprained my wrist." 6. General Meade and General Lee fought at Gettysburg in 1863. 7. I'm beginning to lose my memory. 8. I like the colour of her eyes. 9. "How much do you pay for stockings?" "A dollar a pair." 10. "Has she gone to sleep?" "I don't know, but her eyes are closed."

VERB REVIEW

aller

dire

savoir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Si tu y (*aller*) en juillet, nous nous verrons probablement. 2. Il faut que je (*aller*) au magasin. 3. Où (*aller*)-vous quand je vous ai vu cet après-midi? 4. À quel hôtel descendrez-vous quand vous (*aller*) à New York? 5. Ils ne (*aller*) pas à la soirée, même si on les avait invités. 6. Comment (*aller*) Charles et François? — Très bien, merci. 7. C'est en 1951 qu'elles (*aller*) en Europe pour la première fois. 8. Que (*dire*)-il quand il apprendra la nouvelle? 9. (*Dire*)-leur de ne pas nous attendre. 10. (*Dire*)-ils vraiment cela? — Oui, je les ai entendus. 11. Ils (*dire*) toujours ce qu'ils pensent. 12. Que (*dire*)-ils s'ils entendaient cela? 13. Il faudra qu'il (*dire*) oui ou non. 14. Je lui (*dire*) toujours bonjour quand je le rencontrais. 15. Je vous aurais écrit si je (*savoir*) votre adresse. 16. Ils croient tout savoir, mais ils ne (*savoir*) rien du tout. 17. Nous ne voulons pas qu'ils le (*savoir*). 18. Je ne (*savoir*) pas que vous étiez si fort en français. 19. Nous ne (*savoir*) pas les résultats avant demain. 20. Je ne (*savoir*) pas quoi répondre si on m'avait demandé cela.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

23. hear

25. holiday

70. tell

1. Have you heard of the new pupil who speaks Spanish? 2. Joan tells me you can park here. 3. I heard we were going to have a holiday on Wednesday afternoon. 4. Do you always tell the truth when you tell a story? 5. Which are the public holidays in France? 6. "Elizabeth tells me she slept well last night!" "Didn't she hear the neighbours?" 7. Is the day after Christmas a public holiday? 8. "When did you hear from your sister?" "Last Monday. I always hear from her once a week." 9. Tell her to take a candy. 10. Did you hear that Anne has the flu? 11. What is the date of the French national holiday? 12. I'm going to tell you the story of a poor old woman. 13. Easter Monday is a public holiday in France. 14. Have you ever heard of the capture of the Bastille? 15. We have a holiday here because of Queen Victoria's birthday. 16. You've never told me about the war, Uncle Frank. 17. I heard that you type a hundred words a minute. 18. Tell me about your holidays, Peter. Where did you go? 19. They told you it was cold here last spring? Don't believe it! 20. Julia told us a ghost story last night.

Lesson 3

The Definite Article (Part Three)

(For a list of geographical names, see Appendix 9, page 288.)

3.1 The definite article usually accompanies geographical names.

Les États-Unis se trouvent entre le Canada et le Mexique.

The United States is between Canada and Mexico.

L'Europe a besoin de l'Amérique et l'Amérique a besoin de l'Europe.

Europe needs America and America needs Europe.

La capitale de la France est située sur la Seine.

The capital of France is situated on the Seine.

Après avoir visité l'Écosse, nous sommes partis pour la Norvège.

After visiting Scotland, we left for Norway.

Quelle est la différence entre «la Russie» et «l'Union soviétique»?

What is the difference between "Russia" and "the Soviet Union"?

Le Nouveau-Brunswick et l'île du Prince-Édouard sont célèbres par leurs pommes de terre.

New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island are famous for their potatoes.

La Nouvelle-Zélande vend beaucoup de beurre à l'Angleterre.

New Zealand sells a great deal of butter to England.

La Sardaigne n'est pas loin de la Corse.

Sardinia is not far from Corsica.

Brûlé a exploré la baie Georgienne, et la rive nord du lac Huron jusqu'au lac Supérieur.

Brûlé explored Georgian Bay, and the north shore of Lake Huron as far as Lake Superior.

Le climat des Philippines est humide et chaud.

The climate of the Philippines is moist (*or damp*) and hot.

3.2 The definite article is not used with the names of cities, towns, and villages, unless it is actually part of the name, as in the following:

Le Caire

Cairo

La Havane

Havana

Le Havre

Le Havre

La Haye

the Hague

La Nouvelle-Orléans

New Orleans

La Rochelle

La Rochelle

Trois-Rivières est à mi-chemin entre Montréal et Québec.	Three Rivers is half way between Montreal and Quebec.
Le Caire est sur le Nil.	Cairo is on the Nile.

3.3 Certain singular names of islands, such as **Bornéo, Ceylan, Chypre, Cuba, Formose, Java, Madagascar, Malte, Sainte-Hélène, Sumatra, Terre-Neuve**, are not accompanied by the article.

Terre-Neuve est la dixième province du Canada.	Newfoundland is Canada's tenth province.
---	--

Madagascar est dans l'océan Indien.	Madagascar is in the Indian Ocean.
--	------------------------------------

3.4 The definite article is not used with the name of the country **Israël**.

La capitale d'Israël est Jérusalem.	The capital of Israel is Jerusalem.
--	-------------------------------------

3.5 *To* (indicating destination) and *in* are expressed by **en**, without the article, before:

- (i) feminine singular names of continents, countries (except **l'Inde**), provinces and states;
- (ii) masculine singular names of countries beginning with a vowel;
- (iii) certain feminine singular names of islands (*e.g.*, **en Corse, en Crète, en Irlande, en Islande, en Sardaigne, en Sicile**).

Note that, in the case of **l'Inde**, *to* (indicating destination) and *in* are expressed by **dans** with the definite article.

On parle français en Europe, en Amérique, en Afrique, et en Asie, mais pas en Australie.	French is spoken in Europe, America, Africa, and Asia, but not in Australia.
---	--

Ces touristes vont passer quinze jours en Espagne avant de rentrer en Suisse.	These tourists are going to spend two weeks in Spain before returning to Switzerland.
--	---

Si jamais vous allez en Provence à Pâques, vous verrez les amandiers en fleur.	If ever you go to Provence at Easter, you will see the almond trees in blossom.
---	---

Le pétrole est abondant en Iran.	Oil is abundant in Iran.
---	--------------------------

Le mont Etna est un volcan en Sicile.	Mount Etna is a volcano in Sicily.
--	------------------------------------

Après avoir vécu plus de vingt ans en Afrique, Gandhi est revenu dans l'Inde.	After living more than twenty years in Africa, Gandhi came back to India.
--	---

3.6 *To* (indicating destination) and *in* are expressed by **à**, with the article, before:

- (i) masculine singular names of countries beginning with a consonant;
- (ii) plural names of countries and islands.

Il y a des mines d'argent au Mexique, aux États-Unis, au Canada, et au Pérou.

There are silver mines in Mexico, the United States, Canada, and Peru.

Beaucoup de Canadiens passent leurs vacances aux Bermudes.

Many Canadians spend their holidays in Bermuda.

J'irais au Brésil si je savais le portugais.

I'd go to Brazil if I knew Portuguese.

3.7 *To* (indicating destination) and *in* are expressed by **à**, without the article, before:

(i) names of cities, towns, and villages;

(ii) singular names of islands (but note: **en Corse, en Crète, en Irlande, en Islande, en Sardaigne, en Sicile**).

The definite article is used where it forms part of the name (*e.g.*, **au Caire, à La Havane, au Havre, à La Haye, à La Nouvelle-Orléans, à La Rochelle; à la Jamaïque, à la Martinique, à la Réunion**).

Jacques Cartier est né à Saint-Malo.

Jacques Cartier was born in Saint-Malo.

Allez-vous débarquer au Havre ou à Cherbourg?

Are you going to land at Le Havre or Cherbourg?

Quand vous serez à Paris, ne manquez pas d'aller à Versailles.

When you are in Paris, be sure to go to Versailles.

À Terre-Neuve et en Islande, la pêche de la morue est une industrie importante.

In Newfoundland and Iceland, cod-fishing is an important industry.

Il va finir ses jours à la Jamaïque.

He is going to end his days in Jamaica.

3.8 When a geographical name is accompanied by a modifier, the article is required, even where it would otherwise be omitted, and the prepositions **à** and **en**, indicating location, are replaced by **dans**.

NOTE 1. The name of a city modified by **tout** or **entier** does not take the article, unless it is part of the name.

NOTE 2. The current tendency is to say **en Amérique du Nord, en Amérique du Sud, en Afrique du Nord, en Afrique du Sud**, rather than **dans l'Amérique du Nord, etc.**

La musique de Johann Strauss évoque le Vienne du dix-neuvième siècle.

The music of Johann Strauss evokes nineteenth-century Vienna.

Dans la France d'avant-guerre, les femmes n'avaient pas le droit de vote.

In pre-war France, women did not have the franchise.

Tout Paris était en fête.

All Paris was celebrating.

3.9 *From* (indicating point of departure) is expressed by **de**. The definite article is required in the case of:

- (i) masculine singular names of countries beginning with a consonant;
- (ii) plural names;
- (iii) cities and islands where the article forms part of the name (*e.g.*, **du Caire, de La Havane, du Havre, de La Haye, de La Nouvelle-Orléans, de La Rochelle; de la Jamaïque, de la Martinique, de la Réunion**);
- (iv) names accompanied by a modifier;
- (v) **l'Inde**.

In all other cases, the article is not used.

Les cerisiers que les touristes admirent à Washington sont venus du Japon.

The cherry trees that tourists admire in Washington came from Japan.

Quand va-t-il revenir d'Uruguay? — Demain soir.

"When is he going to return from Uruguay?" "Tomorrow night."

Voici les draps que nous avons rapportés des États-Unis.

Here are the sheets we brought back from the (United) States.

Pour aller de France en Angleterre par bateau, on peut partir de Saint-Malo, du Havre, de Dieppe, de Boulogne ou de Calais.

To go from France to England by boat, you can leave from Saint-Malo, Le Havre, Dieppe, Boulogne or Calais.

La plupart des oranges que nous mangeons au Canada viennent ou de Californie ou de Floride.

Most of the oranges we eat in Canada come either from California or from Florida.

Notre sucre vient de la Jamaïque et de Cuba.

Our sugar comes from Jamaica and Cuba.

Ces aviateurs polonais se sont échappés de la France occupée.

Those Polish airmen escaped from occupied France.

Qu'est-ce que le Canada importe de l'Inde? — Je demanderai à mon professeur de géographie.

"What does Canada import from India?" "I'll ask my geography teacher."

3.10 Following the preposition **de** (meaning *of*), the use or omission of the article is, in most cases, governed by the rules given in 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, and 3.4.

Quelle est la capitale de la Belgique? — Bruxelles.

"What is the capital of Belgium?" "Brussels."

Faites une carte qui montre les quatre fleuves de la France.

Make a map showing the four great rivers of France.

Qui ne connaît pas le café et le cacao du Brésil?

Who is not familiar with the coffee and cocoa of Brazil?

Avez-vous jamais goûté le foie gras de Strasbourg ou le pain d'épice de Dijon?

Have you ever tasted Strasbourg *foie gras* or Dijon gingerbread?

3.11 Following the preposition **de** meaning *of*, the article is omitted in the case of feminine singular names of continents, countries, provinces, states, (and the islands **la Corse**, **la Crète**, **l'Irlande**, **l'Islande**, **la Sardaigne**, **la Sicile**), and in the case of the two masculine names **le Danemark** and **le Portugal**, when the phrase refers to kings, emperors, kingdoms, empires, *etc.*, or to typical products.

Plusieurs souverains d'Écosse et d'Angleterre appartenaient à la famille Stuart. Several sovereigns of Scotland and England belonged to the Stuart family.

Le dernier roi de Portugal, Manuel II, a été détrôné en 1910. The last king of Portugal, Manuel II, was dethroned in 1910.

La porcelaine de Chine et les tapis de Perse sont des objets de luxe. Chinese porcelain and Persian rugs are luxury articles.

3.12 Following the preposition **de** meaning *of*, there is no fixed rule for the use or omission of the article with the geographical names referred to in 3.11., when the reference is not to kings, emperors, *etc.* However, it is safer to use the article. (In the case of **l'Inde**, the article is always used.)

L'histoire de (la) France de 1804 à 1815 est l'histoire de Napoléon. The history of France from 1804 to 1815 is the history of Napoleon.

Si vous avez étudié la géographie de l'Allemagne, vous saurez où se trouve la Forêt-Noire. If you have studied the geography of Germany, you will know where the Black Forest is.

Comment s'appelle la grande île qui se trouve au sud de l'Inde? — Ceylan. "What is the name of the large island which is south of India?" "Ceylon."

3.13 In the case of masculine names of provinces and states, *to* (indicating destination) and *in* are generally expressed by **dans**, with the article, before consonants or vowels. However, other usages may be found, such as: **à**, with the article, before a consonant; and **en**, without the article, before a vowel. *From* (indicating point of departure) and *of* (in any sense) are expressed by **de**, with the article.

Si vous faites un voyage dans le Maine, vous mangerez certainement du homard. If you take a trip to Maine, you will certainly eat lobster.

Dans le Manitoba il y a beaucoup de gens de langue française. In Manitoba there are many French-speaking people.

N'allez pas au Texas en été si vous ne supportez pas la chaleur. Don't go to Texas in summer if you can't stand (*lit. don't stand*) the heat.

Il y a des mines de charbon en Alberta. There are coal mines in Alberta.

Ce sucre d'érable vient du Vermont. This maple sugar comes from Vermont.

Columbus est la capitale de l'Ohio. Columbus is the capital of Ohio.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. Tell me about the trip you took to Brazil last year. 2. If you go to Washington at Easter, you will see the cherry trees in blossom. 3. "Iran is in Asia." "I didn't know that." 4. Many Canadians spend the winter in Florida. 5. What language do they speak in Peru? 6. New Zealand is not far from Australia. 7. Napoleon was born in Corsica. 8. Which are the provinces between New Brunswick and Manitoba? 9. You are familiar with New Orleans. How is the climate? 10. Much of our coal comes from the United States.

B. 1. Formosa belonged to Japan from 1895 to 1945. 2. Have you ever been to Versailles? 3. Livingstone explored Africa in the nineteenth century. 4. Napoleon ended his days in St. Helena. 5. Did you say that this coffee comes from Java? 6. "What about going to Spain next summer?" "But we don't know Spanish!" 7. Coal and oil are abundant in Alberta. 8. Uncle Edward brought those oranges back to us from California. 9. Taste this lobster. It comes from Maine. 10. "Do you speak French?" "Yes, I spent several years in Paris."

C. 1. Borneo is an important island which is situated between Sumatra and the Philippines. 2. My grandfather is leaving for Scotland on the fifteenth of August. 3. Are you going to spend the Christmas holidays in Bermuda? 4. My cousin Julia is going to Mexico next month. 5. Havana is the capital of Cuba. 6. They are going to Ceylon. Show me on the map where it is situated. 7. Corsica is near Italy. 8. Have you studied the geography of South America? 9. When you are in Europe this summer, be sure to go to Spain and Portugal. 10. Canada is famous for its maple sugar.

D. 1. The last time we went to France, we landed at Le Havre. 2. He has spent two months in Germany and he hasn't started to speak German. 3. Whom did you see when you were in England? 4. Malta is an island which is situated between Sicily and Africa. 5. If it were not so damp in Ireland, I would spend my holidays there. 6. Jacques Cartier arrived at Newfoundland in 1534. 7. "What did you bring back from China?" "Those two rugs." 8. What is Israel's most important industry? 9. Many of the potatoes we eat come from New Brunswick. 10. Do you like this china? It comes from Denmark.

VERB REVIEW

mettre

prendre

venir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Je crois que je (*mettre*) ma robe bleue ce soir. 2. Il ferme l'enveloppe, écrit l'adresse, et (*mettre*) un timbre. 3. Après (*mettre*) ses chaussettes, il a vu qu'il y avait un trou. 4. Il faudra que vous (*mettre*) quelque chose de plus chaud; il fait très froid. 5. Mais si vous aviez un chien, où le (*mettre*)-vous? 6. Si nous (*mettre*) ce fauteuil dans l'autre coin? 7. Il faut qu'elle (*prendre*) une décision aujourd'hui. 8. Si nous ne (*prendre*) pas de vacances cet été, il faudra en prendre à Noël. 9. Ils (*prendre*) peut-être du thé s'il n'y a pas de café. 10. Ils se sentiraient mieux s'ils

(prendre) de l'exercice. 11. Tu aurais mieux dormi si tu ne (prendre) pas cette deuxième tasse de café. 12. Qui (prendre) ma place si je tombais malade? 13. Voulez-vous que nous (prendre) un taxi? 14. (Venir) ici. Je veux te parler. 15. Je (venir) plus souvent si je n'habitais pas si loin. 16. J'aimerais beaucoup que tu (venir) avec nous. 17. Le docteur (venir) tout de suite si on lui avait dit que c'était urgent. 18. Elle écrit qu'ils (venir) d'acheter une nouvelle maison. 19. Nous (venir) vous voir ce soir vers huit heures. 20. Si tu (venir) plus tôt, tu aurais pu les accompagner.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

5. another

22. hard

52. number

1. Have you another map of France? This one doesn't show the rivers. 2. A great number of tourists are going to Scotland this summer. 3. Doctor Bernard works very hard, doesn't he? 4. One of my class-mates comes from Japan and another comes from Australia. 5. I'd like another orange, please. They are delicious. 6. What is Aunt Elizabeth's telephone number? 7. I believe German is harder than Spanish. 8. I'd like you to read another chapter for next time. 9. A certain number of those words are hard. 10. They'll ask you your telephone number and the number of words you type a minute. 11. What's the number of the bus that goes as far as Charles Street? 12. The baby has another tooth. 13. This maple sugar is very hard. 14. Give me another yard (*metre*) of this material, please. 15. What is the number of their room? 16. I have always worked hard. I believe I'll end my days in Jamaica. 17. Another volcano is Mount Etna in Sicily. 18. Number five is the hardest of all those sentences. 19. Coal is hard and black. 20. Several pages of last year's book were very hard.

Lesson 4

The Indefinite and Partitive Articles

(For the forms of the indefinite and partitive articles, see Appendix 2, page 282.)

4.1 The indefinite article accompanies a noun denoting an unspecified person or thing.

Si vous avez des œufs et des champignons, nous pourrons faire une bonne omelette.

If you have (some) eggs and mushrooms, we'll be able to make a good omelette.

J'ai vu un vieillard assis sur un banc en train de lire un journal.

I saw an old man sitting on a bench reading a (news)paper.

4.2 The partitive article expresses an indefinite quantity, and is used instead of the indefinite article before a noun denoting anything that cannot be counted.

Dans un gâteau il y a des œufs, du beurre, du sucre, du lait, de la farine, et du sel.

In a cake there are eggs, butter, sugar, milk, flour, and salt.

Est-ce que le vieux prospecteur a découvert de l'or ou de l'uranium?

Did the old prospector discover any gold or uranium?

Laissez-moi vous aider. Je vois que vous avez de la vaisselle à laver et du raccommodage à faire.

Let me help you. I see you have some dishes to wash and some mending (or darning) to do.

(Fais) attention! Tu vas renverser de la soupe sur la nappe.

Be careful! You are going to spill some soup on the tablecloth.

4.3 When a noun subject is accompanied by the partitive article, it generally follows the verb, which is preceded by the neuter pronoun **il**.

Il est tombé de la pluie cette nuit.

Some rain fell last night.

4.4 The partitive article accompanying an abstract noun is replaced by the singular indefinite article if a modifier is added. (The partitive article is retained in the case of a noun and adjective which form a unit.)

Il faut avoir du courage (un courage inébranlable) dans la vie.

One must have courage (unshakeable courage) in life.

Il montre toujours de la bonne volonté.

He is always co-operative (*lit. shows good will*).

4.5 When a noun is preceded by an adjective, the partitive articles **du, de la, de l'** are, in theory, replaced by **de, d'**. This usage is still occasionally found in writing, but has disappeared from the spoken language.

Un Français exige toujours du bon pain avec ses repas. A Frenchman always demands good bread with his meals.

Notre acheteur a trouvé de la belle porcelaine à Limoges. Our buyer found some lovely china in Limoges.

4.6 The indefinite article **des** is replaced by **de, d'** when the noun is preceded by an adjective.

Je n'aime pas les épinards. Y a-t-il d'autres légumes? I don't like spinach. Are there any other vegetables?

Est-ce qu'il raconte souvent de telles histoires? Does he often tell such stories?

Avez-vous jamais vu de si beaux bijoux? Have you ever seen such beautiful jewelry?

4.7 In the case of an adjective beginning with a consonant, **des** need not be replaced by **de**, although it usually is in writing. Even in simple speech, **de** is certainly the preferable form, but **des** has become so common that it can scarcely be considered a mistake. (Note, however, that this liberty is not permitted when the adjective is **tel(le)s**, or when an adverb is inserted before the adjective. See the second and third examples in 4.6.)

Pendant mon séjour à Terre-Neuve, j'ai appris de(s) vieilles chansons. During my stay in Newfoundland, I learned some old songs.

4.8 When the plural adjective **certain(e)s** precedes the noun, **des** is never used; **de** occurs occasionally, but is usually omitted.

Il y a certaines parties de ce film qui m'ont choqué. There are certain parts of that picture which shocked me.

4.9 When the adjective and noun form a unit, **des** is not replaced by **de**.

Avez-vous des petits-enfants? — Oui, j'ai deux petites-filles et trois petits-fils. "Have you any grandchildren?" "Yes, I have two granddaughters and three grandsons."

Est-ce que ça ne vous fait rien d'aller chercher des petits pains chez le boulanger (or à la boulangerie)? Do you mind going to the baker's for some rolls?

Saviez-vous que le pluriel de un jeune homme est des jeunes gens? Did you know that the plural of *un jeune homme* is *des jeunes gens*?

4.10 The indefinite and partitive articles are replaced by **de** before a noun used as the direct object of a verb when a negation implies the absence of what the noun represents. (Note that this replacement does not apply for **ne . . . que . . .**)

Nous n'avons pas de canapé parce qu'il n'y a pas de place dans notre petit appartement.

Ils n'ont pas encore acheté (Ils ne vont pas encore acheter) de tondeuse ni de tuyau d'arrosage.

Elle n'a jamais eu de mites dans ses placards.

Personne n'a apporté de canards ni d'oies au marché ce matin.

Il est parti brusquement sans laisser d'adresse.

Ce malade ne reçoit guère (*or presque pas*) de visites.

Elle ne dit que des bêtises.

We haven't a chesterfield because there isn't any room (for one) in our little apartment.

They have not yet bought (They are not yet going to buy) a lawn-mower or a garden hose.

She has never had any moths in her clothes-closets.

Nobody brought any ducks or geese to market this morning.

He went away suddenly without leaving any address.

This patient has hardly any visitors.

She talks nothing but nonsense.

4.11 The definite article does not change after a negation.

(Faites) attention! N'avez pas les noyaux de vos cerises.

Be careful! Don't swallow the stones (*or pits*) of your cherries.

4.12 The forms **du**, **de la**, **de l'** are not always partitive articles; and **des** is not always the plural of the indefinite article. They may be simply the preposition **de** plus the definite article, in which case they do not change after a negation.

Vous ne jouez pas de la clarinette par hasard?

You don't happen to play the clarinet, do you?

4.13 The indefinite and partitive articles do not change to **de** after a negative form of **être**, because the noun is not a direct object.

Ce ne sont pas des gens que je voudrais fréquenter.

They are not people with whom I'd care to associate.

Mon professeur de sciences dit que la tomate n'est pas un légume.

My science teacher says a tomato is not a vegetable.

Ce n'est pas du rouge à lèvres sur mon mouchoir; c'est de l'encre.

It isn't lipstick on my handkerchief; it's ink.

4.14 The singular indefinite article remains unchanged when it is used with an emphatic negation corresponding to the English *not a single*, *not one*.

Il n'a pas un seul ennemi.

He hasn't a single enemy.

Je n'ai pas une minute à perdre.

I haven't a minute to spare (*or to lose*).

4.15 The indefinite and partitive articles remain unchanged when the emphasis is on contrast, rather than on the absence of what the noun object represents.

(This type of sentence may always be re-arranged to read **Ce n'est pas . . . que . . .** or **Ce ne sont pas . . . que . . .**)

Nous ne prendrons pas du thé ce soir, mais du café. (= *Ce n'est pas du thé que nous prendrons ce soir, mais du café.*)

We shall not be having tea this evening, but coffee.

Ces jeunes gens vont acheter des voitures d'occasion, pas des voitures neuves. (= *Ce ne sont pas des voitures neuves qu'ils vont acheter, mais des voitures d'occasion.*)

These young men are going to buy second-hand cars, not new cars.

4.16 The indefinite and partitive articles remain unchanged when the interrogative negative anticipates an affirmative answer. (This type of sentence is always the equivalent of the affirmative followed by **n'est-ce pas?**)

Qu'est-ce que tu veux encore? N'as-tu pas une poupée, un livre d'images, des crayons de couleur, de la pâte à modeler, et une corde à sauter?
(= *Tu as une poupée . . . , n'est-ce pas?*)

What more do you want? Haven't you a doll, a picture-book, coloured pencils, plasticine, and a skipping-rope?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. I found a dollar on a bus yesterday. 2. I didn't put any butter or milk in this cake. 3. It's such an old car. You'll never be able to sell it. 4. The doctor says that I may not have any visitors. 5. He takes hardly any salt with his meals. 6. I have finally found someone who sells good coffee. 7. Those prospectors are not seeking gold but uranium. 8. I don't like her to talk such nonsense. 9. Have you ever eaten *foie gras*? 10. What is there in this soup? It's lobster, isn't it?

B. 1. There are mistakes in this paragraph. 2. I've never seen an almond tree. 3. You have to have courage to love an enemy. 4. Don't read the paper when I am talking to you. 5. I don't like this colour. Have you any other rugs to show me? 6. If you are going out, bring me back a cake and some rolls. 7. Do you know what I discovered in a book the other day? Some old letters I had lost last spring. 8. Nobody had told us about the damp climate. 9. Such a trip would demand unshakeable courage. 10. "Is this coffee?" "I'm not certain; but it isn't tea."

C. 1. "What have you brought back from the States this time?" "A tablecloth for Aunt Julia and some handkerchiefs for Uncle Frank." 2. It isn't a duck; it's a goose. 3. I'd like to take a trip to Switzerland. 4. There's only an omelette for dinner tonight. 5. I see you have some new dishes. 6. We haven't any eggs. I'll have to go for some. 7. My grandfather takes hot milk every evening. 8. I'd like to spend my holidays there, but will there be any young men? 9. I tasted some good gingerbread yesterday. 10. Have you ever eaten such good vegetables?

D. 1. There isn't a single mistake in this sentence. 2. There are certain French words which come from English. 3. "It will soon be Christmas. What would you like?" "A picture-book and some coloured pencils." 4. She can't be poor. Hasn't she beautiful jewelry, a large apartment, and a luxury car? 5. Did you find

any good mushrooms at the market? 6. Julia has beautiful hair. 7. Did you put butter on this spinach? 8. There are no volcanoes in Canada. 9. Are there any other songs you like in this book? 10. Have you ever seen a ghost?

VERB REVIEW

partir

pouvoir

voir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. S'ils ne (*partir*) qu'à trois heures, ils arriveront en retard. 2. Qu'allez-vous faire de votre chien quand vous (*partir*)? 3. Je (*partir*) plus tôt si j'avais su que c'était si loin. 4. Nous avons peur qu'il ne (*partir*) jamais. 5. Nous (*partir*) avant eux, mais ils sont arrivés avant nous. 6. Je ne savais pas que vous (*partir*) pour la Floride la semaine prochaine. 7. Quand (*partir*)-elle, aujourd'hui ou demain? 8. Je le ferais avec plaisir si je (*pouvoir*). 9. Je suis content qu'il (*pouvoir*) nous accompagner. 10. Ils sont toujours en retard. Pourquoi ne (*pouvoir*)-ils jamais être à l'heure? 11. (*Pouvoir*)-vous lui parler? — Non, il était trop occupé. 12. Nous (*pouvoir*) vous prêter de l'argent si vous en aviez besoin. 13. Je ne (*pouvoir*) pas manger quand je suis fatigué. 14. Je (*pouvoir*) vous aider si vous m'aviez demandé. 15. Qu'est-ce que vous direz s'ils nous (*voir*)? 16. Si tu vas à Washington, tu (*voir*) les cerisiers en fleur. 17. Si je les (*voir*), je leur aurais dit que vous les cherchiez. 18. J'ai peur que nous ne (*voir*) pas le commencement du film. 19. Chaque fois qu'il me (*voir*), il me racontait les mêmes histoires. 20. S'ils y retournaient maintenant, ils (*voir*) une grande différence.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

3. again

82. year

1. After two or three minutes, we began to dance again. 2. The patient woke up at five and didn't go to sleep again. 3. I'd like to see you again. Will you be at the exhibition this year? 4. Are you going out with Nicholas on New Year's Eve (*the evening before New Year's Day*)? 5. "How old is your grandfather?" "He will be sixty-one years old next month." 6. Are you going again to Lake Huron? 7. Several of my class-mates say the school year is too long. 8. He said he wouldn't do it again. 9. I'll never buy a second-hand car again. 10. Are those two children fighting again? 11. How many books do you read a year? 12. Have you seen the clarinet I bought last year? 13. The doctor says I'll soon be able to have visitors again. 14. One of my uncles is going to spend a whole year in Israel. 15. Open your book and read the first chapter again. 16. They take the same trip every year. 17. Our doctor takes two months' vacation every three years. 18. I worked several years at the exhibition. 19. What a night! I believe the baby is going to wake up again. 20. He visited Russia again after many years.

Lesson 5

The Omission of the Articles (Part One)

5.1 The indefinite article is omitted before an unmodified predicate noun indicating profession, nationality, religious or political denomination, official position, marital status, *etc.*

Léonard de Vinci était dessinateur, sculpteur, architecte, ingénieur, écrivain, et musicien.

Leonardo da Vinci was a draughtsman, a sculptor, an architect, an engineer, a writer, and a musician.

Cet étranger est-il Français, Allemand, Espagnol, ou Italien ?

Is this foreigner a Frenchman, a German, a Spaniard, or an Italian ?

Est-ce que la plupart des habitants de cette ville sont protestants, catholiques, ou juifs ?

Are most of the inhabitants of this town Protestants, (Roman) Catholics, or Jews ?

Je suis célibataire et je ne vais jamais me marier.

I'm a bachelor and I'm never going to get married.

Il est millionnaire (orphelin, prisonnier).

He is a millionaire (an orphan, a prisoner).

5.2 Sometimes it is necessary to omit the indefinite article even when such a noun is modified, because the noun and modifier form a unit and are treated as a single word.

Quel est le métier (or Quelle est la profession) de votre frère ? — Il est agent de police.

"What is your brother's occupation?"
"He's a policeman."

Le général de Gaulle a été élu président de la République en 1958.

General de Gaulle was elected President of France in 1958.

5.3 If an unmodified predicate noun indicating profession, nationality, *etc.* merely answers the question (expressed or implied) **Qui est-ce ?**, the indefinite article must be used.

On sonne. Va voir qui c'est. — C'est un agent de police.

"The doorbell is ringing. Go and see who it is." "It's a policeman."

5.4 When a predicate noun indicating profession, nationality, *etc.* is accompanied by a modifier, the indefinite article must be used. **Il est, elle est, and ils sont, elles sont** are replaced by **c'est** and **ce sont** before such a modified noun. (For the use of **c'est** followed by a plural, see 11.11.)

C'est un bon boucher.

He's a good butcher.

C'est une pauvre vieille veuve.

She's a poor old widow.

Ce sont (or C'est) des journalistes américains.

They are American journalists.

Christophe Colomb était un célèbre navigateur du quinzième siècle.

Christopher Columbus was a famous fifteenth-century navigator.

Connaissez-vous Alphonse? C'est un coiffeur que ma fille vient de découvrir.

Do you know Alphonse? He's a hairdresser my daughter has just discovered.

5.5 The definite article is never omitted before such a predicate noun, modified or unmodified.

Voilà une auto! Je crois que c'est le docteur.

There's a car! I think it's the doctor.

Christophe Colomb était le célèbre navigateur qui a découvert l'Amérique.

Christopher Columbus was the famous navigator who discovered America.

Alphonse est le coiffeur que Marie m'a recommandé.

Alphonse is the hairdresser Mary recommended to me.

5.6 The indefinite and partitive articles are omitted after expressions of quantity terminating in *de*, such as:

assez de	enough
autant de	as much, as many
beaucoup de	much, many, a great deal of, a great many, a lot of, lots of
combien de	how much, how many
moins de	less, fewer
pas mal de	a fair amount of, quite a lot of, quite a few
peu de	little, few, not much, not many
un peu de	a little
plus de	more
que de . . .!	what a lot of . . .!
tant de	so much, so many
tellement de	so much, so many
trop de	too much, too many
une boîte de	a box of, a can of, a tin of
une bouteille de	a bottle of
une cuillerée de	a spoonful of
une douzaine de	a dozen
une livre de	a pound of
un morceau de	a piece of

Albert a beaucoup d'enthousiasme mais peu d'expérience.

Albert has a great deal of enthusiasm but little experience.

Vous avez planté trop d'oignons et de radis, et pas assez de carottes et de choux.

You have planted too many onions and radishes, and not enough carrots and cabbage(s).

Il y a pas mal de pépins dans ces oranges.

There are quite a few seeds (*or* pips) in these oranges.

Voyons! Il me faut un petit sac de farine, une douzaine de citrons, une livre de fromage, et une bouteille de vinaigre.

Let's see! I need a small bag of flour, a dozen lemons, a pound of cheese, and a bottle of vinegar.

Combien de temps faut-il pour aller au village? — Il y a trois quarts d'heure de marche.

"How long does it take to go to the village?" "It's three quarters of an hour's walk."

5.7 This omission does not apply after the adverbs **bien** and **encore**, because, unlike the expressions above, they do not terminate in **de**.

Est-ce qu'il y a bien du lard? J'ai très faim.

Is there plenty of bacon? I'm very hungry.

Il y a de cela bien des années.

That was many years ago.

Le candidat s'est présenté bien des fois au baccalauréat avant d'être reçu.

The candidate tried his matriculation many times before passing.

Bien d'autres (Bien d'autres candidats) en avaient déjà fait autant.
(See 4.6 for the use of **d'** instead of **des**.)

Many others (Many other candidates) had already done the same.

Versez-moi encore du café (encore une tasse de café), s'il vous plaît.

Please pour me some more coffee (another cup of coffee).

Comment! Il y a encore des verbes irréguliers à apprendre?

What! There are more irregular verbs to learn?

Nous aurons encore de la neige avant la fin de l'hiver.

We shall have more snow before (the) winter is over.

5.8 The partitive articles and the plural (but not the singular) indefinite article are omitted:

- (i) after verbal phrases terminating in **de**, such as
- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| couvrir de | to cover with |
| remplir de | to fill with |
| (être) plein de | (to be) full of |
| avoir besoin de | to need |
| se passer de | to do without, to get along without |

- (ii) after compound prepositions terminating in **de**, such as
- | | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| à côté de | beside |
| à court de | short of |
| à force de | by dint of |
| au lieu de | instead of |
| faute de | for lack of |

Il faudra laver la voiture; elle est couverte de boue.

We'll have to wash the car; it's covered with mud.

Le jardin est plein de mauvaises herbes.

The garden is full of weeds.

Si vous avez besoin d'argent ou de conseils, venez me voir.

If you need (any) money or advice, come and see me.

Les rues sont encombrées de camions.

The streets are congested with trucks.

Elle voudrait bien maigrir, mais elle ne peut pas se passer de pâtisserie.

She would like to reduce, but she cannot do without pastry.

Le château était entouré d'un beau parc.

The castle was surrounded by a lovely park.

Georges a acheté un gâteau au lieu de pain.

George bought a cake instead of bread.

Au théâtre, je n'aime pas être assis à côté de gens qui bavardent.

At the theatre, I don't like sitting beside people who chatter.

Faute d'oxygène, le pilote a perdu connaissance.

For lack of oxygen, the pilot lost consciousness.

Nous sommes arrivés en retard à cause d'un pneu crevé.

We arrived late because of a puncture (*lit. a punctured tire*).

5.9 After the negatives **sans**, **sans . . . ni**, and **ne . . . ni . . . ni**, the indefinite and partitive articles are omitted. (This does not apply when **ni** follows any other negative. See the fourth example below.)

Cet immigrant est sans argent et sans situation.

This immigrant is without money and without a job.

Voici une recette pour faire un gâteau sans lait ni beurre.

Here is a recipe for making a cake without milk or butter.

Ce pauvre petit orphelin n'a ni parents ni amis.

That poor little orphan has neither relatives nor friends.

Ce camion n'a pas de freins, ni de phares non plus.

This truck hasn't any brakes, or any headlights either.

5.10 The singular indefinite article is not omitted after **sans** in the case of an emphatic negation. (Note that this rule is similar to 4.13.)

J'ai conduit ma première voiture pendant cinq ans sans une seule panne.

I drove my first car for five years without a single breakdown.

5.11 Unlike the expressions of quantity listed in 5.6, **la plupart de**, **la plus grande partie de** and **la majorité de** are never followed directly by a noun.

La plupart des femmes ont peur des souris.

Most women are afraid of mice.

Est-ce que la majorité des gens sont superstitieux ?

Are the majority of people superstitious ?

5.12 Although the indefinite and partitive articles are omitted in certain cases, as explained in 5.6, 5.8, and 5.9, the definite article is never omitted in these cases.

Beaucoup des violettes que nous avons cueillies hier sont déjà fanées.

Many of the violets we picked yesterday are already withered.

Voulez-vous un pot de la confiture que je viens de faire ?

Do you want a jar of the jam I have just made ?

Si vous avez besoin de l'argent que vous m'avez prêté, n'hésitez pas à le dire.

If you need the money you lent me, don't hesitate to say so.

Au lieu du gâteau qu'il a rapporté, il aurait dû acheter du pain.

Instead of the cake he brought home, he ought to have bought bread.

Il est revenu de la banque sans l'argent qu'il était allé chercher.

He came back from the bank without the money he had gone for.

Je n'aime ni la couleur ni la coupe de ce pardessus.

I like neither the colour nor the cut of this overcoat.

5.13 The indefinite and partitive articles are omitted in adjectival phrases. Such phrases are usually introduced by **à**, **de**, or **en**, although other prepositions are occasionally found.

Dans une pharmacie américaine on trouve de tout: des brosses à dents, du papier à lettres, des stylos à bille, et même des tasses à thé.

In an American drugstore you can get anything and everything: tooth-brushes, note-paper, ball-point pens, and even teacups.

Il faudra que j'achète une lime à ongles et une brosse à habits.

I'll have to buy a nail-file and a clothes-brush.

Tu as laissé ta robe de chambre dans la salle de bains.

You have left your dressing-gown (or bath-robe) in the bathroom.

J'ai les bras couverts de piqûres de moustique.

My arms are covered with mosquito bites.

Marie était habillée d'une jupe de velours noir et d'une blouse de soie blanche.

Mary was dressed in a black velvet skirt and a white silk blouse.

Si vous cherchez des chemises de bonne qualité, allez chez Martin.

If you are looking for shirts of good quality, go to Martin's.

Les meubles en acajou montrent la poussière; c'est pour cela (or c'est pourquoi) je préfère les meubles en chêne.

Mahogany furniture shows the dust; that's why I prefer oak furniture.

Cet artiste fait de très belles gravures sur bois.

This artist does very fine woodcuts.

5.14 Some adjectival phrases introduced by **à** and **de** require the definite article. (There is no rule on this point.)

J'adore la glace à l'ananas.

I love pineapple ice cream.

En France, les boîtes aux lettres sont bleues.

In France, mailboxes are blue.

Cet homme aux yeux bleus et aux cheveux blonds doit être Norvégien, Suédois, Finlandais ou Danois.

That blue-eyed, fair-haired man must be a Norwegian, a Swede, a Finn or a Dane.

Qui est le petit garçon aux oreilles décollées ?

Who is the little boy with the protruding (*lit. unstuck*) ears ?

Qu'est-ce que nous emportons pour le pique-nique? —Des sandwich(e)s aux œufs et aux oignons, et des tartelettes aux amandes.

"What are we taking for the picnic?"
"Egg-and-onion sandwiches and almond tarts."

Où est le rayon des jouets, s'il vous plaît?

Where is the toy department, please ?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. Have you as many weeds in your garden as we have? 2. My aunt is an Italian and my uncle is a Swede. 3. May I have another cup of cocoa, please? 4. Taste this soup. I'm afraid I've put sugar in it instead of salt. 5. There's a good recipe for gingerbread! 6. Abraham Lincoln was elected President of the United States on the sixth of November, 1860. 7. Is there a mailbox near the drugstore? 8. Paderewski was a famous Polish musician. 9. We'll have to take plenty of sandwiches for the picnic. Mary doesn't eat pastry, or cake either. 10. We still have six jars of the jam I made last year.

B. 1. There's the shirt department. 2. My son talks of being an engineer, but he isn't very good in mathematics. 3. Nicholas read that paragraph without a single mistake. 4. Most of my class-mates can drive. 5. One of the candidates is the Spaniard you were telling me about. 6. She wants a doll with blue eyes and fair hair. 7. Why don't you buy her a skipping-rope instead of a picture-book? 8. "They tell me your neighbour is a Finn." "Yes, he has just arrived in Canada." 9. Do you like ball-point pens? 10. "Who is in the garden with your grandfather?" "It's a journalist."

C. 1. We haven't any cabbages or carrots in the garden this year, but there are lots of other vegetables. 2. "There's a man at the door." "It must be the doctor." 3. Neither tomatoes nor radishes are plentiful this year. 4. Christopher wants to be a writer, but his father wants him to be an architect. 5. Take a spoonful of this medicine three times a day. 6. Manuel II was king of Portugal from 1908 to 1910. 7. We'll be needing a new garden hose next summer. 8. Do you mind bringing some tomato or egg sandwiches for the picnic? I don't like mushroom sandwiches. 9. You will certainly find a job if you are a good draughtsman. 10. I bought myself a blue silk dress yesterday.

D. 1. "Are all Frenchmen Catholics?" "No, there are quite a few Protestants too." 2. We've had very little snow this winter. 3. "Your sister speaks German very well, doesn't she?" "Yes, she spent many years in Germany when she was studying music." 4. I'd like to make some almond tarts, but I'm short of flour. 5. There aren't many villages without a bank or a school. 6. There will certainly be more rain before Thursday. 7. Albert Camus is a French writer who received the Nobel Prize in 1957. 8. That old man is always surrounded by children. 9. "What did your grandmother get for Christmas?" "A dressing-gown, four pairs of silk stockings, and some handkerchiefs." 10. Charles Lindbergh is an aviator who is well known in America and in Europe.

VERB REVIEW

connaître

écrire

ouvrir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Comment sont vos voisins? — Nous ne les (*connaître*) pas encore très bien. 2. Tu verras comme il est sympathique quand tu le (*connaître*) un peu mieux. 3. Si je les (*connaître*), je les aurais invités. 4. Je doute que vous les (*connaître*). 5. Tu ne dirais pas cela si tu les (*connaître*). 6. Où et comment (*connaître*)-vous votre mari? 7. Elle serait contente si nous lui (*écrire*). 8. Il faut absolument que je (*écrire*) cette lettre ce soir. 9. J'espère qu'ils nous (*écrire*) bientôt. 10. Il nous (*écrire*) s'il avait eu besoin de quelque chose. 11. Ils parlent très bien le français, mais ils le (*écrire*) très mal. 12. Il avait promis qu'il me (*écrire*) deux fois par semaine. 13. Ils n'ont pas encore répondu aux deux lettres que nous leur (*écrire*). 14. Chaque matin le chat attend que nous lui (*ouvrir*) la porte. 15. Je (*ouvrir*) un magasin si j'avais l'argent nécessaire. 16. (*Ouvrir*)-moi la porte, s'il te plaît. 17. Je (*ouvrir*) toujours la fenêtre quand je me couche. 18. Jusqu'à quelle heure les magasins sont-ils (*ouvrir*)? 19. Je me demande ce qu'elle dira quand elle (*ouvrir*) le paquet. 20. Il prononcerait mieux s'il (*ouvrir*) la bouche plus grande.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

34. little

38. many

48. much

1. I take very little milk in tea. 2. How many rooms did you reserve? 3. I go out very little in the evening. 4. "Have you seen very many wolves?" "Not as many as last year." 5. Gandhi spent many years in Africa. 6. Margaret is a little better now that she hasn't so many visitors. 7. "Did you have much snow in Buffalo?" "Three times as much as last winter." 8. I didn't buy much in England. The little that I brought back for the family cost me forty-five dollars. 9. Who is the patron saint of little children? 10. Have we very many eggs? I'd like an omelette for lunch. 11. We didn't have many flowers this year. 12. "The harvest has been good this fall." "Yes, I've been in Manitoba many times and I've never

seen so much wheat.” 13. The children won’t like this fish. There are too many bones. 14. I’d very much like to go dancing Friday evening. 15. I don’t eat as much spinach as I used to (*as before*). 16. How many teeth has the baby? 17. Many of my friends have too much time to spare. 18. There are twice as many buses at eight o’clock as at ten. 19. Was your buyer able to find much in Norway? 20. How much ink have we left?

Lesson 6

The Omission of the Articles (Part Two)

6.1 There are many phrases composed of a verb and a singular noun, in which the noun is unaccompanied by any article. The most important of these phrases are:

avoir besoin (<i>de</i>)	to need
avoir chaud	to be (<i>or</i> feel) warm, to be (<i>or</i> feel) hot
avoir confiance (<i>en, dans</i>)	to have confidence
avoir congé	to have a holiday, to have a day off
avoir envie (<i>de</i>)	to feel like
avoir faim	to be (<i>or</i> feel) hungry
avoir froid	to be (<i>or</i> feel) cold
avoir honte (<i>de</i>)	to be (<i>or</i> feel) ashamed
avoir horreur (<i>de</i>)	to loathe
avoir lieu	to take place
avoir mal (<i>à</i>)	to have a pain
avoir peur (<i>de</i>)	to be afraid
avoir pied	to be within one's depth
ne pas avoir pied	to be out of (<i>or</i> beyond) one's depth
avoir pitié (<i>de</i>)	to pity, to have pity
avoir raison	to be right
avoir rendez-vous	to have an appointment
avoir soif	to be (<i>or</i> feel) thirsty
avoir sommeil	to be (<i>or</i> feel) sleepy
avoir tendance (<i>à</i>)	to tend, to have a tendency
avoir tort	to be wrong
demander pardon (<i>à</i>)	to beg (one's)pardon
donner chaud (<i>à</i>)	to make (one) hot, to make (one) feel hot
donner envie (<i>à qn de faire qch.</i>)	to make (one) feel like
donner faim (<i>à</i>)	to make (one) hungry, to make (one) feel hungry
donner froid (<i>à</i>)	to make (one) cold, to make (one) feel cold
donner rendez-vous (<i>à</i>)	to give an appointment
donner soif (<i>à</i>)	to make (one) thirsty, to make (one) feel thirsty

donner sommeil (à)	to make (one) sleepy, to make (one) feel sleepy
faire attention (à)	to pay attention, to be careful
faire confiance (à)	to trust
faire envie (à)	to make (one) envious
faire faillite	to go bankrupt, to fail
faire fortune	to make a (or one's) fortune
faire honneur (à)	to do credit, to be a credit, to do justice
faire mal (à)	to hurt
faire part (à <i>qn de qch.</i>)	to inform
faire partie (<i>de</i>)	to be part, to belong
faire peur (à)	to frighten, to make (one) afraid
faire pitié (à)	to arouse pity
faire plaisir (à)	to please
faire semblant (<i>de</i>)	to pretend
faire sensation	to create a sensation, to make a hit
faire signe (à <i>qn de faire qch.</i>)	to motion, to beckon, to wave
mettre fin (à)	to put an end
perdre connaissance	to lose consciousness
perdre patience	to lose patience
perdre pied	to get out of (or beyond) one's depth
porter bonheur (à)	to bring (good) luck
porter malheur (à)	to bring bad luck
prendre feu	to catch fire
prendre froid	to catch a chill
prendre possession (<i>de</i>)	to take possession
prendre rendez-vous	to make an appointment
prendre (bien) soin (<i>de</i>)	to take (good) care
rendre (bien) service (à)	to be of (great) service, to be (very) useful, to be a (great) help
se rendre compte (<i>de</i>)	to realize
reprendre connaissance	to regain consciousness, to come to
tenir compagnie (à)	to keep (one) company

J'ai faim et soif, mais je n'ai pas froid.

I'm hungry and thirsty, but I'm not cold.

J'ai horreur des crapauds et des serpents.

I loathe toads and snakes.

(Fais) attention! Tu vas te faire mal.

Look out! You're going to hurt yourself.

Les cacahuètes salées donnent soif.

Salted peanuts make you thirsty.

Pourriez-vous garder les enfants demain soir? Cela me rendrait bien service.

Could you mind the children tomorrow night? That would be a great help to me.

Quand j'ai repris connaissance, je me suis rendu compte qu'on m'avait volé.

When I regained consciousness, I realized that I had been robbed.

6.2 If the noun is modified (which is not possible in all cases), the indefinite article is required, except in certain idiomatic expressions, such as:

avoir bon appétit	to have a good appetite
avoir bon goût	to taste good, to have good taste
avoir mauvais goût	to taste bad, to have poor taste
avoir bonne mine	to look well
avoir mauvaise mine	to look ill

J'ai une faim de loup.

I'm as hungry as a wolf.

J'ai une peur bleue des examens.

I'm scared stiff of exams.

C'est bizarre. Cet enfant a mauvaise mine, et pourtant il a toujours bon appétit.

It's odd. That child does not look well, and yet he always has a good appetite.

6.3 The unmodified abstract noun in certain adverbial phrases introduced by **avec** or **par** is not accompanied by any article. The commonest of these phrases are:

avec courage	courageously
avec difficulté	with difficulty
avec émotion	with feeling, feelingly
avec énergie	energetically
avec facilité	with ease
avec joie	joyfully
avec patience	patiently
avec plaisir	with pleasure
avec prudence	cautiously
avec soin	carefully
par cœur	by heart
par erreur	by mistake
par hasard	by (any) chance

Le professeur m'a expliqué avec patience l'accord des participes.

The teacher patiently explained the agreement of participles to me.

Avez-vous, par hasard, un timbre de cinq sous ?

Do you happen to have a five-cent stamp ?

6.4 If the noun is modified by an adjective in the superlative, the definite article is required; in the case of other modifiers, either the indefinite article or a possessive adjective is required.

Le professeur m'a expliqué l'accord des participes avec la plus grande patience (avec une patience extraordinaire, avec sa patience habituelle).

The teacher explained the agreement of participles to me most patiently (with unusual patience, with his customary patience).

6.5 There are many adverbial phrases consisting simply of a preposition (**à**, **en**, **par**) and a noun. The commonest of these are:

à pied	on foot
à cheval	on horseback
à bicyclette	by bicycle
en bicyclette	by bicycle
à vélo	by bicycle
en vélo	by bicycle
à motocyclette	by motorcycle
en motocyclette	by motorcycle
en auto	by car
en voiture	by car
en taxi	by taxi
en tram	by streetcar
en métro	by subway
en autobus	by (city) bus
en autocar	by (interurban) bus
(voyager) en train	(to travel) by train
BUT: (aller, venir) par le train	(to go, to come) by train
(une promenade) en bateau	(a ride) in a boat
(voyager, envoyer) par bateau	(to travel, to send) by boat
en canoë	by canoe, in a canoe
(voyager) en avion	(to travel) by plane
(voyager, envoyer) par avion	(to travel, to send) by plane
en route	on the way
en voyage	on a trip
en vacances	on holiday, on vacation, on one's holidays, on one's vacation
en classe	in class, at school
en ville	downtown
en vitrine	in the (store) window
en prison	in prison, in jail
en place	in place
en dérangement	out of order (of telephone)
en ordre	in order, tidy
en désordre	in disorder, untidy
(être) en réparation	(to be) being repaired
en civil	in civilian clothes
en uniforme	in uniform
en tailleur	in a (woman's) suit
en pyjama	in one's pyjamas
en pantoufles	in one's slippers
en paix	at peace
en guerre	at war
en colère	angry
en danger	in danger
en fleur	in flower, in blossom
en français, en anglais, etc.	in French, in English, etc.
en mathématiques, etc.	in mathematics, etc.
en grève	on strike

en italique(s)	in italics
en public	in public
en retard	late
en semaine	during the week, in the week
en silence	in silence
en vitesse	quickly
à bord	on board
à genoux	kneeling
à merveille	marvellously, wonderfully (well)
à demi	half
à moitié	half
(être) à table	(to be) at dinner, at lunch, etc.
à présent	at present
à temps	in time

Il était assis devant la cheminée en pyjama et en pantoufles.

He was sitting by the fireside in his pyjamas and slippers.

Je ne vais jamais au cinéma en semaine.

I never go to the show during the week.

Quand je fais mes courses, je déjeune toujours en ville.

When I do my shopping, I always have lunch downtown.

Est-ce que vous allez par bateau ou par avion ?

Are you going by boat or by plane ?

6.6 Similarly, there are many adverbial phrases introduced by **à** or **en** or **par**, in which the noun and its accompanying modifier form a unit. The commonest of these are:

en costume de bain	in a (or one's) bathing-suit
en bras de chemise	in (one's) shirt-sleeves
en robe de chambre	in a (or one's) dressing-gown, in a (or one's) bath-robe
en robe du soir	in an evening dress
en robe courte	in a short dress
en robe longue	in a long dress
en bonne santé	in good health
en meilleure santé	in better health
en mauvaise santé	in poor health
en bon état	in good condition
en meilleur état	in better condition
en mauvais état	in poor condition
en voyage d'affaires	on a business trip
(voyager) en chemin de fer	(to travel) by train, by rail
(envoyer) par chemin de fer	(to send) by rail
en première (classe)	first class
en seconde (classe)	second class
en troisième (classe)	third class
en classe cabine	cabin class
en classe touriste	tourist class

en plein air	in the open (air)
en plein soleil	(right) out in the sun
en plein vent	(right) out in the wind
en pleine mer	on the open sea
en plein jour	in broad daylight
en pleine nuit	in the middle of the night
en plein été	in the middle of (the) summer
en plein hiver	in the middle of (the) winter
en ligne droite	in a straight line
en lignes droites	in straight lines
à marée haute	at high tide
à marée basse	at low tide
à voix haute, à haute voix	aloud
à voix basse	in a low voice, in an undertone
à toute vitesse	at full speed
en toutes lettres	in full
en grand danger	in great danger
en danger de mort	in mortal danger, in danger of one's life
en bon français, en bon anglais, etc.	in good French, in good English, etc.

**Je ne vous comprends pas quand
vous parlez à voix basse.**

I don't understand you when you
speak (*or* talk) in a low voice.

6.7 If the expressions in the two preceding lists are changed in any way, the prepositions **à** and **en** are replaced by **sur** and **dans**, according to the sense; and the definite or indefinite article, or a possessive or demonstrative adjective, is required. (Note that many of these expressions are not likely to be changed.)

**Cet élève vient à l'école dans une
grosse voiture décapotable.**

That pupil comes to school in a big
convertible.

**L'été prochain je vais faire le tour
de la Gaspésie sur ma vieille bicy-
clette.**

Next summer I am going to tour the
Gaspé on my old bicycle.

**Je refuse de me montrer sur la plage
dans ce vieux costume de bain.**

I refuse to appear (*lit. show myself*) on
the beach in this old bathing-suit.

6.8 In the case of **en voyage**, **en voyage d'affaires**, **en vacances**, the preposition **en** is replaced by **pendant**.

**Est-ce que je vous ai jamais raconté
ce qui m'est arrivé pendant mon
premier voyage en Italie?**

Have I ever told you what happened
to me on my first trip to Italy?

6.9 The articles are omitted before nouns used on signs, in advertisements, before names of streets used adverbially, and frequently in titles of books, chapters, *etc.*

Appartement à louer.

Apartment for rent.

Grande vente aux enchères! Antiquités. Meubles. Faïence. Argenterie. Tableaux. Fourrures. 32, rue du Parc.

Big auction sale! Antiques. Furniture. Earthenware. Silverware. Pictures. Furs. 32 Park Street.

Je connais une bonne librairie boulevard Raspail.

I know a good bookstore on Raspail Boulevard.

Nous allons nous arrêter place Vendôme pour regarder les vitrines des bijouteries et la fameuse colonne.

We are going to stop in Vendôme Square to look at the windows of the jewelry stores and the famous column.

6.10 No article is used with a noun in apposition when such a noun merely supplies an added detail which could be omitted without affecting the essential meaning of the sentence:

George VI, second fils de George V, a succédé à son frère, Édouard VIII, en 1936.

George VI, the second son of George V, succeeded his brother Edward VIII, in 1936.

Pise, ville du nord de l'Italie, est célèbre par sa tour penchée.

Pisa, a city in northern Italy, is famous for its leaning tower.

6.11 However, the definite article is used when the noun in apposition conveys essential information, or when it is modified by a superlative.

Connaissez-vous Jean, le fils de notre pasteur ?

Do you know John, our minister's son ?

Le mont Everest, le plus haut sommet du monde, a été vaincu en 1953.

Mount Everest, the highest peak in the world, was conquered in 1953.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. I was wrong to leave money in my room. I've been robbed. 2. It is cold in Canada in the middle of the winter. 3. My sister is scared stiff of planes. 4. On my last business trip to Europe, I spent three days in Sardinia. 5. Elizabeth II, the Queen of England, visited the United States in 1957. 6. Your grandson is a credit to the family. 7. Didn't you realize that you were going to go bankrupt? 8. Do you happen to have a bathing-suit you could lend me? I didn't bring one. 9. Mr. Smith, the history teacher, told me that he is going to go to Brazil next summer. 10. I'll have to go downtown Thursday morning. I've made an appointment with the hairdresser.

B. 1. Cherry trees are very beautiful when they are in blossom. 2. All the cupboards are tidy, and I didn't find a single moth. 3. The enemy was fighting with unshakeable courage. 4. "What is her address?" "93 Fauchet Boulevard." 5. Nobody pays attention to what you say if you always speak in a low voice. 6. You go from this village to the next in a small bus. 7. Toronto, the largest city in our province, is famous for its Exhibition. 8. Everything tastes good when you have a good appetite. 9. Most of our pupils come to school on foot. 10. We have found an apartment on Dupont Street and we can take possession of it next week.

C. 1. The music of Debussy always makes me sleepy. 2. My daughter tends to be superstitious. 3. The wind woke me up in the middle of the night. 4. There's a baker's shop in Lafayette Square. 5. "How did that engineer make his fortune?" "He discovered gold in Africa." 6. Marie Antoinette, Queen of France between 1774 and 1792, was born in Vienna. 7. That old lady is always afraid the house will catch fire during the night. 8. You make me envious when you talk about your trip to France. 9. Never pretend to know what you don't understand. 10. If we go to the theatre by streetcar, we'll certainly be late. We'll have to take a taxi.

D. 1. Is Ceylon part of India? 2. Your new evening dress will certainly create a sensation. 3. We'll have to go by train. My car isn't in good condition. 4. I know I was wrong to laugh at him. 5. You can find anything and everything on the beach at low tide. 6. Could you go and get me some onions and cheese? That would be a great help to me. 7. Don't those mosquito bites hurt you? 8. Our minister told me one day that he doesn't like speaking in public. 9. Who was that man in uniform you were speaking to this afternoon? 10. Mice and snakes frighten me.

VERB REVIEW

devoir

lire

vouloir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Ils (*devoir*) être très riches; ils dépensent beaucoup. 2. Pourquoi n'arrivent-ils pas? Ils (*devoir*) se perdre. 3. Je croyais que vous lui (*devoir*) plus que cela. 4. Je doute qu'il (*devoir*) partir avant la semaine prochaine. 5. Vous avez l'air fatigué; vous (*devoir*) prendre des vacances. 6. Dans six mois nous ne (*devoir*) plus rien à personne. 7. Tu ne (*devoir*) pas lui dire cela; je t'avais dit qu'il se fâcherait. 8. Je (*lire*) cet article demain; je n'ai pas le temps maintenant. 9. Permettez-vous que je (*lire*) la lettre? 10. (*Lire*) le paragraphe suivant, s'il vous plaît. 11. Il a dit que nous (*lire*) mieux si nous nous exerçons à la maison. 12. (*Lire*)-vous ce roman? —Oui, je l'ai terminé hier. 13. Ils n'auraient pas besoin de demander s'ils (*lire*) les instructions. 14. Dites-leur qu'ils peuvent nous accompagner s'ils (*vouloir*). 15. Il a peur que vous ne (*vouloir*) pas le voir. 16. Ils pourront rester aussi longtemps qu'ils (*vouloir*). 17. Je me demande ce qu'il a dit. Je (*vouloir*) être là pour l'entendre. 18. Tu réussirais certainement si tu (*vouloir*) faire un plus grand effort. 19. Je doute qu'ils (*vouloir*) acheter une maison si chère. 20. (*Vouloir*)-vous y aller, si cela ne coûtait pas trop cher?

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

59. right

81. wrong

1. Tell him he has no right to park here. 2. I told him that tomatoes are vegetables, but I was wrong. 3. Who has the right time? 4. "What's wrong with you?" "There's absolutely nothing wrong with me." 5. She sprained her right wrist.

6. That is not the right map for Dijon. 7. I got the wrong date. He doesn't arrive till the twenty-sixth. 8. He was parked on the wrong side of the street. 9. There are ninety degrees in a right angle. 10. Why do I always give the wrong answer? 11. I broke the little finger of my right hand. 12. Is there something wrong with your foot? 13. "You want me to be here at three o'clock?" "That's right." 14. Are all these telephone numbers right? 15. You didn't pick the right flowers! 16. I believe I was wrong to take the upper berth instead of the lower. 17. You are right. Christmas Day falls on a Saturday this year. 18. It's the right word, but you've spelt it wrong. 19. "What's wrong?" "I'm afraid I've taken the wrong road." 20. What is the right climate for violets?

Lesson 7

Personal Pronoun Subjects

7.1 When the verb is not expressed, the subject pronouns **je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, and elles** are replaced by the disjunctive forms **moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, and elles**. (Note that some of the forms are identical.)

Jeanne est beaucoup plus bavarde que moi. Jean is much more talkative than I (am).

7.2 Where, in English, an answer is composed of a subject pronoun and an incomplete verb, French uses the disjunctive pronoun.

Qui va mettre la table? — Moi. “Who is going to set the table?”
“I am.”

Qui a déchiré ce rideau? — Pas moi. “Who tore this curtain?” “I didn’t.”
J’aime bien voyager. — (Et) moi aussi. “I like to travel.” “So do I.”

Je ne peux pas m’empêcher de bâiller quand j’ai sommeil. — (Ni) moi non plus. “I can’t help yawning when I’m sleepy.” “Neither can I.”

7.3 The disjunctive form is also used for a pronoun which is part of a compound subject.

Lui et sa femme sont presque sourds tous les deux. He and his wife are both almost deaf.

7.4 If the compound subject contains elements which are of different grammatical persons, it is summed up by **nous** or **vous**, according to the sense. (The compound subject does not necessarily stand at the head of its clause.)

Toi et moi, nous sommes trop vieux jeu pour comprendre la jeunesse d’aujourd’hui. You and I are too old-fashioned to understand the youth of today.

Nous sommes tous gauchers, mes frères et moi. My brothers and I are all left-handed.

Vous et Marthe, vous êtes toutes les deux sportives, n’est-ce pas? You and Martha are both fond of sports, aren’t you?

7.5 It is sometimes necessary to stress a personal pronoun subject in order to express contrast. In English, the subject pronouns *I, you, he, she, we, and they* can

be stressed by the intonation of the voice. In French, this emphasis is achieved by adding the disjunctive pronoun, as shown below. (Note that in the third person masculine, the disjunctive pronoun may be used alone.)

Moi, je . . .

Toi, tu . . .

Lui (, il) . . .

Elle, elle . . .

Nous, nous . . .

Vous, vous . . .

Eux (, ils) . . .

Elles, elles . . .

Moi, j'adore le gigot, mais **elle**, **elle** préfère le filet de porc.

*I love (roast) leg of lamb, but **she** prefers pork tenderloin.*

Vous, vous êtes trop généreux; **eux** (, ils) sont trop avares.

*You are too generous; **they** are too stingy.*

7.6 See 11. 23 for the case where the subject pronoun is stressed to express exclusion.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. "I am not very fond of sports." "Neither am I." 2. Anne and I are going to England next autumn. *I* want to go by plane; *she* wants to go by boat. 3. You and John toured the Gaspé by bicycle, didn't you? 4. Have you as many mosquito bites as I have? 5. My wife and I are leaving for Bermuda on the fourteenth of January. 6. "I'm as hungry as a wolf." "So am I." 7. You have lunch downtown oftener than I do. 8. *I* like the theatre, but *he* prefers music. 9. "Who spilled soup on the tablecloth?" "I did." 10. My sister and I are both going to try our matriculation this year.

B. 1. "I love black velvet." "So do I." 2. My son earns as much money as I do. 3. *He* is very old, but his wife is much younger. 4. "Who can lend me a dollar?" "I can't." 5. My brother and I have just bought a second-hand car. 6. "I don't want to be late." "Neither do I." 7. *I* haven't much experience, but *she* has lots of it. 8. You and Martha like your new apartment, don't you? 9. She is more superstitious than he is. 10. He and his son are both sculptors.

VERB REVIEW

asseoir, s'asseoir

conduire

falloir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Étiez-vous (*asseoir*) ou debout? 2. Quand il (*s'asseoir*) dans son fauteuil, son chien vient se coucher à ses pieds. 3. Il (*s'asseoir*) où il pourra. 4. Où voulez-vous que nous (*s'asseoir*)? 5. J'aurais trop chaud si je (*s'asseoir*) près du feu. 6. Où est-ce que tu (*s'asseoir*) si tu arrivais le premier au cinéma? 7. Ne (*s'asseoir*) pas sur mon chapeau! 8. Elle (*conduire*) mieux quand elle aura un peu plus d'expérience. 9. Je me sentais assez fatigué après (*conduire*) toute la nuit. 10. Maintenant ils (*conduire*) moins vite qu'avant. 11. Ils avaient promis qu'ils ne (*conduire*) pas vite si les routes étaient glissantes. 12. Si nous les (*conduire*) à la gare? 13. Pourquoi

ne voulez-vous pas que je (*conduire*)? 14. Mon père dit qu'il ne (*falloir*) jamais désespérer. 15. Elle était très malade; il (*falloir*) la transporter à l'hôpital à deux heures du matin. 16. Combien d'argent lui (*falloir*)-il par mois quand il sera à Paris? 17. Elle ne serait pas allée s'il (*falloir*) payer. 18. Je ne savais pas qu'il (*falloir*) le faire comme cela. 19. Combien (*falloir*)-il faire de sandwiches si nous invitions douze personnes? 20. Si nous avions voulu voir le film, il (*falloir*) faire la queue pendant une heure.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

73. time

1. I was late for my appointment because the train did not arrive on time. 2. We went to the exhibition three times this year. 3. How many times did you see her last week? 4. Have we time to stop in Vendôme Square? 5. Did they have a good time in Maine? 6. He has told us the same story a hundred times. 7. Is it lunch time? I'm very hungry. 8. It's time to leave. We haven't a minute to spare. 9. You haven't enough room in this apartment. It's time you bought a house. 10. "How do you come to school?" "Sometimes by streetcar and sometimes by bicycle." 11. How many times did he try his matriculation before passing? 12. There are times when she is co-operative, but she is often very unpleasant. 13. They all yawned at the same time. 14. We arrived at the baker's in time to get (*have*) the last rolls. 15. Summer is no time to go to Florida. It's too hot there. 16. These buses always arrive two at a time. 17. How much is ten times seventy-seven? 18. "Is there plenty of bacon?" "We have enough for the time being." 19. Have a good time! 20. You have visited Scotland many times, haven't you?

Lesson 8

Personal Pronoun Objects (Part One)

8.1 The object pronouns of the first person, direct or indirect, non-reflexive or reflexive, are **me** and **nous**. The corresponding forms of the second person are **te** and **vous**.

Ils me taquinent toujours.	They are always teasing me.
Ça me donne faim.	That makes me hungry.
Je me suis retourné.	I turned (a)round.
Je ne me fais jamais de souci.	I never worry.
Ils ne nous ont même pas remerciés.	They didn't even thank us.
Pourriez-vous nous procurer un réfrigérateur au prix de gros?	Could you get us a refrigerator wholesale?
Nous nous sommes embarqués à une heure et demie.	We embarked at half past one.
Nous nous sommes beaucoup plu à Marseille.	We liked it very much in Marseilles.

8.2 The non-reflexive direct object pronouns of the third person are **le**, **la**, and **les**. They represent either persons or things, and correspond to the English object pronouns *him*, *her*, *it*, and *them*.

Il a le sommeil très léger; le moindre bruit le réveille.	He is a very light sleeper; the slightest noise wakens him.
Où est la liste des membres? — La voilà sur votre bureau.	"Where is the list of members?" "There it is on your desk."
Il ne suffit pas d'attirer les clients; il faut les contenter.	It is not enough to attract customers; you must satisfy them.

8.3 The non-reflexive indirect object pronoun of the third person singular is **lui**. It represents the preposition **à** plus a noun denoting a person or living being. The corresponding plural form is **leur**.

Ne lui avez-vous pas rendu son cahier?	Haven't you given her back her notebook?
Pourquoi ne gronde-t-elle pas ses enfants quand ils lui désobéissent?	Why does she not scold her children when they disobey her?

Il veut que je lui fasse un bonhomme de neige.

He wants me to make a snow-man for him.

Pourquoi lui cacher la vérité?

Why hide the truth from him?

Si tu es sage, je t'emmènerai voir les éléphants, et tu pourras leur donner à manger.

If you are good, I'll take you to see the elephants, and you'll be able to feed them.

8.4 The reflexive pronoun object of the third person, direct or indirect, singular or plural, referring to persons or things, is **se**.

Il s'habille et se rase en moins d'un quart d'heure.

He dresses (*or* gets dressed) and shaves in less than a quarter of an hour.

Le soleil s'est couché; il commence à faire frais.

The sun has set; it is getting cool.

Il ne se ronge plus les ongles.

He no longer bites his nails.

Ils se vantent trop.

They boast too much.

S'ils ne font pas attention, ils vont s'abîmer la santé.

If they aren't careful, they are going to injure their health.

8.5 Although **y** and **en** were originally adverbs, they have, in certain uses, assumed the value of pronouns. Hence, they are now called *pronominal adverbs* or *adverbial pronouns*.

8.6 **En** represents a phrase introduced by **de**.

Il n'y a pas de poivre. — Si, j'en ai acheté moi-même ce matin.

"There's no pepper." "Yes, there is; I bought some myself this morning."

Aimez-vous le saumon fumé? — Je n'en ai jamais mangé.

"Do you like smoked salmon?" "I've never eaten any."

Je voulais voir des cravates jaunes. — Je regrette beaucoup, monsieur; il n'en reste plus.

"I wanted to see some yellow ties." "I'm very sorry, sir; there are none left."

Je ne mets pas de sauce sur ma viande, mais j'en mets toujours un peu sur mes pommes de terre.

I don't put (any) gravy on my meat, but I always put a little on my potatoes.

Le ciel était plein d'avions; il devait y en avoir une centaine.

The sky was full of (air)planes; there must have been about a hundred (of them).

Venez voir mes lilas jaunes; j'en suis très fier.

Come and see my yellow lilacs; I'm very proud of them.

Où est la cassonade? J'en ai besoin pour faire le caramel.

Where is the brown sugar? I need it to make the taffy.

Est-ce qu'il y a de la colle? J'en ai besoin pour raccommoder ce tabouret.

Is there any glue? I need some to mend this stool.

Il me semble qu'il y a un peu plus d'ail que d'habitude dans ce saucisson. Qu'en pensez-vous?

It seems to me there's a little more garlic than usual in this bologna. What do you think (*lit. think of it*)?

Voudriez-vous faire le tour du monde? — Il y a des années que j'en rêve.

"Would you like to take a trip around the world?" "I've been dreaming of it for years."

Pourquoi as-tu acheté tant de savon? Qu'est-ce que tu vas en faire?

Why did you buy so much soap? What are you going to do with it?

Est-ce qu'elle portait beaucoup de bijoux? — Elle en était presque couverte.

"Was she wearing much jewelry?" "She was nearly covered with it."

8.7 Where the reference is to persons, **en** must be used to represent a noun accompanied by the plural of the indefinite article.

As-tu jamais vu des Indiens? — Oui, j'en ai vu en Colombie britannique.

"Have you ever seen any Indians?" "Yes, I saw some in British Columbia."

8.8 **En** should not, however, be used in other cases to represent **de** plus a noun or pronoun referring to persons. (Deviations from this rule are survivals of a former usage which it is inadvisable to imitate.)

Mon petit-fils vient de gagner une bourse; je suis très fier de lui.

My grandson has just won a scholarship; I am very proud of him.

Où est Hélène? J'ai besoin d'elle pour essuyer toute cette vaisselle.

Where is Helen? I need her to dry (*lit. wipe*) all these dishes.

Maintenant que vous avez fait la connaissance de mes nouveaux locataires, que pensez-vous d'eux?

Now that you have met my new roomers, what do you think of them?

Je n'ai jamais entendu parler de lui.

I've never heard of him.

8.9 There are some cases where the word or expression represented by **en** is not introduced by **de**.

Si vous cherchez une citrouille pour la veille de la Toussaint, je peux vous en donner une énorme.

If you are looking for a pumpkin for Hallowe'en, I can give you a huge one.

Pourquoi lui acheter une bouilloire électrique? Elle en a déjà une.

Why buy her an electric kettle? She already has one.

Combien de petits-enfants avez-vous? Moi, j'en ai dix.

How many grandchildren have you? I have ten.

Je viens de compter mes chemises; j'en ai trois blanches, deux bleues, et cinq grises.

I've just been counting my shirts; I have three white ones, two blue ones, and five grey ones.

Combien de jours y a-t-il dans le mois d'avril? — Il y en a trente.

"How many days are there in the month of April?" "There are thirty."

Il reste un peu de pain rassis, mais il n'y en a plus de frais.

Il aime raconter ses expériences; il en a eu de très amusantes.

Nous avons dix-sept ruches, mais il y en a plusieurs qui sont vides.

Est-ce que j'ai fait des fautes de prononciation? — Oui, vous en avez fait plusieurs.

Avons-nous des épingles? — Il y en a quelques-unes dans ce tiroir.

There is a little stale bread left, but there is no more fresh.

He likes telling about his experiences; he has had some very amusing ones.

We have seventeen (bee)hives, but there are several which are empty.

"Did I make any mistakes in pronunciation?" "Yes, you made several."

"Have we any pins?" "There are a few in that drawer."

8.10 A noun accompanied by the definite article, a possessive adjective, or a demonstrative adjective, is not represented by **en**.

Vous pouvez sauter cet exercice, mais traduisez le suivant pour lundi.

Si tu veux une nouvelle jaquette, va au magasin où j'ai acheté ma verte.

Je ferai enregistrer les trois grandes valises et je garderai ces deux petites avec moi.

You may skip this exercise, but translate the next one for Monday.

If you want a new (*woman's*) jacket, go to the store where I bought my green one.

I'll check the three big bags (*or* suitcases) and keep these two small ones with me.

8.11 The basic use of **y** is to represent a phrase indicating location and introduced by any preposition except **de**.

Avez-vous jamais visité La Nouvelle-Orléans? — Pas encore, mais je pense y aller pendant les vacances de Pâques.

Je dois aller maintenant chez le boucher (*or* à la boucherie). — Très bien, je t'y retrouverai dans dix minutes.

J'aime cette petite vallée; je m'y promène souvent.

Je vais nettoyer derrière le canapé; j'y ai laissé tomber un cendrier.

Pendant mon séjour en Australie, j'ai été frappé par la quantité de viande qu'on y mange.

Si vous avez trop chaud au soleil, allez vous asseoir sous les arbres. Il y fait plus frais.

"Have you ever visited New Orleans?" "Not yet, but I plan to go there during the Easter holidays."

"I have to go the butcher's now." "Very well, I'll meet you there in ten minutes."

I like that little valley; I often go for a walk there.

I'm going to clean behind the chesterfield; I dropped an ash-tray there.

During my stay in Australia, I was struck by the amount of meat that is eaten there.

If you are too warm in the sun, go and sit under the trees. It is cooler there.

8.12 This use of *y* is extended to cover any phrase introduced by the preposition *à*, except when the reference is to persons.

C'est la troisième fois que vous me posez la même question. J'y ai déjà répondu. That's the third time you've asked me the same question. I've already answered it.

Je ne sais pas quelle décision prendre. Il faut que j'y réfléchisse. I don't know what decision to make. I must think it over.

8.13 For the sake of euphony, *y* is omitted before the future and conditional of *aller*.

Est-ce que tu vas à la banque aujourd'hui? — Non, je suis trop occupée. J'irai demain. "Are you going to the bank today?" "No, I'm too busy. I'll go (there) tomorrow."

8.14 A second *y* cannot be added to the expression *il y a*.

Je suis sûre qu'il y a du savon sous l'évier. — Mais non, il n'y en a plus. "I'm sure there's some soap under the sink." "No, no, there isn't any more (there)."

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. I waved to you at the theatre last night, but you didn't see me. 2. There are many French-speaking people in our city, but I don't know any. 3. Don't refuse yet. Think it over. 4. We were planning to give her some teacups, but John tells me she already has a great many. She would prefer an electric kettle. 5. Here are the elephants! We could feed them if we had some peanuts. 6. She turned around and looked at us when we began to talk. 7. If you set the table, that will be a great help to me. 8. This pork tenderloin tastes good. If there's any left, we'll make some sandwiches for lunch. 9. Here are some tarts I made. If you can't eat them all, give some to Helen. 10. "We saw Charles at the theatre last night." "That's odd! We were talking about him yesterday."

B. 1. "How many pupils are there in the Spanish class?" "There are twenty-five." 2. If you leave from Le Havre, you will be able to visit Honfleur before embarking. 3. Of all the pictures we've seen, I prefer this little one. 4. They want us to reserve rooms for them. 5. Why did you spend only six months there? 6. You see hardly any mosquitoes on the beach, but there are hundreds in the woods. 7. "Have you finished the second page?" "I haven't read the first one yet." 8. There's my skipping-rope! Who found it? 9. "When are we going to Albert's?" "We'll go (there) now if you are ready." 10. Will you mend this dress for me, please? I've just torn it.

C. 1. "Will you be seeing Mary today?" "Yes, I'm to meet her at Joan's at half past two." 2. She always has (*takes*) a cup of tea when she wakes up in the morning. 3. "You haven't found any pins yet?" "No, I've looked in the drawer but there aren't any there." 4. The sun sets before half past five in the middle of the winter. 5. Aunt Mary is going to mind the children this evening. I told her not to hesitate to scold them if they disobey her. 6. I got two letters from Edward

last month and I haven't answered them yet. 7. Have we any cheese? I'll need some for the omelette. 8. There are always fresh eggs at the market. Do you want me to bring some back? 9. When is he going to give us back our lawnmower? We need it. 10. "Do you like gravy?" "Not much, but I usually make some for the children."

D. 1. There are lots of shirts in the cupboard, but don't take my grey one. 2. "Where are my slippers?" "You left them in the bathroom." 3. I'll have to make myself a new dress. This one is so old that I'm ashamed of it. 4. Here's your jacket (*woman's jacket*); I found it in my cupboard. 5. We need vinegar, but I'll be able to buy some this afternoon. 6. "Were you able to wash my blouses?" "Yes, I put them in the drawer." 7. There was smoked salmon at the market this morning and I bought some for dinner. 8. "Margaret has just sprained her right wrist." "Will she be able to try her matriculation?" 9. "How much did you pay for that meat?" "I paid ninety cents a pound for it." 10. She hurt herself when she fell.

VERB REVIEW

appeler

dormir

recevoir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Est-ce que quelqu'un me (*appeler*) pendant que j'étais sorti? 2. Voilà ce que je (*appeler*) un examen raisonnable. 3. Si vous avez une fille, comment la (*appeler*)-vous? 4. Je n'aime pas que tu me (*appeler*) comme cela. 5. Si j'avais un chien, je le (*appeler*) Médor. 6. Quand Jacqueline était petite, nous la (*appeler*) Kiki. 7. Tu (*dormir*) bien quand tu seras au bord de la mer. 8. Je me sentais fatigué même après (*dormir*) plusieurs heures. 9. Je ne (*dormir*) pas bien quand la fenêtre est fermée. 10. À ton âge il faut qu'on (*dormir*) neuf heures. 11. Je crois que je (*dormir*) toute la matinée si vous ne m'aviez pas réveillé. 12. Est-ce que vous (*dormir*) déjà quand je vous ai téléphoné? 13. Ils (*dormir*) peut-être mieux s'ils ne mangeaient pas avant de se coucher. 14. Ils ne sortent pas beaucoup, et ils (*recevoir*) très peu de visites. 15. J'avais espéré que nous (*recevoir*) une lettre hier. 16. Si nous (*recevoir*) de ses nouvelles, je vous l'aurais dit. 17. Elle écrit cinq ou six lettres par semaine, et elle en (*recevoir*) à peu près autant. 18. Cela ne m'étonnerait pas qu'il (*recevoir*) le premier prix. 19. Je me demande ce qu'ils diront quand ils (*recevoir*) la nouvelle. 20. Ils ont dit que s'ils (*recevoir*) des timbres étrangers, ils me les donneraient.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

84. (to borrow, etc.) from

1. The dog snatched the meat from my hand. 2. If we don't hide this candy from the children, they will eat too much of it. 3. Her father is going to buy them a refrigerator. 4. Her little brother snatched the notebook from her and tore it. 5. The man who stole the money from you is without a job. 6. Little Jean was

playing with the glue and I took it away from her. 7. Some children stole some pumpkins from our neighbour. 8. "Why are you scolding Anne?" "She took a doll from her little sister." 9. I snatched the knife from him just in time. 10. I need some brown sugar and we haven't any. Could I borrow some from you? 11. I bought these slippers from an Indian in British Columbia. 12. Did you buy them anything in New York? 13. Take those suitcases from her and put them in her room. 14. There is the young artist I bought the woodcut from. 15. If we buy the chesterfield from Mr. Dubois, we'll be able to get (*have*) it wholesale. 16. How do you like this tie? I borrowed it from my brother. 17. There's an old man selling (*who is selling*) peanuts! Please buy me some. 18. If you don't take those pins away from that child, he'll swallow them. 19. The material I bought you cost four dollars a yard (*metre*). 20. England buys a great deal of butter from New Zealand.

Lesson 9

Personal Pronoun Objects (Part Two)

9.1 Except as explained in 9.7, conjunctive pronoun objects (including **y** and **en**) immediately precede the verb. The following table indicates which comes first when two of these pronouns are used together. (The occurrence of three together is extremely rare.)

1	2	3	4	5
me				
te	le			
se	la	lui	y	en
nous	les	leur		
vous				

Jean a téléphoné pour dire qu'il a besoin de son écran. — Je le lui renverrai demain.

"John telephoned to say he needs his screen." "I'll send it back to him tomorrow."

Y a-t-il des petits pains chauds?
— Non, mais je vous en réchaufferai;
le four est encore chaud.

"Are there any hot rolls?" "No, but I'll heat some for you; the oven is still warm."

J'ai été augmenté quand je m'y attendais le moins.

I got a raise when I was least expecting it.

Je n'ai pas de monnaie. Est-ce que tu peux m'en donner?

I have no change. Can you give me some?

Il faut cacher cette mauvaise nouvelle à maman. — Je ne lui en parlerai pas.

"We must keep (*lit. hide*) this bad news from mother." "I won't mention it to her."

Les apparences sont trompeuses. Ne vous y fiez pas.

Appearances are deceptive. Don't trust them.

Je vous le présenterai si vous voulez.

I'll introduce him to you if you like.

9.2 There cannot be both a direct and an indirect object from column 1 (**me**, **te**, **se**, **nous**, **vous**). Instead, the indirect object takes the disjunctive form (except in the case of **se rappeler**, which must be replaced by **se souvenir de**).

Qu'est-ce qu'il a? — Je ne sais pas.
Il ne se confie jamais à moi.

"What's the matter with him?" "I don't know. He never confides in me."

Je me souviens de vous.

I remember you.

Il se souvient de moi.	He remembers me.
Vous souvenez-vous de nous?	Do you remember us?

9.3 Similarly, a pronoun from column 3 (**lui, leur**) cannot be used with a pronoun from column 1 (**me, te, se, nous, vous**). Instead, the appropriate disjunctive form is used after the verb.

Je vous présenterai à lui (à elle, à eux, à elles).	I'll introduce you to him (to her, to them, to them).
Il n'est pas très honnête. Ne vous fiez pas à lui.	He isn't very honest. Don't trust him.

9.4 The combination **lui y**, although theoretically possible, is avoided for the sake of euphony. Where this combination would appear necessary, the only solution is to phrase the sentence differently.

9.5 When, in English, an object pronoun is modified by *only*, the corresponding French uses **ne . . . que . . .** and the disjunctive pronoun.

Toute la soirée il n'a regardé qu'elle et n'a parlé qu'à elle.	All evening he looked only at her and spoke only to her.
--	--

9.6 With certain verbs and expressions, the commonest of which are **avoir affaire, être** (= *appartenir*), **faire attention**, and **penser**, it is not possible to use a conjunctive pronoun object to represent a person. Instead, the corresponding disjunctive form (**à moi, à toi, etc.**) is used.

Je n'aimerais pas avoir affaire à lui.	I shouldn't like to have to deal with him.
Est-ce que cette ceinture est à vous?	Is this belt yours?
Je pense souvent à elle.	I often think of her.

9.7 In the affirmative form of the imperative, the conjunctive pronoun objects follow the verb. The table below indicates which comes first when two of these pronouns are used together.

1	2	3	4
direct object	indirect object	y	en
(other than en)			

- NOTE 1. A hyphen is used between verb and pronoun; also between two pronouns, except in the case of **m'en, t'en, m'y, t'y**, and **l'y**.
- NOTE 2. The combinations **m'y, t'y, l'y**, and **y en** are very rare in the affirmative form of the imperative, and should be avoided by phrasing the sentence differently.
- NOTE 3. Where **me** and **te** would be at the end of the verb-pronoun group, they are replaced by **moi** and **toi**.
- NOTE 4. The remark in 9.4, about avoiding the combination **lui y**, also applies in the affirmative form of the imperative.

Voici l'assiette de Maurice. Passez-la-lui, s'il vous plaît.

Tu me gênes. Va-t'en.

Assieds-toi ici.

Je ne peux pas faire ce nœud. Fais-le-moi, s'il te plaît, papa.

Here is Maurice's plate. Please pass it to him.

You're in my way (*or* You're bothering me). Go away.

Sit down here.

I can't tie this knot. Tie it for me, please, dad(dy).

9.8 If a verb in the affirmative form of the imperative has as its direct object **me**, **te**, **nous**, or **vous**, it cannot at the same time have as its indirect object **me**, **te**, **nous**, **vous**, **lui**, or **leur**. Instead, the indirect object takes the disjunctive form (**à moi**, **à toi**, **à nous**, **à vous**, **à lui**, **à elle**, **à eux**, **à elles**).

C'est ce grand monsieur là-bas qui s'occupe des demandes d'emploi. Adressez-vous à lui.

It's that tall gentleman over there who looks after applications for jobs. Apply to him.

9.9 The remark in 9.6 about **faire attention** and **penser** also applies in the affirmative form of the imperative. **Avoir affaire** and **être** (= *appartenir*) are not likely to be used in this form.

Demain après-midi je passe mon examen de biologie. Pense à moi!

Tomorrow afternoon I'm writing (*or* trying) my biology exam(ination). Think of me!

9.10 When the French verb is not expressed, the conjunctive pronoun objects are replaced by the disjunctive forms. (In such a case, English usually has an incomplete verb.)

Sa conduite étonne moins ses amis que toi.

His conduct surprises his friends less than (it does) you.

C'est un cadeau qui plaira plus à sa femme qu'à lui.

It's a present which will please his wife more than (it will) him.

9.11 When a personal pronoun forms part of a compound object, the conjunctive form is replaced by the disjunctive, as shown in 9.12, 9.13, and 9.14.

9.12 If the compound object is direct, and contains elements which are of different grammatical persons, it must be summed up by the conjunctive pronoun **nous** or **vous**, according to the sense.

Les Smith nous ont invitées, Isabelle et moi, pour le week-end.

The Smiths have invited Isabel and me for the weekend.

Je vous ai aperçus, vous et votre mari, hier soir au théâtre.

I caught sight of you and your husband at the theatre last night.

9.13 If the compound direct object contains only elements of the third person, it is summed up by the conjunctive pronoun **les**. (This **les** is sometimes omitted.)

La voiture de Frédéric est en réparation. Voulez-vous (les) amener lui et Madeleine avec vous ce soir?

Fred(erick)'s car is being repaired. Will you bring him and Madeline with you tonight?

9.14 If the compound object is indirect, the summing up by a conjunctive pronoun (**nous, vous, leur**, according to the sense) is optional in all cases.

Il (nous) en veut depuis longtemps à mon frère et à moi.

He has had a grudge against my brother and me for a long time.

9.15 It is sometimes necessary to stress a personal pronoun object in order to express contrast. In English, the object pronouns *me, you, him, her, us, you, and them*, can be stressed by the intonation of the voice. In French, the conjunctive pronouns **me, te, se, etc.** cannot be stressed in this way; emphasis is achieved by adding the disjunctive pronoun. (Except in the imperative, this emphatic form is sometimes placed at the beginning of the clause; in such a case, the preposition **à** is omitted from the indirect form.)

Vous osez m'accuser, moi!

You dare to accuse *me*!

Elle, je la trouve très sympathique; mais lui, je ne peux pas le voir.

I find *her* very congenial; but I can't stand the sight of *him*.

Allez leur raconter votre histoire à eux; ne nous la racontez pas à nous.

Go and tell *them* your story; don't tell it to *us*.

Moi, ça ne me fait pas peur.

That doesn't scare *me*.

9.16 See 11.24 for the case where the object pronoun is stressed to express exclusion.

9.17 All the previous examples deal with the pronoun used as the object of a verb. When a pronoun is the object of a preposition, it always has the disjunctive form.

Le succès de l'orchestre dépend de vous.

The success of the orchestra depends on you.

Je le ferai malgré eux.

I'll do it in spite of them.

9.18 The pronouns **le, la, and les**, previously dealt with as the object, may also be used as a subjective completion, as shown in 9.19.

9.19 In English, the verb *to be* may stand alone, a previously mentioned noun or adjective being understood. In French, the verb **être** cannot stand alone. In careful speech, the verb **être** is completed by **le, la, or les** in the case of a noun; and by the neuter **le** in the case of an adjective (or an equivalent phrase), or a noun used as an adjective.

Êtes-vous, par hasard, la secrétaire de M. Martin? — Oui, je la suis.

"Are you, by any chance, Mr. Martin's secretary?" "Yes, I am."

Êtes-vous fatigués? — Oui, nous le sommes.

"Are you tired?" "Yes, we are."

Est-ce que votre téléphone était en dérangement hier soir? — Oui, il l'était. "Was your telephone out of order last night?" "Yes, it was."

J'étais autrefois actrice, mais je ne le suis plus. I used to be (*lit. I was formerly*) an actress, but I am not any more.

9.20 Where the above construction is felt to be stilted, it may be avoided by:

- (i) the reduction of an answer to **oui** or **non**;
- (ii) the repetition of the noun or adjective;
- (iii) a paraphrase.

(There is no rule as to which choice should be made in any particular case.)

Êtes-vous les jumelles Dupont? — Oui (, madame, monsieur, mademoiselle). "Are you the Dupont twins?" "Yes, we are."

Est-ce que l'eau est profonde ici? — Non, elle n'est pas profonde. "Is the water deep here?" "No, it isn't."

Il prétend qu'il est poète, mais ce n'est pas vrai. He claims he's a poet, but he isn't.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. You have no coffee. Let me pour you some. 2. "One of the pupils has left his biology notebook here, sir." "Give it to me, please." 3. We hardly ever (*almost never*) see them, but we often think of them. 4. I'd like to help her, but she will not confide in me. 5. Think of me when you are on your holidays, won't you? 6. "We caught sight of you and Jean at the auction sale." "You were there too?" 7. "Have you any houses for rent?" "There aren't any at present, but we could get you one in June." 8. You can trust *him*, but don't mention it to *her*. 9. Charles, are the slippers in the bathroom yours or Fred's? 10. If you don't want to confide in him, confide in me.

B. 1. That news surprised my daughter less than (it did) me. 2. I saw Fred Martin downtown and I invited him and his wife to have lunch here on Sunday. 3. I've mentioned it only to you. 4. They say that young man is honest, but I don't know. I've never had to deal with him. 5. "They tell me you know Madeleine Bertrand." "Yes. Would you like me to introduce her to you?" 6. Your aunt left all this silverware to you and your brother. It used to belong to your grandmother. 7. Look after it yourself. *I'm* too busy. 8. Anne has hardly any flowers in her garden, and *we* have so many! What about giving her some? 9. "Are you Mr. David's daughter?" "Yes, I am." 10. "Where could I buy this book?" "Do you know the bookstore on Soufflot Street? I'm sure you'll find it there."

C. 1. His conduct doesn't surprise *me*. 2. You can trust me. I'll not mention it to anybody. 3. I forgot to wash these handkerchiefs. Will you wash them for me? 4. He's very tall. That's why I like dancing with him. 5. George says I'm too talkative. Am I? 6. She is stingy and she always will be. 7. "That tie

is very pretty.” “Do you like it? My sister gave it to me for Christmas.” 8. The Durands are taking Anne and me to the show this evening. 9. “I’ve never met your cousin.” “I’ll introduce you to her this evening if you like. She will be at our house.” 10. I saw only him; his wife had gone out.

D. 1. I used to be a nurse, but I’m not any more. 2. Nobody has told her about her daughter’s death. Who is going to inform her of it? 3. “Maurice, do you know how many words there are in the first sentence of your paragraph?” “No, sir, but there must be more than sixty.” 4. One of the members got up to speak, but the others paid no attention to him. 5. “Are you ready, Elizabeth?” “Yes, I am.” 6. I trust him more than (I do) her. 7. “Do you want me to drive you and Margaret to the market?” “That would be a great help to us.” 8. The soup is cold, but I’ll heat some for you if you like. 9. I’ve bought the picture Martha wanted for Christmas. Where can we hide it from her? 10. “Are the brakes in good condition?” “No, they aren’t.”

VERB REVIEW

acheter

boire

croire

Remplacez l’infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Si je (*acheter*) tout ce dont j’ai envie, je n’aurais plus un sou. 2. Ils ont une nouvelle voiture? Mais quand est-ce qu’ils la (*acheter*)? 3. Maman, (*acheter*)-moi ça, s’il te plaît. 4. Qu’est-ce que vous (*acheter*) si quelqu’un vous laissait dix mille dollars? 5. Il faudra que je me (*acheter*) un nouveau chapeau. 6. Nous te (*acheter*) quelque chose quand nous irons en ville. 7. Nous (*boire*) beaucoup de jus de fruit quand il fait chaud. 8. Le chat ne (*boire*) pas son lait si le chien était là. 9. Ma mère veut que je (*boire*) trois verres de lait par jour. 10. Je (*boire*) ma citronnade quand elle sera un peu moins chaude. 11. Si vous (*boire*) un verre d’eau avant de partir, vous n’auriez pas soif maintenant. 12. Tu te porterais peut-être mieux si tu (*boire*) moins de café. 13. Ils (*boire*) quelque chose s’ils avaient eu soif. 14. Ce n’est vraiment pas difficile, (*croire*)-moi. 15. Elle (*croire*) tout ce qu’on lui racontait. 16. Ce que je dis est vrai, bien que vous ne le (*croire*) pas. 17. Je ne le (*croire*) pas, si je ne l’avais pas vu de mes propres yeux. 18. Ce ne sera pas la peine de lui expliquer cela; il ne vous (*croire*) pas. 19. Je ne (*croire*) pas que je puisse le faire aujourd’hui. 20. Me (*croire*)-tu si je te montrais la lettre?

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

7. ask

9. bring, bring back

1. I haven’t any change but I’ll ask Fred for some. 2. He’s going to ask his parents for permission to invite one of his friends for the weekend. 3. I’ve brought the record player; Madeline is bringing the records. 4. We shan’t have enough silverware. I’ll ask Julia to bring some. 5. If you want his telephone number, ask my secretary. 6. “What did Nicholas ask his parents for for Christmas?” “An

electric train." 7. I'll bring back your screen tomorrow. 8. Why don't you ask him why he has a grudge against you? 9. Do you mind bringing me back some glue? 10. Little Christopher asked so many questions that his parents finally lost patience. 11. We have a great many lilacs. Do you want me to bring you some? 12. Why didn't you tell me you were going to bring Martha? 13. Tell the Bernards to bring their boat. 14. I'll bring back your motorcycle before six o'clock. 15. Did you ask George for his new address? 16. I don't dare ask to read the letter. 17. Ask him his age. 18. Let's ask Mr. Dionne if we may park here. 19. Who is going to bring you back from the lake Sunday evening? 20. Margaret, I've asked you a hundred times not to bite your nails.

Lesson 10

The Interrogative Pronouns and the Interrogative Adjective

(For the forms of the interrogative pronouns and the interrogative adjective, see Appendix 3, page 282.)

10.1 The interrogative pronoun *who*, used as the subject, is rendered in French by **qui** or **qui est-ce qui**, always followed by a verb in the singular. (The longer form is the more usual in simple conversation.)

Qui (est-ce qui) a emprunté mes patins à roulettes? Who borrowed my roller skates?

Qui (est-ce qui) est prêt? Who is (or are) ready?

10.2 The interrogative pronoun *who*, used as a subjective completion, is rendered in French by **qui**. (A subjective completion has, of course, no effect on the form of the verb.)

Qui sont ces demoiselles? Who are these young ladies?

Qui êtes-vous? Who are you?

10.3 The interrogative pronoun *who*, used as a subjective completion, may also be rendered by the appropriate form of **quel** if the subject is a noun. (This use is rare with a subject pronoun.)

Quelles sont ces demoiselles? Who are these young ladies?

10.4 The interrogative pronoun *whom*, used either as the direct object of a verb or as the object of a preposition, is rendered in French by **qui** (always masculine singular). (For the use of **est-ce que**, see Lesson 18.)

Qui avez-vous invité (or Qui est-ce que vous avez invité) à dîner? “Whom have you invited to dinner?”
— M. et Mme Leblanc. “Mr. and Mrs. Leblanc.”

Avec qui êtes-vous allé (or Avec qui est-ce que vous êtes allé) à la chasse? With whom did you go hunting?

10.5 The interrogative adjective *whose* is rendered in French by **à qui** when it expresses ownership, and by **de qui** when it expresses relationship or origin.

À qui est ce portefeuille? Whose billfold (or wallet) is this (or that)?

De qui est-elle la secrétaire? Whose secretary is she?

De qui est cette signature? Whose signature is this (or that)?

10.6 The interrogative pronoun *what*, used as the subject, is rendered in French by **qu'est-ce qui**, always followed by a verb in the singular.

Qu'est-ce qui a pu lui faire peur? What can have frightened her?

10.7 The interrogative pronoun *what*, used as a subjective completion, is rendered in French by **que**. (The italicized forms below are literary and should be avoided in simple conversation.)

Que voudriez-vous être (or **Qu'est-ce que vous voudriez être**) **si vous n'étiez pas fermier? — Je voudrais être marin.** "What would you like to be if you weren't a farmer?" "I'd like to be a sailor."

Qu'est-il? (or **Qu'est-ce qu'il est?**) **— Il est chirurgien.** "What is he?" "He's a surgeon."

Qu'est-ce? (or **Qu'est-ce que c'est?**) **— C'est une aubergine.** "What is it?" "It's an eggplant."

10.8 Note how the interrogative formula of the last example in 10.7 is extended when the question bears not on the pronoun **ce**, but on **ceci**, **cela** (**ça**), or a noun. (The italicized forms are literary and should be avoided in simple conversation.)

Qu'est-ce que ceci (cela)? What is this (that)?

Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela (or **ça**)? **— C'est un nouveau genre d'ouvre-boîtes.** "What's that?" "It's a new kind of can opener."

Qu'est-ce que la vie? What is life?

Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un canif? **— C'est un petit couteau de poche, composé d'une ou plusieurs lames.** "What is a pen-knife?" "It's a little pocket-knife consisting of one or more (lit. one or several) blades."

10.9 The interrogative pronoun *what*, used as the direct object of a verb, is rendered in French by **que**.

Qu'allez-vous (or **Qu'est-ce que vous allez**) **semer là-bas? — De l'avoine et du blé noir.** "What are you going to sow over there?" "Oats and buckwheat."

10.10 The interrogative pronoun *what* is rendered in French by **quoi** when it is moved from its normal position to a position of stress, or when the verb is merely understood.

Le curé a demandé de vieux habits, et j'ai donné ton complet brun.
— Tu as donné quoi?

"The priest asked for old clothes, and I gave away your brown suit." "You gave away *what*?"

Il se passe des choses étonnantes dans cette rue. — Quoi, par exemple?

"Surprising things are happening on this street." "What, for example?"

10.11 The interrogative pronoun *what*, used as the object of a preposition, is rendered in French by **quoi**.

À quoi pensez-vous? (or À quoi est-ce que vous pensez?) — Au rêve que j'ai fait cette nuit.

"What are you thinking of (*or about*)?" "The dream I had last night."

10.12 The interrogative adjective *what* is rendered in French by the appropriate form of **quel**. When **quel, quelle** accompanies a subject in the singular, **est-ce qui** is frequently added.

Quel métal (est-ce qui) est liquide à la température ordinaire? — Le mercure.

"What metal is liquid at ordinary temperature?" "Mercury."

Quelle sorte de manche préférez-vous (or est-ce que vous préférez), madame?

What kind of sleeve do you prefer, madam?

Quelle est la hauteur de ce gratte-ciel?

How high is (*lit. What is the height of*) that sky-scraper?

Quelle est cette rivière?

What river is this?

10.13 The interrogative adjective *which* is expressed in exactly the same way as the interrogative adjective *what*. (See 10.12.)

Quel magasin (est-ce qui) a le meilleur choix de fruits?

Which store has the best selection of fruit?

Quel balai puis-je (or est-ce que je peux or est-ce que je puis) prendre pour balayer le trottoir?

Which broom may I take to sweep the sidewalk?

Quelle est l'étoile la plus brillante? — Sirius.

"Which is the brightest star?" "Sirius."

10.14 The interrogative pronoun *which* or *which one(s)* is rendered in French by the appropriate form of **lequel**. When the singular forms **lequel, laquelle** are used as subjects, **est-ce qui** is frequently added.

Laquelle des quatre saisons (est-ce qui) est la plus agréable, à votre avis?

Which (one) of the four seasons is the pleasantest, in your opinion?

Laquelle de ces tentes recommandez-vous (or est-ce que vous recommandez)?

Which (one) of these tents do you recommend?

Auquel de ses parents a-t-il laissé To which (one) of his relatives did he
(*or est-ce qu'il a laissé*) **sa fortune?** leave his fortune?

10.15 The preceding examples have shown the forms of the interrogative pronouns and the interrogative adjective in direct questions. The following examples illustrate their use in indirect questions. (An indirect question is a question in the form of a subordinate clause dependent on verbs such as **comprendre, demander, dire, ignorer, raconter, savoir, etc.**) In the examples below, capitals have been used where the indirect forms differ from the direct.

NOTE: Some of the long forms used in direct questions may, in familiar speech, be retained in indirect questions; but in many cases, the long forms are awkward and should be avoided. In any case, a long form should not be used where the main clause already contains **est-ce qui** or **est-ce que**.

Je me demande qui (est-ce qui) a I wonder who borrowed my roller
emprunté mes patins à roulettes. skates.

Savez-vous qui (or quelles) sont ces Do you know who these young ladies
demoiselles? are?

Dites-moi qui (est-ce que) vous avez Tell me whom you have invited to
invité à dîner. dinner.

Vous ne m'avez pas dit avec qui vous You haven't told me whom you went
êtes allé à la chasse. hunting with.

Devinez à qui est ce portefeuille. Guess whose billfold (*or* wallet) this
(*or* that) is.

Ne savez-vous pas de qui elle est la Don't you know whose secretary she is?
secrétaire?

Je me demande CE QUI a pu (or qu'est- I wonder what can have frightened her.
ce qui a pu) lui faire peur.

Dites-moi CE QUE vous voudriez être Tell me what you would like to be.
(*or qu'est-ce que vous voudriez être*).

Qui sait CE QU'il est (or qu'est-ce Who knows what he is?
qu'il est)?

Devinez CE QUE c'est (or qu'est-ce que Guess what it is.
c'est).

Nous nous demandions CE QUE c'est We were wondering what that is.
que cela (or qu'est-ce que c'est que
cela).

J'aimerais savoir CE QUE vous allez I'd like to know what you are going to
(*or qu'est-ce que vous allez*) **sem**
er là-bas. sow over there.

Dites-moi à quoi vous pensez. Tell me what you are thinking of.

Qui peut me dire quel métal est Who can tell me what metal is liquid
liquide à la température ordinaire? at ordinary temperature?

Il faudra que je sache quelle sorte de manche vous préférez, madame.	I'll have to know what kind of sleeve you prefer, madam.
Devinez quelle est la hauteur de ce gratte-ciel.	Guess how high that sky-scraper is.
Demandez à quelqu'un quelle est cette rivière.	Ask someone what river this is.
Est-ce que vous pouvez me dire quel magasin a le meilleur choix de fruits?	Can you tell me which store has the best selection of fruit?
Je me demande quel balai je peux prendre.	I wonder which broom I may take.
Dites-moi laquelle des quatre saisons est la plus agréable, à votre avis.	Tell me which (one) of the four seasons is the pleasantest, in your opinion.
Je voudrais savoir laquelle de ces tentes vous recommandez.	I'd like to know which (one) of these tents you recommend.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. I am looking for a job. To whom should I apply? 2. You don't need to tell me whose son you are. You look so much like your father. 3. "What is there in this soup?" "Vegetables, meat, water, salt, pepper and a little garlic." 4. From what cities can you leave to go from France to England? 5. "What is gold?" "It's a yellow metal." 6. "What happened?" "An old man fell and bumped his head against the sidewalk." 7. "Did I tell you what I had found behind the chesterfield?" "No, what?" 8. "Who is that tall gentleman over there?" "It's Dr. Leblanc." 9. "What city is situated between Montreal and Quebec?" "Three Rivers." 10. "Who dropped this box of pins?" "I did."

B. 1. "Whom did you take to the theatre?" "Jean and the twins." 2. "Which department are you looking for, madam?" "The toy department." 3. "Whose pyjamas are these?" "I think they are John's." 4. My pen is empty. Who has some ink? 5. "What is your profession?" "I'm an architect. What are *you*?" 6. What's she laughing at now? 7. "What is this?" "It's an ash-tray." 8. Which (one) of the states did France sell to the United States in 1803? 9. "What is that?" "I don't know. Is it a kind of mushroom?" 10. I don't see what shocked you in that film.

C. 1. "Which of the provinces of Canada are islands?" "Newfoundland and Prince Edward Island." 2. "Who could lend me a four-cent stamp?" "I could. I just bought some at the drugstore." 3. Who is your science teacher this year? 4. How high is Mount Etna? 5. I had never seen those children Helen was playing with. Who were they? 6. Which tooth is hurting you? 7. Who gave you that beautiful doll's house? 8. In which (one) of the provinces of Canada do most of the inhabitants speak French? 9. "Do you know yet what you want to be?" "I am planning to be a surgeon." 10. Whom are you waiting for?

D. 1. "Tell me whose pen-knife this is." "It's John's." 2. "What kind of tooth-brush do you want, sir?" "Which one do you recommend?" 3. "What street

is that?" "It's Talon Street." 4. Who told you to pick those violets? 5. I wonder what is making me so thirsty. 6. "Fred said you are stingy." "He said *what?*" 7. What are you going to plant in your garden next spring? 8. Whose sentence is this? 9. "What is Sirius?" "It's a star." 10. "What is the capital of Cuba?" "Havana."

VERB REVIEW

courir

envoyer

répéter

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Ne (*courir*) pas si vite! 2. Après (*courir*) pendant cinq minutes, j'étais très fatigué. 3. Vous (*courir*) mieux si vous suiviez les conseils que je vous ai donnés. 4. Il ne faut pas que tu (*courir*) comme ça tout de suite après le déjeuner. 5. Quand nous (*courir*) dans le jardin, le chien des voisins commençait à aboyer. 6. Nous (*courir*) si nous n'avions pas eu les valises à porter. 7. Je ne (*courir*) pas si je n'étais pas en bonne forme. 8. Je te (*envoyer*) le livre dès que j'aurai fini de le lire. 9. Les cartes seraient arrivées pour Noël si nous les (*envoyer*) quelques jours plus tôt. 10. Je ne vois presque jamais mon oncle et ma tante, mais ils me (*envoyer*) toujours quelque chose pour mon anniversaire. 11. Nous (*envoyer*) le colis par avion si cela ne coûtait pas si cher. 12. Il faudra que nous leur (*envoyer*) un cadeau. 13. Quand j'étais en France, mes parents me (*envoyer*) cent dollars par mois. 14. Tu ne (*envoyer*) pas encore les photos que tu m'as promises. 15. Il avait dit qu'il (*répéter*) les instructions si nous ne les comprenions pas. 16. Si vous (*répéter*) ce poème une dizaine de fois, vous le sauriez par cœur. 17. Combien de fois faut-il que je vous (*répéter*) la même chose? 18. Nous (*répéter*) le même exercice demain. 19. Ne (*répéter*) à personne ce que je t'ai dit. 20. Je me demande s'il aurait compris la phrase, si je la (*répéter*) encore une fois.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

29. know

31. leave

1. I don't know why my work is so tiring. 2. The pilot left the hangar. 3. Those who know these verbs may leave. 4. Who left these roller skates on the new rug? 5. Is this a French word? I don't know it at all. 6. The enemy left the village without bothering anybody. 7. I should like you to know this list of idioms for tomorrow. 8. I've left the two blankets on your bed. Tell me if you're too warm. 9. I know a great many Toronto surgeons. 10. We could leave together if you liked. 11. Do you know who tore the curtain? 12. She left the table without finishing her meal. 13. I'll ask Edward if he knows the Roches. 14. Who left the bath-tub in this condition? 15. I'd like to go to Russia if I knew Russian. 16. Don't leave the tap running. 17. Do you know the bookstore on Marchand Boulevard? 18. The other day I ran across someone who knows you. 19. She doesn't know Versailles very well. 20. Why can't they leave me alone?

Lesson 11

The Demonstrative Adjective and the Demonstrative Pronouns

11.1 English has two demonstrative adjectives, *this* (*pl. these*) and *that* (*pl. those*). Usually, French does not make such a distinction, both of these adjectives being rendered by **ce, cet, cette** (*pl. ces*).

Ce grille-pain ne fonctionne plus. This (*or* That) toaster isn't working any more.

Quelle est cette drôle d'odeur? What's that funny (*or* queer) smell?

Veux-tu m'aider à coller les timbres sur ces enveloppes? Will you help me (to) stick the stamps on these envelopes?

11.2 In English, a demonstrative adjective can be stressed by the intonation of the voice. In French, the same effect is achieved by appending **-ci** or **-là** to the noun.

Ce projecteur-ci est un peu plus cher, mais nettement supérieur aux autres. This projector is a little more expensive, but definitely superior to (*or* better than) the others.

11.3 An English demonstrative adjective may modify two or more consecutive nouns, but in the corresponding French form, each noun must be preceded by the demonstrative adjective.

Cette brosse et ce peigne ne sont vraiment pas très propres. This brush and comb (*or* That brush and comb) are really not very clean.

11.4 French demonstrative pronouns fall into two groups:

- (i) the masculine and feminine forms **celui, ceux, celle, celles**;
- (ii) the neuter forms **ce, ceci, cela, ça**. (**Ça** is the familiar form of **cela**.)

11.5 A masculine or feminine demonstrative pronoun accompanied by the particle **-ci** or **-là** represents a noun accompanied by the demonstrative adjective and the particle **-ci** or **-là**, and serves to avoid the repetition of the noun.

Ces ciseaux-ci coupent mieux que ceux-là. These scissors are sharper (*lit. cut better*) than those.

Ces deux dindes ont le même poids, mais celle-ci est plus grasse que celle-là.

Both these turkeys weigh the same (*lit. have the same weight*), but this one is fatter than that one.

11.6 A masculine or feminine demonstrative pronoun also serves to avoid the repetition of a noun which is preceded by the definite article and followed by an adjectival phrase or clause. (Part of the clause may be merely understood.)

Est-ce que la circulation de Toronto est aussi intense que celle de Montréal?

Is Toronto's traffic as heavy as Montreal's?

Le volume de la terre est cinquante fois plus grand que celui de la lune.

The volume of the earth is fifty times as great as that of the moon.

Je vous conseille de vous décider pour ce terrain-ci plutôt que pour celui que vous avez regardé (pour un de ceux que vous avez regardés) hier.

I advise you to decide on this piece of ground rather than on the one you looked at (on one of those you looked at) yesterday.

Vous n'avez pas encore acheté de bateau? — Non, celui dont j'ai envie est très cher.

"You haven't bought a boat yet?"
"No, the one I fancy is very expensive."

Lequel de ces messieurs est l'invité d'honneur? — Celui (qui est) en gris foncé.

"Which of those gentlemen is the guest of honour?" "The one (*who is*) in dark grey."

11.7 There are some cases in which the noun represented by a masculine or feminine demonstrative pronoun is merely understood.

Il y a un prix pour celle (i.e. la jeune fille) qui finira la première.

There is a prize for the one (*i.e. the girl*) who finishes first.

Celui qui vous a dit cela est mal renseigné.

Whoever (*i.e. the one who*) told you that is misinformed.

11.8 *Celui, celle, etc.* are not used in translating an expression such as *You are the one who(m) . . .*

C'est vous qui avez choisi cette route.
(*For the use of the present tense, see 19.7.*)

You are (*or were*) the one who chose this route.

11.9 *Celui-ci* is also used to render *the latter* and *celui-là* to render *the former*. (Note that the order is different in the two languages, if both forms are used in the same sentence.)

La rougeole et la rubéole se ressemblent, mais celle-ci n'est pas très grave.

Measles and German measles are alike, but the latter is not very serious.

Ces deux constructions sont correctes, mais celle-là est la plus courante.

Both (*of*) these constructions are right, but the former is the more usual.

Les abeilles (*bees*) **et les guêpes** (*wasps*) **appartiennent au même ordre d'insectes; celles-ci ne sont bonnes à rien, celles-là nous fournissent le miel et la cire.**

Wasps and bees belong to the same order of insects; the former are good for nothing, the latter supply us with honey and wax.

11.10 The neuter pronoun **ce** is used as the subject of **être** (*or devoir être*) when the verb is completed by a pronoun. The verb is always in the third person. (Careful speech requires the plural with a third person plural pronoun; familiar speech tends to use the singular in all cases.)

Qui est-ce? — C'est nous.

"Who is it?" "It is we."

Quelles jolies tulipes! — N'est-ce pas? Ce sont (*or C'est*) **celles que vous nous avez données.**

"What pretty tulips!" "Aren't they? They are the ones you gave us."

11.11 When **être** (*or devoir être*) is completed by a noun, **ce** is used if the noun answers a question (expressed or understood) such as **Qui est-ce?** or **Qu'est-ce que c'est?** (Careful speech requires the verb to be plural with a plural noun, but familiar speech tends to make the verb singular. However, the verb must be plural if it is followed by a list used in explanation of a preceding plural or collective noun.)

Permettez que je vous présente Mlle Gilbert. C'est la maîtresse de danse de Joséphine.

Allow me to introduce Miss Gilbert (to you). She is Josephine's dancing teacher.

Quels sont tous ces paquets? — Ce doivent être (*or Ce doit être*) **les achats que ta mère a faits cet après-midi.**

"What are all those packages?" "They must be the purchases your mother made this afternoon."

La France a quatre fleuves: ce sont la Seine, la Loire, la Garonne et le Rhône.

France has four great rivers: they are the Seine, the Loire, the Garonne and the Rhône.

11.12 **Ce** is not used when the verb **être** (*or devoir être*) is completed by an unmodified noun indicating profession, nationality, religious or political denomination, official position, marital status, *etc.* (For the omission of the indefinite article, see 5.1 and 5.2.)

Notre jardinier n'est pas marié, mais je ne sais pas s'il est célibataire ou veuf.

Our gardener is not married, but I don't know whether he is a bachelor or a widower.

11.13 When the English verb *to be* (*or must be*) has the subject *it* and is completed by an adjective or adverb, the *it* may refer to:

- (i) a thing that has been specifically named;
- (ii) an animal;
- (iii) a neuter pronoun or something that has not been specifically named;
- (iv) an idea, action, situation, *etc.*

In the first two cases, *it* is rendered by the personal **il** or **elle**; in the last two cases, by the neuter **ce**.

Qui (est-ce qui) a laissé ma scie dehors? Elle est toute rouillée.

Who left my saw outside? It's all rusty (*or* rusted).

Où est le canari? Il n'est plus dans sa cage.

Where's the canary? It's not in its cage any more.

Nous avons eu très peu à manger, mais c'était délicieux.

We had very little to eat, but it was delicious.

J'aurais voulu me baigner, mais c'était trop dangereux.

I'd like to have gone bathing, but it was too dangerous.

11.14 If the adjective referred to in 11.13 is completed by an infinitive, the infinitive is preceded by the preposition **à**. The commonest of the adjectives so used are:

agréable	pleasant
amusant	amusing
beau	beautiful, lovely, fine
bon	good
compliqué	complicated
désagréable	unpleasant
difficile	difficult, hard
embêtant	tiresome, boring
ennuyeux	annoying, tedious, boring
facile	easy
fatigant	tiring
intéressant	interesting
joli	pretty
long	long
lourd	heavy
prêt	ready
simple	simple

Je ne sers pas souvent ce plat, parce qu'il est si compliqué à préparer.

I don't often serve this dish, because it is so complicated to prepare.

C'était très désagréable à entendre.

It was very unpleasant to hear.

11.15 When the verb *to be* (*or must be*) has *it* as its subject and is followed by an adjective, the *it* is frequently only a representative subject, the real subject being the infinitive or clause which follows. In such a case, careful speech requires the use of the impersonal **il** to render *it*; familiar speech, however, tends to use **ce**. The infinitive used as real subject is always preceded by **de**, regardless of whether the representative subject is **il** or **ce**.

Il est (or C'est) inutile d'insister.

It is useless to insist.

Il est (or C'est) évident que ce plongeur n'est pas très solide.

It is obvious that this diving board is not very strong.

Il est (or C'est) incroyable que vous n'en ayez jamais entendu parler.

It is incredible that you have never heard of it.

11.16 If the verb *to be* (or *must be*), having an infinitive or clause as its real subject, is followed by anything other than an adjective, the *it* must be rendered by **ce**, even in careful speech.

Ce n'est pas la peine d'avoir un jardin potager; les légumes sont bon marché. It isn't worth while having a vegetable garden; vegetables are cheap.

C'est dommage qu'un garçon si intelligent soit si paresseux. It's a pity (that) such an intelligent boy is so lazy.

11.17 When the subject *it* does not represent a specific noun, its translation depends on the French verb.

(i) With **être** (or **devoir être**), *it* is **il** or **ce**, as explained in 11.13, 11.15, and 11.16.

(ii) With impersonal verbs, *it* is always **il**.

(iii) With any other verb, *it* is **cela** (**ça**).

Il fait très doux aujourd'hui. It's very mild today.

Cela (or Ça) m'agaçait de le voir gaspiller son argent. It used to annoy me to see him squander(ing) his money.

Cela (or Ça) m'inquiète quand il parle d'abandonner ses études. It worries me when he talks about giving up his studies.

11.18 In addition to its use as the subject of the verb **être** (or **devoir être**), **ce** is used as the antecedent of a relative pronoun.

Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or. All that glitters is not gold.

Ne répète à personne ce que je t'ai dit. Don't repeat what I told you to anybody.

Quel enfant gâté! Ses parents lui donnent tout ce dont il a envie. What a spoiled child! His parents give him everything he fancies.

11.19 The verb **être** (in the affirmative) is preceded by **ce** when it is accompanied by two infinitives, one as the subject and the other as a subjective completion. (In the negative, **ce** may be used but is usually omitted.)

Vouloir, c'est pouvoir. Where there's a will, there's a way (*lit. To will is to be able*).

Moins fort, s'il vous plaît! Crier (, ce) n'est pas chanter. Not so loud, please! Shouting isn't singing.

11.20 **Ce** is not used when an infinitive subject is modified by a predicate adjective.

Trop manger est mauvais pour la santé. Overeating is bad for one's health.

11.21 The verb **être**, having as its subject **ce** followed by a relative clause, usually has another **ce** inserted directly in front of it if it is completed by a noun, an infinitive, or a clause.

NOTE 1. In the case of a noun, the **ce** is optional with the singular of **être**, but obligatory with the plural.

NOTE 2. In the case of an infinitive, the **ce** is optional (but the infinitive is always preceded by **de**).

NOTE 3. When the completion is a clause, the **ce** is obligatory.

(It is preferable to insert this **ce** in the optional cases.)

Ce qui m'énerve, (c')est son éternel sourire. What gets on my nerves is his everlasting smile.

Ce qu'il nous faudrait dans cette école, (c')est un ascenseur. What we should have (*lit. we'd need*) in this school is an elevator.

Ce que je déteste dans le poisson, ce sont les arêtes. What I dislike in fish is the bones.

Ce que nous devons éviter avant tout, (c')est de faire des dettes. What we must avoid above all is running into debt.

Ce dont je me rends compte maintenant, c'est que j'ai perdu mon temps. What I realize now is that I have been wasting my time.

Ce dont elle se plaint, c'est qu'il n'y ait pas assez de placards dans la cuisine. What she complains about is that there are not enough cupboards in the kitchen.

11.22 It is sometimes necessary to stress certain words in order to express the idea that one person, thing, *etc.* excludes another. English usually achieves this by the intonation of the voice, but French requires a special construction, as shown in 11.23, 11.24, and 11.25.

11.23 When the stressed noun or pronoun is the subject in English, French uses **C'est . . . qui . . .** and **Ce sont . . . qui . . .** (For the choice of singular or plural, see 11.10 and 11.11.)

Comment trouvez-vous ces éclairs au chocolat? Ce sont (or C'est) mes filles qui les ont faits. How do you like these chocolate éclairs? My *daughters* made them.

Qui a pris ma lampe de poche? —Je ne sais pas. Ce n'est pas moi (qui l'ai prise). "Who took my flashlight?" "I don't know. *I* didn't (take it)."

11.24 When the stressed noun or pronoun is the direct object in English, French uses **C'est . . . que . . .** and **Ce sont . . . que . . .** (For the choice of singular or plural see 11.10 and 11.11.)

Ce sont (or C'est) des betteraves que j'ai commandées, pas du chou-fleur. I ordered *beets*, not cauliflower.

C'est moi que vous appelez?

Are you calling *me*?

11.25 An indirect object or an adverb or a prepositional phrase is stressed by **C'est . . . que . . .**

C'est à vous que je parle.

I'm speaking to *you*.

C'est avant-hier que l'électricien devait venir installer le chauffe-eau.

The electrician was to have come to install the water heater *the day before yesterday*.

C'est de New York que nous partons, pas de Montréal.

We are leaving from *New York*, not from Montreal.

11.26 The pronoun *this*, subject of the verb *to be* (or *must be*), may be expressed by **ce**, provided it is not stressed.

C'est terrible! Mon oncle et ma tante ont été tués dans un accident d'auto.

This is terrible! My uncle and aunt have been killed in a car accident.

11.27 Usually *This is . . .* or *These are . . .*, completed by a noun or pronoun, is best translated by **Voici . . .**

Voici le bouton que je t'ai demandé de recoudre à mon veston.

This is the button I asked you to sew (*lit. sew again*) on my (suit-)coat.

11.28 In all other cases, the pronoun *this* is expressed by **ceci**.

Ceci est à moi.

This is mine.

Ceci ne me dit rien. Allez me chercher autre chose.

This doesn't appeal to me. Go and get me something else.

Retenez bien ceci: c'est moi qui commande ici.

Now remember this (*lit. Retain this well*): I give the orders here.

11.29 The pronoun *that*, subject of the verb *to be* (or *must be*), is usually expressed by **ce**, provided it is not stressed.

Il mange de la glace au petit déjeuner. — C'est ridicule!

"He eats ice cream for breakfast."
"That's ridiculous!"

11.30 *That*, subject of *to be* (or *must be*), is **cela (ça)**:

(i) when there is an intervening pronoun;

(ii) when there is stress, particularly in contrast with **ceci**.

Cela (or ça) lui sera égal.

That will be all the same to him (*or* He won't care).

Ceci est beau mais cela est laid.

This is beautiful but that is ugly.

11.31 In familiar speech, stress is achieved by using both pronouns.

Ça, ce n'est pas drôle!

That isn't funny!

11.32 Usually *That is . . .* or *Those are . . .*, completed by a noun or pronoun, is best translated by **Voilà . . .**

Voilà le genre de paysage qu'il peint d'habitude. That's the kind of landscape he usually paints.

11.33 In all other cases, the pronoun *that* is expressed by **cela (ça)**.

Cela (or Ça) ne fait rien. That doesn't matter.

Il ne faut pas prendre cela trop au sérieux. You must not take that too seriously.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. It's a pity the car won't be ready before tomorrow. I need it *today*. 2. Why did you choose *this* turkey? It's twice as fat as the others. 3. It's warm in Jamaica during our winter. That's what attracts the tourists. 4. Give me that other knife, please. This one isn't very sharp. 5. What worries me is that the water is so deep and the children haven't learned to swim. 6. This is incredible! 7. "Who is Mr. Roy?" "He's a customer of mine." 8. "He's had an accident!" "You lent him the car, didn't you?" 9. "Which are the most interesting parts of Canada?" "I'd say they are British Columbia, the Gaspé, and the city of Quebec." 10. "Do you know my cousin George?" "Yes, he's the one who drove me here this evening."

B. 1. It seems to me that our tulips are not as beautiful as our neighbours' this year. 2. Do you know Alphonse Martin? He's a French boy who goes to our school. 3. "We've eaten all those chocolate éclairs." "That doesn't matter. I'll make some more tomorrow." 4. It gets on my nerves when Josephine chatters so long on (*at*) the telephone. 5. She's an Italian, but she speaks English very well. 6. "Which of those girls is your cousin?" "The one in yellow." 7. "Do you remember Mr. Barbeau?" "Yes, he's your electrician, isn't he?" 8. All I'm going to serve is sandwiches and tea. 9. "Have you decided on the car you're going to buy?" "Not yet. The yellow convertible is the one I'd like, but it's too expensive." 10. What he realizes now is that he was wrong to give up his studies.

C. 1. This is the school I go to. 2. "What saw is that?" "It's the one I borrowed from Nicholas." 3. It would be complicated to explain. 4. "What's that?" "It's a projector." 5. "I'm sorry there isn't any salmon left." "I don't care. Could I have an egg?" 6. That's the tablecloth we brought back from Ireland. 7. "Which of these toasters do you want?" "I prefer that one, but this one is less expensive." 8. There's a little coffee left for whoever wants it. 9. What we dislike in the summer is the mosquitoes. 10. This is delicious. What is it?

D. 1. I asked you for *salt*, not sugar. 2. It will be hard to answer all these letters. 3. Give me that brush and comb. I'll have to wash them. 4. We'd like to see something else. This doesn't appeal to us. 5. Look at this! The boys have left the sink full of dishes. 6. "Who is that young man sitting beside your sister?" "He's my cousin from Boston." 7. It's hard to explain that. 8. Don't shout. It gets on my nerves. 9. Don't repeat this to anybody: I've lost my job. 10. This signature is very hard to read. Do you know whose it is?

VERB REVIEW

mourir

offrir

servir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Si je (*mourir*), ma femme serait obligée de travailler. 2. L'enfant sera triste si son chien (*mourir*). 3. Ses deux sœurs blanches (*mourir*) hier. 4. Si tu ne manges pas plus que cela, tu (*mourir*) de faim. 5. Il était très malade; nous avions peur qu'il (*mourir*). 6. Vous (*mourir*) de peur si vous voyiez un vrai voleur! 7. Peut-être qu'ils (*offrir*) de nous conduire à la gare quand nous partirons. 8. J'aurais vendu la maison si on me (*offrir*) cinq cents dollars de plus. 9. Chaque fois que je lui (*offrir*) quelque chose, il refuse. 10. Mes parents (*offrir*) de garder les enfants si nous parlions de faire un voyage. 11. Je suis sûr qu'elle accepterait si tu (*offrir*) de l'aider. 12. Il sera étonné que vous lui (*offrir*) cette situation. 13. Est-ce que vous (*offrir*) de leur prêter de l'argent si vous aviez su qu'ils en avaient besoin? 14. Quand elle a du monde à dîner, elle (*servir*) toujours un gâteau au chocolat pour le dessert. 15. Est-ce que vous (*servir*) dans l'armée dans la dernière guerre? 16. Ils voudraient que je (*servir*) de secrétaire. 17. J'avais dit que je (*servir*) d'interprète si on avait besoin de moi. 18. Si nous (*servir*) les rafraîchissements un peu plus tôt cette fois-ci? 19. On nous (*servir*) peut-être plus vite si nous avions dit que nous étions très pressés. 20. Je (*servir*) le dîner dès que vous serez prêts.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

65. take

1. Who took my saw? 2. Don't take *that* turkey. It looks too fat. 3. Be sure to take some pictures when you are in Norway. 4. What do you have (*take*) for breakfast? 5. Are you taking the boat or the plane? 6. You won't be able to see if you don't take the flashlight. 7. It took me thirty-five minutes to come downtown this morning. 8. The trip to Florida takes only a few hours by plane. 9. It took me an hour to prepare this dish. 10. It takes ten eggs to make this cake. 11. I've never taken that trip. 12. I'm taking a course in Russian this winter. 13. When are you going to take us to New York? 14. Will you take us to see the elephants? 15. Let's take some cheese sandwiches for lunch. 16. Are you going to take your car when you go to Scotland? 17. Take these scissors to your mother. 18. I don't know the city. Could you take me to the museum? 19. It will take us two days to go to the east coast by car. 20. How long does it take to go to South Africa by boat?

Lesson 12

The Relative Pronouns

(For the forms of the relative pronouns, see Appendix 4, page 283.)

12.1 A relative pronoun may, in its own clause, be the subject, the subjective completion, the direct object, or the object of a preposition.

12.2 The relative pronoun used as the subject, either singular or plural, masculine or feminine, referring to persons or things, is **qui**. Although the word **qui** is invariable, it is considered to have the gender, number, and person of its antecedent (*i.e.*, the noun or pronoun that it represents).

Un pentagone est un polygone qui a cinq côtés et cinq angles.

A pentagon is a polygon which has five sides and five angles.

Il y a peu d'écrivains qui deviennent célèbres par leur premier livre.

There are few writers who become famous through their first book.

C'est vous qui nous avez mis en retard. (For the use of the present tense, see 19.7.)

It was you who made us late.

Savez-vous ce qui l'a décidé à acheter cette épicerie?

Do you know what induced him to buy that grocery store?

Ce qui l'effraie, c'est la responsabilité.

What frightens him is responsibility.

12.3 Sometimes the antecedent of **qui** is not simply a noun or pronoun, but a complete statement. Such an antecedent must be summed up in the pronoun **ce**, which is inserted before **qui**.

Notre équipe de hockey n'a pas gagné le championnat, ce qui nous a bien déçus.

Our hockey team didn't win the championship, which disappointed us very much.

12.4 The relative pronoun used as the direct object (or a subjective completion), either singular or plural, masculine or feminine, referring to persons or things, is **que**. Although the word **que** is invariable, it is considered to have the gender and number of its antecedent. (This **que** must always be expressed, even where the English equivalent is omitted.)

Les amies que j'aime le mieux sont Monique et Irène.

The friends (whom) I like best are Monica and Irene.

Où sont les serviettes que vous avez repassées? — Sur le buffet.

"Where are the (table-)napkins (that) you ironed?" "On the sideboard (or buffet)."

Ces radis et ces tomates sont inférieurs à ceux que je cultive moi-même.

These radishes and tomatoes are not as good as (*lit. are inferior to*) the ones (which) I grow myself.

Je me demande ce qu'il y a dans ce carton.

I wonder what is (*lit. what there is*) in this (cardboard) box.

Tout ce qu'il explique est parfaitement clair.

Everything he explains is perfectly clear.

Nous serions curieux de savoir ce qu'elle est devenue.

We'd be interested (*lit. curious*) to know what became of her.

12.5 When the antecedent of **que** is a complete statement, it must be summed up in the pronoun **ce**.

On l'a prié de lire quelques-uns de ses poèmes, ce qu'il a fait avec plaisir.

He was requested to read a few of his poems, which he did with pleasure.

12.6 In English, a relative pronoun, object of a preposition, is not necessarily expressed; and even when it is expressed, the preposition does not necessarily precede it. In French, however, the relative pronoun must be expressed, and the preposition must precede it, as shown in 12.7.

12.7 Where the reference is to persons, there are two relative pronouns, used as the object of a preposition, **qui** and **lequel** (**laquelle**, **lesquels**, **lesquelles**). The usual form is **qui**, but the variable form is used after **entre** and **parmi** (and frequently after **avec**).

Les deux joueurs sur qui nous comptions ont la grippe.

The two players on whom we were counting (or The two players whom we were counting on or The two players we were counting on) have the flu.

L'ami à qui il avait confié le secret n'a pas tardé à le révéler.

The friend to whom he had confided the secret was not long in revealing it.

Savez-vous comment s'appellent ces deux messieurs entre lesquels Mme Durand est assise?

Do you know the names of those two gentlemen between whom Mrs. Durand is sitting?

12.8 The forms of the relative pronoun, either containing or combined with the preposition **de**, are **dont**, **de qui**, **duquel**, **de laquelle**, **desquels**, **desquelles**. Wherever the use of **dont** is possible, it is by far the preferable form. (The case where its use is not possible is explained in 12.9 and 12.14.)

C'est un professeur dont les méthodes sont étonnantes mais efficaces.

He (or She) is a teacher whose methods are astonishing but effective.

C'est le seul poète dont j'ai lu les œuvres complètes.

He is the only poet whose complete works I have read.

C'est un homme dont il faut se méfier.

He's a man you can't trust (*lit. of whom one must be mistrustful*).

Le pharmacien dont vous parliez tout à l'heure est un de mes bons amis.

The druggist whom you were talking about a few minutes ago is a good friend of mine.

12.9 *Dont* cannot be used if, in the corresponding English sentence, a preposition intervenes (literally or logically) between *whose* and its antecedent.

Le fermier dans le champ de qui (or duquel) l'avion s'est écrasé a risqué sa vie pour sauver le pilote.

The farmer in whose field the plane crashed (*or* The farmer whose field the plane crashed in) risked his life to save the pilot.

12.10 Where the reference is to things, the relative pronoun, object of a preposition, is **lequel** (*laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*).

La forêt par laquelle ils passaient était infestée d'ours.

The forest through which they were passing was infested with bears.

L'endroit auquel je pensais est trop loin.

The place I was thinking of is too far away.

12.11 The forms *in which, to which, etc.*, in the sense of *where* or *whither*, are frequently rendered by **où** rather than **dans lequel, auquel, etc.**

Le bureau où je travaille est au rez-de-chaussée.

The office in which (*or where*) I work is on the ground floor.

Comment s'appelle cette plage où vous êtes allés l'été dernier?

What's the name of that beach you went to last summer?

12.12 **Où** is also used to introduce a relative clause following expressions of time such as **le jour, l'année, le moment, etc.** (**Que** is used in the same way, and there seems to be no clear distinction between the two words. However, the examples below are safe guides to follow.)

Je n'oublierai jamais le jour où (or que) je me suis perdu dans les bois.

I'll never forget the day I got lost in the woods.

Un jour que je lavais les vitres, je suis tombé de l'échelle.

One day when I was washing the windows (*lit. window panes*), I fell from the ladder.

La dernière fois que j'ai eu de ses nouvelles, il était en Israël.

The last time I heard from him, he was in Israel.

12.13 The general preference (referred to in 12.8) for **dont** over **duquel** (*de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*) for persons, also applies to things.

Nommez un petit pays dont l'industrie la plus importante est la pêche. — L'Islande.

"Name a small country whose most important industry is fishing." "Ice-land."

Quelle est la figure géométrique dont tous les points sont à égale distance d'un point fixe?

What is the geometrical figure all (the) points of which are equidistant from a fixed point?

Le céleri et la laitue sont les deux légumes dont je ne me lasse jamais.

Celery and lettuce are the two vegetables I never tire of.

12.14 *Dont* cannot be used if, in the corresponding English sentence, a prepositional phrase intervenes between the relative pronoun and its antecedent.

Le troisième acte, à la fin duquel le héros se suicide, est le plus passionnant.

The third act, at the end of which the hero commits suicide, is the most exciting.

12.15 Neither *dont* nor *duquel* (*de laquelle, desquels, desquelles*) are used to translate *from which* in the sense of *from where*. This idea is expressed by *d'où*.

Nommez les pays d'où nous importons les ananas.

Name the countries from which we import pineapples (*or* the countries we import pineapples from).

12.16 The relative pronoun, object of a preposition, is *quoi* when the antecedent is the neuter pronoun *ce* (*e.g., ce à quoi . . . , ce sur quoi . . .*). However, if the preposition involved is *de* the form is *ce dont . . .*

Ce à quoi je ne m'attendais pas, c'était (à) la grossièreté de sa réponse.

What I was not expecting was the rudeness of his reply.

Ce dont j'ai peur, c'est que ce poulet ne soit pas très tendre.

What I am afraid of is that this chicken will not be very tender.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. I'd like very much to meet the artist who painted that landscape. 2. "How do you like the poems we are reading now?" "I find them interesting, but there's one I don't understand." 3. The majority of immigrants want to stay here, which is not surprising. 4. The tables we finally bought were the mahogany ones. 5. Now remember this: there are few people to whom one can confide a secret. 6. Modigliani is an artist whose pictures are well known in Europe. 7. The flashlight I'm thinking of is longer and definitely better than that one. 8. The little lake we go to in the summer isn't far from Georgian Bay. 9. What he complains about is that nobody takes him seriously. 10. California is a large state in whose valleys all kinds of fruit are grown.

B. 1. Cuba is an island from which we import many of our pineapples. 2. It isn't what I was expecting. 3. The hockey team won the championship this year, which pleased us very much. 4. She repeats everything she's told. 5. "Which shirt did you want me to mend?" "The one I left on the table." 6. What I dislike is rudeness. 7. The doctor told me to close my eyes, turn around, and go in a straight line as far as the door, which I did without difficulty. 8. The neighbour you borrowed the lawn-mower from, telephoned a few minutes ago.

9. He's a poet whose work is hard to understand. 10. The mountains you are thinking of must be the Green Mountains of Vermont.

C. 1. The piece of ground you have decided on is definitely superior to the one you were planning to buy last year. 2. The apartment we live in is on the ground floor. 3. The pentagon I'm talking about is in Washington. 4. Which are the states we import most of our oranges and lemons from? 5. What attracts tourists is our lovely climate. 6. I can't find (*I don't find*) the button I'm to sew on your coat. 7. The people at whose home he spent the evening had just bought a new projector. 8. I wonder what induced her to invite that gentleman to dinner. He isn't very congenial. 9. "Name an American city whose traffic is heavier than that of New York." "Detroit." 10. What I am proud of this spring is my lilacs.

D. 1. "You're going to have lobster for dinner tonight?" "Yes it's a dish we never tire of." 2. Tell me what's in this gravy. Is it garlic? 3. Gentlemen! The young man I am introducing to you this evening is a writer who has just spent two years in South Africa. 4. The others weren't long in discovering our secret, which surprised us. 5. All we're going to have for lunch is cold salmon with lettuce and tomatoes. 6. Do you know the gentlemen between whom the guest of honour is sitting? 7. There is one neighbour in whose garden all the children like to play. 8. The last time I invited them to dinner they couldn't come. 9. That was the year we won the championship. 10. What we are afraid of is that you will fall from the ladder when you wash the windows (*window panes*).

VERB REVIEW

cuire

plaire

suivre

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. N'oubliez pas que les épinards (*cuire*) plus vite que les petits pois. 2. Je (*cuire*) la rhubarbe demain. 3. Chaque fois qu'elle (*cuire*) du chou, on le sentait dans toute la maison. 4. Si j'avais des champignons, je les (*cuire*) avec le poulet. 5. Il ne faut pas que le poisson (*cuire*) trop fort. 6. Nous pourrions manger dès que les pommes de terre seront (*cuire*). 7. Vous lisez ce nouveau roman? Je suis sûr que la fin ne vous (*plaire*) pas. 8. Est-ce que le film que vous avez vu hier vous (*plaire*)? 9. On dit que les fleurs, les parfums, et les bijoux (*plaire*) aux femmes. 10. Le programme me (*plaire*) si on avait chanté un peu plus et parlé un peu moins. 11. Je suis content que mon cadeau te (*plaire*). 12. Cette maison me (*plaire*) plus si elle n'était pas si sombre. 13. Il dépensait facilement; si une chose lui (*plaire*), il l'achetait. 14. Quel cours (*suivre*)-tu l'année prochaine? 15. Si vous (*suivre*) les instructions, vous ne pourriez pas vous tromper. 16. Si je (*suivre*) ses conseils, j'aurais fait fortune. 17. Quand je fais un nouveau gâteau, je (*suivre*) exactement la recette. 18. Nous (*suivre*) le voleur s'il ne nous avait pas menacés de son revolver. 19. C'est dommage que nous ne (*suivre*) pas le même cours. 20. Nous (*suivre*) un cours du soir s'il y en avait un.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS**66. take away****67. take back****68. take off****69. take out**

1. Take those stamps away from the baby. He's tearing them. 2. I wonder if the store will take back this toaster. 3. Take off your coat if you are too warm. 4. I want you to take everything out of this cupboard. 5. Why did they take him away? 6. I'm going to take these eggs back. They aren't fresh. 7. The plane crashed on taking off. 8. My grandfather took us out to dinner on Sunday. 9. That child has a tendency to take everything away from his brother. 10. Will you take this book back to the library? 11. Which chairs may I take out to the garden? 12. I'm going to tell the waiter to take away this soup. It's cold. 13. "Are we going to take back home everything that is left?" "No, it isn't worth while." 14. I'd like very much to take your cousin out. 15. I have to take back this tablecloth that I borrowed from Aunt Helen. 16. If you want to dance, you'll have to take all the furniture out. 17. His nurse takes him out every day at the same time. 18. Do you want me to take you (back) home? 19. What do American tourists take back from Canada? 20. Take your shoes off outside. They are covered with mud.

Lesson 13

The Possessive Adjectives and the Possessive Pronouns

(For the forms of the possessive adjectives and the possessive pronouns, see Appendix 5, page 283.)

13.1 A French possessive adjective agrees in gender and number with the noun it modifies, and not with the noun or pronoun representing the possessor.

Je crois que des écureuils ont fait leur nid dans notre grenier.	I think some squirrels have made their nest in our attic.
---	---

Il faudra que je taille tous mes arbres fruitiers.	I'll have to prune all my fruit trees.
---	--

13.2 The forms **ma, ta, sa** are not used immediately preceding a noun or adjective beginning with a vowel or mute *h*, but are replaced by **mon, ton, son**.

À mon horreur, le cheval s'est mis à galoper.	To my horror, the horse began to gallop.
--	--

Qu'as-tu fait de ton autre paire de gants?	What did you do with your other pair of gloves?
---	---

Pendant neuf ans il y a consacré toute son énergie.	For nine years he devoted all his energy to it.
--	---

13.3 Although the forms **son, sa, ses** may mean *his, her, or its*, the meaning is usually clear from the context. In cases of ambiguity between *his* and *her*, clarity is achieved by adding **à lui** or **à elle** after the noun.

Il a laissé tomber sa cuiller dans la soupe.	He dropped (<i>lit. let fall</i>) his spoon into the soup.
---	--

Elle est très fière de son collier de perles et de son manteau de vison.	She is very proud of her pearl necklace and her mink coat.
---	--

Le coucou pond ses œufs dans les nids des autres oiseaux.	The cuckoo lays its eggs in other birds' nests.
--	---

Ils n'auront pas beaucoup de monde le jour de l'an; il n'y aura que ses parents à lui et son frère à elle.	They won't have much company on New Year's Day; there will be only his parents and her brother.
---	---

13.4 It is sometimes necessary to stress possessive adjectives. In English, this is done by the intonation of the voice. In French, the same effect is achieved by adding, after the noun, the appropriate form from the list: **à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles.**

Mon idée à moi serait de supprimer toutes les limites de vitesse. *My idea would be to do away with all speed limits.*

13.5 An English possessive adjective may modify two or more consecutive nouns; but in the corresponding French form, each noun must be preceded by the possessive adjective.

Descends ta crosse de hockey et tes patins à la cave. *Take your hockey stick and skates down to the cellar.*

Vos abricots et vos poires sont délicieux. *Your apricots and pears are delicious.*

13.6 For the translation of a sentence such as *Is this your key?* meaning *Is this key yours?*, see 13.9.

13.7 For the use of the possessive adjectives with nouns which refer to parts of the body, and with nouns such as **la raison, la mémoire, la voix, la vie**, see 2.7, 2.8, 2.10, 2.11, and 2.12.

13.8 Like its English counterpart, a French possessive pronoun represents a noun accompanied by the corresponding possessive adjective, and serves to avoid the repetition of the noun.

Mon prénom (or petit nom) est Denis. Quel est le vôtre? *My first name is Dennis. What is yours?*

Ton écriture est plus lisible que la mienne. *Your (hand)writing is more legible than mine.*

Je n'ai pas de buvard. Veux-tu me donner un bout du tien? *I have no blotter. Will you give me a bit of yours?*

Notre voiture consomme moins d'essence que la leur. *Our car uses less gas(oline) than theirs.*

La littérature étrangère est très intéressante, mais j'ai à peine le temps de lire la nôtre. *Foreign literature is very interesting, but I scarcely have time to read our own.*

13.9 When . . . *is mine (yours, his, hers, ours, theirs)* does not express a contrast, but is merely the equivalent of . . . *belongs to me (to you, to him, to her, to us, to them)*, the English possessive is rendered in French by **à moi (à toi, à vous, à lui, à elle, à nous, à eux, à elles)**.

Est-ce que cette vieille raquette (de tennis) est à toi? Roger dit qu'elle n'est pas à lui. *Is this old (tennis) racket yours? Roger says it isn't his.*

13.10 Similarly, when . . . *is mine, etc.* is the equivalent of . . . *originated with me, etc.*, the English possessive is expressed by **de moi, etc.**

Je vous assure que cette signature n'est pas de moi. I assure you that that signature is not mine.

13.11 The following examples illustrate the French forms corresponding to the English . . . *of mine (of yours, etc.)*.

J'ai emprunté une de tes cravates (or une cravate à toi). I borrowed a tie of yours.

Jean a invité quelques-uns de ses amis (or Jean a invité des amis à lui). John has invited some friends of his.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. I'll put my tooth-brush in the little bag with my brush and comb. 2. "My son wants to be a pilot." "Mine wants to be a sailor." 3. My truck doesn't use much more gas than my car. 4. "What did you do with my trunk?" "I put it in the attic." 5. When I do my shopping, I leave the children at their Aunt Monica's. 6. Do all boys tease their little sisters? 7. "Is this your hockey stick, Roger?" "No, it's George's." 8. One of my sisters is a secretary. My other sister is married. 9. "My writing isn't too legible." "Nor is mine." 10. We have just pruned your neighbour's fruit trees. Would you like us to prune yours, sir?

B. 1. This poem is very interesting. Is it really yours? 2. Give me your shirts and handkerchiefs and I'll wash them for you. 3. I met a friend of yours downtown. 4. My flashlight isn't working. Could I borrow yours? 5. Be sure to ask her for her address. 6. Aren't you ashamed of your conduct? 7. You'll have to take your other pair of gloves. It isn't worth while mending these. 8. "Where have I seen that tie?" "It's one of yours that I borrowed." 9. Your attic is much bigger than ours. 10. It's his parents who don't want them to get married.

C. 1. Our oats and buckwheat have grown well this year. 2. He risked his life to save mine. 3. Our car is smaller and less expensive than theirs. 4. My fruit trees aren't as good as yours, and yet I devote most of my time to them. 5. My aunt and uncle claim they have seen bears in this forest. 6. "Do you know the Beauchamps?" "Yes, their house is quite near ours." 7. My other saw is sharper than this one. 8. "Where's your pearl necklace?" "I lent it to a friend of mine and she lost it." 9. I can't find (*I don't find*) my tennis racket. Will you lend me yours for an hour? 10. A bird has made its nest in one of our cherry trees.

D. 1. "Whose mink coat is this?" "It isn't mine. It must be Irene's." 2. Would you like to borrow my other pair of skates? 3. Your hockey team is better than ours this year. 4. Your garden will be infested with squirrels if you feed them. 5. The city of New York is famous for its sky-scrapers. 6. I'm going to take my other suitcase. Will you take this one down to the cellar? 7. Her idea would be to have a new fur coat every two years. 8. Some cousins of ours are going to come and see us tomorrow night. 9. My grandfather and grandmother are going to spend New Year's Day at our house. 10. He explained everything to me with his customary patience.

VERB REVIEW

rire

sentir, se sentir

tenir, se tenir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. C'est très sérieux. Je ne vois pas pourquoi vous (*rire*). 2. Il a peur que vous (*rire*) de sa prononciation. 3. Ils (*rire*) bien quand ils sauront ce qui nous est arrivé. 4. Il serait fâché si je ne (*rire*) pas de ses histoires. 5. Tu ne (*rire*) pas si tu étais à ma place! 6. Pourquoi est-ce qu'ils (*rire*) quand j'ai dit cela? 7. Le dentiste avait dit que je ne (*sentir*) rien. 8. Nous ne voulons pas sortir; nous ne (*se sentir*) pas bien. 9. Il faudra vous reposer dès que vous (*se sentir*) fatigué. 10. Ils ne l'auraient pas acheté s'ils n'en (*sentir*) pas le besoin. 11. S'ils (*se sentir*) malades, je téléphonerais au médecin. 12. Je (*se sentir*) responsable s'il y avait eu un accident. 13. C'est dommage qu'elle (*se sentir*) si triste. 14. Il y a beaucoup de vent; il faudra que tu (*tenir*) ton chapeau. 15. Elle serait plus grande si elle (*se tenir*) droite. 16. Voyez-vous ce qu'ils (*tenir*) à la main? 17. Si les soldats (*tenir*) un peu plus longtemps, on aurait pu les sauver. 18. Je savais que vous (*tenir*) votre promesse, même si cela vous coûtait cher. 19. Comme il y avait beaucoup de circulation, je (*tenir*) l'enfant par la main pour traverser la rue. 20. Nous (*tenir*) deux réunions la semaine prochaine s'il le faut.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

56. piece

57. play

76. walk

1. Will you play a game of tennis with us this afternoon? 2. I always have (*take*) a piece of cheese with apple pie. 3. Is little Peter walking already? 4. That piece is very hard to play, isn't it? 5. Walking (*To walk*) in the open air is good for one's (*the*) health. 6. What kind of play do you like best? 7. The car is being repaired. We'll have to walk to the village. 8. Do you happen to have a dime (*ten-cent piece*) for the paper? 9. He plays cards well, but he never plays for money. 10. This is the piece of ground I bought. 11. Most children like playing on the beach. 12. The orchestra played marvellously tonight. 13. What are you going to do with all those pieces of string? 14. It's a pity you don't know how to play cards. 15. That was a good piece of advice you gave her. 16. He and his wife are both fond of sports. *He* plays hockey and *she* plays tennis. 17. Albert plays the clarinet and his sister the violin. 18. They haven't bought a single piece of furniture yet. 19. What an exciting piece of news! 20. This cake is delicious. May I have another piece (of it)?

Lesson 14

The Indefinite Pronouns

14.1 Certain pronouns are classified as *indefinite* pronouns. The commonest of these are: **on**, **quelqu'un**, **quelque chose**, **autre chose**, **personne**, **rien**, **tout**, **chacun**.

14.2 **On** is used only as the subject, takes a verb in the third person singular, and for purposes of agreement is considered to be masculine. Basically, **on** refers to people in a vague, general way, and not to specific individuals. (Compare the English pronouns *we*, *you*, and *they*, used in a vague sense, e.g., *We never know what the future will bring*, *You can't get blood out of a stone*, *They say love is blind*.)

On ne peut pas être partout.

You (or One) can't be everywhere.

On peut se rendre malade à force de se faire du souci.

One can make oneself ill (or sick) by dint of worrying.

Il est rare qu'on reconnaisse ses propres défauts.

We seldom recognize our own faults.

14.3 The non-reflexive conjunctive pronoun object corresponding to **on** is **vous**.

Plus on lui cède, moins il vous respecte.

The more you give in to him, the less he respects you.

On ne sait pas quoi faire quand il vous arrive une chose pareille.

You don't know what to do when a thing like that happens to you.

14.4 The reflexive disjunctive pronoun is **soi**; the non-reflexive form is **vous**.

Quand on ne parle que de soi, on risque d'ennuyer les autres.

When people talk only about themselves, they run the risk of boring others.

On écoute volontiers ceux qui disent du bien de vous.

People listen readily to those who speak well of them.

14.5 In familiar conversation, **on** frequently replaces the subject **nous**. The verb (or, in a compound tense, the auxiliary verb) is still in the third person singular, and the reflexive conjunctive pronoun is still **se**; otherwise, the sentence is exactly the same as if the subject were **nous**. (This substitution should be used sparingly in conversation, and avoided in writing.)

On s'est bien amusés pendant notre séjour en Californie.

We had a good time during our stay in California.

On a toutes les deux le même âge, Marie et moi.

Mary and I are both the same age.

14.6 Note the various translations of the following indefinite pronouns:

quelqu'un	someone, anyone, somebody, anybody
quelque chose	something, anything
autre chose	something else, anything else
personne	no one, not . . . anyone, nobody, not . . . anybody
rien	nothing, not . . . anything

For purposes of agreement, these pronouns are considered to be masculine (in spite of the fact that the nouns **la chose** and **la personne** are feminine).

Quelqu'un a-t-il un bout de ficelle? Has anybody a piece of string?

Personne n'est parfait. Nobody is perfect.

Ne touche à rien! Don't touch anything!

14.7 An adjective, other than a predicate adjective, modifying **quelqu'un**, **quelque chose**, **personne**, or **rien**, follows the pronoun (as it does in English) and is preceded by the preposition **de**. Note that although *something else*, *anything else* may be rendered by **quelque chose d'autre**, the indefinite pronoun **autre chose** is considered preferable.

Jouez-nous quelque chose de gai. Play us something cheerful.

Je n'aime pas le saucisson. Y a-t-il autre chose? I don't like bologna. Is there anything else?

Je n'ai jamais connu personne de plus égoïste que lui. I've never known anyone more selfish than he (is).

14.8 **Tout** corresponds to *everything*, *all* (= *everything*), *anything* (= *everything*). For purposes of agreement, it is considered to be masculine.

Une grosse pluie ferait beaucoup de bien; tout est très sec. A heavy rain would do a lot of good; everything is very dry.

C'est tout pour aujourd'hui. That's all for today.

Il ferait tout pour guérir. He would do anything to get well.

14.9 Used alone as the direct object, the pronoun **tout** precedes a past participle or an infinitive.

Avez-vous tout arrangé pour la soirée? Have you arranged everything for the party?

Il veut toujours tout démonter. He always wants to take everything apart.

14.10 *Chacun* corresponds to *everyone, everybody*, where stress is placed on the individuality of the action or state. (Where the totality or mass effect is stressed, *everyone, everybody* should be rendered by **tout le monde**.)

Chacun pense à ses intérêts personnels. Everyone thinks of his personal interests.

Tout le monde s'est précipité vers la sortie. Everybody rushed towards the exit.

14.11 The preceding examples show the use of the indefinite pronouns in their most general sense. There are, however, variable forms used with more specific reference, *e.g.*, **quelques-uns, quelques-unes, chacun, chacune**.

Quelques-uns de ces numéros de téléphone ont été changés. Some of these telephone numbers have been changed.

Saviez-vous qu'il a eu beaucoup d'aventures parmi les Esquimaux? — Oui, il nous en a déjà raconté quelques-unes. "Did you know that he has had a great many adventures among the Eskimos?" "Yes, he has already told us a few (of them)."

Chacune de ces expériences présente une difficulté spéciale. Each (one) of these experiments presents a special difficulty.

Nous avons fait chacun notre part. We each did our share.

14.12 The variable forms **tous, toutes**, when used in apposition, are adjectives, but they are included here for the sake of convenience.

Ils sont tous [tus] restés jusqu'à minuit. They all stayed till midnight.

Elle a des amies partout et elle leur écrit régulièrement à toutes. She has friends everywhere and she writes regularly to them all (*or to all of them*).

14.13 In apposition to a direct object pronoun, **tous, toutes** precede a past participle or an infinitive, unless they are stressed.

Est-ce que je peux prendre ces magazines? — Oui, je les ai tous [tus] lus. "May I take these magazines?" "Yes, I've read them all."

Il y a vingt et une phrases dans cet exercice, monsieur. Est-ce que nous devons les traduire toutes? There are twenty-one sentences in this exercise, sir. Do we have to translate all of them?

14.14 The singular forms **tout, toute** are rarely used in apposition. The following examples illustrate the replacements commonly resorted to.

Ne sautez rien dans ce chapitre. Il faut le lire en entier. Don't skip anything in this chapter. You must read it all.

Est-ce qu'il reste de la rhubarbe? — Non, j'ai tout mangé. "Is there any rhubarb left?" "No, I ate it all (*lit. I ate everything*)."

14.15 **Tous, toutes** are pronouns when they are not in apposition. Simple style usually prefers the form in apposition (as in 14.12), or the use of **tout le monde**.

J'ai quatre sœurs; toutes ont épousé des étrangers. I have four sisters; all have married foreigners.

Il n'est pas donné à tous [tus] de devenir millionnaire. It is not given to all to become a millionaire.

14.16 **Tout** is an adverb when it modifies an adjective or another adverb.

Ils étaient tout bouleversés. They were all (*or* quite) upset.

Je n'en reviens pas! Elle a été tout aimable. I can't get over it! She was quite pleasant.

Allez tout droit jusqu'aux premiers feux de circulation, puis tournez à gauche. Go straight ahead as far as the first traffic lights, then turn left.

14.17 Unlike other adverbs, **tout** is not invariable. When it precedes a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant or aspirate *h*, **tout** assumes the feminine adjective form.

Elle était toute pâle de peur. She was quite pale with fear.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. You can go to France by boat or by plane. If you go by boat, you usually take the train as far as Montreal. 2. Some of these flowers are quite withered. When did you pick them? 3. That book is exciting. I read it all without skipping anything. 4. We never know what is going to happen to us. 5. Does anyone want to go hunting with me? 6. "Do you understand the experiments we did this morning?" "A few, but not all." 7. "Whom were you sitting beside?" "It was someone very interesting, but I don't know what his name is." 8. He says he's going to reveal everything. 9. Everyone has his own ideas. 10. They eat a great deal of bread and cheese in France.

B. 1. People like to be home in the evening. 2. Everything is in order. Nobody has touched anything. 3. A few of these magazines are interesting, but it isn't worth while reading all of them. 4. That man has four sons. All have become millionaires. 5. "Have we any apricots left?" "There are a few in the refrigerator." 6. If someone has a bit of string, I'll show you how that knot is tied. 7. Let's see! Have I ironed everything? 8. One must always satisfy one's customers. 9. If you go straight ahead as far as that white house, you'll find the street you're looking for. 10. One is always short of money at the end of the month.

C. 1. Everybody must do his share. 2. Martha was quite frightened. 3. They aren't going to play today. Some of the players are ill. 4. Nobody likes rudeness. 5. People tend to talk about themselves and their families. 6. Something terrible has happened. 7. You are quite upset, Mary. What has happened to you?

8. Some of these knives aren't very sharp. 9. I know you don't like fish. I have something else for you. 10. We'll wash the dishes when the guests have all gone.

D. 1. Irene is quite proud of the skirt she made for herself at school. 2. Nobody knows what has become of her. 3. "Is there any (leg of) lamb left?" "No, we ate it all." 4. Has anybody any change? 5. If you worry, you don't sleep well. 6. If you boast too much, others don't like listening to you. 7. If you looked for the answer to each one of the questions a child asks, you would learn a great deal. 8. If you trust everybody, you are often disappointed. 9. Nobody admires a man who is selfish. 10. Is everything ready for the picnic?

VERB REVIEW

coudre

suffire

vivre

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Si tu (*coudre*) ma jupe ce soir, je pourrai la mettre demain. 2. Elle n'a pas eu le temps de sortir; elle (*coudre*) toute la soirée. 3. Cela irait plus vite si je le (*coudre*) à la machine. 4. Ma nouvelle robe est presque prête; demain je (*coudre*) les poches. 5. Il faut que je (*coudre*) cette blouse avant samedi. 6. Elles (*coudre*) mieux si elles se dépêchaient moins. 7. Si vous (*coudre*) ce bouton solidement, vous ne l'auriez pas perdu. 8. Une seule valise (*suffire*) si je n'avais pas tous ces cadeaux à emporter. 9. Si cela ne (*suffire*) pas, dites-le-moi. 10. Il faudra que cela (*suffire*); je ne peux pas t'en donner plus. 11. Cette somme (*suffire*) pour nos vacances si nous n'avions pas eu cet accident avec la voiture. 12. Cent cinquante dollars ne (*suffire*) pas pour votre voyage si vous descendez aux meilleurs hôtels. 13. Quand il venait de passer un examen, il (*suffire*) de le regarder pour savoir s'il avait réussi. 14. Il ne mange jamais de viande; il (*vivre*) de légumes et de fruits. 15. Nous croyions qu'elle allait mourir, mais le docteur nous assure qu'elle (*vivre*). 16. Quand vous (*vivre*) aussi longtemps que moi, vous jugerez les gens différemment. 17. Si ma grand-mère (*vivre*) encore, elle aurait quatre-vingt-onze ans. 18. Il était très malade; on doutait qu'il (*vivre*) plus de huit jours. 19. Vous (*vivre*) probablement vieux si vous meniez une vie plus régulière. 20. L'enfant est très déçu; son poisson rouge ne (*vivre*) que huit jours.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

11. change

55. people

83. yet

1. You'll have to go to the bank to change that hundred-dollar bill. 2. Has he told you yet what happened to him in Italy? 3. You change planes at Montreal. 4. There aren't many people on the beach in the month of June. 5. Haven't you swept the sidewalk yet? 6. He has changed jobs several times. 7. Why don't people like him? 8. I have the sink to clean yet. 9. There are many people who

have never visited the museum. 10. She had changed so much that I didn't recognize her. 11. How many people are you going to invite to the party? 12. This tie doesn't go with my suit. I'm going to change it. 13. Who spoke about government of the people, by the people, for the people? 14. I know there are Indians not far from here, and yet I have never seen any. 15. I changed the tablecloth yesterday and it's dirty already. 16. Have you seen the Smiths' new house yet? 17. I'm going to change schools next year. 18. She changes her mind a hundred times a day. 19. Couldn't we change the subject? 20. Aren't you going to change for the party?

Lesson 15

The Position of Adjectives

15.1 French adjectives which do not describe the noun they modify, seldom present any problem of position, since usage is generally the same as in English. In this category are cardinal and ordinal numbers, possessive adjectives, demonstrative adjectives, interrogative adjectives, negative adjectives, *etc.* The problem of position presents itself in the case of *qualifying* adjectives (*i.e.*, those which describe the noun they modify). There are no absolute rules for determining whether the adjective precedes or follows the noun. There are, however, certain general rules which are safe guides in the majority of cases.

15.2 Most qualifying adjectives normally follow the noun.

Ce pull-over rouge n'irait pas avec tes cheveux roux. That red pull-over wouldn't go with your red hair.

Quelle est la racine carrée de cent soixante-neuf? — Treize. "What is the square root of a hundred and sixty-nine?" "Thirteen."

Le riz constitue le fond de la nourriture chinoise. Rice constitutes the basis of Chinese food.

Je n'ai pas de blouse à manches courtes. I haven't a blouse with short sleeves.

15.3 These adjectives (and their comparative and superlative forms) normally precede the noun:

beau	grand	joli	petit
bon	gros	mauvais	vieux
gentil	jeune	nouveau	vilain

Ce petit garçon est toujours poli et de bonne humeur. That little boy is always polite and good-tempered.

Un poulain est un jeune cheval. A colt is a young horse.

Il fait vraiment un vilain temps pour le mois de mai. It is really nasty weather for the month of May.

15.4 The adjective **bon**, in the literal sense of *good*, should be avoided with the nouns **homme** and **femme**, since **le bonhomme** means *fellow, chap*; and **la bonne femme** means *simple, good-natured woman*.

Quelle est votre idée d'un homme de bien? What is your idea of a good (*i.e.*, *upright*) man?

Il n'y a pas assez d'hommes capables à la tête de cette compagnie. There are not enough good (*i.e.*, *capable*) men at the head of this company.

15.5 An adjective which normally follows the noun, precedes it when it does not serve to distinguish the noun, but merely indicates some quality already implied in it. (This seldom happens in the case of adjectives that are past participles, or those which denote religion or nationality.)

Comment se fait-il que la lente tortue soit arrivée avant le rapide lièvre? How is it that the slow tortoise arrived before the swift (*or* fast) hare?

Joyeux Noël! Merry Christmas!

15.6 An adjective which normally follows the noun, frequently precedes it in the case where the adjective is a monosyllable and the noun a polysyllable. (This does not happen if the adjective is a distinguishing mark or bears special stress.)

Après un bref séjour dans l'Ontario, il est allé tenter sa chance dans la Saskatchewan. After a short stay in Ontario, he went and tried his luck in Saskatchewan.

Nous avons fait une longue promenade dans les bois. We took (*or* went for) a long walk in the woods.

Philippe veut un pantalon long. Philip wants (a pair of) long trousers.

15.7 An adjective precedes a proper noun, unless the adjective is used as a distinguishing mark.

Mon fidèle Médor me suit partout. My faithful Fido follows me everywhere.

Savez-vous pourquoi les Français disent quelquefois «la perfide Albion» en parlant de l'Angleterre? Do you know why the French sometimes say "perfidious Albion" in speaking of England?

Qui peut nommer les six républiques de l'Amérique centrale? Who can name the six republics of Central America?

15.8 An adjective which normally precedes the noun (see 15.3) changes its position when it bears special stress.

Pour diriger ce programme d'expansion, il faudra un homme jeune avec des idées nouvelles. To direct this programme of expansion, it will take a *young* man with *new* ideas.

15.9 The adjective **grand**, modifying the noun **homme**, varies in meaning according to its position. Preceding the noun, it means *great* (*i.e.*, *famous*); following, it means *big* or *tall*. (For the case in which **homme** is modified both by **grand** and by another adjective, see 15.14.)

15.10 Certain other adjectives vary in meaning according to their position. (Some of the following are not qualifying adjectives, but are included here for the sake of convenience.)

	BEFORE THE NOUN	AFTER THE NOUN
ancien	former, old (= former)	ancient
brave	good, decent	brave, courageous
certain	certain (= some)	certain (= assured, fixed)
cher	dear (<i>in forms of address</i>)	dear (= beloved); dear (= expensive)
dernier	last (<i>i.e. final in a series</i>)	last (<i>i.e., the immediately preceding</i>)
différent	different (= various)	different (= unlike)
même	same	very
pauvre	poor (= wretched, deserving of pity)	poor (<i>i.e., not rich</i>)
premier	first	original
propre	own	clean
seul	only, single	alone
vrai	real, genuine	true

J'ai entendu trois versions différentes de l'incident.

I have heard three different versions of the incident.

Différentes personnes m'ont affirmé que c'est une histoire vraie.

Different people have assured me that it is a true story.

As-tu jamais vu une vraie girafe?

Have you ever seen a real giraffe?

La dernière fois que je l'ai vu? Je crois que c'était en décembre dernier.

The last time I saw him? I think it was last December.

Quelles matières premières le Canada exporte-t-il?

What raw materials does Canada export?

L'intelligence seule ne suffit pas; il faut aussi travailler.

Intelligence alone is not enough; one must also work.

15.11 The adjective **prochain** sometimes precedes and sometimes follows, although the meaning is the same in both cases. It follows in the expressions:

la semaine prochaine
 le mois prochain
 l'an prochain
 l'année prochaine
 dimanche prochain, *etc.*
 en janvier prochain, *etc.*
 le printemps prochain, *etc.*
 à Noël prochain
 à Pâques prochain

In other cases **prochain** precedes the noun (*e.g., la prochaine fois, notre prochain voyage*).

15.12 When a noun is modified by two adjectives, each one takes its position according to the preceding rules.

Ils ont loué une gentille petite maison à la campagne.

They have rented a nice little house in the country.

C'est le meilleur roman policier que j'aie jamais lu.

That is the best detective story I have ever read.

15.13 When both adjectives follow the noun, they are joined by **et**, unless the noun and the first adjective form a unit modified by the second adjective.

C'était une boutique sombre et sale dans une rue étroite et boueuse.

It was a dark, dirty shop in a narrow, muddy street.

Qu'est-ce que c'est que la Marseillaise? — C'est l'hymne national français.

"What is the *Marseillaise*?" "It's the French national anthem."

15.14 When the noun **homme** is modified both by **grand** and by some other adjective describing a physical characteristic, then **grand** means *big* or *tall* and takes its position according to the stress it bears.

Comment s'appelle ce grand homme brun près de la fenêtre?

What is the name of that tall, dark man near the window?

Les géants étaient des hommes très grands et très forts dans les contes de fées. (*Mon Premier Larousse*)

Giants were very tall, very strong men in fairy tales.

15.15 The following examples illustrate the application of the preceding rules when a noun is modified by more than two adjectives.

C'est un pauvre vieux professeur désillusionné.

He's a poor old disillusioned teacher.

Sa petite figure ronde et souriante me rappelle son arrière-grand-mère.

Her little, round, smiling face reminds me of her great-grandmother.

Les derniers haricots verts congelés que j'ai achetés étaient exceptionnellement tendres.

The last frozen green beans I bought were exceptionally tender.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. Next week I'm going to see a French film for the first time. 2. "Who is that nice girl who was talking with you a few minutes ago?" "She's an old pupil of mine." 3. Here is some good fresh bread, some butter, and some cold meat. Make yourself a sandwich. 4. Did you see the famous column in Vendôme Square? 5. "Do you know Saint-Honoré Street?" "Yes, it's a long, narrow street, isn't it?" 6. "Are you going to Brussels?" "Yes, we'll be going to Belgium after a short stay in Switzerland." 7. Look at those lovely red velvet curtains! 8. That poor old woman is quite deaf. 9. They have just bought a big white house near the park. 10. Who can name five great men of the fifteenth century?

B. 1. There is always room in this store for good men. 2. My next boat will be bigger than this one. 3. When you think of St. Nicholas, you think of a cheerful little white-haired man, who carries a bag filled with presents for good children. 4. There used to be (*There were formerly*) good and bad fairies. 5. That tall, pale man over there is one of my patients. 6. She has beautiful white teeth, big black eyes, and a pretty little nose. 7. What is that yellow bird that looks like a canary? 8. Is frozen meat inferior to fresh meat? 9. I saw a pretty little green dress downtown today. 10. He had his first long trousers when he was thirteen years old.

C. 1. Which is the largest country in central Europe? 2. It's a different story every time he tells it. 3. I'll take the fast train and I'll be in New York before eight o'clock. 4. Winter is the cold season. Which is the warm season? 5. He always answers his children's questions with unusual patience. 6. The guest of honour was a very intelligent and very interesting gentleman. 7. We are planning to go to Bermuda next January. 8. Money alone doesn't satisfy one. 9. Put the clean plates in the cupboard. 10. Women prefer short-sleeved dresses in summer, but long-sleeved ones (*those with long sleeves*) in winter.

D. 1. There are a few warm rolls in the oven. 2. What raw materials does England import? 3. In spite of his age he has *young* ideas. 4. Are they real pearls in that necklace? 5. That muddy car over there is ours. 6. If you like detective stories, you will have to read this book. 7. "My hands and feet are as cold as ice." "Here's some good hot soup." 8. The national anthem is sung every morning at nine o'clock in our school. 9. Everybody has heard of the famous Jacques Cartier. 10. His only fault is that he likes money too much.

VERB REVIEW

joindre

peindre

se plaindre

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. (*Joindre*) les mains! 2. Même si nous (*joindre*) les deux cordes, elles n'auraient pas été assez longues. 3. La prochaine fois je (*joindre*) une photo à ma lettre. 4. Comment s'appelle la partie du corps qui (*joindre*) la tête aux épaules? 5. Il faut que tu (*joindre*) ces deux morceaux de bois avec de la colle. 6. Si nous (*joindre*) nos efforts, nous serions sûrs de réussir. 7. J'ai dit que je les (*peindre*) dès que j'en aurais le temps. 8. Les bancs qu'il (*peindre*) hier ne sont pas encore secs. 9. Il est trop tard pour finir aujourd'hui; nous (*peindre*) le reste demain. 10. Je n'aime pas qu'on me dérange quand je (*peindre*). 11. Elle ne veut pas que je (*peindre*) son portrait. 12. Dès que je (*peindre*) la cuisine, je commencerai la salle de bains. 13. Cette pièce serait plus claire si tu (*peindre*) les murs en jaune. 14. Il est très difficile; il (*se plaindre*) à chaque instant. 15. Si je (*se plaindre*), il ne m'écouterait pas. 16. Tu as été très sage; tu ne (*se plaindre*) pas une seule fois. 17. Je n'aime pas que vous (*se plaindre*) tout le temps. 18. Nous ne (*se plaindre*) pas si nous croyions qu'il faisait de son mieux. 19. Elle (*se plaindre*) si le service n'avait pas été bon. 20. Ils (*se plaindre*) quand ils sauront que vous ne leur avez pas retenu de chambre.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

35. long

49. new

50. next

53. old

1. Our next house will be smaller than this one. 2. Josephine already has several blouses with long sleeves. 3. In spite of my seventy years, I don't feel old. 4. Our new airport is farther than the old one from the centre of the city. 5. She had a headache on going to bed; the next morning she had the measles. 6. How many new cars were sold in Ontario last month? 7. Several old men were sitting on benches in front of the cathedral. 8. Did you play tennis long this afternoon? 9. The eleventh of November falls on a Sunday next year. 10. Leave Toronto in the afternoon; have lunch the next day in Paris. 11. The new head of this department has some really new ideas. 12. I've just finished a rather long detective story. 13. Skip the first sentence of the next exercise. 14. I've invited an old class-mate for dinner. 15. What a morning! First I spilled the coffee, next I cut my finger, next I noticed I had no gas, and finally I lost my wallet. 16. How long do you advise me to stay in Sicily? 17. Next time I'm going to buy myself a *new* boat. 18. I'd like to introduce you to my old dancing teacher. 19. You must be older than I am. 20. I'd like to show you an absolutely new can opener.

Lesson 16

The Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

16.1 The comparative form of the adjective is considered under three headings: **INFERIORITY** (where one person or thing is smaller, less interesting, *etc.*, than another); **EQUALITY** (where one person or thing is as big, as interesting, *etc.*, as another); and **SUPERIORITY** (where one person or thing is bigger, more interesting, *etc.*, than another). The second half of the comparison is sometimes merely implied.

16.2 The formula for the comparative of inferiority of an adjective is **moins . . .** (**que . . .**).

Est-ce que les dattes sont moins chères que les figues? Are dates less expensive than figs?

Aujourd'hui j'ai eu une journée moins fatigante. I had a less tiring day today.

16.3 If the second half of the comparison is a clause, and if the main verb is in the affirmative (not the negative or interrogative), **ne** is frequently inserted before the verb of the comparative clause. (Although this is a mark of careful usage, it is not necessary; and in any case, the **ne** never has negative force.)

Il est moins enthousiaste que je (ne) croyais. He is less enthusiastic than I thought.

16.4 The formula for the comparative of equality of an adjective is **aussi . . .** (**que . . .**). (In the negative, **aussi** may be replaced by **si**.)

Est-ce que l'agneau est aussi nourrissant que le bœuf? Is lamb as nourishing as beef?

Le coton n'est pas aussi (or si) chaud que la laine. Cotton is not as (or so) warm as wool.

16.5 The negative form of the comparative of equality (illustrated by the second example in 16.4) is much commoner in English than in French, which usually seems to prefer the comparative of inferiority.

Le coton est moins chaud que la laine. Cotton is not as (or so) warm as wool (*lit. Cotton is less warm than wool*).

16.6 In expressions corresponding to *as white as a sheet, as gentle as a lamb, etc.*, French uses **comme**, rather than **aussi . . . que . . .** The commonest of these are:

blanc comme un linge	as white as a sheet (<i>lit. a piece of linen</i>)
doux comme un agneau	as meek (<i>or gentle</i>) as a lamb
pâle comme un mort	as pale as death (<i>lit. a dead man</i>)
pâle comme la mort	as pale as death
rouge comme une écrevisse	as red as a beet (<i>lit. a crayfish</i>)
sage comme une image	as good (<i>i.e., well-behaved</i>) as gold (<i>lit. a picture</i>)
sourd comme un pot	as deaf as a post (<i>lit. a jug</i>)
vieux comme le monde	as old as the hills (<i>lit. the world</i>)

16.7 The formula for the comparative of superiority of an adjective is **plus . . . (que . . .)**. (The **plus** is, of course, not used with the irregular forms **meilleur** (better), **moindre** (less, lesser, smaller), **pire** (worse). The last two of these forms are sometimes replaced by **plus petit** and **plus mauvais**, respectively.)

L'acier est-il plus dur que le fer?	Is steel harder than iron?
Le sable est (beaucoup) plus fin ici que partout ailleurs.	The sand is (much) finer here than anywhere (<i>lit. everywhere</i>) else.
Le raisin est (bien) meilleur cette année, n'est-ce pas?	Grapes are (much) better this year, aren't they?
Avez-vous goûté la langue? — Oui, elle est encore pire (or plus mauvaise) que le jambon.	"Have you tasted the tongue?" "Yes, it is even worse than the ham."

16.8 If the second half of the comparison is a clause, and if the main verb is in the affirmative (not the negative or interrogative), **ne** is frequently inserted before the verb of the comparative clause. (Although this is a mark of careful usage, it is not necessary; and in any case, the **ne** never has negative force.)

Cette rue est beaucoup plus bruyante que nous (n')avons espéré.	This street is much noisier than we had hoped.
--	--

16.9 A form such as *twice as big (as . . .)* is expressed in French by the comparative of superiority.

Le plomb est quatre fois plus lourd que l'aluminium.	Lead is four times as heavy as aluminium.
---	---

16.10 Forms such as *bigger and bigger, more and more difficult, less and less important*, are expressed in French by **de plus en plus . . .** and **de moins en moins . . .**

Les truites deviennent de plus en plus rares dans ce ruisseau.	Trout are getting scarcer and scarcer in this stream.
Je deviens de moins en moins gourmand.	I am getting less and less fond of sweet things.

16.11 The forms *The more . . . the more . . .*, *The less . . . the less . . .*, etc., are

expressed in French by **Plus . . . plus . . . , Moins . . . moins . . . , etc.**

Plus le programme est court, plus je le trouve intéressant. The shorter the programme (is), the more interesting I find it.

Plus les enfants sont gâtés, moins ils sont reconnaissants. The more spoiled children are, the less grateful they are.

16.12 The irregular form **meilleur** is placed at the head of its clause.

Plus le maïs est frais, meilleur il est. The fresher corn is, the better it is.

16.13 A noun modified by an adjective in the superlative is necessarily accompanied by the definite article or a possessive adjective, as shown in 16.14, 16.15, 16.16, and 16.17.

16.14 When the adjective follows the noun, the superlative is formed by placing the appropriate form of the definite article before the comparative (of inferiority or superiority, as the case may be).

C'est mon souvenir le plus triste. That's my saddest memory.

16.15 When the adjective precedes the noun, the presence of the definite article or possessive adjective, which necessarily accompany the noun, prevents the addition of the definite article referred to in the preceding rule.

À mon avis le bouleau est le plus bel arbre de tous. In my opinion the birch is the finest tree of all.

Mlle Rigaud est notre meilleure vendeuse. Miss Rigaud is our best sales-lady.

16.16 Similarly, the definite article is not added when the noun is merely understood.

Cette couverture est la plus chaude et la plus légère de toutes. This blanket is the warmest and lightest (one) of all.

Quand je passerai les pêches, ne prends pas la plus grosse. When I pass the peaches, don't take the biggest (one).

16.17 When a phrase such as *of all* or *in the world* accompanies the superlative (or its equivalents **premier, dernier, seul**), French always uses the preposition **de**, regardless of the English preposition.

Quel est le port le plus actif de l'Amérique du Nord? Which is the busiest port in North America?

Je ne peux pas lire le dernier mot de cette phrase. I can't read the last word in this sentence.

16.18 English always distinguishes between the comparative and superlative, e.g., *This boy is the older of the two, the oldest of the three*. In French, however, the presence of the definite article in such a case makes the comparative and superlative forms indistinguishable.

Laquelle de ces deux jeunes filles est la plus âgée? Which (one) of these two girls is the older?

Laquelle de ces trois jeunes filles est la plus âgée? Which (one) of these three girls is the oldest?

16.19 Sometimes the word *most* is merely the equivalent of *very* or *extremely*. The corresponding French is illustrated in the following examples.

C'est un air des plus monotones. It's a most monotonous tune.

C'est très (or extrêmement) intéressant. That is most interesting.

16.20 As in the case of the adjective, the comparative form of the adverb is considered under the three headings of INFERIORITY, EQUALITY, and SUPERIORITY. The second half of the comparison is sometimes merely implied.

16.21 The formula for the comparative of inferiority is **moins . . . (que . . .)**.

Je souffre moins depuis que j'ai suivi ce traitement. I have been suffering less since I took that treatment.

Il parle le russe moins couramment que son cousin. He speaks Russian less fluently than his cousin (does).

Les Espagnols boivent moins de vin que les Français. Spaniards drink less wine than Frenchmen.

16.22 If the second half of the comparison is a clause, and if the main verb is in the affirmative (not the negative or interrogative), **ne** is frequently inserted before the verb of the comparative clause. (Although this is a mark of careful usage, it is not necessary; and in any case, the **ne** never has negative force.)

Cet enfant pèse moins qu'il (ne) devrait pour sa taille. This child weighs less than he should for his height (*or* size).

16.23 There are two formulas for the comparative of equality of an adverb, **aussi . . . (que . . .)** and **autant . . . (que . . .)**. (In the negative, **aussi** and **autant** may usually be replaced by **si** and **tant**, respectively.) The difference between these two formulas is illustrated by the following examples.

Est-ce qu'elle range ses affaires aussi soigneusement que sa sœur? Does she put her things away as carefully as her sister (does)?

Je ne me fatigue pas aussi (or si) vite qu'avant. I don't get tired as (*or* so) quickly as I used to (*lit. as before*).

C'est autant votre faute que la mienne. It's as much your fault as mine.

Les grandes personnes ne posent pas autant (or tant) de questions que les enfants, n'est-ce pas? Grown-ups don't ask as (*or* so) many questions as children, do they?

16.24 Forms such as *as quickly as possible*, *as much as possible*, may be expressed in French by the comparative of equality, but are more commonly expressed by the superlative.

Je voudrais être le plus près possible du radiateur. I'd like to be as close as possible to the radiator.

Il fait toujours le moins de liaisons possible (*i.e., qu'il est possible de faire*). He always makes as few liaisons as possible.

16.25 The formula for the comparative of superiority of an adverb is **plus . . . (que . . .)**. The **plus** is, of course, not used with the irregular forms **mieux** (better) and **pis** (worse). The latter of these forms is used only in certain fixed expressions, such as **tant pis** (too bad, it can't be helped); otherwise, it is replaced by **plus mal** or **moins bien**, according to the sense.

Il bégaye (beaucoup) plus quand il est gêné. He stutters (much) more when he is embarrassed.

Je vous écrirai plus longuement la prochaine fois. I will write to you at greater length (the) next time.

J'ai plus de soucis que toi. I have (*or* I've got) more worries than you (have).

Ce marchand vend plus de cuisinières électriques que de machines à laver. This dealer sells more electric stoves than washing-machines.

Comment va-t-il ce matin? — Il va un peu mieux (un peu moins bien). "How is he this morning?" "He's a little better (a little worse)."

Il se conduit plus mal que jamais. He is behaving worse than ever.

16.26 If the second half of the comparison is a clause, and if the main verb is in the affirmative (not the negative or interrogative), **ne** is frequently inserted before the verb of the comparative clause. (Although this is a mark of careful usage, it is not necessary; and in any case, the **ne** never has negative force.)

Il a tendance à dépenser plus qu'il (ne) gagne. He has a tendency to spend more than he earns.

16.27 A form such as *twice as quickly* (*as . . .*) is expressed in French by the comparative of superiority.

Je parie que je peux lancer la balle deux fois plus loin que ça. I bet I can throw the ball twice as far as that.

16.28 Forms such as *more and more*, *less and less*, *farther and farther*, are expressed in French by **de plus en plus** (. . .) and **de moins en moins** (. . .).

Elle ressemble de plus en plus à son grand-père. She looks more and more like her grandfather.

Il criait de plus en plus fort quand il s'excitait. He used to shout louder and louder when he got excited.

Je suis découragé; il me semble que je fais de moins en moins de progrès.

I am discouraged; I seem to be (*lit. it seems to me that I am*) making less and less progress.

16.29 The forms *The more . . . the more . . .*, *The less . . . the less . . .*, etc., are expressed in French by **Plus . . . plus . . .**, **Moins . . . moins . . .**, etc.

Plus on est de fous, plus on rit.

The more the merrier (*lit. The more fools there are, the more one laughs*).

Moins il se sent à l'aise, plus il chante faux.

The less comfortable (*i.e., at ease*) he feels, the more out of tune he sings.

16.30 The irregular form **mieux** is placed at the head of its clause.

Moins je fume, mieux je me porte.

The less I smoke, the better I am (*i.e., in health*).

16.31 *Than* followed by a numeral (or some equivalent, such as a fraction) is normally translated by **de**. However, it is translated by **que** if it introduces a clause. (Usually the verb of this clause is merely understood.)

On étouffe ici. Il doit y avoir plus de quatre-vingts.

It's stifling (in) here. It must be over (*lit. more than*) eighty.

Cet article rappelle au public qu'un tram transporte plus de voyageurs qu'une douzaine de voitures particulières.

This article reminds the public that a streetcar carries more passengers than a dozen private cars (do).

16.32 The superlative of an adverb is formed by placing the definite article **le** before the comparative (of inferiority or superiority, as the case may be). When a phrase such as *of all* or *in the world* accompanies the superlative, French always uses the preposition **de**, regardless of the English preposition.

C'est lui qui travaille le mieux de toute la classe.

He's the one who works the best in the whole class.

16.33 As in the case of the adjective, the comparative and superlative forms of a French adverb are sometimes indistinguishable.

Laquelle de ces deux montres marche le mieux?

Which one of these two watches runs (*or goes*) (the) better?

Laquelle de toutes ces montres marche le mieux?

Which one of all these watches runs (*or goes*) (the) best?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. Corsica is closer to Italy than Sardinia is. 2. He's the one who complains the most. 3. "The tarts and sandwiches for the party will taste better if we make them ourselves." "Yes, and they will be less expensive." 4. This exercise is longer than the next one, but it isn't as hard. 5. Is fish as nourishing as meat? 6. Lead is not as heavy as mercury. 7. Don't be afraid of this horse! He's as

gentle as a lamb. 8. Cotton is not as dear as wool, but wool is a great deal warmer. 9. Brazil is sixteen times as big as France. 10. Horses are getting scarcer and scarcer in the city.

B. 1. The more embarrassed he is, the more he stutters. 2. The younger you are, the less tired you are at the end of the day. 3. Is Quebec the oldest city in Canada? 4. The more I sleep, the better I work the next day. 5. One of the most famous towers in the world is the leaning tower of Pisa. 6. You tend to talk less if you stutter. 7. Does a bus carry as many passengers as a streetcar? 8. The New York sky-scrapers are the highest in the world. 9. You haven't as many mosquito bites as I have. 10. We'll put the refrigerator as far away from the stove as possible.

C. 1. He knows Portuguese better than Spanish. 2. Someone told me you were ill. Are you better now? 3. I'm afraid we have more enthusiasm than experience. 4. Roger writes French better than he speaks it. 5. Americans drink more milk than the French do. 6. It will take ten times as long to go to the village if we walk. 7. The more you listen to him, the more enthusiastic you are. 8. We have more than a dozen of these spoons. 9. Which is the largest republic in Central America? 10. The best blankets are usually the lightest ones.

D. 1. The twins aren't as fond of sports as our other children. 2. She got dressed as quickly as possible. 3. The Nile is one of the most important rivers in the world. 4. She gets tired much more quickly than she used to. 5. Which of the two islands is the larger, Iceland or Newfoundland? 6. The lighter a cake (is), the better it is. 7. He earns less than I thought. 8. I've just read a most interesting article. 9. He goes to bed later and later. 10. Who types the fastest in this class?

VERB REVIEW

battre

cueillir

se taire

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Hier nous les (*battre*) quatre à deux. 2. Si tu joues comme je te dis, tu le (*battre*) facilement. 3. Le petit garçon pleure quand les autres le (*battre*). 4. Maintenant il faut que je (*battre*) la crème. 5. Il (*battre*) le record s'il était en meilleure forme. 6. Si son fils lui avait désobéi, il le (*battre*). 7. Cela m'aiderait si vous (*battre*) les œufs. 8. (*Cueillir*) toutes les fleurs que vous voudrez. 9. Demain je (*cueillir*) les fraises. 10. Les fleurs que je (*cueillir*) la veille étaient déjà fanées. 11. Pendant qu'ils (*cueillir*) les pommes, le fermier les a vus. 12. Il faudra que nous (*cueillir*) quelques roses pour mettre sur la table. 13. Si nous partions, les enfants des voisins (*cueillir*) toutes nos cerises. 14. Quand il n'avait rien d'intéressant à dire, il (*se taire*). 15. Si j'étais vous, je (*se taire*). 16. (*Se taire*) pendant que je parle au téléphone, a dit la mère à l'enfant. 17. Dès qu'il est entré, nous (*se taire*). 18. J'aimerais qu'il (*se taire*). 19. Dès que vous (*se taire*) je vous raconterai ce qui s'est passé. 20. Est-ce que vous (*se taire*) si vous aviez découvert le secret?

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

6. as

45. more

47. most

1. I don't speak French as fluently as my sister. 2. More than twenty of my friends have had the flu this winter. 3. Most of his adventures took place among the Arabs. 4. The old gentleman was as deaf as a post. 5. Would you like a little more ice cream? 6. He got up as if to go out. 7. This must be the most comfortable train in the world. 8. As for my plans, don't say anything to anybody. 9. Philip told me you don't smoke any more. 10. Helen will have to act as guide. 11. As I was cleaning behind the refrigerator I found a two-dollar bill. 12. I'm more and more discouraged. 13. I'll be dressed as a ghost. 14. He's a most congenial neighbour. 15. I am the same age as you. 16. You swallow as if you had a sore throat. 17. The more one earns, the more one spends. 18. As for taking that course, it's not worth while. 19. I reached (*arrived at*) the airport just as the plane was taking off. 20. As he was disguised, I didn't recognize him.

Lesson 17

Negation

17.1 A negative form in French normally consists of two elements. The first element is the particle **ne**, which always precedes the verb and also precedes any conjunctive pronoun objects (including **y** and **en**). The second element is an adverb, an adjective, or a pronoun, which takes its position according to its relation in the sentence.

17.2 The common negative adverbs are **pas**, **plus**, **jamais**, **ni**, **nulle part** and **que**. Less commonly used are: **point** (usually replaced by **pas**), **guère** (usually replaced by **presque pas**), **aucunement** (usually replaced by **pas du tout**), and **nullement** (usually replaced by **pas du tout**).

Ne vous fâchez pas!

Don't get angry!

Il n'avait que seize ans.

He was only sixteen (years old).

Le traité de paix ne sera signé que vendredi.

The peace treaty will not be signed until Friday (*lit. will be signed only on Friday*).

Ni la faim ni la fatigue n'avaient pu décourager les défenseurs du pont.

Neither hunger nor fatigue had been able to discourage the defenders of the bridge.

17.3 The common negative adjective is **aucun**. Less commonly used is **nul**. These are stressed forms, the equivalent of **pas un seul**, and are used only in the singular. (The English adjective *no*, unstressed or followed by a plural, is rendered by **pas de**.)

Je vous assure qu'il n'y a aucun danger.

I assure you that there is (absolutely) no danger.

Cette école n'a pas de salle de gymnastique.

That school has no gymnasium.

17.4 The common negative pronouns are **personne**, **rien** and **aucun**. Less commonly used is **nul**. **Aucun** and **nul** are not used in the plural.

Personne n'est d'accord avec vous sur ce point.

Nobody agrees with you on that point.

Aucun des joueurs n'a été blessé.

None of the players was (*or were or got*) hurt.

17.5 Two or more negative expressions may be used together, but the **ne** occurs only once.

Je ne vous donnerai plus jamais rien. I'll never give you anything again.

17.6 The **ne** cannot be used if there is no verb.

Qu'est-ce que vous avez? — Rien. "What's the matter with you?" "Nothing."

17.7 The **ne** is omitted following the preposition **sans**.

Elle est montée se coucher sans dire bonsoir à personne. She went up to bed without saying good night to anybody.

17.8 In literature and in elegant speech, **pas** is frequently omitted with **pouvoir**, **savoir**, **cesser**, and **oser**. (It is not recommended that this be imitated in simple conversation.)

Il n'osait (pas) bouger. He dared not move.

17.9 When the verb is in a compound tense, the negative adverbs **pas**, **point**, **plus**, **jamais**, **guère**, and the negative pronoun **rien** (if it is the direct object) precede the past participle.

Mon chien n'a jamais mordu personne. My dog has never bitten anybody.

Nous n'avions jamais rien vu de pareil. We had never seen anything like it (*lit. nothing similar*).

Elle était là mais elle ne s'est occupée de rien. She was there but she didn't look after anything.

17.10 Similarly, the negative adverbs **pas**, **point**, **plus**, **jamais**, **guère**, and the negative pronoun **rien** (if it is the direct object) precede an infinitive completing one of the auxiliary verbs **aller**, **devoir**, **pouvoir**.

Je ne vais plus jamais rien prêter à personne. I am never going to lend anything to anybody again.

17.11 In other cases where an infinitive is made negative, both the **ne** and the **pas**, **point**, **plus**, **jamais**, **guère**, and the **rien** (if it is the direct object) precede the infinitive, and usually precede any conjunctive pronoun objects (including **y** and **en**).

Il vaudrait mieux ne jamais leur en parler. It would be better never to speak to them about it.

Ils ont promis de ne rien négliger pendant notre absence. They have promised not to neglect anything during our absence.

17.12 The negative form of **et . . . aussi** is **ni . . . non plus**. (The **non plus** is sometimes merely understood.)

J'aime beaucoup la moutarde.
— (Et) moi aussi.

"I'm very fond of mustard." "So am I."

Je n'aime pas beaucoup la moutarde.
— (Ni) moi non plus.

"I'm not very fond of mustard."
"I'm not either (*or* Neither am I *or* Nor am I)."

J'ai fini mon algèbre, et ma géométrie aussi.

I have finished my algebra, and my geometry too.

Je n'ai pas fini mon algèbre, ni ma géométrie (non plus).

I haven't finished my algebra, or my geometry (either).

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. Don't be discouraged. You are really making progress. 2. There used to be (*There were formerly*) plenty of trout in this stream, but there aren't many any more. 3. "Where did you go?" "Nowhere." 4. You'll never be allowed to drive that car. It has neither brakes nor headlights. 5. Nothing ever frightens that child. 6. If you have bees, you never have to buy any honey. 7. Not one of these experiments presents any difficulty. 8. I didn't know anybody at the party. 9. What worries me is that she doesn't write to anybody any more. 10. "What did you do?" "Nothing."

B. 1. She left without speaking to anyone. 2. We haven't any apricots or peaches today. Would you like a pineapple? 3. "I haven't translated all the sentences yet." "Neither have I." 4. Aren't you hungry? You've scarcely eaten anything. 5. I clean the cupboards every three months, and I've never found any moths in them. 6. She says she is never going to borrow anything from anyone again. 7. Promise me never to mention it to her. 8. The doctor told me not to eat any candy or pastry. 9. I'm not going to write to him any more. He has never answered any of my letters. 10. I don't like corn, or spinach either.

C. 1. Neither Spanish nor Italian is too hard to learn if you already know French. 2. None of these telephone numbers have been changed. 3. Nobody could be more selfish than he is. 4. What a queer guest! He left without thanking us. 5. He advised us not to try our luck in Australia. 6. I have never seen a giraffe, nor an elephant either. 7. He says he won't have any oats or buckwheat this year. 8. He never wants to go there again. 9. We've spent too much this week. We've only two dollars left. 10. He never confides in anyone any more. He has scarcely any friends.

D. 1. I haven't a dog, but my uncle has promised to give me one. 2. Her parents never scold her. 3. She hasn't been suffering any more since she took that treatment. 4. It's a pity our school has no orchestra. 5. If you spend everything you earn, you'll never be a millionaire. 6. She won't be six until next January. 7. There will never be enough good engineers. 8. He was sure he was right, but nobody agreed with him. 9. Not one of the pupils was able to name the six republics of Central America. 10. Some of the passengers were hurt, but nobody was killed.

VERB REVIEW

convaincre

fuir, s'enfuir

résoudre

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Je ferai ce qu'il demande s'il me (*convaincre*) que c'est vraiment nécessaire.
2. Nous les (*convaincre*) finalement si nous persistons.
3. J'ai peur que tu ne le (*convaincre*) pas.
4. Si tu le (*convaincre*), cela nous rendrait un grand service.
5. Je le (*convaincre*) facilement s'il voulait m'écouter.
6. Je suis sûr que je les (*convaincre*) si j'avais été là.
7. L'hiver (*fuir*); voici enfin le printemps.
8. On dit toujours que le temps (*fuir*).
9. Il vaudrait mieux que vous (*fuir*) ce danger.
10. Il lui semblait que les années (*fuir*) de plus en plus vite.
11. Les voleurs (*s'enfuir*) s'ils entendaient la police arriver.
12. Le général croit que l'ennemi (*s'enfuir*) quand nous attaquerons.
13. S'ils (*s'enfuir*) de leur poste, nous aurions perdu la bataille.
14. Quand ils (*résoudre*) de faire une chose, ils la font.
15. Vous ne (*résoudre*) jamais cette équation si vous commencez comme cela.
16. Voilà, j'ai fini. Je (*résoudre*) tous les problèmes.
17. Je crois que nous (*résoudre*) la difficulté plus vite si nous prenions le temps de réfléchir.
18. Il faut absolument que je (*résoudre*) ces équations pour demain.
19. Si je (*résoudre*) le problème financier, les autres seront plus faciles.
20. Si nous (*résoudre*) cette dernière difficulté, tout irait bien.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

17. first

54. only

1. She was already playing the violin very well when she was only ten years old.
2. Only a heavy rain can save the crop.
3. The first time I saw him he was in uniform.
4. Of all the subjects, the only ones I really like are French and mathematics.
5. Irene and Josephine left first.
6. There are only two eggs in this cake.
7. At first this school had no gymnasium.
8. The only language he speaks is Russian.
9. First we'll look for a piece of land, then we'll think about the house.
10. Only he could tell you whom he is going to leave his fortune to.
11. An only child is often spoiled.
12. First I'm going to have a game of tennis with William, then I'm going to do some shopping.
13. "Isn't it a little warm here?" "It's only seventy."
14. I have only one problem left to solve.
15. At first I found the language very difficult.
16. Only one of these sentences is wrong.
17. I didn't give him the magazine; I only lent it to him.
18. First of all, we'll have to prepare the vegetables.
19. He stutters only when he is embarrassed.
20. I wasn't touching it; I was only looking at it.

Lesson 18

Interrogation

18.1 In general, interrogative forms in French may be divided into two groups, those with **est-ce que** and those without. The use of forms without **est-ce que** is considered a mark of careful speech; but in simple conversation, such forms often appear stilted and are avoided in favour of forms with **est-ce que** (except as explained in 18.9).

18.2 When used, **est-ce que** is placed before the subject.

Est-ce qu'il fait très chaud dehors? Is it very warm out(side)?

Est-ce que le réservoir est complètement vide? Is the tank completely empty?

Pourquoi est-ce que ces pommes ont pourri si vite? Why have these apples gone bad so quickly?

Dans quel tiroir est-ce que vous mettez les torchons? Which drawer do you put the tea-towels in?

Quelles cartes postales est-ce que vous avez choisies? Which postcards did you choose?

Qui est-ce que vous soupçonnez? Whom do you suspect?

Qu'est-ce que vous avez à lui reprocher? What fault have you to find with him?

18.3 The interrogative of the first person singular of the present indicative is expressed almost exclusively by the use of **est-ce que**. The only commonly used forms without **est-ce que** are **ai-je?**, **suis-je?**, and **puis-je?** The forms **dis-je?**, **dois-je?**, **sais-je?** and **vois-je?** are occasionally found, but other forms are either very rare or non-existent.

Est-ce que je vous dérange? Am I disturbing you?

Puis-je (or Est-ce que je peux or Est-ce que je puis) vous demander un petit service? May I ask you a small favour?

18.4 **Est-ce que** cannot be used when the subject is an interrogative expression (or when it is accompanied by an interrogative expression).

Qui (est-ce qui) m'a poussé?	Who pushed me?
Quels détails vous ont frappé le plus?	Which details struck you most?
Lesquelles de toutes ces fermes sont à vendre?	Which of all those farms are for sale?
Combien des élèves de ta classe ont eu la rougeole?	How many of the pupils in your class have had the measles?

18.5 When **est-ce que** is not used, the subject and verb are inverted if the subject is a personal pronoun or **ce** or **on**. (See 18.3 for the limitation on this inverted form with **je**.)

Pourquoi suspend-il toujours son imperméable mouillé au vestiaire?	Why does he always hang (up) his wet raincoat in the (coat-)closet?
Est-ce difficile? — Pas très.	"Is it difficult (<i>or</i> hard)?" "Not very."
Comment vide-t-on cet aspirateur?	How do you (<i>or</i> does one) empty this vacuum-cleaner?

18.6 When **est-ce que** is not used, a noun subject remains in front of the verb and is repeated after the verb in the form of a personal pronoun.

Pourquoi le ciel est-il rouge au coucher du soleil?	Why is the sky red at sunset?
Quel âge votre belle-sœur a-t-elle? — Vingt et un ans.	"How old is your sister-in-law?" "Twenty-one."
Qui le patron va-t-il envoyer au congrès?	Whom is the boss going to send to the convention?

18.7 Pronouns, except for the interrogatives (**qui**, **lequel**, **laquelle**, **lesquels**, **lesquelles**), the personal pronouns, and **ce** and **on**, follow the preceding rule for nouns.

Quelqu'un a-t-il déjà résolu ce problème?	Has anyone solved this problem yet?
Cela vous intéresse-t-il?	Does that interest you?
Ma voiture est en réparation. La vôtre est-elle disponible?	My car is being repaired. Is yours available?

18.8 Contrary to the rules in 18.6 and 18.7, the subject follows the verb and is not repeated in the form of a personal pronoun when the sentence contains **quel** (as a predicate adjective), **qui** (as a subjective completion), or **que** (either as a subjective completion or a direct object).

Quelle est la différence entre un lapin et un lièvre?	What is the difference between a rabbit and a hare?
Quels (<i>or</i> Qui) sont ces messieurs?	Who are those gentlemen?

De tous ces parfums, quel est celui qui vous plaît le plus? Of all these perfumes, which is the one you like best?

Que sont devenus les Marchand? What has become of the Marchands?

Que désire Suzanne pour son anniversaire? What does Susan want for her birthday?

18.9 There are some instances where it is possible to use either of the types of inversion illustrated in 18.6 and 18.8. In certain cases the latter type is used almost exclusively (even in preference to the **est-ce que** form). The commonest of these are:

Où est (sont) . . . ?
 Où se trouve(nt) . . . ?
 Où va (vont) . . . ?
 De quel côté est (sont) . . . ?
 À qui est (sont) . . . ?
 De qui est (sont) . . . ?
 Comment est (sont) . . . ?
 Comment va (vont) . . . ?
 Comment s'appelle(nt) . . . ?
 Comment s'écrit . . . ?
 Combien coûte(nt) . . . ?
 Combien vaut (valent) . . . ?
 De quelle couleur est (sont) . . . ?
 À quoi sert (servent) . . . ?

In other cases, it is always safer to use the type of inversion in 18.6 or the **est-ce que** form.

De quel côté est (or se trouve) la gare? Which way is the station?

Comment sont les saucisses aujourd'hui? What are the sausages like today?

Comment va votre rhume? How is your cold?

Combien a coûté ceci? How much did this cost?

À quoi sert cette corde? — À attacher le bébé au perron. "What's that rope for?" "For tying the baby to the steps."

18.10 Questions of the type illustrated in sections 18.8 and 18.9 retain the inversion in the indirect form. (In some cases, the non-inverted form is possible, but it is safer always to use the inverted form.)

J'aimerais savoir quels (or qui) sont ces messieurs. I'd like to know who those gentlemen are.

Je me demande ce que sont devenus les Marchand (or ce que les Marchand sont devenus). I wonder what has become of the Marchands.

Dites-moi comment sont les saucisses aujourd'hui. Tell me what the sausages are like today.

Demandez à votre belle-mère combien a coûté ceci (or combien ceci a coûté). Ask your mother-in-law how much this cost.

18.11 In simple conversation, questions which normally require either inversion or **est-ce que** are frequently expressed merely by the intonation of the voice. The subject must then be the first word in the sentence. (It is wise not to use this form too freely.)

Cela ne vous dit rien? That doesn't appeal to you?

Nous sommes le combien aujourd'hui? What's the date today?

Le grand film passe à quelle heure? (At) what time does the main feature come on?

18.12 There are certain instances of the inversion of subject and verb, apart from interrogative sentences. (See 18.13 and 18.14.)

18.13 Inversion of the subject and verb occurs with verbs such as the following, used parenthetically:

dire	to say, to tell
répondre	to answer, to reply
demander	to ask
penser	to think
croire	to think, to believe
sembler	to seem
paraître	to appear, to seem

In the first person singular of the present indicative, inverted forms other than **dis-je** are either very rare or non-existent.

J'aimerais voir le défilé, mais cela me fatigue de rester debout, a-t-elle dit (a dit Geneviève). "I'd like to see the parade, but standing tires me (*lit. it tires me to remain standing*)", she said (Genevieve said).

Il n'y a pas moyen, paraît-il, d'avoir le renseignement que vous désirez. There is no way, it seems, of getting the (item of) information you want.

Qui fera le ménage? a-t-elle demandé. "Who will do the housework?" she asked.

Tu as fermé l'eau et l'électricité, j'espère. You turned off the water and electricity, I hope.

18.14 If the subject is a personal pronoun or **ce** or **on**, the subject and verb are inverted after expressions such as:

peut-être	perhaps, maybe
sans doute	doubtless, no doubt
à peine . . . que (or . . . quand)	scarcely . . . when, hardly . . . when
aussi	therefore, so

If the subject is a noun, or a pronoun other than those already mentioned above, it remains in front of the verb and is repeated after the verb in the form of a personal pronoun. (The limitation on the inverted form with **je**, explained in 18.3, also applies here.)

Peut-être devriez-vous penser à la possibilité de faire votre droit.

Perhaps you should think of the possibility of studying law.

À peine l'acteur était-il entré en scène que (or quand) toute la salle a applaudi.

Scarcely had the actor appeared on the stage when the whole audience applauded.

Il était surmené; aussi son médecin lui a-t-il ordonné de se reposer.

He was overworked; so his doctor ordered him to take a rest.

18.15 In simple conversation, the examples in 18.14 appear stilted and are usually avoided. This is done,

- (i) in the case of **peut-être** and **sans doute**, either by adding **que** or by placing these expressions after the verb;
- (ii) in the case of **à peine . . . que (or . . . quand)** by placing **à peine** after the verb;
- (iii) in the case of **aussi**, by substituting **alors** or **donc**. (**Alors** comes at the head of its clause. **Donc** may come at the head of its clause, but it is preferable to put it after the verb, provided it does not thereby become the last word in the sentence.)

Peut-être que nous irons (or Nous irons peut-être) à la pêche.

Maybe we'll go fishing.

Sans doute qu'elle versera (or Elle versera sans doute) quelques larmes.

She will likely shed a few tears.

J'avais à peine raccroché (le récepteur) que (or quand) le téléphone a résonné.

I had hardly hung up (the receiver) when the telephone rang again.

Il a échoué en mathématiques et en anglais; alors il est obligé (or il est donc obligé) de redoubler sa classe.

He failed in mathematics and English; so he has to repeat his year.

Je suis épuisé; alors (or donc) je me couche.

I'm exhausted; so I'm going to bed.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

- A.** 1. Do you like mustard with ham? 2. When was the peace treaty signed? 3. What decision did Genevieve make? 4. Would I be in your way if I worked here? 5. Did I thank you for your card? 6. What metal is harder than iron? 7. Why don't you ever hang up your coat when you come home, Mary? 8. What raw materials does Australia export? 9. Did anyone mention it to her? 10. Of all your grandchildren, which is the one who comes to see you oftenest?

B. 1. What is the name of the tall, fair young man who has just arrived? 2. Ask the grocer how much the butter is. 3. What is the difference between bees and wasps? 4. You have, it seems, the right to refuse. 5. "What is the matter with him?" "He is likely overworked." 6. How high is that tree? 7. How long does it take you to do the housework? 8. How many people would know what to do if such a thing happened to them? 9. "Have you met the other roomers?" "Not yet." 10. Why does Philip want to go and try his luck in Saskatchewan?

C. 1. Doesn't it get on your nerves when she plays the same piece for the twentieth time? 2. "Where is the can opener?" "In that drawer, beside the knives." 3. How is the plural of the word *ail* spelt? 4. "Did anybody turn off the electricity?" she asked. 5. Did I tell you that a dog bit Dennis? 6. Where is John going tonight? 7. How is it that the sink is so dirty? 8. How many cars are available for the picnic? 9. "What colour are violets?" "Blue." 10. "How much are sausages today?" "Eighty cents a pound."

D. 1. "What is this big bag for?" "I put all kinds of things in it." 2. Perhaps you should rest for a few days. 3. "What was the biology exam like?" "Very hard." 4. How old is the Queen of England? 5. Who are those young men sitting near Elizabeth? 6. Is this signature yours? 7. (At) what time did the sun set tonight? 8. "Is it complicated?" "No, it's very easy to understand." 9. Doesn't it worry you when she runs into debt? 10. You don't know where the Black Forest is?

VERB REVIEW

bouillir

pleuvoir

valoir

Remplacez l'infinitif en italiques par la forme que le sens de la phrase demande.

1. Ce café est mauvais; je crois qu'il (*bouillir*) trop longtemps. 2. L'eau (*bouillir*) à 100° C. (= *cent degrés Celsius*). 3. La soupe (*bouillir*) plus vite si tu la couvrais. 4. Je me suis brûlé avec de l'huile (*bouillir*). 5. Il ne faut pas que le lait (*bouillir*). 6. J'ai vu qu'il s'était disputé car il (*bouillir*) de colère. 7. Je ferai le thé dès que l'eau (*bouillir*). 8. J'aimerais qu'il (*pleuvoir*) aujourd'hui plutôt que demain. 9. Tout est très sec; j'espère qu'il (*pleuvoir*) bientôt. 10. S'il (*pleuvoir*), nous ne serions pas partis. 11. N'oubliez pas de mettre votre imperméable s'il (*pleuvoir*). 12. On avait annoncé qu'il (*pleuvoir*) avant le soir. 13. Nous n'avons pas eu de chance; il (*pleuvoir*) tout l'été. 14. Comme il (*pleuvoir*) il nous a ramenés dans sa voiture. 15. Si c'étaient de vraies perles, elles (*valoir*) des centaines de dollars. 16. Combien (*valoir*) le dollar canadien en francs français? 17. Le timbre (*valoir*) vingt dollars si le coin n'avait pas été déchiré. 18. Avant la guerre cette maison ne (*valoir*) que six mille dollars. 19. Dans quelques années ce tableau (*valoir*) très cher. 20. Je ne crois pas que cela en (*valoir*) la peine.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

1. about

1. Aren't you too warm here? It must be about eighty in this room. 2. She has already sent about fifty postcards. 3. He has just written a book about Russia. 4. The main feature comes on at about seven. 5. The last time I saw him, he told me about his new car. 6. "(At) what time do you want us to come tomorrow night?" "(At) about eight o'clock." 7. What is the name of the man you were talking about a few minutes ago? 8. "How much will the trip cost?" "About five hundred dollars." 9. I think about you and your farm when it is warm in the city. 10. You will need about five yards (*metres*) of material for this dress. 11. What did they talk about at the meeting? 12. "How much sugar have we left?" "About two pounds." 13. What do you think about my idea? 14. We spent about ten days in Paris. 15. I was just about to solve the problem when someone disturbed me. 16. "I'd be interested (*curious*) to know how old your sister-in-law is." "She's about forty." 17. What about that detective story you were going to lend me? 18. The play lasted about two hours. 19. How about renting a boat? 20. Every year there is about the same number of car accidents.

Lesson 19

The Verb

(Present, Imperfect, Present Perfect, Past Perfect)

19.1 The present tense (**le présent**) is used for an action or state or description considered to be true at all times.

La terre tourne autour du soleil.	The earth revolves around the sun.
La lune est inhabitable.	The moon is uninhabitable.
Le miel est doux.	Honey is sweet.

19.2 The present tense is used for an action or state or description occurring or existing at the moment of speaking or writing.

Maman fait la lessive et papa range la cave.	Mother is doing the washing and father is tidying the cellar.
Avez-vous envie de sortir? — Non, merci, j'ai trop sommeil.	"Do you feel like going out?" "No, thank you, I am too sleepy."
Comme vous êtes pâle ce matin!	How pale you are this morning!

19.3 The present tense is used for an action or state or description occurring or existing at regular or irregular intervals, begun in the past, continuing in the present, and presumably continuing in the future.

Le laitier, le facteur, et le boulanger passent entre onze heures et midi.	The milkman, the postman, and the baker come between eleven and twelve.
Je n'ai pas faim quand je suis fatigué.	I am not hungry when I am tired.
L'herbe a toujours l'air plus verte après une averse.	The grass always looks greener after a shower.

19.4 There is no progressive tense-form in French corresponding to the English verb *to be* plus the gerund. When the need is felt to stress the progressive aspect of a present action, **être en train de** (in the present tense), followed by the infinitive, is used. (This construction should be employed sparingly.)

Il ne faut pas déranger ton père; il est en train de lire.	You mustn't disturb your father; he's reading.
---	--

19.5 The present tense is frequently used to express the future. (The English present is used in the same way, though less extensively.)

Où allez-vous cet été? — Nous allons au bord de la mer. “Where are you going this summer?”
“We are going to the seaside.”

On vous demande au téléphone. — Je suis là dans deux minutes. “You are wanted on the telephone.”
“I’ll be there in two minutes.”

C’est la dernière fois que je fais la queue pour voir un match de football. That’s the last time I’ll line up to see a football game.

19.6 In French the present tense is used after **C’est la première fois que . . .**, whereas in English the tense is the present perfect.

C’est la première fois que nous voyons les Rocheuses. This is the first time we have seen the Rockies.

19.7 In sentences such as *It was you who did it, It was there that I saw the bear, etc.*, where the verb of the subordinate clause requires the French present perfect, the verb **être** (of the main clause) must be in the present.

C’est à Chicago que nous avons manqué l’avion. It was in Chicago that we missed the plane.

19.8 The imperfect tense (**l'imparfait**) expresses a past action or state as viewed from some point of time when the action was still in progress or the state still in existence. It may be obvious that the action or state sooner or later came to an end, but this was not yet the case at the time referred to. From this general rule are derived the particular uses explained below.

19.9 The imperfect tense is used for a continuing action or state in the past with no indication of time limit. It is similarly used for description, in the past, of people, things, places, circumstances, *etc.*

Ce vieux célibataire vivait seul. Il ne recevait personne. That old bachelor lived alone. He did no entertaining.

La vieille dame tricotait pendant que sa belle-fille jouait du violon. The old lady was knitting while her daughter-in-law was playing the violin.

Toutes les rues étaient en mauvais état; quelques-unes étaient barrées. All the streets were in poor condition; some were closed.

C’étaient des vacances idéales: il faisait beau, l’endroit était charmant, la cuisine était bonne, et tout le monde était sympathique. It was a perfect holiday: the weather was fine, the place was delightful, the cooking was good, and everybody was congenial.

19.10 In the following examples the present perfect is used because there is an indication of time limit.

Mon grand-père a vécu quatre-vingt-un ans. My grandfather lived for eighty-one years.

J'ai eu le mal de mer pendant toute la traversée. I was seasick during the whole crossing.

19.11 The imperfect tense is used for a past action or state or description of unspecified duration serving as the background against which a specific action took place. (In spite of the fact that the specific action, in some cases, puts an end to the background action, the imperfect is used because the background action is viewed as still in progress at the moment of the specific action.)

Pourquoi couriez-vous quand je vous ai rencontré? Why were you running when I met you?

Elle était sans connaissance quand les pompiers l'ont sauvée. She was unconscious when the firemen rescued her.

Il faisait du quatre-vingt-dix (à l'heure) quand il est rentré dans un autocar. He was doing ninety (miles an hour) when he ran into a bus.

Quand nous avons emménagé, les murs du salon et de la salle à manger étaient bleu marine. When we moved in, the walls of the living-room and dining-room were navy blue.

19.12 The imperfect tense is used for an action or state or description occurring or existing at regular or irregular intervals in the past, with no indication of the number of repetitions.

Cet homme d'affaires se rendait à son bureau à pied le matin et rentrait en taxi le soir. That businessman used to walk to his office in the morning and go home by taxi at night.

Elle s'achetait un nouveau chapeau chaque fois qu'elle se sentait déprimée. She would (*i.e., used to*) buy herself a new hat whenever she felt depressed.

Il avait souvent sommeil après le déjeuner. He was often sleepy after lunch.

Le bébé avait toujours les joues roses après la sieste. The baby always had pink cheeks after its afternoon nap.

19.13 In the following example the present perfect is used because there is an indication of the number of repetitions.

Nous avons dîné plusieurs fois dans un restaurant très chic. We had dinner several times in a very smart restaurant.

19.14 As pointed out in 19.4, there is no progressive tense-form in French corresponding to the English *to be* plus the gerund. When the need is felt to stress the progressive aspect of a past action, **être en train de** (in the imperfect tense), followed by the infinitive, is used. (This construction should be used sparingly.)

Elle me téléphonait toujours quand j'étais en train de préparer le dîner. She always used to telephone me when I was getting dinner (ready).

19.15 In French the imperfect tense is used after **C'était la première fois que . . .**, whereas in English the tense is the past perfect.

C'était la première fois que l'enfant restait seul la nuit. It was the first time the child had stayed alone at night.

19.16 In indirect speech, the imperfect tense is used in a subordinate clause dependent upon a verb in a past tense or the conditional mood to represent the present tense of direct speech.

Il a dit (dirait): «Le rôti est trop cuit.» He said (would say): "The roast is too well done."

Il a dit (dirait) que le rôti était trop cuit. He said (would say) that the roast was too well done.

J'ai demandé: «Est-ce que l'eau bout déjà?» I asked: "Is the water boiling yet?"

J'ai demandé si l'eau bouillait déjà. I asked if (*or whether*) the water was boiling yet.

Elle me demandait tous les matins: «Comment fait-il?» She used to ask me every morning: "What's the weather like?"

Elle me demandait tous les matins comment il faisait. She used to ask me every morning what the weather was like.

19.17 The present perfect tense (**le passé composé**) is used, in conversation and correspondence, to express an action or state which may have been of short or long duration, and which may have occurred once or many times, but which is considered complete as viewed from the moment of speaking or writing.

Il a réfléchi deux minutes avant de répondre à la question. He thought for a couple of minutes before answering the question.

La guerre de Cent Ans a duré de 1337 à 1453. The Hundred Years' War lasted from 1337 to 1453.

Alexander Graham Bell, inventeur du téléphone, est né à Édimbourg. Alexander Graham Bell, the inventor of the telephone, was born in Edinburgh.

J'ai fait vingt fois la traversée de l'Atlantique sans jamais voir d'iceberg. I have made twenty Atlantic crossings without ever seeing an iceberg.

Mon père m'a souvent dit qu'il ne faut jamais doubler dans une côte. My father has often told me that you must never pass on a hill.

Il a fait une chaleur torride hier. It was awfully hot yesterday.

Qu'avez-vous fait? — J'ai arrosé les plates-bandes. "What have you been doing?" "I've been watering the flower beds."

Si vous avez fini de peindre votre maison, voulez-vous me prêter votre échelle? If you have finished painting your house, will you lend me your ladder?

J'ai été si content d'avoir de vos nouvelles. I was so glad to hear from you.

19.18 The possibility of such an action or state being repeated or continued in the future is not precluded.

J'ai travaillé toute ma vie. I have worked all my life.

Son mari a toujours eu peur de parler en public. Her husband has always been afraid of speaking in public.

Le temps a toujours été un sujet de conversation. The weather has always been a topic of conversation.

19.19 Since it may be difficult to conceive of an action or state being complete when the verb is interrogative or negative, the tense of an interrogative or negative sentence must be chosen according to the corresponding affirmative form.

Avez-vous repassé mes chemises blanches? — Je regrette beaucoup. Je n'ai pas eu le temps de les laver! "Did you iron my white shirts?" "I'm very sorry. I didn't have time to wash them!"

19.20 The past perfect tense (**le plus-que-parfait**) is used to express an action or state which may have been of short or long duration, and which may have occurred once or many times, but which was considered complete as viewed from some moment in the past (expressed or understood).

Il était furieux parce que ses chaussettes avaient rétréci. He was furious because his socks had shrunk.

Un bombardement intense avait précédé l'attaque. Heavy shelling had preceded the attack.

Elle avait toujours été pleine de bonnes intentions. She had always been full of good intentions.

Les vitres n'avaient jamais été propres avant votre arrivée. The windows (*lit. window panes*) had never been clean before you came (*lit. before your arrival*).

Nous nous étions souvent doutés de la vérité. We had often suspected the truth.

Nous avions rentré toutes les chaises avant l'orage. We had brought in all the chairs before the storm.

Il avait gelé pendant la nuit et les routes étaient glissantes. It had frozen during the night and the roads were slippery.

Il avait fait agrandir et encadrer sa meilleure photo. He had had his best picture enlarged and framed.

Quand nous avons décidé d'accepter son prix, il avait déjà changé d'avis. When we decided to accept his price, he had already changed his mind.

19.21 When a subordinate clause is introduced by **quand** (when), **lorsque**

(when), **dès que** (as soon as), **aussitôt que** (as soon as), **après que** (after), and expresses an action or state prior to that of the main verb, it has the past perfect tense if the main clause has the imperfect.

Dès que j'avais fini mes devoirs, je regardais la télévision. As soon as I had finished my homework, I used to watch television.

Il était toujours gêné quand il avait été de mauvaise humeur. He was always embarrassed when he had been ill-tempered.

19.22 If the main clause, in such a case, has the present perfect, the subordinate clause has the double compound present perfect. (*For the formation of this tense, see Appendix 23, pages 315 to 319.*)

Après que le téléphone a eu sonné six ou sept fois, elle a décroché le récepteur. After the telephone had rung six or seven times, she picked up (*lit. unhooked*) the receiver.

Dès qu'elle a été partie, tout le monde a poussé un soupir de soulagement. As soon as she had left, everybody heaved a sigh of relief.

Quand ils se sont eu réchauffés près du feu, ils nous ont parlé de l'accident. When they had warmed themselves by the fire, they told us about the accident.

19.23 The double compound forms, particularly with the auxiliary **être**, frequently seem heavy and awkward. They are sometimes replaced by the present perfect, although this is not strictly correct; other substitutions, to which there is no grammatical objection, are illustrated below.

Tout de suite après son départ . . . As soon as she had left (*lit. Immediately after her departure*) . . .

Après s'être réchauffés . . . When they had warmed themselves (*lit. After warming themselves*) . . .

S'étant réchauffés . . . When they had warmed themselves (*lit. Having warmed themselves*) . . .

19.24 In indirect speech, the past perfect tense is used in a subordinate clause dependent upon a verb in a past tense or the conditional mood to represent the present perfect of direct speech.

J'ai répondu: «Nous avons dîné dans le wagon-restaurant.» I replied: "We had dinner in the dining-car."

J'ai répondu que nous avions dîné dans le wagon-restaurant. I replied that we had had dinner in the dining-car.

Thérèse m'a demandé: «Où as-tu caché tous les cintres?» Teresa asked me: "Where have you hidden all the coat-hangers?"

Thérèse m'a demandé où j'avais caché tous les cintres. Teresa asked me where I had hidden all the coat-hangers.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. The moon revolves around the earth. 2. Salt makes you thirsty. 3. I never feel like going out when I'm very tired. 4. "It's half past eleven. Aren't you sleepy?" "No, I drank three cups of coffee at dinner." 5. "What are you doing?" "I'm ironing. I did the washing this morning." 6. He always used to read aloud while his wife knitted. 7. "My daughter and her husband are going to the Rockies this summer." "Who is going to look after the children?" 8. Have you ever been seasick? 9. It's a pity your dress has shrunk. It was so pretty. 10. After we had written to her several times, she finally answered our letters.

B. 1. She was unconscious for two hours. 2. It was the first time they had heard from him since his departure. 3. "What was the house like when you moved in?" "It was in poor condition. We had to (re)paint all the walls." 4. We were in Denmark when Susan was born. 5. "Breakfast is ready." "I'll be there in one minute." 6. I telephoned you several times, but nobody was at home. 7. "Have you tidied the cellar yet?" "No, not yet." 8. They had had dinner in the dining-car before arriving. 9. As soon as I had done the housework, I used to begin getting lunch ready. 10. We told the mother that the children had been very good.

C. 1. My grandfather lived for ninety years. 2. Whenever the child disobeyed her, she would scold him. 3. It was the first time he had been on horseback. 4. When he passed me I was doing seventy. 5. Helen telephoned me tonight while I was getting dinner ready. 6. Was the water boiling when you made this tea? 7. This is the first time we've been late. 8. You were wanted on the telephone a few minutes ago. I said you wouldn't be here until five o'clock. 9. She was running when she fell. 10. How long did you watch television last night?

D. 1. "What did you say?" "I said that it was the first time I had spoken in public." 2. There had been a heavy rain in the morning, and the grass was quite green. 3. We had all gotten home before the storm. 4. The war lasted six years. 5. She was always in good humour when she had bought herself a new hat. 6. "Did you like it in England?" "Not much. It was cold and damp all summer." 7. We had decided to wash the kitchen cupboards before (re)painting them. 8. Some of the children weren't listening while the story was being told to them. 9. He was always sleepy in the evening when he had been working outside all day. 10. It was my grandfather who gave me this bicycle.

VERB REVIEW

aller	écrire	mettre	refaire
apprendre	élire	se mettre	savoir
avoir	s'en aller	ouvrir	sortir
couvrir	être	partir	se souvenir
devenir	faire	pouvoir	venir
devoir	interdire	prendre	voir
dire	lire	reconnaître	vouloir
disparaître			

Mettez au passé composé et au futur.

1. Ils ont le mal de mer. 2. Où êtes-vous? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'il fait? 4. Où vas-tu? 5. Il ne dit pas son nom. 6. Ils ne savent jamais rien. 7. Je mets mon chapeau. 8. Prenez-vous du sucre? 9. Quand viennent-ils? 10. Nous partons ensemble. 11. Peut-il le faire? 12. La voyez-vous souvent? 13. Ils ne nous reconnaissent pas. 14. Nous leur écrivons. 15. Elle ouvre un magasin. 16. Quand doivent-ils y aller? 17. Voici les livres que je lis. 18. Il ne veut pas le manger. 19. Il y a un accident. 20. Nous refaisons le même exercice. 21. Avec qui est-ce qu'ils s'en vont? 22. Je lui interdis de sortir. 23. Elle se met à pleurer. 24. Quelle leçon apprennent-ils? 25. Qu'est-ce qu'elle devient? 26. Je m'en souviens. 27. Est-ce que vous sortez souvent? 28. La neige disparaît. 29. Combien de milles couvrez-vous par jour? 30. Nous élisons un nouveau secrétaire.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

2. after

36. look

1. If only I had looked before throwing the ball! 2. If you reduce too quickly, you often look ill. 3. This bridge doesn't look very strong. 4. He never looks out for the cars when he crosses the street. 5. Why were you running after him? 6. After warming ourselves near the radiator, we sat down. 7. He looks like an actor I know. 8. I'll need to take a rest after my vacation. 9. After winter had begun the old woman hardly ever (*almost never*) went out. 10. It looks like cool weather today. 11. After tidying the cellar, James watered the flower beds. 12. Don't look! I'm going to hide your present. 13. This restaurant looks very smart. 14. She looks very well in spite of her operation. 15. It looked like rain the day before yesterday. 16. I went to bed after I had washed the dishes. 17. You look so much like my daughter-in-law. 18. He really doesn't look like a pilot. 19. This picture doesn't look like you at all. 20. I've asked Maurice to look after Fido.

Lesson 20

The Verb (Future, Future Perfect, Future in the Past, Future Perfect in the Past, Conditional Mood)

20.1 The future tense (**le futur**) is used for an action or state or description occurring or existing at some time later than the moment of speaking or writing.

Je raccommoderai ces bas une autre fois.	I'll mend these stockings some other time.
---	--

Les framboises seront mûres après-demain.	The raspberries will be ripe the day after tomorrow.
--	--

Béatrice sera grande et mince, comme sa grand-mère.	Beatrice will be tall and slim, like her grandmother.
--	---

20.2 It is frequently necessary to express the English present tense by the French future, because futurity is implied. This use is especially common in adverb clauses introduced by **quand** (when), **lorsque** (when), **dès que** (as soon as), **aussitôt que** (as soon as), **tant que** (as long as), **pendant que** (while), **comme** (as); but it may also be found in adjective clauses. (This does not apply to conditional sentences. See 21.1.)

Jacques veut être photographe quand il sera grand.	James wants to be a photographer when he is grown up.
---	---

Appelez-moi dès que le courrier arrivera.	Call me as soon as the mail arrives.
--	--------------------------------------

Qui va s'occuper de votre jardin pendant que vous serez en vacances?	Who is going to look after your garden while you are on your holidays?
---	--

Faites comme vous voudrez.	Do as you like.
-----------------------------------	-----------------

Vous devrez laver et essuyer tous les verres que vous salirez.	You will have to wash and dry (<i>lit. wipe</i>) all the glasses you make dirty.
---	--

20.3 The future is not used after **pendant que** for an action that is to take place immediately.

Je fermerai les fenêtres pendant que tu sors la voiture.	I'll close the windows while you get the car out.
---	---

20.4 The French future does not express willingness. When the English word *will* indicates willingness, the corresponding French construction is **vouloir** plus the infinitive. (Sometimes the infinitive is understood but not expressed.)

Voulez-vous débarrasser la table?	Will you clear the table?
Si vous voulez revenir me voir en octobre, je pourrai vous donner du travail.	If you will come and see me again in October, I shall be able to give you some work.
Cet enfant est insupportable. Il dit à chaque instant: «Je ne veux pas!»	That child is unbearable. He is always saying: "I won't!"
Voulez-vous une tasse de café?	Will you have a cup of coffee?

20.5 Note that *Shall I (we) . . . ?* frequently means *Do you want me (us) to . . . ?*

Voulez-vous que j'aiguisé le couteau à découper?	Shall I sharpen the carving-knife?
---	------------------------------------

20.6 The future perfect tense (**le futur antérieur**) is used to express an action (rarely a state) which is considered complete as viewed from some moment in the future.

Aurez-vous bientôt fini? — Non, je dois encore tailler la haie.	"Will you soon be (<i>lit. have</i>) finished?" "No, I still have to clip the hedge."
--	--

20.7 It is frequently necessary to express the English present perfect tense by the French future perfect, because futurity is implied. This use is especially common in adverb clauses introduced by **quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que, après que, tant que, comme**; but it may also be found in adjective clauses. (This does not apply to conditional sentences. See 21.1.)

Après que Catherine aura essayé son tailleur, il sera temps de rentrer.	After Catherine has tried on her suit, it will be time to go home.
--	--

Ceux qui n'auront pas fini de corriger cet exercice avant trois heures devront venir à huit heures et demie demain matin.	Those who haven't finished correcting this exercise by three o'clock will have to come at half past eight tomorrow morning.
--	---

20.8 A French form such as **je mangerais**, loosely referred to as the conditional, is in some cases actually not the present tense of the conditional mood, but the future in the past of the indicative mood. Similarly, the form **j'aurais mangé** is either the past tense of the conditional mood or the future perfect in the past of the indicative mood, according to the way in which it is used. (See 20.9.)

20.9 The future in the past (**le futur du passé**) and the future perfect in the past (**le futur antérieur du passé**) are used in indirect speech to represent, respectively, the future and the future perfect of direct speech in a subordinate clause dependent on a verb in a past tense or the conditional mood.

Je me suis demandé: «Comment sera mon emploi du temps?»	I wondered: "What will my time-table be like?"
--	--

Je me suis demandé comment serait mon emploi du temps.

À votre place, je lui demanderais: «Est-ce que cela vaudra la peine?»

À votre place, je lui demanderais si cela vaudrait la peine.

Elle nous a dit: «Les peintres n'auront pas fini avant lundi.»

Elle nous a dit que les peintres n'auraient pas fini avant lundi.

I wondered what my time-table would be like.

If I were you, I'd ask him: "Will it be worth while?"

If I were you, I'd ask him if it would be worth while.

She told us: "The painters will not be (*lit. have*) finished until Monday."

She told us (that) the painters would not be (*lit. have*) finished until Monday.

20.10 The conditional mood (**le conditionnel**) presents an action or state as dependent on the fulfilment of some condition. The present conditional (**le conditionnel présent**) expresses what would happen, and the past conditional (**le conditionnel passé**) what would have happened, under certain circumstances.

Les nations s'entendraient-elles mieux s'il y avait une langue internationale?

Nous ne nous serions pas égarés si nous n'avions pas pris le raccourci.

La piscine serait plus utile si nous l'avions faite plus large.

Dans ces circonstances-là j'aurais agi différemment.

Sans lui, où en seraient-ils maintenant?

En nous dépêchant un peu, nous aurions peut-être le train de 8 h 25.

Would nations get along (together) better if there were an international language?

We wouldn't have lost our way if we hadn't taken the short cut.

The (swimming) pool would be more useful if we had made it wider.

In (*or Under*) those circumstances, I'd have acted differently.

If it hadn't been for him (*lit. Without him*), where would they be now?

If we hurried (*lit. By hurrying*) a little, we might get the 8.25 train.

20.11 Apart from conditional sentences, the conditional mood is frequently used, as in English, to replace the present indicative (occasionally the imperative), in order to avoid bluntness which might appear impolite.

Ne dis pas « Je veux un bonbon »; tu dois dire « Je voudrais un bonbon, s'il te plaît ».

Pourriez-vous (*Pouvez-vous*) m'indiquer un bon hôtel?

Auriez-vous l'obligeance de fermer la glace de votre côté? (*Ayez l'obligeance de fermer la glace de votre côté.*)

Don't say "I want a candy"; you must say "I'd like a candy, please".

Could you (*Can you*) tell me of a good hotel?

Would you be so kind as to close the window (*i.e., of car*) on your side? (*Kindly close the window on your side.*)

20.12 Similar to the preceding use of the conditional is its use in newspaper articles and headlines to indicate that the writer does not assume responsibility for the truth of the statement.

Nos armées auraient remporté une victoire décisive. (It is reported that) Our armies have won a decisive victory.

20.13 The French conditional does not express willingness. When the English word *would* indicates willingness, the corresponding French construction is **vouloir** plus the infinitive. (Sometimes the infinitive is understood but not expressed.)

Le moteur ne voulait jamais partir quand il faisait froid. The engine would never start when it (*i.e., the weather*) was cold.

Si tu voulais m'apprendre à coudre, je pourrais faire mes robes moi-même. If you would teach me (how) to sew, I could make my own dresses (*lit. make my dresses myself*).

Notre hôte l'a priée de jouer du piano, mais elle n'a pas voulu. Our host begged her to play the piano, but she wouldn't.

Voudriez-vous me donner votre numéro, s'il vous plaît? Je vous rappellerai tout à l'heure. Would you give me your number, please? I'll call you back in a few minutes.

20.14 The conditional mood is always used following the conjunctive phrase **au cas où**.

Emportons un grand thermos de jus de pamplemousse au cas où nous aurions soif en route. Let's take (along) a big thermos (bottle) of grapefruit juice in case we are (*or get*) thirsty on the way.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. I'll be thinking of you when I'm at the seaside. 2. I hope the cherry trees will be in blossom when you're in Washington. 3. Will you ask the butcher to send two pounds of pork tenderloin, please? 4. Shall I set the table? 5. After I have mended these stockings, it will be time to get lunch ready. 6. One of the painters told me it would take them more than a week to finish the ground floor. 7. I'm sorry the dinner is cold. You didn't tell me you would be late. 8. Wouldn't you have been afraid if you had got lost in the forest? 9. Would you be so kind as to tell me what my time-table will be like? 10. I asked him to turn off the television, but he wouldn't.

B. 1. Here are some sandwiches to take along in case we feel hungry. 2. You wouldn't be sleepy this morning if you hadn't gone out last night. 3. The children could have learned to swim if there had been a swimming pool at the school. 4. Christopher wants to be an architect when he grows up. 5. How about bringing in the chairs? There is going to be a storm during the night. 6. You won't be late if you take the short cut. 7. We'll be having quite a few raspberries this year. I'll send you some when they are ripe. 8. I'll ask John to carve the roast, but I know he won't want to. 9. At what time will the milkman be coming? We are short of milk. 10. "Has the postman come yet?" "No, I'll call you when I see him."

C. 1. If I pick some raspberries, will you make some tarts? 2. If you hurry, you will see him before he goes. 3. "A smaller car wouldn't use as much gas,

would it?" "No, and it would be easier to park." 4. Do you want me to dry (*to wipe*) the glasses and silverware? 5. Shall I hang up Susan's coat in the (clothes-)closet? 6. I'd like a pound of cheese, two pounds of butter, and a small bottle of cream. 7. "Will you have some more vegetables?" "A few beans, please." 8. "What would you have done under those circumstances?" "I shouldn't have known what to do." 9. I'll be glad to see you (again) when you come back. 10. You can't serve the roast yet. It isn't well enough done.

D. 1. If I were you, I'd go to Bermuda. 2. I'd like it at Georgian Bay if there weren't any snakes. 3. I could eat the whole roast myself. I'm terribly hungry. 4. The carving-knife isn't very sharp. Will you sharpen it? 5. We'd have gone fishing if it hadn't been so warm. 6. I'd clip the hedge this afternoon if I had the time. 7. If it hadn't been for you, we never could have finished planting all those trees. 8. I'll set the table while you get dressed. 9. I'm doing the washing, but I'll soon be finished. 10. The roads will be slippery if it froze during the night.

VERB REVIEW

acheter	croire	falloir	recevoir
amener	cuire	geler	renvoyer
appeler	décevoir	jeter	répéter
s'asseoir	dormir	mourir	servir
boire	s'endormir	offrir	souffrir
conduire	enlever	plaire	suivre
construire	envoyer	poursuivre	traduire
courir	espérer		

Mettez à l'imparfait et au plus-que-parfait de l'indicatif.

1. Elle s'assied à côté de moi. 2. Vous conduisez trop vite. 3. Il faut recommencer. 4. J'appelle le docteur. 5. Les enfants dorment bien. 6. Nous recevons souvent des lettres. 7. Qu'est-ce que tu achètes? 8. Le chat boit le lait. 9. Personne ne croit mon explication. 10. Pourquoi courez-vous comme cela? 11. Vous envoient-ils une carte à Noël? 12. Le bébé répète le mot. 13. Toutes mes plantes meurent. 14. Nous offrons de les aider. 15. Elle sert d'abord les invités. 16. Les légumes cuisent trop lentement. 17. Cela ne leur plaît pas. 18. Mon chien me suit partout. 19. Je traduis un poème. 20. Nous construisons un bateau. 21. Pourquoi jettent-ils du papier par la fenêtre? 22. Je m'endors. 23. Son attitude nous déçoit. 24. Amènent-ils des amis? 25. Elle enlève son chapeau. 26. Est-ce qu'il gèle? 27. Je le renvoie chez lui. 28. Est-ce que tu espères le revoir? 29. Souffrez-vous beaucoup? 30. Ils nous poursuivent.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

60. should, should have

79. will

80. would, would have

1. I don't know why he won't put his things away. 2. Catherine should learn to sew. 3. When I was your age, I would work ten hours a day. 4. You should

have added a little garlic to the salad. 5. You wouldn't be able to afford that stove. 6. You would have slept better if you had taken a lower berth. 7. We knew we should not have time to escape. 8. "You won't drive too fast, will you?" "Of course not!" 9. You shouldn't contradict yourself like that. 10. Why won't they associate with us? 11. In spite of my advice, Dennis would not change the date. 12. Would you please tell me how your name is spelt? 13. I should have been glad to attend the meeting. 14. He would have plenty of customers if he were a little more congenial. 15. Call me back if you should decide on the other water heater. 16. Would you like to tour British Columbia next summer? 17. I've already called her three times but she won't get up. 18. You should have taken the short cut. 19. Where would you be now if I hadn't helped you? 20. If he should go fishing, he would not be back in time.

Lesson 21

Conditional Sentences

21.1 The present tense (or present perfect, according to the meaning) is used in a subordinate clause beginning with **si** and expressing a condition, when the verb (or auxiliary verb) of the main clause is in the present tense, the future tense, or the imperative mood.

Si je mange du concombre, j'ai une indigestion. If I eat cucumber, I get indigestion.

Vous attraperez un coup de soleil si vous restez trop longtemps sur la plage. You will get sunburned if you stay too long on the beach.

Si vous avez fait vos valises, mettez-les dans le coffre de ma voiture. If you have packed your bags, put them in the trunk of my car.

Si vous commencez maintenant, vous aurez fini avant minuit. If you start now, you will be (*lit. have*) finished by midnight.

Si vous voyez Marianne (Si vous voyez Marianne par hasard), dites-lui de rentrer tout de suite. If you see Marian (If you should see Marian), tell her to come home at once (*or* right away).

21.2 The imperfect tense (or the past perfect, according to the meaning) is used in a subordinate clause beginning with **si** and expressing a condition, when the verb (or the auxiliary verb) of the main clause is in the imperfect tense or the conditional mood.

S'il était de bonne humeur, il nous emmenait au cinéma. If he was in a good mood, he used to take us to the show.

Elle serait plus jolie si elle se maquillait moins. She would be prettier if she used less make-up.

Si vous m'aviez écouté, vous auriez fait fortune. If you had listened to me, you would have made a fortune.

S'il avait mis les freins plus vite, il ne serait pas maintenant dans le fossé. If he had put the brakes on faster, he wouldn't be in the ditch now.

Si leur grand-mère n'était pas morte, ils ne se seraient pas débarrassés de la vieille maison. If their grandmother had not died, they would not have got rid of the old house.

21.3 The imperfect tense is used in a clause beginning with **si**, to express a suggestion. (This may be regarded as an incomplete conditional sentence.)

Si nous tâchions de dépenser un peu moins? What about trying (*or* Suppose we try *or* Suppose we tried) to spend a little less?

Si vous suiviez un cours de dactylographie? How about taking (*or* Suppose you take *or* Suppose you took) a course in typing?

Si je construisais le garage moi-même? Suppose I build (*or* Suppose I built) the garage myself?

21.4 The imperfect tense (or the past perfect, according to the meaning) is used in a clause beginning with **si**, to express regret or longing. (This may be regarded as an incomplete conditional sentence.)

Si seulement il y avait un escalier roulant dans cette école! If only there were (*or* I wish there were) an escalator in this school!

Si seulement je n'avais pas lancé cette boule de neige! If only I hadn't (*or* I wish I hadn't) thrown that snowball!

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. It hurts my eyes if I watch television too long. 2. If nobody agrees with you, you are likely wrong to accuse him. 3. If Anne hadn't given us your address, we couldn't have written to you. 4. Would you like an electric stove if I could get it for you wholesale? 5. If you're cold, come and sit near the radiator. 6. If you want to take a long trip without paying for it, ask to be sent to the convention. 7. If only I had put the brakes on faster! 8. Our offices are open from nine to five. If you need money, don't hesitate to apply to us. 9. If you won a scholarship, your father and I would be proud of you. 10. If you have no change, ask your father for some.

B. 1. If I'm wanted on the telephone, say I'm busy. 2. I'll tell you something interesting if you promise not to mention it to anyone. 3. If a player has been hurt, will they play today? 4. I'll iron your blouses for you if you like. 5. If only the telephone weren't out of order! I promised to call Susan. 6. If you check the heavy bags, I'll be able to carry the others myself. 7. If he has a lawnmower, why does he want to borrow ours? 8. If you will plough that field today, I'll give you five dollars. 9. Suppose we plant some lilacs this fall? 10. If he isn't honest, why did you lend him the money?

C. 1. I'm glad you're in Ontario now. How about coming to see us? 2. If the milkman comes before noon, ask him for a small bottle of cream. 3. If you pass on a hill, you risk losing your life. 4. If only I had been with her! She would never have got lost. 5. I never drive if I am sleepy. 6. What about taking the children to the show? 7. If only we had a swimming pool! 8. If we had some glue, I'd mend this stool. 9. If you have studied the geography of Scotland, you will know where Edinburgh is. 10. If you choose the navy blue suit, you'll never tire of it.

D. 1. If he has really discovered a silver mine, he will make his fortune. 2. If Roger died, his wife would likely get rid of the house. 3. If Marian gets home before four o'clock, tell her to go and get her father at the office. 4. If I accept that scholarship, there are certain courses I shan't be able to take. 5. If he gave up his studies, he would regret it. 6. I'm afraid the roast will be too well done if you leave it in the oven for three hours. 7. Telephone me if you hear from him before Tuesday. 8. If you like this picture, you may keep it. 9. He worked much faster if he had slept well. 10. If the water is boiling, I'll make the tea.

VERB REVIEW

appartenir	cueillir	plaindre	se sentir
battre	s'enfuir	se plaindre	sourire
se battre	éteindre	recoudre	suffire
bouillir	s'éteindre	rejoindre	se taire
consentir	fuir	résoudre	tenir
convaincre	joindre	retenir	valoir
coudre	mentir	rire	vivre
craindre	peindre		

Mettez au conditionnel présent et au conditionnel passé.

1. Il rit de nous. 2. Je ne me sens pas à l'aise. 3. Nous tenons une réunion. 4. Elle coud sa robe. 5. Est-ce que cela suffit? 6. Ils vivent de légumes et de fruits. 7. Nous joignons nos efforts. 8. Peignez-vous la porte en vert ou en blanc? 9. Elle se plaint du mauvais temps. 10. Je bats d'abord les œufs. 11. Quelles fleurs est-ce que tu cueilles? 12. Nous nous taisons. 13. Un tel argument ne nous convainc pas. 14. Ils fuient le danger. 15. Cela résoud tous nos problèmes. 16. L'eau ne bout pas. 17. Cela n'en vaut pas la peine. 18. Pourquoi souriez-vous? 19. Nous consentons à le faire. 20. Ils ne mentent jamais. 21. La maison leur appartient. 22. Quelle chambre retenez-vous? 23. Recousent-elles tous les boutons? 24. Où est-ce qu'ils nous rejoignent? 25. Ils éteignent leurs cigarettes. 26. Sans bois, le feu s'éteint. 27. Pourquoi nous plaignent-ils? 28. Je crains pour ma vie. 29. Les petits garçons se battent. 30. L'ennemi s'enfuit.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

24. help

27. how

1. I'll help you pack those bags. 2. Do you want me to help you iron those shirts? 3. How far is it from here to Washington? 4. How far are we going today? 5. How tall is Beatrice? 6. I'm sleepy. I can't help yawning. 7. Everything is on the table. Help yourselves! 8. How high is the leaning tower of Pisa? 9. I cried for help but nobody heard me. 10. How long does it take you to go downtown? 11. How many times has he been absent this month? 12. How often have you crossed the Atlantic? 13. Help yourself to rolls and butter. 14. How did you spend your holidays? 15. How often does the streetcar run? 16. How about tidying your room, Dennis? 17. How many legs has an ant? 18. How sharp this knife is! 19. How much bread have we left? 20. How about trying to get rid of those wasps?

Lesson 22

The *Depuis* Construction (and Equivalents)

22.1 The present tense is used in conjunction with **depuis, depuis que, Cela (Ça) fait . . . que, Il y a . . . que** and **Voilà . . . que** to indicate an action or state begun in the past and still continuing in the present. In spite of the fact that, in some cases, the action or state seems to have come to an end (as in the last example below), it is viewed as still continuing at the moment of speaking or writing.

Ce journaliste est à l'étranger depuis deux ans. That reporter has been abroad for two years.

Elle est enrhumée depuis mardi dernier. She has had a cold since last Tuesday.

Depuis quand (or Depuis combien de temps) avez-vous votre permis de conduire? How long have you had your driver's license?

Il a meilleure mine depuis qu'il prend ces pilules. He has been looking better since he has been taking these pills.

Cela (or Ça) fait une demi-heure que j'essaye de téléphoner. La ligne est encore occupée. I have been trying to telephone for half an hour. The line is still busy.

Il y a dix ans que notre cuisinière nous fait des crêpes, mais elle ne veut pas nous en donner la recette. Our cook has been making pancakes for us for ten years, but she won't give us the recipe for them.

Voilà bientôt vingt ans qu'il fait des économies pour faire un voyage en Hollande. He has been saving for nearly (or almost) twenty years in order to take a trip to Holland.

Vous voilà enfin! Je vous attends depuis deux heures. There you are at last! I have been waiting for you for two hours.

22.2 When an expression such as **une heure, une heure et demie, deux heures, etc.** follows **depuis**, there may appear to be confusion between time of day and length of time. In actual usage, confusion is unlikely to occur. (There cannot be any confusion in the constructions **Cela fait . . . que, Il y a . . . que** or **Voilà . . . que**, since they express only length of time, never time of day.)

The sentence **Je vous attends depuis deux heures** means *I have been waiting for you for two hours*. The sentence *I have been waiting for you since two o'clock* would be expressed by **Je vous attends depuis deux heures de l'après-midi (du matin)**;

although if it were half past two, for example, at the moment of speaking, it would be preferable to say **Je vous attends depuis une demi-heure** (i.e., *I have been waiting for you for half an hour*).

The sentence **Je vous attends depuis dix heures** would normally be interpreted as *I have been waiting for you since ten o'clock*; but, even so, it would be more usual to add **du matin** or **du soir**. The sentence *I have been waiting for you for ten hours* would best be expressed by using the **Cela fait . . . que, Il y a . . . que** or **Voilà . . . que** construction.

22.3 The present perfect tense is used in conjunction with **depuis, depuis que, Cela (Ça) fait . . . que, Il y a . . . que,** and **Voilà . . . que** to indicate a completed action. (Where there are two or more verbs in the same sentence, each one must be considered separately and is put in the present or present perfect according as it expresses a continuing action or a completed action.)

Il dort mieux depuis qu'il a acheté un matelas en mousse de caoutchouc.

He has been sleeping better (ever) since he bought a foam-rubber mattress.

J'ai donné vingt coups de téléphone depuis ce matin pour essayer de vendre ces billets.

I have made twenty telephone calls since this morning in order to try to sell these tickets.

Ma nièce est tombée cent fois depuis qu'elle a commencé à patiner.

My niece has fallen a hundred times since she began to skate.

Combien (de temps) y a-t-il qu'ils sont partis?

How long is it since they left?

22.4 In an expression of time indicating the total duration of an action or state, **depuis** is replaced by **pendant** (expressed or understood).

J'ai eu le hoquet pendant trois quarts d'heure.

I had the hiccups for three quarters of an hour.

À cause du brouillard à Gander, nous avons attendu (pendant) deux heures avant d'atterrir.

Because of the fog at Gander, we waited for two hours before landing.

22.5 When the verb is in the negative, there are two forms: the present tense with **ne . . . plus**, and the present perfect with **ne . . . pas**. (With the present perfect, **ne . . . plus** may also be found, especially with verbs beginning with **re-**, such as **revoir** and **refaire**.) The meaning is essentially the same; the difference being that the present stresses some continuing aspect of the situation, whereas the present perfect stresses some completed aspect of it.

Elle ne fait plus de ski depuis son opération.

She hasn't been going skiing since her operation. (*The operation continues to be the reason for her not skiing.*)

Elle n'a pas fait de ski depuis son opération.

She hasn't gone skiing since her operation. (*This merely states a fact: the last time she went skiing was before her operation.*)

Je ne fais plus de jardinage depuis que j'ai commencé à jouer au golf.

I haven't been doing any gardening since I started playing golf.

Ça fait trois semaines que notre voisin n'a pas tondu sa pelouse.

Our neighbour has not mowed his lawn for three weeks.

Je ne l'ai plus revue depuis qu'elle a déménagé.

I haven't seen her since she moved.

22.6 In the case of **ne . . . personne, ne . . . rien, etc.**, the same difference exists between the present tense and the present perfect. (**Ne**) . . . **plus** is frequently added to these expressions in the present tense. (This addition does not change the meaning, and often has no equivalent in English.)

Il ne voit (plus) personne depuis qu'il habite la banlieue.

He hasn't been seeing anyone since he has been living in the suburbs.

Voilà longtemps que cet auteur n'a rien publié.

That author has not published anything for a long time.

22.7 The imperfect tense is used in conjunction with **depuis, depuis que, Cela (Ça) faisait . . . que** and **Il y avait . . . que** to indicate an action or state begun in the past and still continuing at some more recent past time. In spite of the fact that, in some cases, the action or state seemed to have come to an end (as in the last example below), it is viewed as still continuing at the past time referred to.

Les choses en étaient là depuis un bon moment.

Things had been like that for quite a while.

Un vent glacial soufflait depuis la veille.

An icy wind had been blowing since the day before.

Il se sentait mieux depuis qu'il était au régime.

He had been feeling better since he had been on a diet.

Il y avait des années qu'il promettait à sa femme un manteau de fourrure.

He had been promising his wife a fur coat for years.

Ils étaient fiancés depuis sept ans quand ils se sont mariés.

They had been engaged for seven years when they got married.

22.8 The past perfect tense is used in conjunction with **depuis, depuis que, Cela (Ça) faisait . . . que,** and **Il y avait . . . que** to indicate an action already completed in the past. (Where there are two or more verbs in the same sentence, each one must be considered separately and is put in the imperfect or past perfect according as it expresses a continuing action or a completed action.)

Je réussissais mieux mes photos depuis que je m'étais payé un photo-mètre.

I had been making a better job of my pictures (ever) since I had treated myself to an exposure meter.

Il avait beaucoup vieilli depuis sa maladie.

He had aged a great deal since his illness.

Elle avait gagné plusieurs prix depuis qu'elle s'était intéressée aux roses.

She had won several prizes since she had become interested in roses.

22.9 In an expression of time indicating the total duration of an action or state prior to the past time referred to, **depuis** is replaced by **pendant** (expressed or understood).

Je m'étais exercé (pendant) longtemps avant d'arriver à bien prononcer l'r français.

I had practised for a long time before succeeding in pronouncing the French *r* properly.

La tempête de neige avait duré douze heures.

The snow-storm had lasted twelve hours.

22.10 When the verb is negative, there are two forms: the imperfect tense with **ne . . . plus** and the past perfect with **ne . . . pas**. (With the past perfect, **ne . . . plus** may also be found, especially with verbs beginning with **re-**, such as **revoir** and **refaire**). The meaning is essentially the same; the difference being that the imperfect stresses some continuing aspect of the situation, whereas the past perfect stresses some completed aspect of it.

L'usine ne tournait plus depuis l'incendie.

The factory had not been operating since the fire. (*The fire continued to be the reason for its not operating.*)

L'usine n'avait pas tourné depuis l'incendie.

The factory had not operated since the fire. (*This merely states a fact: the last time it had operated was before the fire.*)

Ça faisait trois mois qu'il n'avait pas été chez le coiffeur.

He hadn't been to the barber's for three months.

Il n'avait plus remis les pieds chez nous depuis qu'il m'avait emprunté cinquante dollars.

He had not set foot in our house (again) since he had borrowed fifty dollars from me.

22.11 In the case of **ne . . . personne**, **ne . . . rien**, *etc.*, the same difference exists between the imperfect tense and the past perfect. (**(Ne) . . . plus** is frequently added to these expressions. (This addition does not change the meaning, and often has no equivalent in English.)

Personne de la famille ne se servait (plus) de la T.S.F. depuis que nous avions gagné un poste de télévision.

Nobody in the family had been using the radio since we had won a television set.

Ils n'avaient rien mis de côté depuis leur mariage.

They had saved nothing since getting married (*lit. since their marriage*).

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. The line has been busy for ten minutes. 2. She has been feeling much better since she began taking this medicine. 3. "I like that dressing-gown very much. It's new, isn't it?" "Not very. I've had it since Christmas." 4. Things have been like that since his wife's death. 5. Fred has had his driver's license only since he was nineteen (*since the age of nineteen years*). 6. We had been waiting for the plane for five hours when we received the news that it had crashed. 7. She has been on a diet since her operation. 8. We haven't fed the squirrels any more

since they made a nest in the attic. 9. How long had they been engaged when they got married? 10. The postman has had a grudge against us ever since our dog bit him.

B. 1. He hasn't been playing golf since his illness. 2. I used to think (*I thought formerly*) she hadn't a single fault, but I have been disillusioned for some time. 3. It was still cool at the seaside, but they had been going swimming every morning for several days. 4. It has been much easier to clean the rugs since we bought ourselves a vacuum-cleaner. 5. We lived in the suburbs for ten years, but we've been in the city for almost two years. 6. It's so annoying. I've had the hiccups for an hour and a half. 7. "Is this armchair an antique?" "Yes, my grandmother had had it for forty years when she gave it to my mother." 8. We have scarcely ever seen them since they have been living in British Columbia. 9. We have suspected the truth for some time. 10. "How long have you been in Toronto?" "I've been here nearly two months."

C. 1. We have been on the open sea for nearly two days. 2. "Have you a cold?" "Yes, I've had it for two weeks." 3. I've been studying French for four years. How long have you been studying English? 4. I haven't treated myself to a new hat for two years. 5. You've made two telephone calls since I served dinner. 6. He has been telling that same story for years. We all know it. 7. I haven't been sleeping so well since I gave away my old mattress. 8. I've been mowing the lawn myself since my husband has been ill. 9. There have been escalators in the big stores for a long time. 10. She hadn't gone back to Dijon since her first trip to France.

D. 1. The plane had been trying to land for an hour. 2. I've been using that kind of soap for years to do the washing. 3. He had been watching television for three quarters of an hour when he fell asleep. 4. My grandfather had been living with us (*at our house*) ever since he had sold his house. 5. I've been waiting for you since three o'clock. 6. She hasn't written to anybody since she went away. 7. My father hadn't been driving since his car accident. 8. Nobody had been looking after the garden since they had gone away. 9. I haven't read anything since I began knitting this pull-over. 10. How long have you been waiting for us?

VERB REVIEW

aller	dire	partir	revenir
apprendre	écrire	permettre	revoir
avoir	être	pouvoir	savoir
comprendre	faire	prendre	sortir
contredire	lire	promettre	venir
convenir	mettre	reconnaître	voir
découvrir	ouvrir	refaire	vouloir
devoir			

Mettez l'infinitif en italiques au présent et au passé du subjonctif.

1. Je doute que vous (*avoir*) raison de faire cela. 2. Il est possible qu'elle (*être*) malade. 3. Je suis content que vous (*faire*) ce voyage. 4. C'est dommage que vous ne (*aller*) pas en Europe cet été. 5. Je nie qu'il (*dire*) la vérité. 6. Cela

m'étonne que tu ne (*savoir*) pas la réponse. 7. Nous doutons qu'il (*mettre*) une demi-heure à faire cet exercice. 8. Est-il vrai qu'elle (*prendre*) des leçons particulières? 9. Je suis déçu que tu (*venir*) si tard. 10. Nous regrettons qu'il (*partir*). 11. C'est impossible qu'il (*pouvoir*) faire cela. 12. Avez-vous peur qu'on vous (*voir*)? 13. C'est possible qu'il ne la (*reconnaître*) pas. 14. Est-il vrai que vous (*écrire*) un roman? 15. Il a peur que nous (*ouvrir*) la lettre. 16. C'est dommage qu'elle (*devoir*) partir. 17. Je suis content que tu (*lire*) cet article. 18. Il est curieux qu'ils ne (*vouloir*) pas nous accompagner. 19. C'est dommage qu'il y (*avoir*) si peu de neige cet hiver. 20. Est-ce que cela vous étonne qu'il (*refaire*) la même faute? 21. Êtes-vous fâché que je vous (*contredire*)? 22. Est-il vrai que vous leur (*permettre*) de faire cela? 23. Doutez-vous qu'il (*promettre*) de les aider? 24. Nos parents sont contents que nous (*apprendre*) l'allemand. 25. C'est curieux qu'elles (*revenir*) déjà. 26. Je doute que cela leur (*convenir*). 27. C'est dommage que vous ne (*comprendre*) pas l'explication. 28. Ils s'étonnent que nous (*sortir*) si peu. 29. Est-il vrai que vous ne vous (*revoir*) plus? 30. Ils doutent que nous (*découvrir*) une mine.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

18. for

61. since

1. My niece is leaving for Holland next month. 2. Is there any room left in the suitcase for these coat-hangers? 3. Since things are like that, let's say no more about it. 4. Shall I sharpen the carving-knife for you? 5. We need new curtains for the living-room. 6. I was at the seaside last July and I haven't gone swimming since. 7. Paul has had his driver's license for a long time. 8. Would you make some pancakes for us for lunch? 9. I've been feeling better since I began doing some gardening. 10. This package is for you. 11. She must have been very ill, for she has aged a great deal. 12. She visited us last February, and we haven't seen her since. 13. If it hadn't been for Marian, I'd never have learned to sew. 14. We'll not be moving for three months. 15. I played golf for ten years, but I don't play any more. 16. We have been living in the suburbs for a year, and we plan to stay there for good. 17. He hasn't seen anyone since his wife's death. 18. Empty the vacuum-cleaner for me, please. 19. She saved for four years to buy that fur coat. 20. If it weren't for this exposure meter, I'd not be making such a good job of my pictures.

Lesson 23

Pronominal Verbs

23.1 A pronominal verb is one which is accompanied by a pronoun representing the same person or thing as the subject. There are three kinds of pronominal verbs: *reflexive* pronominals, *reciprocal* pronominals and *true* pronominals (this third group including, for the sake of convenience, the so-called *accidental* pronominals). (The use of the term "reflexive" to cover all types of pronominal verbs is loose and incorrect; the pronoun, however, is always called "reflexive".)

23.2 In reflexive pronominals the subject exercises the action of the verb on itself, and the reflexive pronoun is the direct or indirect object of the verb. A verb of this group makes sense if translated literally, *e.g.*, **se lever** (to raise oneself), **se rappeler** (to recall to oneself).

Au camp nous nous levons à sept heures et nous nous couchons à neuf heures.

At camp we get up at seven (o'clock) and we go to bed at nine (o'clock).

Ces enfants se déguisent souvent en Indiens et se cachent derrière les arbustes.

These children often dress up as Indians and hide behind the shrubs.

Pourquoi vous achetez-vous un nouveau costume tous les six mois?

Why do you buy (yourself) a new suit every six months?

Elles se demandent s'il faut se mettre en robe longue.

They are wondering (*lit. asking themselves*) if it is necessary to wear a long dress.

Nous nous lavons toujours les mains avant de manger.

We always wash our hands before eating.

Je me brûle souvent les doigts.

I often burn my fingers.

23.3 In many expressions involving a noun (or pronoun) which represents a part of the body, the verb is pronominal, the reflexive pronoun serving to make clear that the part of the body belongs to the person performing the action. (See the last two examples in 23.2.) Where, however, this relationship is obvious, the verb is not pronominal. Some examples of this are:

**lever la main
baisser la main
ouvrir les yeux**

to raise one's hand, to put one's hand up
to put one's hand down
to open one's eyes

fermer les yeux	to close (<i>or</i> shut) one's eyes
tourner la tête	to turn one's head
pencher la tête	to bend one's head
incliner la tête	to bow one's head
froncer les sourcils	to frown
effacer les épaules	to throw one's shoulders back
hausser les épaules	to shrug one's shoulders
tirer la langue	to put (<i>or</i> stick) one's tongue out
rentre le ventre	to pull in one's stomach
bomber la poitrine	to throw out one's chest

Pour toute réponse il hausse les épaules. His only answer is to shrug his shoulders.

Pour se tenir droit il faut rentrer le ventre, bomber la poitrine, et effacer les épaules. To stand up straight you must pull in your stomach, throw out your chest, and throw back your shoulders.

23.4 In reciprocal pronominals, each individual component of a plural subject exercises the action of the verb on one or more of the other components, and the reflexive pronoun is the direct or indirect object of the verb. (Like the reflexive pronominals, the reciprocal pronominals make sense if translated literally.)

Nous nous voyons tous les samedis au marché. We see one another every Saturday at the market.

Les Français se donnent toujours la main en se disant bonjour ou au revoir. French people always shake hands when they greet each other or say good-bye.

Pierre et Paul s'interrogent sur les verbes irréguliers. Peter and Paul are questioning each other on irregular verbs.

23.5 In the examples of the preceding section, it is quite clear that the verbs are reciprocal and not reflexive. Taking them as reflexive (*e.g.*, *We see ourselves every Saturday at the market*) would not make sense. Many pronominal verbs, however, could be taken either as reflexive or reciprocal. In such cases, the reciprocal meaning is made clear by the addition of:

- (i) **P'un(e) l'autre**, where the subject has only two components, and the verb takes a direct object;
- (ii) **les un(e)s les autres**, where the subject has three or more components, and the verb takes a direct object;
- (iii) **P'un(e) à l'autre**, where the subject has only two components, and the verb takes an indirect object;
- (iv) **les un(e)s aux autres**, where the subject has three or more components, and the verb takes an indirect object.

The adverb **mutuellement** may be substituted in any of these four cases.

Elles se flattent les unes les autres. They flatter one another.

Ils se faisaient mal l'un à l'autre.

They were hurting each other.

Elles se demandent les unes aux autres s'il faut se mettre en robe longue.

They ask one another if it is necessary to wear a long dress.

Vous vous gênez mutuellement.

You are hindering each other (*or one another*). You are in each other's (*or one another's*) way.

23.6 The distinguishing mark of a true pronominal verb is that it has no corresponding simple form. (The absence of a corresponding simple form makes it impossible to translate verbs of this group literally.) The commonest of these are:

s'abstenir	to abstain
s'écrier	to exclaim, to cry (out)
s'écrouler	to collapse
s'emparer (de)	to seize
s'évader	to escape
s'évanouir	to faint
se gargariser	to gargle
se méfier (de)	to distrust, to be on one's guard
s'obstiner (à)	to persist
se réfugier	to take refuge
se repentir	to repent
se suicider	to commit suicide

Je me méfie de ce toit; je crois qu'il va s'écrouler.

I don't trust that roof; I think it is going to collapse.

Trois prisonniers se sont évadés!

Three prisoners have escaped!

23.7 Accidental pronominals differ from true pronominals in that they do have corresponding simple forms; but they are grouped with the true pronominals, because they do not make sense if translated literally. The commonest of these are:

s'adresser	to apply
s'amuser	to enjoy oneself, to have a good time
s'apercevoir (de)	to perceive, to notice
s'attendre (à)	to expect
se battre	to fight
se décourager	to become discouraged
se dépêcher	to hurry
se disputer	to quarrel
se douter (de)	to suspect
s'échapper	to escape
s'effrayer	to get frightened
s'emballer (pour)	to be carried away, to become very enthusiastic
s'en aller	to go away
s'endormir	to fall asleep, to go to sleep
s'énervier	to become irritable
s'enfuir	to flee

s'engager (à)	to undertake (= <i>to promise</i>)
s'engager	to enlist
s'ennuyer	to be bored
s'enrhumer	to catch (a) cold
s'envoler	to fly away
s'éteindre	to go out (<i>of light, etc.</i>)
s'étonner (de)	to be surprised
s'excuser (de)	to apologize
se fâcher	
(<i>de qch., contre qn.</i>)	to get angry
se fier (à)	to trust
s'impatisier	
(<i>de qch., contre qn.</i>)	to become impatient
s'inquiéter	
(<i>de, au sujet de</i>)	to worry
se marier	to get married
se mettre (à)	to begin
se moquer (de)	to make fun
se noyer	to drown
se passer (de)	to do without
se plaindre (de)	to complain
se plaire	to like it (<i>somewhere</i>)
se porter (<i>bien, etc.</i>)	to be (<i>well, etc.</i>)
s'y prendre	to go about it
se rapporter	to refer
se réjouir (de)	to rejoice, to look forward
se rendre	to go
se réveiller	to wake up
se sentir (<i>bien, etc.</i>)	to feel (<i>well, etc.</i>)
se servir (de)	to use
se souvenir (de)	to remember
se taire	to be (<i>or keep</i>) quiet
se tromper	to be mistaken, to be wrong
se trouver	to be (situated)

Vous souvenez-vous s'ils s'en vont mardi soir ou mercredi matin?

Do you remember if they are going away Tuesday evening or Wednesday morning?

Jean et Louise se marient cette semaine. — Non, vous vous trompez; c'est la semaine prochaine.

"John and Louise are getting married this week." "No, you are mistaken; it's next week."

Dès qu'il s'endort il se met à ronfler.

As soon as he goes to sleep he begins to snore.

Nous nous réjouissons de voir les photos que vous allez prendre cet été.

We are looking forward to seeing the pictures you are going to take this summer.

Amusez-vous bien!

Have a good time!

23.8 The meaning of most true and accidental pronominals precludes their use in a reciprocal sense. There are, however, a very few (*e.g.*, **se méfier de**, **se moquer de**, **se plaindre de**) which can be so used. To convey a reciprocal meaning they must be accompanied by:

- (i) **l'un(e) de l'autre**, where the subject has only two components;
- (ii) **les un(e)s des autres**, where the subject has three or more components.

The necessity of having the preposition **de** in the sentence excludes the use of **mutuellement**.

Ils se moquent l'un de l'autre.

They make fun of each other.

23.9 Some pronominal verbs may fall into more than one of the above categories, according to the meaning in a particular context.

Colette et Claude s'attendent toujours devant l'église après l'office du soir. (*Reciprocal pronominal*)

Colette and Claude always wait for each other in front of the church after the evening service.

Le gouvernement s'attend à une grève des chemins de fer. (*Accidental pronominal*)

The government is expecting a railway strike.

L'enfant s'amusait à déchirer les journaux. (*Reflexive pronominal*)

The child was amusing itself (by) tearing up the newspapers.

Nous nous sommes bien amusés. (Nous ne nous sommes pas beaucoup amusés.) (*Accidental pronominal*)

We had a good time. (We didn't have a good time.)

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. Do your children get dressed up on Hallowe'en? 2. Are you going to wash your hair (*head*) tonight? 3. Raise your hand if you know the answer. 4. We haven't seen each other since she moved, but we write to each other every month. 5. They seize the money and flee without saying a word. 6. If you go to bed before eleven, you don't feel so tired the next morning. 7. Do you realize we've been robbed? 8. All the girls are going to wear long dresses for the party. 9. Stand up straight! Throw your shoulders back! 10. "Do you confide in him?" "Certainly! We've known each other for years."

B. 1. When he feels depressed, he always talks of committing suicide. 2. Five firemen were killed when the roof collapsed. 3. "Did you know he was a millionaire?" "I suspected it." 4. She had always been well before that illness. 5. Hurry up! I'm afraid we'll be late. 6. I wonder where she is. She said we were to wait for each other near the escalator. 7. He often gets impatient, but he is never ill-tempered. 8. We are getting dressed up as Eskimos for the party

tomorrow night. 9. Frenchmen who know each other always shake hands (with each other) when they meet on the street. 10. It's stifling here. I think I'm going to faint.

C. 1. Wash your hands and sit down, Peter. Lunch is ready. 2. I didn't realize I had got out of my depth. 3. Do you always get up as soon as you wake in the morning? 4. When he has seen a thing he always remembers it. 5. If you make fun of your friends, they will make fun of you. 6. "At what time do you get up?" "At seven during the week and at eight on Sundays." 7. Be careful! Don't bump your head against the diving board. 8. Did you say you were going to get married in June? 9. "Shall we be seeing each other again before you leave?" "We are going away tomorrow." 10. Will you keep quiet! I can't work when you are quarrelling.

D. 1. Don't worry. They won't drown. 2. If you want to warm yourself, sit by the fire. 3. Paul isn't here yet. I wonder if he got lost. 4. We are going to get rid of this old furniture. 5. If I were you, I'd apologize. 6. She has a tendency to complain. 7. Do you always make fun of each other? 8. The days they don't see each other, they telephone each other. 9. "You are mistaken. Her name isn't Helen." "Yes, it is. I just asked her." 10. They didn't have a very good time during the holidays.

VERB REVIEW

acheter	croire	offrir	répéter
apercevoir	cuire	peler	révéler
appeler	dormir	plaire	semer
s'asseoir	envoyer	rappeler	servir
boire	falloir	recevoir	souffrir
conduire	se lever	rejeter	suire
construire	mener	renvoyer	traduire
courir	mourir		

Mettez au passé composé et au futur.

1. Nous ne nous asseyons pas. 2. Où les conduit-il? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'il faut faire? 4. Ils appellent un taxi. 5. Elle dort huit heures. 6. Ils reçoivent des visites. 7. Achète-t-il une nouvelle voiture? 8. Je ne bois pas de vin. 9. Personne ne croit cette histoire-là. 10. Je cours plus vite que toi. 11. Nous leur envoyons un télégramme. 12. Le professeur répète les explications. 13. Le malade meurt. 14. Leur offre-t-il de l'argent? 15. À quoi est-ce que cela sert? 16. Cela cuit en un quart d'heure. 17. Les cadeaux lui plaisent beaucoup. 18. Je ne suis pas son conseil. 19. Elle nous traduit la lettre. 20. Est-ce qu'on construit une nouvelle route? 21. Cela lui rappelle sa jeunesse. 22. Ils rejettent notre suggestion. 23. Est-ce qu'il nous aperçoit? 24. Tu mènes une vie très intéressante. 25. Je ne sème que du blé cette année. 26. Se lève-t-elle avant sept heures? 27. Qui pèle les pommes de terre? 28. Elle renvoie tout au magasin. 29. Elle ne révèle jamais de secrets. 30. Ils ne souffrent pas beaucoup.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

33. like

39. marry

41. meet

75. use, used

1. Louise used to say she'd like to marry a doctor, but now she talks of marrying a writer. 2. They met in December and married in January. 3. Their minister won't be able to marry them because he'll be on his holidays in July. 4. How do you like his voice? 5. Did she like the present? 6. I wonder how I shall be able to use all this foam rubber. 7. I'd like you to meet my boss. 8. Is your sister married? 9. I'd like it better here if I were used to the cold. 10. I met one of my cousins at camp last summer. 11. "How does Fred like his coffee?" "With three lumps of sugar and lots of cream." 12. They married when they were only eighteen. 13. My grandfather has been using the same pen since 1930. 14. They used to meet once a month at Colette's. 15. How would you like to spend your life doing nothing? 16. We always used to meet at five o'clock in order to have dinner together. 17. What's this rope (used) for? 18. Will you be able to meet me at the airport when I come back from Chicago? 19. We can meet in front of the restaurant if you like. 20. My wife and I met at university.

Lesson 24

The Auxiliaries *Avoir* and *Être* and the Agreement of the Past Participle

24.1 The auxiliary is *avoir*:

- (i) for all transitive verbs (except those that are pronominal);
- (ii) for most intransitive verbs.

Qui a cassé la théière?

Who broke the teapot?

Avez-vous déjà téléphoné au dentiste pour prendre rendez-vous?

Have you telephoned the dentist yet to make an appointment?

Tu es tout essoufflé! As-tu couru?

You are all out of breath! Have you been running?

Avez-vous été voir si le linge est sec?

Have you been to see if the clothes are dry?

24.2 The auxiliary is *être*:

- (i) for all pronominal verbs:
- (ii) for a few non-pronominal intransitive verbs, such as:

aller	to go
partir	to leave, to depart, to go away
repartir	to leave (<i>or</i> depart <i>or</i> go away) again
venir	to come
revenir	to come again, to come back, to return
devenir	to become
arriver	to arrive, to happen
entrer	to enter, to go (<i>or</i> come <i>or</i> get) in
rentrer	to enter again, to go (<i>or</i> come <i>or</i> get) in again, to go (<i>or</i> come <i>or</i> get) back, to go (<i>or</i> come <i>or</i> get) home, to return (home)
sortir	to go (<i>or</i> come <i>or</i> get) out
ressortir	to go (<i>or</i> come <i>or</i> get) out again
monter	to go (<i>or</i> come <i>or</i> get) up(stairs)
remonter	to go (<i>or</i> come <i>or</i> get) up(stairs) again
descendre	to go (<i>or</i> come <i>or</i> get) down(stairs), to descend

redescendre	to go (<i>or come or get</i>) down(stairs) again, to descend again
passer	to pass
repasser	to pass again
tomber	to fall (down)
retomber	to fall (down) again
rester	to remain, to stay
demeurer	to remain, to stay
retourner	to return, to go back
naître	to be born
mourir	to die
apparaître	to appear

Il s'est regardé dans la glace.

He looked at himself in the mirror.

Ils se sont posé des devinettes.

They asked each other riddles.

Le petit moineau s'est-il envolé?

Did the little sparrow fly away?

Étienne s'est bien amusé au bal.

Stephen had a good time at the dance.

Je sais que Michel est allé en Afrique, mais qu'est-ce qu'il est devenu depuis? — Il est mort de la maladie du sommeil.

"I know that Michael went to Africa, but what has become of him since?"
"He died of sleeping-sickness."

24.3 The following verbs of the above list may be used transitively, in which case the auxiliary is **avoir**:

rentrer	to carry (<i>or bring or take or get</i>) in (again)
sortir	to carry (<i>or bring or take or get</i>) out
ressortir	to carry (<i>or bring or take or get</i>) out again
monter	to carry (<i>or bring or take or get</i>) up(stairs)
remonter	to carry (<i>or bring or take or get</i>) up(stairs) again, to wind (<i>a watch, etc.</i>)
descendre	to carry (<i>or bring or take or get</i>) down(stairs)
redescendre	to carry (<i>or bring or take or get</i>) down(stairs) again
passer	to pass, to spend (<i>time</i>), to try (<i>an examination</i>)
repasser	to pass again, to iron
retourner	to turn over

Avez-vous sorti la voiture?

Have you got the car out?

Je ne trouve pas ma valise. Avez-vous monté tous les bagages?

I can't find (*lit. don't find*) my suitcase.
Have you brought up all the baggage?

24.4 The past participle of transitive verbs (both pronominal and non-pronominal) agrees in gender and number with the preceding direct object, if there is one. If there is no direct object, or if the direct object does not precede the verb, there is no agreement.

Pourquoi n'as-tu pas tes lunettes? — Je les ai cassées.

"Why haven't you your glasses?" "I broke them."

Nous nous sommes baignés trois fois hier.	We went (in) swimming three times yesterday.
Quelle jolie robe! — Je me la suis offerte pour ma fête.	“What a pretty dress!” “I treated myself to it for my birthday.”
Quelle marque de voiture avez-vous achetée?	What make of car did you buy?
Laquelle des deux sœurs a-t-il épousée?	Which of the two sisters did he marry?
Qu’allez-vous faire de toutes ces feuilles mortes que vous avez ramassées?	What are you going to do with all those dead leaves you have gathered?
Qui a mangé la tranche de melon que je me suis coupée?	Who ate the slice of melon I cut for myself?
Combien de soucoupes volantes avez-vous vues?	How many flying saucers have you seen?
Que de changements j’ai vus depuis mon enfance!	What a lot of changes I have seen since my childhood!

24.5 The past participle does not agree with the adverbial pronoun **en**. (Cases of agreement may be found in contemporary authors, but should not be imitated.)

Y a-t-il assez de tasses? — Oui, j’en ai emprunté à ma voisine.	“Are there enough cups?” “Yes, I borrowed some from my neighbour.”
--	--

24.6 In the following examples, there is no agreement because the direct object comes after the verb.

J’ai cassé mes lunettes.	I broke my glasses.
Elle s’est offert une jolie robe.	She treated herself to a pretty dress.

24.7 In the following examples there is no agreement because the object is not direct.

La dame à qui j’ai téléphoné n’est pas souvent chez elle.	The lady I telephoned is not often at home.
Nous leur avons écrit plusieurs fois, mais ils ne nous ont jamais répondu.	We wrote to them several times, but they never answered us.
Qui était la première reine d’Angleterre, et qui lui a succédé?	Who was the first queen of England, and who succeeded her?

24.8 The verbs listed below (and similar ones) are frequently accompanied by expressions indicating time, price, or distance. These appear to be direct objects, but are really adverbial expressions. Hence the participle does not agree.

attendre	to wait	courir	to run
conduire	to drive	coûter	to cost

dormir to sleep
durer to last
marcher to walk
nager to swim

régner to reign
valoir to be worth
vivre to live

Les deux heures que j'ai attendu m'ont paru une éternité. The two hours I waited seemed to me like ages.

Si seulement j'avais les cinq cents dollars que ces actions m'ont coûté! If only I had the five hundred dollars those shares cost me!

Les trois derniers milles qu'elle a nagé étaient un supplice. The last three miles she swam were torture.

24.9 The past participle of impersonal verbs is invariable.

Combien d'accidents y a-t-il eu l'année dernière? How many accidents were there last year?

Quelle chaleur il a fait hier! Wasn't it hot yesterday!

24.10 The past participle of **faire** followed by an infinitive is invariable.

Mes élèves comprennent les verbes pronominaux parce que je les ai fait travailler. My pupils understand pronominal verbs because I have made them work.

24.11 The past participle of the verbs listed below is frequently followed by an infinitive. If the infinitive corresponds to an English active form, the past participle agrees with the preceding direct object. (Some contemporary authors do not make this agreement in the case of **laisser**.) If the infinitive corresponds to an English passive form, the past participle does not agree.

apercevoir to catch sight of
écouter to listen to
entendre to hear
laisser to let, to allow

regarder to watch
sentir to feel
voir to see

Comment s'appelle l'actrice que nous avons vue jouer hier soir? What is the name of the actress we saw perform(ing) last night?

Que pensez-vous de la pièce que nous avons vu jouer samedi? What do you think of the play we saw performed on Saturday?

Quels chanteurs avez-vous entendus chanter à la radio? What singers did you hear sing on the radio?

Quelles chansons avez-vous entendu chanter? What songs did you hear sung?

Elle s'est laissée aller dans un fauteuil. She sank into an armchair.

Ils se sont laissé tromper par les apparences. They allowed themselves to be taken in by appearances.

24.12 With **envoyer chercher**, a preceding direct object is in some cases the object of **envoyer**, and in other cases the object of **chercher**. There may even be a preceding direct object for each of them. The past participle **envoyé** agrees only with its own preceding direct object. (This also applies to **envoyer acheter** or any similar expression.)

Où sont les enfants? — Ils sont chez le cordonnier. Je les ai envoyés chercher tes chaussures.

“Where are the children?” “They are at the shoemaker’s. I sent them for your shoes.”

Où sont les ampoules que j’ai envoyé chercher?

Where are the (light) bulbs I sent for?

Marie, où sont les ampoules que je t’ai envoyée chercher?

Mary, where are the (light) bulbs I sent you for?

24.13 The past participle of non-pronominal intransitive verbs conjugated with **être** (listed in 24.2) agrees in gender and number with the subject.

Sont-ils restés longtemps? — Ils sont arrivés vers neuf heures et ils sont partis avant minuit.

“Did they stay long?” “They arrived at about nine o’clock and left before midnight.”

24.14 The past participle of true pronominals (listed in 23.6) and accidental pronominals (listed in 23.7) agrees in gender and number with the subject. (Note, however, that in the case of **se plaire**, there is no agreement of any sort.)

Elles se sont moquées de sa moustache.

They made fun of his moustache.

Elle s’est effrayée quand la lumière s’est éteinte.

She got frightened when the light went out.

Est-ce qu’elles se sont plu à Londres?

Did they like it in London?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. Did you make an appointment with the dentist (*at the dentist’s*) for me too? 2. It was obvious they had been running. They were out of breath. 3. The whole family had left for the Rockies. 4. Genevieve went out at eight o’clock, and she hasn’t come home yet. 5. “Which chairs did you take out?” “The ones that were in the cellar.” 6. I’ve lost the telephone number of the cook you recommended to me. 7. Did the lights go out during the storm? 8. “Have you ever read this play?” “Yes, and I saw it performed in New York last year.” 9. What king succeeded Queen Victoria? And who succeeded *him*? 10. Each of the eighty years I have lived has had its problems.

B. 1. How many candidates were there at the English examination this year? 2. The shoes I had had made weren’t cheap, but they were very comfortable. 3. Marian will be famous one day. Did you hear her sing on the radio Friday evening? 4. If she hadn’t hurried, she wouldn’t have arrived in time. 5. Isabel used oil instead of butter to make the omelette. 6. (It is reported that) Two of the planes have crashed in the Indian Ocean. 7. Were you able to put all those

clothes in the washing-machine? 8. Has she gone back to Alberta yet? 9. She took a rest for an hour, and now she feels better. 10. "The socks you knitted for me have shrunk." "I'll knit you another pair."

C. 1. We asked each other a lot of questions on the Hundred Years' War. 2. How many years did Queen Mary live after the death of George V? 3. What a lot of accidents there have been on this hill! 4. Have the children gone up to bed yet? 5. We haven't seen Isabel for years. We've often wondered what became of her. 6. "Where are the suitcases?" "I took them downstairs a few minutes ago." 7. What colour are the bathing-suits you bought for the children? 8. How many years did Queen Victoria reign? 9. I am surprised she hasn't apologized. 10. We stayed in Corsica for three weeks.

D. 1. The shares I got for you will cost you nine hundred and seventy-two dollars. 2. How many spoonfuls of this medicine did you take before going to bed? 3. "How many hours did you sleep last night?" "Not more than five or six. We didn't go to bed until half past three." 4. It was so warm in church this morning that my grandmother fell asleep several times. 5. How many tulips did you plant in the flower bed in front of the house? 6. "Where is Marian?" "I sent her to the butcher's for the meat." 7. She nearly drowned when she got out of her depth, but her brother rescued her. 8. "Did you have a good time in New York?" "Yes, but we are glad to be back." 9. Here's the flour the cook sent for. 10. There were raspberries at the market, and I brought you some.

VERB REVIEW

appartenir	s'enfuir	pleuvoir	sourire
battre	éteindre	recoudre	suffire
se battre	s'éteindre	rejoindre	se taire
bouillir	fuir	résoudre	tenir
convaincre	joindre	retenir	vaincre
coudre	mentir	rire	valoir
craindre	peindre	sentir	vivre
cueillir	se plaindre		

Mettez à l'imparfait et au plus-que-parfait de l'indicatif.

1. Tout le monde rit. 2. Ils sentent la maison trembler. 3. Où tiennent-ils leurs réunions? 4. Qu'est-ce que vous cousez? 5. Son salaire ne lui suffit pas. 6. De quoi vit-il? 7. Je joins un chèque à ma lettre. 8. Quelle sorte de tableaux est-ce qu'elle peint? 9. Nous ne nous plaignons de rien. 10. Pourquoi battent-ils leurs enfants? 11. Je cueille quelques poires. 12. En nous voyant elle se tait. 13. Ils ne nous convainquent pas. 14. L'automne fuit. 15. Les élèves résolvent les équations. 16. L'eau bout déjà. 17. Il pleut assez fort. 18. Combien vaut cette maison? 19. Ils nous sourient. 20. Pourquoi mentez-vous comme cela? 21. Ces trois magasins lui appartiennent. 22. Nous retenons toujours la même chambre. 23. Je recouds le bouton. 24. Elle rejoint ses amies au restaurant. 25. Les pompiers éteignent l'incendie. 26. La lampe s'éteint. 27. Qu'est-ce que vous craignez? 28. Nous nous battons avec courage. 29. Il vainc tous les obstacles. 30. Pourquoi s'enfuient-ils?

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

19. get

58. return

1. Don't get impatient! 2. Are you getting off here? 3. I want to get these shirts ironed before I go to bed. 4. I didn't get the fur coat George had promised me. 5. Several of the imm'grants returned to Europe. 6. I can't get used to getting up at five o'clock. 7. It was getting late when we got in. 8. If I were not so busy, I'd like to get Stephen's room (re)ainted before his return. 9. Haven't you got over your cold yet? 10. I'm going to get rid of all these old clothes. 11. I'll try to get dad to buy a convertible this time. 12. Do you mind returning my ladder tomorrow? 13. Don't get discouraged. You need patience to learn to pronounce the French *r* well. 14. One easily gets bored when one begins to get old. 15. She got up on the table to change the bulb. 16. I have only ten minutes to get washed and dressed. 17. I've been trying for more than six months to get that book. 18. I hope the children will get home before it begins to get dark. 19. I'm going to get this picture framed. 20. The teacher told me to get my exercise corrected before leaving.

Lesson 25

Impersonal Verbs

25.1 Impersonal verbs exist only in the infinitive, past participle, and third person singular (with the neuter pronoun subject **il**) of the various tenses of the indicative, subjunctive and conditional moods. The participle is used only in a compound tense. The infinitive is used only after the third person singular of certain verbs, *e.g.*, **aller**, **commencer** (*à*).

25.2 The only true impersonal verb is **falloir**. This verb may be followed by an infinitive, or by a clause with the verb in the subjunctive mood.

Il ne faut pas traverser la rue contre le feu rouge. You must not cross the street against the red light.

Il faut que cette lettre parte ce soir. This letter must go tonight.

25.3 When a noun is the real subject of **falloir**, it follows the verb, unless it is accompanied by **quel(le)(s)?** or **combien de?**

Vous faut-il de la crème à fouetter? Do you need any whipping cream?

Quels papiers nous faut-il pour passer la frontière? What documents do we need to cross the border?

Combien de peinture faudra-t-il pour les moustiquaires? How much paint will it take for the screens?

25.4 When the real subject of **falloir** is a pronoun, it assumes the direct object form. If it is **en**, or a personal, relative, or interrogative pronoun, it precedes the verb. If it is a possessive, demonstrative, or indefinite pronoun, it follows the verb.

J'ai trop de cerises cette année. Vous en faut-il? I have too many cherries this year. Do you need any?

Pouvez-vous livrer ces légumes cet après-midi? Il me les faut absolument avant cinq heures. Can you deliver these vegetables this afternoon? I simply must have them before five o'clock.

M. Adam est l'homme qu'il nous faut pour diriger notre nouvelle succursale. Mr. Adam is the man we need to manage our new branch.

Qu'est-ce qu'il nous faut (*or* **Que nous faut-il**) **comme viande pour dimanche?**

What do we need in the way of meat for Sunday?

Il me faut quelque chose de joli pour un cadeau de nocces.

I need something nice for a wedding present.

25.5 The personal verbs **avoir**, **manquer** (= *to be missing*), and **rester** have the impersonal forms **il y a**, **il manque**, and **il reste**, which are used in the same way as **il faut** with a noun or pronoun as the real subject.

Y a-t-il beaucoup de fautes dans mon devoir? — Il manque la moitié des accents et il vous reste trois phrases à faire.

"Are there many mistakes in my exercise?" "Half the accents are missing and you have three sentences left to do."

Voulez-vous m'aider à compter ces copies? Je crois qu'il en manque.

Will you help me count these (answer) papers? I think there are some missing.

25.6 The verbs **manquer** and **rester** are used personally when the subject is a relative pronoun (which assumes the subject form). In other cases, these verbs are sometimes used personally, although the impersonal form is more usual.

Qu'allez-vous faire de toutes les asperges qui restent?

What are you going to do with all the asparagus which is left?

Quels mots manquent dans cette phrase?

What words are missing in this sentence?

25.7 There are a few impersonal verbs which describe the weather and similar phenomena. The commonest of these are:

il pleut	it rains, it is raining
il neige	it snows, it is snowing
il grêle	it hails, it is hailing
il tonne	it thunders, it is thundering

Quand il pleut à la Saint-Médard (le 8 juin), il pleut quarante jours plus tard. (*Old saying*)

When it rains on the festival of St. Médard (*June 8th*), it is raining forty days later. (*Cf. St. Swithin's Day if thou dost rain, for forty days it will remain.*)

Il commence à neiger.

It is beginning to snow.

25.8 In figurative speech, **pleuvoir** and **neiger** may be found with a personal subject or accompanied by a real subject.

Les bombes pleuvaient sur la ville.

The bombs were pouring down on the city.

Il pleut des coups.

Blows are falling thick and fast (*lit. It is raining blows*).

25.9 The personal verbs **geler** and **dégeler** are used impersonally in describing the weather.

Il faut couvrir les bégonias; il va geler cette nuit. We must cover up the begonias; it is going to freeze tonight.

25.10 The verb **faire**, followed by an adjective or by a noun or by a noun and an adjective, is used impersonally in many expressions to describe the weather and similar phenomena. The commonest of these are:

il fait beau	it is fine
il fait beau temps	it is fine weather
il fait mauvais	the weather is bad
il fait mauvais temps	the weather is bad
il fait chaud	it is warm (<i>or</i> hot)
il fait froid	it is cold
il fait frais	it is cool
il fait frisquet	it is chilly
il fait bon	it is nice
il fait doux	it is mild
il fait sec	it is dry
il fait humide	it is damp
il fait lourd	it is sultry
*il fait du soleil	it is sunny
*il fait du vent	it is windy
*il fait du brouillard	it is foggy
*il fait de l'orage	it is stormy
*il fait des éclairs	it is lightening, there is lightning
*il fait un vent terrible (<i>etc.</i>)	it is terribly (<i>etc.</i>) windy
il fait un temps superbe (<i>etc.</i>)	it is splendid (<i>etc.</i>) weather
il fait une chaleur étouffante (<i>etc.</i>)	it is stifling (<i>etc.</i>), it is stiflingly (<i>etc.</i>) hot
il fait clair	it is light
il fait gris	it is cloudy
il fait sombre	it is dull, it is (a) dark (day)
il fait noir	it is (a) dark (night)
il fait jour	it is (day)light
il fait nuit	it is dark
il fait clair de lune	it is moonlight
il se fait tard	it is getting late

(In the case of the expressions marked by an asterisk, there seems to be a tendency to replace **il fait** with **il y a**.)

Il fait beau mais il fait encore assez frais. The weather is fine but it is still rather cool.

Il se fait tard; il faut rentrer. It is getting late; we must go home.

Il fait sombre dans cette pièce; il faut laver les vitres. It is dark in this room; we must wash the windows (*lit. window panes*).

25.11 Certain of the above expressions may be replaced by **Le temps est . . .**, e.g., **Le temps est beau, sec, superbe**, etc. (This is less usual than the impersonal form.)

Le temps est extraordinaire pour novembre. The weather is unusual for November.

25.12 The verb **être** is used impersonally in certain expressions of time.

Est-il tard? Quelle heure est-il? "Is it late? What time is it?" "It's — **Il est onze heures.** — **Oh, il est encore tôt.** eleven o'clock." "Oh, it's still early."

J'en ai assez de ces vieux disques; il est (grand) temps que nous en achetions (subjunctive) de nouveaux. I'm tired of these old records; it's (high) time we bought some new ones.

25.13 Two other important impersonal expressions are: **il s'agit de**, which is completed by an infinitive, a noun, or a pronoun; and **il se peut que**, which is completed by a clause with the verb in the subjunctive mood. (The expression **il se peut que** also occurs as **cela se peut que** and **ça se peut que**.)

De quoi s'agit-il? — Il s'agit de savoir si nous pouvons nous payer un mois en Floride. "What is it all about?" "The question is (*lit. It is a matter of knowing*) whether we can afford a month in Florida."

Il se peut que ce soit vrai, mais j'en doute. It may be true, but I doubt it.

25.14 Personal verbs are sometimes used impersonally as a device to bring the noun subject after the verb. (This has the effect of putting the emphasis on the subject.)

Il existe dix mille espèces d'oiseaux. There exist ten thousand species of birds.

Il arrive souvent des accidents à ce coin-là. Accidents often happen at that corner.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. You must stop, look, and listen before crossing the street. 2. You mustn't spend more than you earn. 3. You mustn't let yourself be taken in by appearances. 4. Look for that recipe, Catherine, and tell me how much sugar will be needed for the jam. 5. At what time will you be able to deliver this fruit? I need the grapes for dinner. 6. They're selling wool(len) socks downtown tomorrow at one dollar a pair. Do you need any? 7. How long will it take to get those documents? 8. Here's the baker. What do we need in the way of bread? 9. Shall I need a French driver's license to use my car in France? 10. "There's quite a lot of tongue left." "I'll make some sandwiches with it (*of it*) for lunch."

B. 1. I have to go to the shoemaker's for my shoes. They must be ready. 2. Will you go to the butcher's? We need some bologna for lunch. 3. I need a new suit and a blouse. Will you help me choose them? 4. We'll need another car. Mine isn't big enough for six people and all the baggage. 5. "Three glasses are missing, Louise." "I'm sorry, mother. I broke them." 6. "What can we do with all the whipped cream that is left?" "I'll use it for chocolate éclairs." 7. The book you will need for this course is published in Paris. 8. Have you enough spoons for the party? Do you need ours? 9. "What would you like for Christmas?" "What we really need is a good earthenware teapot." 10. The question is whether we are going to rent the house or buy it.

C. 1. Don't wait for me. I still have a lot of windows left to wash. 2. It is time to (re)paint the screens. Have we any paint? 3. "What shall I do with this slice of melon that is left?" "Eat it." 4. "Why have they installed traffic lights at the corner?" "Because so many accidents happen there." 5. He may be able to plant all those begonias before it's dark, but I doubt it. 6. How many rooms are there on the ground floor? 7. "What's the weather like this morning?" "It's splendid." 8. It's not a question of what you need; it's a question of what you cannot do without. 9. There are some carrots and onions left. I'll put them in the soup. 10. It froze last night, and we're afraid we've lost half (of) our peaches.

D. 1. Here are the pictures you lent me. I don't think there are any missing. 2. "Where do you want me to put the cherries that are left?" "In the refrigerator." 3. "Why are oranges so expensive?" "Because it froze several times in Florida this winter." 4. I think it's going to rain soon. It's starting to thunder and lighten. 5. It's sultry and dark. There will likely be a storm before evening. 6. When it's hot we want it to be cold; and when it's cold we want it to be hot. 7. It is getting late, and I still have more than half (of) my homework left to do. 8. It is often foggy in London, but the inhabitants don't complain about it. 9. "Don't go. It isn't late." "It's midnight, and it takes me half an hour to get home." 10. I have a few days' holiday left, but I can't afford a trip.

VERB REVIEW

aller	être	permettre	revoir
avoir	faire	pouvoir	satisfaire
comprendre	lire	prendre	savoir
convenir	mettre	reconnaître	se souvenir
décrire	ouvrir	remettre	venir
devoir	paraître	repartir	voir
dire	partir	ressortir	vouloir
écrire			

Mettez au conditionnel présent et au conditionnel passé.

1. Je n'ai pas le temps de le faire. 2. Sont-ils contents d'y aller? 3. Nous faisons la même chose. 4. Va-t-elle au théâtre? 5. Qu'est-ce que vous dites? 6. Il ne sait pas la réponse. 7. Combien de temps mettent-ils à faire cela? 8. Quelle décision est-ce que tu prends? 9. Nous venons avant les autres. 10. À quelle heure partez-vous? 11. Pouvez-vous me prêter un peu d'argent? 12. Il ne

nous voit pas. 13. Est-ce que tu la reconnais? 14. Lui écrivent-ils? 15. Elles ouvrent toutes les fenêtres. 16. Vous ne devez pas dire cela. 17. Est-ce qu'ils lisent vos lettres? 18. Je veux t'accompagner. 19. Y a-t-il assez de place? 20. Cela ne les satisfait pas. 21. Nous remettons les livres à leur place. 22. Leur permet-elle de sortir? 23. Ils ne nous comprennent pas. 24. Le climat ne lui convient pas. 25. Se souvient-elle de nous? 26. Je repars le lendemain. 27. Elles ressortent tout de suite. 28. Nous revoyons cette pièce avec plaisir. 29. Cela paraît bizarre. 30. Ils nous décrivent l'endroit.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

12. cold

26. hot

30. late

32. left

44. miss

77. warm

1. This asparagus is quite cold. 2. My soup is too hot. I've burnt my tongue. 3. If you aren't warm enough, take another blanket. 4. It's foggy. The plane will likely be late. 5. You aren't cold when you are running. 6. If there are any vegetables left, I'll heat them for lunch tomorrow. 7. Who is still missing? 8. They seem cold, but they are really very congenial. 9. It's getting late. If I don't leave now, I'll be late for dinner. 10. I do almost everything with my left hand, but I write with my right. 11. It was always cold there at night. 12. If you don't hurry, you'll miss your train. 13. When it's warm, I always like a cold drink. 14. They're going to miss you next year. 15. How is your cold? 16. Grapes don't grow well here because of the cold. 17. When it's a dark day, I wake up late. 18. If you don't put on warmer gloves, your hands will be cold. 19. There is more than fifty dollars missing. 20. How about going in? It's getting cold.

Lesson 26

Semi-auxiliary Verbs

26.1 Although the term *auxiliary verbs* applies mainly to **avoir** and **être** when they are completed by the past participle, this term (or the term *semi-auxiliaries*) is also used to designate certain other verbs or verbal expressions when they are completed by the infinitive. Used as auxiliaries, these verbs have no real meaning of their own, or have lost their original meaning. The most important ones are **aller**, **venir de**, **devoir**, **pouvoir**, **faillir**, and **faire**. (**Faire** is treated separately in Lesson 33.)

26.2 **Aller** is used in the present and imperfect tenses to express what is or was going to happen.

Je vais prendre mon parapluie; il va pleuvoir.	I'm going to take my umbrella; it's going to rain.
---	--

J'allais passer la soirée à lire, mais j'ai mal aux yeux.	I was going to spend the evening reading, but my eyes are sore.
--	---

26.3 **Venir de** is used in the present and imperfect tenses and in the form of the present participle to express what has just or had just happened.

Je viens d'apprendre une bonne nouvelle.	I have just heard some good news.
---	-----------------------------------

Le train venait de partir quand nous sommes arrivés à la gare.	The train had just left when we got to the station.
---	---

Venant d'arriver, je ne suis pas au courant de ce qui se passe.	Having just arrived, I am not up to date on what is going on.
--	---

26.4 **Devoir** is used in all tenses to express necessity or moral obligation.

Je dois vous demander de ne pas fumer ici.	I must ask you not to smoke (in) here.
---	--

Alice a dû remettre son voyage parce que sa mère est tombée malade.	Alice had to postpone her trip because her mother fell ill.
--	---

Vous devriez vous coucher; vous tombez de sommeil.	You ought to go to bed; you are dead tired.
---	---

J'aurais dû faire la lessive aujourd'hui; on annonce de la pluie pour demain.	I should have done the washing today; rain is forecast for tomorrow.
--	--

26.5 When *You should . . .* (or *You ought to . . .*) and *You should have . . .* (or *You ought to have . . .*) really mean *I wish you could . . .* and *I wish you could have . . .*, the French equivalents are **Il faut** and **Il fallait**, followed by the infinitive.

Il faut l'entendre quand il raconte l'histoire de sa jeunesse! You ought to hear him when he tells the story of his youth!

Il fallait la voir quand elle a ouvert le colis! You should have seen her when she opened the parcel!

26.6 **Devoir** is used in the present and imperfect tenses and in the form of the present participle to express commitment or destiny.

Mon mari part en voyage d'affaires, et je dois le rejoindre à Chicago à la fin du mois. My husband is leaving on a business trip, and I am to join him in Chicago at the end of the month.

Je me demande ce qui s'est passé. Il devait arriver à midi. I wonder what has happened. He was to arrive (*or to have arrived*) at noon.

Qui aurait cru au dix-septième siècle que New York devait être un jour la plus grande ville du monde? Who would have thought in the seventeenth century that New York was one day to be the greatest city in the world?

26.7 **Devoir** is used in the present and past tenses to express probability or logical explanation.

Vous devez avoir faim. You must be hungry.

Il devait avoir une quarantaine d'années à ce moment-là. He must have been about forty at that time.

Ma montre ne marche pas; j'ai dû oublier de la remonter. My watch isn't going; I must have forgotten to wind it.

Ses photos étaient ratées; il avait dû se tromper de pose. His pictures were a failure; he must have given the wrong exposure.

26.8 **Pouvoir** is used in all tenses to express physical, emotional, or intellectual capacity.

J'ai mal à la gorge; je peux à peine avaler. I have a sore throat; I can scarcely swallow.

Je n'ai pas pu rentrer la voiture à cause de la neige. I couldn't put the car in because of the snow.

Elle ne pourra jamais bouger ce piano toute seule. She will never be able to move that piano (all) by herself.

Il ne pouvait pas supporter la paresse. He couldn't stand laziness.

Ce garçon savait que son père n'avait jamais pu comprendre son point de vue. This boy knew that his father had never been able to understand his point of view.

26.9 Pouvoir is used in all tenses to express permission.

Puis-je sortir, monsieur?

May I leave the room, sir?

Je pourrai voter aux prochaines élections.

I'll be able to vote at the next election.

26.10 Pouvoir is used in all tenses to express possibility or the existence of favourable circumstances. (The italicized forms are literary and should be avoided; the conversational equivalents are given in the next section.)

Qu'est-ce que ça peut (bien) être?

What (ever) can that be?

Il peut être trop occupé pour écrire.

He may be too busy to write.

Nous nous demandions d'où ce bruit étrange pouvait (bien) venir.

We were wondering where (in the world) that strange noise could be coming from.

Ce pouvaient être des touristes.

They may have been tourists.

Où est-ce que j'ai pu mettre mes lunettes de soleil?

Where can I have put my sun-glasses?

Il a pu perdre mon adresse.

He may have lost my address.

Je me demandais qui avait pu cueillir toutes mes cerises.

I was wondering who could have picked all my cherries.

Ils pensaient que l'enfant avait pu tomber dans la rivière.

They thought that the child might have fallen into the river.

Le plombier ne pourra pas venir avant demain; il est débordé de travail.

The plumber won't be able to come until tomorrow; he is swamped with work.

Elle ne sait pas quand elle pourra venir.

She doesn't know when she can (*lit. will be able to*) come.

Nous pourrions mettre une annonce dans le journal.

We could put an advertisement in the paper.

Tu pourrais m'aider au lieu de me critiquer.

You might help me instead of criticizing me.

Il aurait pu le faire s'il avait voulu.

He could have done it if he had wanted to.

Vous auriez pu me le dire plus tôt!

You might have told me sooner!

26.11 The following are the conversational equivalents of the italicized forms in the preceding section. (Note that in some cases there are more possibilities than in others.)

Il est peut-être trop occupé pour écrire. Peut-être qu'il est trop occupé pour écrire. Il (or Cela or Ça) se peut qu'il soit trop occupé pour écrire.

He may be too busy to write.

C'étaient (or **C'était**) **peut-être des touristes.** **Peut-être que c'étaient** (or **c'était**) **des touristes.** They may have been tourists.

Il a peut-être perdu mon adresse. He may have lost my address.
Peut-être qu'il a perdu mon adresse.

Il (or **Cela** or **Ça**) **se peut qu'il ait perdu mon adresse.**

Ils pensaient que l'enfant était peut-être tombé dans la rivière. They thought the child might have fallen into the river.

26.12 **Faillir** is used in the present perfect, the past perfect, and the past historic (**le passé simple**) to express the idea that the action of the following infinitive appeared imminent but did not actually take place.

J'ai failli oublier mes clefs. I almost forgot my keys.

Vous avez failli me renverser. You (very) nearly knocked me down.

Saviez-vous qu'il avait failli se noyer? Did you know that he had come close to drowning?

26.13 When *almost*, (*very*) *nearly*, *etc.* expresses the idea that an action has begun and is well on the way to completion, or had begun and was well on the way to completion, it is expressed by **presque**.

J'ai (J'avais) presque fini de faire les lits. I have (I had) almost finished making the beds.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. When are we going to choose a wedding present for Alice? 2. "Could I speak to Colette?" "I'm sorry. She has just gone out." 3. I must look for a job this summer. Do you know where I could work for two months? 4. You ought to see Provence when the almond trees are in bloom! 5. Beatrice was to have come to Belgium with us, but she changed her mind. 6. The clothes must be dry. Will you bring them in? 7. "She tried to move the piano alone, but she couldn't." "She shouldn't have tried to." 8. They're not back yet. They may have spent another week in Scotland. 9. I'll not be able to vote until next year. I'm not twenty-one yet. 10. A musician must spend several hours a day practising.

B. 1. The birds are going to eat all the cherries if we don't pick them soon. 2. I'm glad it's raining. I've just bought myself a new umbrella. 3. "Could you play golf with me Saturday morning?" "I'm sorry. I have to mow the lawn." 4. You should have seen her lovely wedding presents! 5. I must have left my glasses at the office. 6. Have you heard the good news? You and I are to join Uncle Peter in Paris on the second of July. He is paying for everything. 7. They were to go abroad during the first week of June. They are likely back in Canada now. 8. "We had had lunch before twelve and we couldn't stop for dinner before seven." "You must have been hungry." 9. "His line has been busy for

ten minutes.” “He may have forgotten to hang up (the receiver).” 10. I nearly forgot to vote at the last election.

C. 1. I couldn't spend a whole evening watching television. I prefer to read. 2. I shouldn't have planted so many onions and radishes. 3. I'm waiting for my mother-in-law. She was to have been here at noon. 4. It is getting late; we ought to go home. 5. I'll have to buy myself a new fur coat next winter. This one is very old. 6. I had just done the washing when it began to rain. 7. I nearly forgot to put the car in. 8. I can scarcely walk. I have a sore foot. 9. We should be at the station before eight o'clock, shouldn't we? 10. We were going to leave for Lake Huron last Sunday, but Stephen fell ill.

D. 1. This water is very deep. I nearly drowned here once. 2. There were to have been a hundred and fifty boys at camp, but because of the measles there were only a hundred and forty. 3. What a terrible accident! What can have happened? 4. We have nearly finished pruning the shrubs. 5. You must have been very tired after such a long trip. 6. George was to leave Montreal last night. He'll be in London this afternoon. 7. “I need someone to help me with the garden.” “You ought to put an advertisement in the paper.” 8. “Have you seen my keys?” “No, you may have left them in the car.” 9. “Alice must have been very ill.” “Yes, she nearly died.” 10. You should have tasted the pancakes Beatrice made us for breakfast!

VERB REVIEW

acheter	courir	jeter	recevoir
apercevoir	croire	se lever	répéter
appeler	cuire	mener	semer
s'asseoir	dormir	mourir	servir
boire	s'endormir	offrir	souffrir
céder	envoyer	plaire	suivre
conduire	falloir	ramener	traduire
construire	geler		

Mettez l'infinitif en italiques au présent et au passé du subjonctif.

1. Nous sommes contents que vous (*s'asseoir*) à côté de nous. 2. C'est dommage qu'elle (*conduire*) si mal. 3. Je doute qu'il (*falloir*) faire cela. 4. C'est possible qu'il nous (*appeler*) ce soir. 5. Je suis content que vous (*dormir*) bien. 6. Il est curieux que nous ne (*recevoir*) pas de leurs nouvelles. 7. Est-ce que cela vous étonne que nous ne (*acheter*) pas de nouvelle voiture? 8. Il est possible que je (*boire*) trop de café. 9. Doutez-vous qu'elle nous (*croire*)? 10. Il nie que tu (*courir*) plus vite que les autres. 11. Est-il vrai que vous lui (*envoyer*) de l'argent? 12. Nous avons peur qu'il le (*répéter*). 13. Je doute qu'elle (*mourir*). 14. Ils sont enchantés que nous (*offrir*) de les aider. 15. C'est dommage qu'elle (*servir*) le déjeuner si tard. 16. Est-il vrai que cela (*cuire*) en dix minutes? 17. Je regrette que ce livre ne vous (*plaire*) pas. 18. Nous sommes déçus que vous ne (*suivre*) pas le même cours. 19. Il doute que je (*traduire*) tout l'exercice sans une seule faute. 20. Je m'étonne qu'on (*construire*) une église à cet endroit-là. 21. Ils sont contents que vous (*jeter*) toutes ces vieilles choses. 22. Je nie que je (*s'endormir*) en

classe. 23. J'ai peur que tu ne les (*apercevoir*) pas. 24. Nous regrettons qu'elle (*mener*) une vie si triste. 25. Ils s'étonnent que nous ne les (*ramener*) pas avec nous. 26. C'est curieux qu'ils (*semer*) si tôt. 27. Ils doutent que vous (*se lever*) avant midi. 28. C'est dommage qu'il (*geler*). 29. Cela m'étonne qu'elle (*céder*) à ses enfants. 30. Je regrette que vous (*souffrir*).

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

10. can, can have

13. could, could have

40. may, may have

42. might, might have

1. I'll finish your suit as soon as I can. 2. Could you spend the evening at our house? 3. May I borrow an umbrella from you? 4. He might try to understand our point of view! 5. Alice couldn't sew when she got married, but now she makes all her own dresses. 6. I have told you all that, so that you may be up to date. 7. Might I ask you to help me? 8. I'm afraid she may be ill. 9. Can you help me tidy the cellar? 10. You might have brought in the clothes when it began to rain! 11. The water is too deep here for those who can't swim. 12. I told her that he might have lost her address. 13. Have you seen my glasses? I can't find them. 14. You could have seen Michael if you had come this morning. 15. She might have got used to the dog if it hadn't bitten her. 16. We could always count on him to tell a good story. 17. She may not have heard the good news yet. 18. I lent him my watch so that he might know the time. 19. We may postpone our trip. 20. He may have been embarrassed.

Lesson 27

The Past Participle and the Passive Voice

27.1 The past participle, in addition to being used with the auxiliary verbs **avoir** and **être** to form the various compound tenses, is also used simply as an adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the word it modifies.

Il portait des chaussures usées et des chaussettes trouées.

He was wearing worn-out shoes, and socks with holes in them.

Épuisée, elle s'est évanouie.

Exhausted, she fainted.

Pourquoi toutes les portes et toutes les fenêtres sont-elles ouvertes?

Why are all the doors and windows open?

Ce pont est très mal construit.

This bridge is very poorly (*lit. badly*) built.

Elle a l'air découragée.

She looks discouraged.

27.2 The passive voice indicates that an act is performed upon the subject. This construction is possible only with transitive verbs which take a direct object. It is formed by using the auxiliary verb **être** followed by the past participle of the verb denoting the action. This past participle agrees in gender and number with the subject.

Cette grammaire a été publiée à Toronto.

This grammar was published in Toronto.

27.3 When, as in the preceding example, the agent is not mentioned, there are two forms which are equivalent in meaning to the passive: the active voice with the indefinite subject **on**, and the reflexive construction.

On a publié cette grammaire à Toronto.

This grammar was published in Toronto.

Cette grammaire s'est publiée à Toronto.

This grammar was published in Toronto.

27.4 When the subject is a thing (and the agent is not mentioned), the reflexive construction is frequently preferred to either the passive or the **on** construction.

The examples below illustrate this preference for the reflexive, which is based entirely on usage and is not subject to rule.

Le fromage se mange avec du pain.	Cheese is eaten with bread.
L'm ne se prononce pas dans le mot automne.	<i>M</i> (or <i>The m</i>) is not pronounced in the word <i>automne</i> .
Comment s'écrit bibliothèque?	How is <i>bibliothèque</i> spelt?
Comment! Vous pensez y aller sans invitation! Mais cela ne se fait pas!	What! You intend to go (there) without an invitation! But that (or it) isn't done!
La viande de cheval se vend dans des boucheries spéciales.	Horse meat is sold in special butcher stores.

27.5 When the subject is a person, the reflexive can never be used to express the passive. For example, the sentence *They were arrested* may be expressed either by **Ils ont été arrêtés** or **On les a arrêtés**; but not **Ils se sont arrêtés**, since this last form would simply mean *They stopped*. Similarly, *The murderer will be hanged* is either **L'assassin sera pendu** or **On pendra l'assassin**; but not **L'assassin se pendra**, since this would mean *The murderer will hang himself*.

27.6 There are some cases where the reflexive cannot be used to express the passive even when the subject is a thing. For example, the sentence *The money had been hidden* may be expressed either by **L'argent avait été caché**, or **On avait caché l'argent**; but not **L'argent s'était caché**, since this last form would mean *The money had hidden (itself)*.

27.7 When the agent is mentioned, the passive construction must be used. The agent is introduced by **par** or **de**, according to the sense. The preposition **de** is used:

- (i) with verbs which express mental or emotional rather than physical action, *e.g.*, **être aimé, être respecté**;
- (ii) with verbs such as **être suivi, être accompagné**, when these express a customary action.

Otherwise, the preposition **par** is used.

La machine à coudre a été inventée par Barthélemy Thimonnier.	The sewing machine was invented by Barthélemy Thimonnier.
Les deux canoës avaient été emportés par le courant.	Both canoes had been swept away by the current.
Le maire était admiré et respecté de tous.	The mayor was admired and respected by all.
Les noms de pays sont généralement accompagnés de l'article défini.	Names of countries are usually accompanied by the definite article.
Cette petite fille pleure parce qu'elle a été suivie par un gros chien noir.	That little girl is crying because she was followed by a big black dog.

27.8 As in English, the auxiliary verb is sometimes not expressed.

Ce discours, (s'il avait été) prononcé huit jours plus tôt, aurait peut-être résolu la crise politique. That speech, (*if it had been*) delivered a week earlier, might have (*i.e. would perhaps have*) solved the political crisis.

Le voleur est parti en courant, (étant) poursuivi par deux agents de police. The thief ran off, (*being*) pursued (*or chased*) by two policemen.

27.9 There are two types of French verbs which cannot be made passive:

(i) verbs which do not take a direct object;

(ii) pronominal verbs.

In both cases, the only construction possible is the active voice with **on**.

On a répondu à toutes les questions. All the questions have been answered.

On ne se rendait pas compte de la difficulté du problème. The difficulty of the problem was not realized.

27.10 With the **on** construction, it is not possible to mention the agent. If the English sentence mentions the agent, and the French verb is one which cannot be made passive, the only solution is to make the agent the subject of the French sentence.

Tous les étudiants ont répondu à toutes les questions. All the questions have been answered by all the students.

27.11 An English verb in the passive may take a direct object, but such a construction is not possible in French. The corresponding French verb must be in the active voice, with **on** as subject if the agent is not mentioned, and with the agent as subject if it is mentioned.

On lui a offert un poste de vendeur. He has been offered a job as (a) salesman.

Un éditeur de livres de classe lui a offert un poste de vendeur. He has been offered a job as (a) salesman by a publisher of schoolbooks.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. "The Martins' line has been busy for half an hour." "Perhaps their receiver is off (*unhooked*)."
 2. How many of this author's works have been translated into English?
 3. French is spoken in Europe, in Asia, in America, and in Africa.
 4. The old woman was killed by a truck while she was crossing the street.
 5. The children, dressed up as Indians, were hidden behind the shrubs.
 6. She had been told to come home immediately.
 7. I was advised by my doctor to take this trip.
 8. We have been offered some flowers for the garden.
 9. How is your name spelt?
 10. His lawn is always well mown and his hedges clipped.

B. 1. All the bags are packed. Will you put them in the trunk of the car?
 2. This book is published in Canada.
 3. Who can name a fruit which is eaten with salt and pepper?
 4. It is not easy to answer all the questions asked by little

children. 5. He claims he has never been disobeyed. 6. Pancakes are often eaten with sausages. 7. "What can we do with these torn sheets?" "I'll try to mend them." 8. It is good to be loved by one's family and respected by one's neighbours. 9. We have been given some hard problems for Monday. 10. I'm almost finished. The beds are all made and the table is cleared, but the dishes aren't washed yet.

C. 1. She was quite upset by the news of her father's death. 2. In France, newspapers and magazines are not sold in drugstores. 3. These lilacs and almond trees were planted by my grandfather forty years ago. 4. Our lawn is surrounded by a hedge. 5. They were given back their exercises the next day. 6. Banks are closed on Saturday and Sunday. 7. Switzerland is surrounded by four countries larger than itself (*it*). 8. Our telephone number has been changed. 9. The crisis was solved by the president. 10. "Could we see the house on Park Street?" "I'm sorry. It is already sold."

D. 1. I like most frozen vegetables, but not green beans. 2. That old lady never goes out alone. She is always accompanied by a nurse. 3. When he was passing through the forest, he was followed by a bear. 4. Be careful! That stool has just been mended. 5. Mount Everest was conquered in 1953. 6. The speech I'm going to read you was delivered by Abraham Lincoln. 7. An island is surrounded by water. What is a lake surrounded by? 8. The King of Portugal was dethroned in 1910. 9. The thieves were soon arrested. 10. The same story told by someone else would not be so interesting.

VERB REVIEW

battre	s'enfuir	se plaindre	sentir
se battre	éteindre	pleuvoir	sourire
bouillir	s'éteindre	recoudre	suffire
consentir	fuir	rejoindre	se taire
convaincre	joindre	résoudre	tenir
coudre	mentir	retenir	vaincre
craindre	peindre	rire	vivre
cueillir	plaindre		

Mettez au passé composé et au futur.

1. Nous rions bien. 2. Elle sent une grande joie. 3. Quand tenez-vous la première réunion? 4. Je couds les poches de ma robe. 5. Cela ne leur suffit pas. 6. Ils vivent dans la terreur. 7. Il joint les deux morceaux de bois. 8. Est-ce qu'ils peignent le garage? 9. Nous nous plaignons de la nourriture. 10. Il nous bat facilement au tennis. 11. Elles cueillent des fleurs. 12. Je me tais. 13. Je les convaincs de nos besoins. 14. Ils fuient devant l'ennemi. 15. Votre suggestion résoud le problème. 16. L'eau bout. 17. Est-ce qu'il pleut? 18. Nous leur sourions aimablement. 19. Est-ce qu'elle consent à garder les enfants? 20. Est-ce qu'ils nous mentent? 21. Je retiens trois chambres. 22. Est-ce que tu me recouds les boutons? 23. Où est-ce que vous les rejoignez? 24. J'éteins le four. 25. Les lumières de la ville s'éteignent. 26. Nous ne les plaignons pas. 27. Il ne craint pas de nous déranger. 28. Ils se battent pour la liberté. 29. Nous vainquons leur résistance. 30. Le voleur s'enfuit.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

4. agree

20. half

1. "In spite of everything, accidents are inevitable." "I don't agree with you."
2. Did you pay one franc twenty for this half kilo of oranges?
3. It is agreed that the attack will take place on the seventeenth.
4. "What is half of seventy-one?" "Thirty-five and a half."
5. Everybody has agreed to take the seven thirty bus.
6. Half (of) these apples have gone bad.
7. Do radishes agree with you?
8. I didn't agree to flood (*to water*) the rink.
9. I have to leave again before half past twelve to get back to (*to arrive at*) school on time.
10. They had agreed to meet in London.
11. Do you agree with them?
12. Here's half a slice of bread for the sparrows.
13. I always agree with my wife.
14. It was so cold that the firemen were half covered with ice.
15. With what does this participle agree?
16. Half (of) my begonias have died.
17. Michael hasn't agreed yet to go with me to South America.
18. This work doesn't agree with you. You should be in the open.
19. The piece of ground is half surrounded by lovely maples.
20. They quarrel half the time.

Lesson 28

The Infinitive

28.1 The French infinitive corresponds to two different English forms: the infinitive, *e.g.*, (to) *see*; and the gerund, *e.g.*, *seeing*.

28.2 As the subject or subjective completion, English normally uses the gerund (sometimes the infinitive), but French always uses the infinitive.

Voir, c'est croire.

Seeing is believing.

Mentir est honteux.

Lying is shameful.

Voilà ce qui s'appelle profiter des circonstances!

That's what you call taking advantage of circumstances!

28.3 French always uses the infinitive as the object of a preposition (except **en**), where English has the gerund.

Elle avait pris l'habitude de servir tous les samedis du veau avec de la purée de pommes de terre et des petits pois.

She had got into the habit of serving veal with mashed potatoes and (green) peas every Saturday.

28.4 The preposition **après** requires the perfect infinitive.

Après avoir passé la douane, nous sommes montés dans le train.

After going through the customs, we got on the train.

28.5 The infinitive is used without any preposition after certain verbs and expressions, the commonest of which are:

il faut	it is necessary, one must
autant (vaut)	one may as well
il vaut mieux	it is better
adorer	to adore, to love
aimer	to like
aimer autant	to like (just) as well
aimer mieux	to like better, to prefer

aller	to go, to go and
avoir beau	to (<i>do</i>) in vain
compter	to expect, to plan
désirer	to desire, to wish, to want
détester	to dislike, to hate
devoir	must, to have to, to be to
espérer	to hope
faillir	to nearly (<i>do</i>), to almost (<i>do</i>)
laisser	to let
oser	to dare
paraître	to appear, to seem
penser	to intend, to expect, to plan
pouvoir	to be able, can
préférer	to prefer
se rappeler	to recall, to remember
savoir	to know how, can
sembler	to seem
venir	to come, to come and
vouloir	to wish, to want
vouloir bien	to be willing, not to mind

Puisqu'il nous faut deux nouveaux pneus, autant (vaut) les remplacer tous. Since we need two new tires, we may as well replace them all.

J'ai beau essayer, je ne peux pas m'habituer au goût des huîtres ni des olives. No matter how (hard) I try, I cannot get used to the taste of oysters or olives.

Nous comptons nous établir dans l'Ouest. We expect (*or* plan) to settle in the West.

Savez-vous traire une vache? "Can you milk a cow?" "No, can you?"
— Non, et vous?

Venez cueillir des prunes quand vous voudrez. Come and pick some plums whenever you like.

28.6 The infinitive following **aller** or **venir** is preceded by **pour** when it is desired to stress purpose.

Je suis venu dans le Québec (or la province de Québec) pour perfectionner mon français. I have come to Quebec (in order) to improve my French.

28.7 The infinitive is preceded by the preposition **à** after certain verbs, the commonest of which are:

aider	to help
s'amuser	to amuse oneself, to pass the time
apprendre	to learn, to teach
arriver	to succeed, to manage
s'attendre	to expect

commencer	to begin, to start
consentir	to consent, to agree
continuer	to continue, to go on, to keep (on)
décider	to persuade, to induce
se décider	to make up one's mind
demander	to ask (= to ask permission)
encourager	to encourage
s'exercer	to practise
habituer	to accustom, to get (one) used to
s'habituer	to become accustomed, to get used to
hésiter	to hesitate
inviter	to invite
se mettre	to begin, to start, to set about
obliger	to oblige, to force, to make
s'occuper	to busy oneself
penser	to think of, to remember
persister	to persist
se préparer	to prepare (oneself), to get ready
renoncer	to give up
réussir	to succeed
ne pas tarder	not to be long, to soon (<i>do</i>)
tenir	to be anxious

Je ne consentirai jamais à prendre des pensionnaires. I shall never consent to take in boarders.

Il continue à faire mauvais. The weather continues to be bad.

Il nous a toujours encouragés à nous servir du dictionnaire. He has always encouraged us to use the dictionary.

Il est très habile; il ne tardera pas à s'enrichir. He's very clever; he'll not be long (in) getting rich.

28.8 The infinitive is preceded by the preposition **à** following on **avoir** (*quelque chose, etc.*). Similarly, the preposition **à** is used with the impersonal verb **il reste**.

Avez-vous quelque chose à déclarer? Have you anything to declare?

Il y a une pile de vieux magazines à jeter. There's a pile of old magazines to throw out (*or away*).

Si vous voulez que je vous donne un coup de main, vous n'avez qu'à le dire. If you want me to give you a hand, you have only to say so.

Il reste deux housses à laver. There are two slip covers left to wash.

28.9 The infinitive is preceded by the preposition **de** after certain verbs and expressions, the commonest of which are:

accepter	to agree
accuser	to accuse
s'arrêter	to stop

attendre	to wait
avoir l'air	to seem, to look as if one were
avoir besoin	to need
avoir envie	to feel like
avoir honte	to be (<i>or feel</i>) ashamed
avoir horreur	to loathe
avoir l'intention	to intend, to mean
avoir peur	to be afraid
avoir raison	to be right
avoir tort	to be wrong
cesser	to cease, to stop
se charger	to undertake
commencer	to begin, to start
conseiller	to advise
se contenter	to content oneself, to merely (<i>do</i>)
continuer	to continue, to go on, to keep (on)
convenir	to agree
décider	to decide
défendre	to forbid
défier	to defy
demander	to ask
se dépêcher	to hurry (and), to hasten
désespérer	to despair
dire	to tell
écrire	to write (= <i>to give a written order</i>)
empêcher	to prevent, to keep (one)
<i>ne pas pouvoir</i>	<i>not to be able to keep (oneself), not</i>
s'empêcher	<i>to be able to refrain, not to be able to help</i>
essayer	to try, to attempt
s'étonner	to be surprised
éviter	to avoid
s'excuser	to apologize
faire attention	to be careful
faire bien	to do well
faire mieux	to do better
faire semblant	to pretend
se fatiguer	to tire, to get tired
féliciter	to congratulate
finir	to finish
interdire	to forbid
ne pas manquer	not to fail, to be sure
menacer	to threaten
mériter	to deserve
négliger	to neglect
s'occuper	to see to, to look after
offrir	to offer
ordonner	to order, to command
oublier	to forget
permettre	to permit, to allow

persuader	to persuade
prier	to beg
promettre	to promise
proposer	to suggest
recommander	to recommend
refuser	to refuse
regretter	to regret, to be sorry
se réjouir	to be glad, to look forward
remercier	to thank
reprocher	to reproach
rêver	to dream
risquer	to risk, to run the risk
souhaiter	to wish
se souvenir	to remember
soupçonner	to suspect
suggérer	to suggest
supplier	to beg, to entreat
tâcher	to try, to attempt
se vanter	to boast
il s'agit	it is a matter, it is a question
il est (grand) temps	it is (high) time
c'est dommage	it is a pity, it is too bad
ce n'est pas la peine	it is not worth while
cela (or ça) m'est égal	I don't mind
Quelle chance . . . !,	What luck. . . !,
Quel ennui . . . !,	What a nuisance . . . !, <i>etc.</i>
<i>etc.</i>	

Ils nous ont accusés d'avoir triché.	They accused us of cheating.
Il avait toujours l'air de s'ennuyer.	He always looked as if he were bored.
Je ne peux pas m'arrêter d'éternuer.	I can't stop sneezing.
Fais attention de ne pas perdre ton billet.	Be careful not to lose your ticket.
Pourquoi faisiez-vous semblant de vous disputer?	Why were you pretending to quarrel?
Vous risquez de vous casser le cou avec cette motocyclette.	You are running the risk of breaking your neck with that motorcycle.
Vous avez bien fait de vous taire.	You were wise (<i>i.e. You did well</i>) to keep quiet.
Il ferait mieux de s'occuper de ses affaires.	He had better (<i>i.e. He would do better to</i>) mind his own business.
Ce serait dommage d'être malade pendant les vacances.	It would be a pity to be ill during the holidays.

28.10 In the negative, the pronominal verb **s'arrêter** (followed by an infinitive) is very often replaced by the simple verb **arrêter**.

André n'arrête pas de critiquer le gouvernement. Andrew is always (*lit. does not stop*) criticizing the government.

28.11 When the meaning requires it, the verbs **commencer** and **finir** have the preposition **par** before the infinitive. The difference between **commencer à** (*or de*) on the one hand, and **commencer par** on the other, and the similar difference between **finir de** and **finir par**, is illustrated by the following examples.

Elle a commencé à (or de) se coiffer. She started fixing (*or to fix*) her hair.

Elle a commencé par se coiffer. First (of all) she fixed (*or She began by fixing*) her hair.

J'ai fini d'écrire cette lettre il y a cinq minutes. I finished writing that letter five minutes ago.

J'ai fini par écrire la lettre que je devais à Edmond. I finally wrote (*or I finished by writing*) the letter I owed Edmund.

28.12 When the verb **être** (*or devoir être*) has a noun as its subject and an infinitive as the subjective completion, the infinitive is preceded by the preposition **de**.

Son plus grand désir est de devenir célèbre. Her greatest desire is to become famous.

28.13 The infinitive is preceded by the preposition **à** after certain adjectives when it forms with the preposition an adverbial modifier of the adjective. (Note that the infinitive here is not the subject of the sentence. For the construction where the infinitive is the subject, see 11.15.) The commonest of these adjectives are:

agréable	pleasant
amusant	amusing
beau	beautiful, lovely, fine
bon	good
compliqué	complicated
dernier	last
désagréable	unpleasant
difficile	difficult, hard
embêtant	tiresome, boring
ennuyeux	annoying, tedious, boring
facile	easy
fatigant	tiring
intéressant	interesting
joli	pretty
long	long
lourd	heavy
occupé	occupied, busy
premier	first
prêt	ready
simple	simple

Notre nouvelle maison est plus facile (plus difficile) à chauffer que l'ancienne. Our new house is easier (harder) to heat than the old one.

Les carottes sont très bonnes à manger crues. Carrots are very good to eat raw.

Vous devriez être le dernier à le critiquer. You ought to be the last (one) to criticize him.

28.14 The infinitive is preceded by the preposition **de** after certain adjectives, the commonest of which are:

capable	capable
certain	certain
content	glad, pleased, satisfied
coupable	guilty
désolé	very sorry
enchanté	delighted
fatigué	tired, weary
fier	proud
heureux	happy
impatient	impatient
incapable	incapable
mécontent	displeased, dissatisfied
pressé	in a hurry
ravi	delighted
sûr	sure
tenté	tempted

Je suis fatigué de marcher. I'm tired of walking.

Je suis impatient de toucher ce chèque. I can hardly wait (*lit. I am impatient*) to cash this cheque.

Il est sûr d'être nommé. He is sure to be appointed.

28.15 The infinitive is preceded by the preposition **pour**:

(i) following **assez . . .** and **trop . . .**;

(ii) in any case where the English *to* means *in order to*.

Je suis trop fatigué pour marcher. I'm too tired to walk.

Il a dû emprunter de l'argent pour payer leurs vacances. He had to borrow money to pay for their vacation.

28.16 The following examples illustrate certain cases in which the English passive infinitive is rendered by the French active infinitive.

Il est à plaindre. He is to be pitied.

C'était à prévoir. It was to be expected.

Que faire maintenant? Nous avons perdu notre argent et nos passeports. What's to be done now? We've lost our money and (our) passports.

28.17 The verbs listed below are frequently followed by a noun clause. In literary style or in careful speech, they may, instead, be followed by an infinitive. (In only a few cases does English have a corresponding construction.)

affirmer	to assert
avouer	to confess
certifier	to certify
croire	to believe, to think
déclarer	to declare
dire	to say
douter	to doubt

espérer	to hope
estimer	to consider
jurer	to swear
nier	to deny
penser	to think
prétendre	to claim
reconnaître	to recognize

Je crois pouvoir (= *que je peux*) **vous aider.** I think that I can help you.

Il dit avoir perdu (= *qu'il a perdu*) **tout espoir.** He says that he has lost all hope.

Il avoue avoir commis (= *qu'il a commis*) **le crime.** He confesses having committed the crime.

Elle pensait être arrivée (= *qu'elle était arrivée*) **trop tard.** She thought that she had arrived too late.

Niez-vous vous être fâché (= *que vous vous soyez fâché*)? Do you deny having got angry?

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. Living is not just (*only*) existing. 2. I'll have to spend the whole evening packing the bags. 3. After saying good night to everybody, the children went up to bed. 4. I hate going through the customs. 5. She pretends to like hockey in order to please her husband. 6. We are beginning to get into the habit of going for a walk every evening before going to bed. 7. Have we any old clothes to give away? The minister asked for some at the evening service. 8. Will you be able to keep her from worrying? 9. Aunt Susan never stops knitting when you are speaking to her. 10. First you will make a list of your mistakes in pronunciation.

B. 1. "Have you anything interesting to read?" "Only a detective story." 2. We can hardly wait to hear their decision. 3. Such a woman is to be pitied. 4. He confessed he had forgotten to mention it to her. 5. What a beautiful picture! That's what I call painting! 6. She kept all the candies without offering us any. 7. We may as well get on the bus now. It's going to leave in a few minutes. 8. Let's go and pick some apples and pears. 9. What induced her to write such a letter? 10. It isn't a secret. We haven't anything to hide.

C. 1. Julia can never keep from getting impatient when you don't understand what she's trying to explain to you. 2. Haven't you finished building your garage? 3. That letter was hard to write, and I'm glad I've finished it. 4. I'm tempted to tear up my passport pictures. 5. This list of the capitals of all the states would be hard to learn by heart. 6. What interests me most is playing the clarinet. 7. I spent five hours doing my homework last night. 8. "I was planning to serve spinach and cauliflower with the lamb." "It would be better to

serve green peas and carrots." 9. The doctor encouraged her to stop smoking. 10. I have something to tell you, but I prefer not to mention it here.

D. 1. I think I have persuaded them not to leave until Sunday night. 2. First of all they cashed the cheques they had received as wedding presents. 3. He is always ready to suspect somebody. 4. "Allow me to introduce Miss Chabot to you." "I am delighted to meet you." 5. Going through the customs is tiring when you have made a lot of purchases. 6. I am going to go to South America to learn to speak Spanish. 7. If he says he won't do it, you won't be able to force him to (do it). 8. We have three screens left to paint. 9. *His* idea would be to borrow money to pay for a car. 10. I am too busy to see them today.

VERB REVIEW

aller	écrire	ouvrir	reprendre
apprendre	être	partir	revenir
avoir	faire	pouvoir	savoir
connaître	interdire	prendre	sortir
devenir	lire	promettre	venir
devoir	mettre	refaire	voir
dire	se mettre	relire	vouloir
disparaître			

Mettez à l'imparfait et au plus-que-parfait de l'indicatif.

1. De quoi ont-elles peur? 2. Je suis très occupé. 3. Pourquoi faites-vous cela? 4. Mes parents vont à Montréal. 5. Ils nous disent bonjour. 6. Je ne sais rien de sa vie. 7. Cela me met en appétit. 8. Cela prend trop longtemps. 9. Ne viennent-ils jamais vous voir? 10. Tout le monde part. 11. Je ne peux pas y aller. 12. Nous ne les voyons pas souvent. 13. Vous ne connaissez pas Pierre Dupont? 14. Pourquoi est-ce que tu ne lui écris pas? 15. Elle leur ouvre la porte. 16. Je dois me lever à six heures. 17. Quelle pièce lisent-ils? 18. Elles ne veulent pas rester seules. 19. Est-ce qu'il y a beaucoup de monde? 20. Est-ce que vous refaites le même voyage? 21. Pourquoi interdit-elle aux enfants de se baigner dans la rivière? 22. Les deux bébés se mettent à hurler. 23. Je me promets de bonnes vacances. 24. Elle reprend connaissance. 25. Nous apprenons à nager. 26. Ils reviennent d'Europe. 27. Elle devient folle. 28. Avec qui sortez-vous? 29. Le soleil disparaît. 30. Je relis de vieilles lettres.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

8. before

16. expect

1. I wasn't expecting him to contradict me. 2. The day before the storm it had been very sultry. 3. We are expecting to move before the end of the month. 4. Sharpen the knife well before you carve the turkey. 5. Are you expecting a hard examination? 6. Had you ever visited Ohio before? 7. How much do you expect to spend? 8. I'm not expecting the Fabres before eight o'clock. 9. One of the candidates died two days before the election (*elections*). 10. Cyrus, the son

of Darius II, was killed at Cunaxa in the year 401 B.C. 11. Were you expecting the meal to be so delicious? 12. I had never seen an Arab before. 13. You don't expect to fail, do you? 14. I got both your letters the day before we returned. 15. Don't forget that you are to go to the library before Friday. 16. Are you expecting a letter from the publisher today? 17. I think I'll buy myself a new camera before I go away. 18. The old woman always used to read the Bible before going to bed. 19. Let's have (*Let's take*) a cup of coffee before we start playing again. 20. We are expecting the doctor.

Lesson 29

The Present Participle

29.1 The French verbal form in **-ant**, commonly referred to as the present participle, has, according to the way in which it is used, the function of an adjective, a present participle, or an adverb.

29.2 Used simply as an adjective, the verbal form in **-ant** agrees in gender and number with the noun or pronoun it modifies. In a few cases, there is a difference of spelling between the adjective on the one hand (*e.g.*, **convaincant**, **fatigant**, **précédent**), and the present participle or adverb on the other hand (*e.g.*, **convainquant**, **fatiguant**, **précédant**).

Elle a une voix ravissante.

She has a lovely (*lit. ravishing*) voice.

Voici tes poèmes. Franchement, je ne les ai pas trouvés très intéressants.

Here are your poems. Frankly, I didn't find them very interesting.

Dans les chapitres précédents, nous avons étudié les causes de la chute de Rome.

In the preceding chapters, we have been studying the causes of the fall of Rome.

29.3 Used as a present participle, the verbal form in **-ant** is usually accompanied by an object or an adverbial expression. Although it relates to a noun or pronoun, it is invariable.

La jeune mariée, soulevant le couvercle de la casserole, a poussé un cri de désespoir.

The young bride, lifting the lid of the saucepan, uttered a cry of despair.

J'ai photographié mes petits neveux donnant à manger aux poules et aux canards.

I photographed my little nephews feeding the hens and ducks.

Saignant abondamment et gémissant de douleur, elle essayait de se panser le doigt.

Bleeding profusely and groaning with pain, she was trying to bandage her finger.

29.4 Used adverbially, the verbal form in **-ant** is invariable, is always accompanied by **en**, and may be accompanied by an object or an adverbial expression. The phrase thus formed modifies the verb of its clause, and usually expresses time, manner, means, or attendant circumstances.

Je vous enverrai un télégramme en arrivant.

I'll send you a telegram when I arrive (*lit. on arriving*).

En époussetant dans les coins, elle a retrouvé sa bague.

While dusting in the corners, she found her ring (again).

Le renard a traversé le champ en courant.

The fox ran across the field (*lit. crossed the field running*).

En avançant le bras, le singe a saisi la banane.

(By) stretching out its arm, the monkey seized the banana.

Il avait échappé à la mort en s'accrochant à une planche.

He had escaped death by clinging to a plank.

Il est sorti en claquant la porte.

He went out slamming the door.

29.5 After verbs of perception (*i.e., hear, see, watch, feel, perceive, etc.*), English uses either the root infinitive or the present participle, *e.g., I saw him run, I saw him running*. In French, the usual form is the infinitive, but when it is desired to stress the fact that the action is still in progress, the infinitive is replaced by an adjective clause (occasionally by the present participle).

Avez-vous entendu cet individu interrompre le conférencier?

Did you hear that fellow interrupt the speaker?

Nous regardions une araignée attraper (or qui attrapait) des mouches.

We were watching a spider catch (or catching) flies.

Je sens les haricots qui brûlent.

I smell the beans burning.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. Last week an icy wind was blowing; the preceding week it had been very hot. 2. "What is that queer smell?" "It is likely the beans burning." 3. Those wasps have made another nest under our roof. It's really discouraging. 4. Closing his eyes and opening his mouth, the baby began to cry. 5. Her work must be tiring; she always looks exhausted. 6. Taking a tea-towel, the guest began to dry (*to wipe*) the glasses. 7. We should have (*We'd need*) an escalator in our school. 8. We lost some dishes while moving. 9. Showing its teeth, the big black dog chased the poor postman. 10. While doing the washing, she hurt her hand in the washing-machine.

B. 1. Sticking stamps on envelopes is boring. 2. While coming back from the grocery store, I dropped the eggs. 3. Is fish as nourishing as meat? 4. Your little niece is lovely (*ravishing*)! 5. By building the cupboards myself, I was able to save more than two hundred dollars. 6. Knowing nothing about it, I cannot express any opinion. 7. By lending him that money, you are going to encourage him to borrow. 8. While crossing the street against the red light, she was knocked down by a truck. 9. An astonishing number of the inhabitants of Mexico can neither read nor write. 10. The shorter the speech is, the more interesting I find it.

C. 1. Leaving from Dieppe, you land in England at Newhaven. 2. It is tiring to mow the lawn. 3. Let's go and watch the children feed the ducks. 4. What's the name of the actor we saw performing on television last night? 5. Raising its head and looking at the moon, the dog began to howl. 6. On opening the parcel,

she exclaimed: "Who can have sent me this?" 7. Did you see that rabbit eating my lettuce? 8. The thief ran out of the bank when he saw a policeman arriving. 9. By clinging to the canoe, he kept himself from drowning. 10. Speaking in a low voice, the thief asked for all the money (*all the money there was*) in the bank.

D. 1. Seeing something moving in the grass, the horse began to gallop. 2. By taking a taxi, he was able to get the five o'clock train. 3. She broke her right arm skiing. 4. I see our neighbour pruning his shrubs. 5. Did you ever see a fox catch a hen? 6. By taking a typing course, you will be able to find a job in an office. 7. While dusting the furniture and making the beds, I always listen to the radio. 8. "How did you succeed in losing weight?" "By doing without pastry and ice cream." 9. The young bride spoiled her first dinner by burning the roast and vegetables. 10. Seizing the biggest banana, the monkey began to eat it.

VERB REVIEW

acheter	croire	offrir	renvoyer
amener	cuire	peler	répéter
appeler	dormir	plaire	révéler
s'asseoir	s'endormir	poursuivre	servir
boire	enlever	rappeler	souffrir
conduire	envoyer	recevoir	suivre
construire	falloir	rejeter	traduire
courir	mourir		

Mettez au conditionnel présent et au conditionnel passé.

1. Je m'assieds ici. 2. Est-ce que vous les conduisez à la gare? 3. Combien d'argent vous faut-il? 4. Appelez-vous les pompiers? 5. Il dort toute la matinée. 6. Elle reçoit une bourse. 7. Quelle voiture achètent-ils? 8. Nous buvons du lait. 9. Je ne le crois pas. 10. Ils ne courent pas assez vite. 11. Est-ce que tu lui envoies des fleurs? 12. Je répète la liste. 13. Elles meurent de faim. 14. Qu'est-ce que vous vous offrez? 15. Cela ne sert pas à grand-chose. 16. Les légumes cuisent plus vite dans l'autre casserole. 17. Ce genre de film ne leur plaît pas. 18. Quel cours suivez-vous? 19. Qui est-ce qui traduit votre correspondance? 20. Ils construisent le garage eux-mêmes. 21. Je lui rappelle sa promesse. 22. Nous rejetons les petits poissons dans l'eau. 23. Les enfants s'endorment tout de suite. 24. Est-ce que vous amenez des amis? 25. Nous enlevons d'abord les assiettes. 26. Elle pèle les pommes de terre. 27. Je lui renvoie son livre. 28. Il révèle la vérité. 29. Je ne souffre pas beaucoup. 30. L'agent de police poursuit le voleur.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

78. way

1. This is the only way to solve the problem. 2. That's not the way you clip a hedge. 3. The best way to please him is to serve him pancakes with sausages.

4. I don't like the way he smiles. 5. What a way to bandage your finger! 6. Have you ever lost your way in the forest? 7. Do you know the way to the hospital? 8. Which way did the thief go? 9. What do we need in the way of vegetables? 10. By the way, we need some gas. 11. We stopped several times on the way to admire the landscape. 12. "Which way is our hotel?" "This way." 13. Don't lose your way! 14. Will the children be in your way if they play here? 15. What are you going to serve in the way of fruit? 16. This is a new way of serving pineapple. 17. That's not the way to carve a chicken. 18. If these books are in your way, I'll put them somewhere else. 19. By the way, the water heater is not working. 20. He's looking for an easy way to get rich.

Lesson 30

The Subjunctive Mood (Part One)

30.1 Although the subjunctive mood has almost disappeared from English, it is still indispensable in French, even in simple conversation. However, of the four tenses, the present (**le présent**), the perfect (**le passé**), the imperfect (**l'imparfait**) and the past perfect (**le plus-que-parfait**), only the first two are used in conversation and correspondence, the present being used for incompleted actions or states, and the perfect for completed actions or states. The imperfect and the past perfect subjunctive are purely literary forms.

30.2 The indicative is commonly referred to as the objective mood. This means that, on the whole, it states facts as they actually are and without regard to one's attitudes or emotions towards these facts. In contrast to this, the subjunctive is commonly called the subjective mood. This means that, on the whole, the emphasis is placed not so much on the bare facts as on one's attitudes and emotions towards them. Although this distinction is usually apparent, there are some cases where either mood is possible, according to whether fact or attitude is being stressed. (There are even instances where the meaning necessitates the use of the conditional mood.) In certain cases the line has been drawn, and an arbitrary grammatical rule established.

30.3 The subjunctive mood is used in a subordinate clause dependent on a verb or noun of *wishing, ordering, requesting, permitting, preventing, waiting, etc.* The commonest of such verbs and nouns are:

accepter	to agree, to consent
approuver	to approve
attendre	to wait
s'attendre (à)	to expect
consentir	to consent, to agree
défendre	to forbid
demander	to ask
désapprouver	to disapprove
désirer	to wish, to want
dire	to tell (= <i>to order</i>)
empêcher	to prevent
éviter	to avoid

exiger	to demand, to insist
mériter	to deserve
s'opposer (à)	to oppose
ordonner	to order, to command
permettre	to permit, to allow
prier	to beg
proposer	to suggest
souhaiter	to wish
suggérer	to suggest
supplier	to beg
tenir (à)	to be anxious
tolérer	to tolerate, to stand
veiller (à)	to see (to it)
vouloir	to wish, to want
vouloir bien	to be willing, not to mind
la demande	the request
le désir	the desire, the wish
l'ordre	the order
la permission	the permission
la prière	the prayer, the request, the entreaty
le souhait	the wish
la suggestion	the suggestion
le vœu	the wish

In the clause following **empêcher** or **éviter**, the insertion of **ne** is a mark of careful usage. However, it is not necessary; and in any case, it never has negative force.

Mon café est (était) trop chaud; j'attends (j'attendais) qu'il se refroidisse un peu. My coffee is (was) too hot; I'm waiting (I was waiting) for it to cool off a little.

Il faut (Il faudrait) éviter que le chat (ne) voie les poissons rouges. We must avoid (We'd have to avoid) letting the cat see the goldfish.

Ma mère exige (exigeait) que nous soyons à l'heure pour les repas. My mother insists (insisted) on our being on time for meals.

La propriétaire ne permet pas (n'a jamais permis) qu'on se serve de sa machine à laver. The landlady does not allow (has never allowed) anyone to use her washing-machine.

Je voudrais que vous fassiez des frites. I wish you would make (*lit. I should like that you make*) some French fries.

Notre hôtesse veut absolument que nous fassions un pique-nique. Our hostess insists on our having a picnic.

Votre suggestion que je lui fasse des excuses n'est pas raisonnable. Your suggestion that I apologize to him is unreasonable.

30.4 Since a clause cannot follow directly on a preposition, verbs such as **s'attendre (à)**, **s'opposer (à)**, **tenir (à)** and **veiller (à)** require the pronoun **ce** before the subordinate clause.

Vous attendez-vous à ce que le docteur vous guérisse du jour au lendemain?

Do you expect the doctor to cure you overnight?

Mes parents tiennent (beaucoup) à ce que je fasse partie de la première équipe.

My parents are (very) anxious for me to be on the first team.

30.5 If the person or thing that *wishes, orders, etc.* is also the one that is to carry out the wish, order, *etc.*, an infinitive is used instead of a subordinate clause. In some cases, a preposition is required before the infinitive. The following are the verbs of the above list (with the required preposition) used in this way:

accepter de
attendre de
s'attendre à
consentir à
demander à
désirer

éviter de
mériter de
souhaiter de
tenir à
vouloir
vouloir bien

Attendez d'avoir les résultats des examens.

Wait until you get the examination results.

Nous ne demandons pas à vivre dans le luxe.

We don't ask to live in luxury.

Je veux bien faire ma part, mais je ne veux pas m'occuper des rafraîchissements.

I'm willing to do (*or* I don't mind doing) my share, but I won't (*or* I don't want to) look after the refreshments.

30.6 With certain verbs the infinitive construction is commoner than the subordinate clause, even when the person or thing that *wishes, orders, etc.* is not the one that is to carry out the wish, order, *etc.* These verbs are:

empêcher }
prier }
supplier }

qn de faire qch.

défendre }
demander }
dire }
ordonner }
permettre }
proposer }
souhaiter }

à qn de faire qch.

Comment puis-je empêcher mon chien d'aboyer après les vaches et les moutons?

How can I keep my dog from barking at cows and sheep?

As-tu demandé à Henri de sortir les poubelles?

Did you ask Henry to put out the garbage cans?

Je vais lui proposer de nous accompagner.

I am going to suggest that he come (*or* go) with us.

30.7 The subjunctive mood is used in a subordinate clause dependent on a verb, adjective, or noun of feeling. The commonest of these are:

aimer	to like
aimer mieux	to prefer
avoir peur	to be afraid
craindre	to fear
détester	to dislike, to hate
s'étonner	to be surprised
se plaindre	to complain
préférer	to prefer
regretter	to regret, to be sorry
se réjouir	to be glad
content	glad, pleased
déçu	disappointed
désolé	very sorry
enchanté	delighted
ennuyé	troubled
étonné	surprised, astonished
fâché	angry
heureux	happy
mécontent	dissatisfied, displeased
ravi	delighted
soulagé	relieved
surpris	surprised
triste	sad
vexé	annoyed
la crainte	the fear
la peur	the fear
le regret	the regret

There seems to be a current tendency to replace **se plaindre que** plus the subjunctive by **se plaindre de ce que** plus the indicative.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Mets ton écharpe; j'ai peur que tu (ne) prennes froid. | Put on your scarf; I'm afraid you'll catch a chill. |
| Je regrette que vous ne vous soyez pas amusé au cirque. | I'm sorry you didn't have a good time at the circus. |
| J'aimerais que vous balayiez l'escalier de la cave. | I wish you would (or I'd like you to) sweep the cellar stairs. |
| Elle se plaint que ses élèves soient (or Elle se plaint de ce que ses élèves sont) paresseux. | She complains that her pupils are lazy. |
| Ses parents étaient-ils étonnés qu'il ait eu une si bonne note en physique? | Were his parents surprised that he got (or had got) such a good mark in physics? |

Elle était désolée que les biftecks soient assez durs et légèrement brûlés.

She was very sorry that the steaks were rather tough and slightly burnt.

Nous sommes ravis qu'il ait décidé de faire sa médecine.

We are delighted that he has decided to study medicine.

La crainte que la maison (*ne*) prenne feu l'a empêchée de dormir.

The fear that the house might catch fire kept her awake (*lit. prevented her from sleeping*).

30.8 Note, in the examples of the preceding section, the optional use of **ne** in the clauses dependent on **avoir peur** (*or craindre*) and **la peur** (*or la crainte*). This insertion of **ne** is a mark of careful usage; but it is not necessary, and in any case, it never has negative force. However, even in careful usage, the **ne** must not be added to the dependent clause if **avoir peur** (*or craindre*) is negative or interrogative.

Je n'ai pas peur que tu prennes froid.

I'm not afraid you'll catch a chill.

As-tu peur que je prenne froid?

Are you afraid I'll catch a chill?

30.9 If the clause dependent on **avoir peur** (*or craindre*) or **la peur** (*or la crainte*) is negative, the ordinary rules of negation apply, and there is no question of an optional **ne**.

Je crains que personne n'ait entendu nos cris.

I fear that no one has heard our shouts.

30.10 If the person who experiences the feeling is also the one whose action (*or state*) causes the feeling, an infinitive is used instead of a subordinate clause. In this case, **aimer**, **aimer mieux**, **détester**, and **préférer** are followed directly by the infinitive. The other expressions listed in 30.7 require **de** before the infinitive.

Mon neveu déteste se lever de bonne heure.

My nephew hates getting up (*or to get up*) early.

Se réjouissent-ils d'essayer leur nouveau bateau à voile(s)?

Are they looking forward to trying out their new sailboat?

Je suis enchanté de faire votre connaissance.

I am (very) pleased to meet you.

Je suis ennuyé d'avoir abîmé votre canne à pêche.

I feel badly (*lit. I am troubled*) about damaging your fishing-rod.

Le regret d'avoir manqué une si belle occasion l'a rendu malade.

The regret at having missed such a fine opportunity made him ill.

30.11 The subjunctive mood is used in a subordinate clause dependent on a verb which expresses or implies negation or doubt. The commonest of these are:

désespérer	to despair
douter	to doubt
nier	to deny

In the clause following a negative form of **douter** or **nier**, the insertion of **ne** is a mark of careful usage. However, it is not necessary; and in any case, it never has negative force.

Elle désespère qu'il guérisse.

She despairs (*or* She has lost all hope) of his getting well.

Je ne doute pas qu'il (*ne*) consente à payer tous les frais.

I don't doubt that he will agree to pay all the expenses.

Niez-vous que ce changement d'air vous ait fait du bien?

Do you deny that this change of air has done you good?

30.12 The subordinate clause dependent on verbs such as **désespérer**, **douter**, and **nier** is sometimes in the conditional mood, rather than the subjunctive. The test is to express the subordinate clause as a main clause. If this main clause has the indicative mood, as a subordinate clause it will take the subjunctive. However, if this main clause has the conditional mood, as a subordinate clause it will still take the conditional.

Vous ne vous plairez pas à la campagne.

You will not like it in the country.

Je doute que vous vous plaisiez à la campagne.

I doubt that you will like it in the country.

Je doutais que vous vous plaisiez à la campagne.

I doubted that you would like it in the country.

Vous ne vous plairiez pas à la campagne.

You would not like it in the country.

Je doute que vous vous plairiez à la campagne.

I doubt that you would like it in the country.

Je doutais que vous vous plairiez à la campagne.

I doubted that you would like it in the country.

30.13 If the person who despairs is also the one whose action (or state) is despaired of, an infinitive preceded by **de** may be used instead of a subordinate clause. In the case of **douter** and **nier**, it is more usual to retain the subordinate clause.

Pourquoi désespérez-vous de réussir?

Why do you despair (*or* Why have you lost all hope) of succeeding?

Je nie que j'aie taillé mon crayon avec ton rasoir.

I deny that I sharpened my pencil with your razor.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. I feel badly about spilling soup on the tablecloth. 2. I suggest we serve mashed potatoes and asparagus with the leg of lamb. 3. What a fall! I was afraid you would break your neck. 4. They are delighted that you have invited them for the weekend. 5. I don't want this veal to cook too quickly. 6. We are glad you have decided to settle here. 7. Henry and Marian are planning to go to the country tomorrow, and they have suggested that we go with them. 8. One of my teachers always complains that Martha and I never stop chattering. 9. They

were very sorry you were not appointed. 10. "Why does she never want to go away?" "She is always afraid the house will catch fire."

B. 1. I don't deny that we have more room now, but the old house was easier to heat. 2. Josephine would be delighted to get a good mark in mathematics. 3. I'm sorry I forgot to put out the garbage cans. 4. They will feel very badly about not being on time for dinner. 5. Our teacher insists on our learning three irregular verbs a week. 6. I'm relieved that the plumber can come at once. 7. I was afraid the steaks would not be tender enough. 8. I'm not surprised he's on the first team. 9. I wish you would put on your scarf. It's chilly out tonight. 10. "Haven't you started to tidy the cellar yet?" "No, I was waiting for you and Philip to give me a hand."

C. 1. The fear that you would make fun of him nearly made him ill. 2. We are looking forward to having some picnics this summer. 3. I wish you would go to the theatre without me; I don't feel like going out tonight. 4. We are all glad that Peter is cured. We were afraid he would die. 5. We have lost all hope of her passing. She has already failed twice. 6. I'm very sorry she's sick and I hope she'll soon be better. 7. Fear of being scolded kept her from going home. 8. She complains that her father never allows her to take the car. 9. Aren't you glad I finally wrote to Paul? 10. We are anxious for you to like it in this country.

D. 1. I'm sorry I can't tell you the time. My watch has stopped. 2. Do you deny that you committed the crime? 3. The fear that she would lose her passport or money almost spoiled her trip. 4. "Was it your dog that was barking during the night?" "Yes, I'm sorry he disturbed you." 5. He knows he is wrong, but he hates apologizing. 6. "You can't deny that the fishing-rod is damaged." "But I didn't do it." 7. "I'm not surprised that he has got rich." "Neither am I, but I doubt that he is happy." 8. I'll ask Stephen to milk the cows tomorrow morning. Mr. Beaulieu is coming to get me at half past five. 9. Louise doesn't want us to help her wash the dishes. She prefers washing them herself later. 10. He doubts that we'd have liked it in Corsica.

VERB REVIEW

battre	éteindre	pleuvoir	sourire
se battre	s'éteindre	recoudre	suffire
bouillir	fuir	rejoindre	se taire
consentir	joindre	résoudre	tenir
convaincre	mentir	retenir	vaincre
coudre	peindre	rire	valoir
cueillir	plaindre	se sentir	vivre
s'enfuir	se plaindre		

Mettez l'infinitif en italiques au présent et au passé du subjonctif.

1. Comment se fait-il que vous (*rire*)? 2. C'est dommage que tu (*se sentir*) malade. 3. Je m'étonne que vous (*tenir*) la réunion un samedi. 4. Cela m'étonne qu'elle (*coudre*) tout à la main. 5. C'est dommage que cela ne leur (*suffire*) pas. 6. On doute qu'il (*vivre*) longtemps après un tel accident. 7. Est-il vrai que tu (*joindre*) un chèque à ta lettre? 8. Nous sommes contents que vous (*peindre*) son portrait.

9. Je regrette qu'elle (*se plaindre*) tout le temps. 10. Nous doutons qu'il (*battre*) ses enfants. 11. Il est curieux que vous ne (*cueillir*) pas vos pêches. 12. Je suis déçu qu'elle (*se taire*). 13. J'ai peur que vous ne les (*convaincre*) pas. 14. Je doute qu'il (*s'enfuir*). 15. Doutez-vous que nous (*résoudre*) le problème? 16. Je m'étonne que l'eau ne (*bouillir*) pas encore. 17. Je suis content qu'il (*pleuvoir*). 18. Il est impossible que cette maison (*valoir*) vingt mille dollars. 19. C'est dommage que le bébé ne (*sourire*) pas pour la photo. 20. Comment se fait-il que vous (*consentir*) à faire cela? 21. Je nie que je (*mentir*). 22. Il est naturel que nous (*fuir*) le danger. 23. Doutez-vous qu'il nous (*retenir*) des places? 24. Je suis content que tu me (*recoudre*) ce bouton. 25. Comment se fait-il qu'il ne nous (*rejoindre*) pas? 26. J'ai peur qu'elle ne (*éteindre*) pas le gaz. 27. C'est curieux que toutes les lampes (*s'éteindre*) en même temps. 28. Il est naturel que je les (*plaindre*). 29. Comment se fait-il que vous (*se battre*)? 30. Personne ne doute que nous les (*vaincre*).

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

21. happen

62. sleep

64. succeed

1. How do you happen to have such a poor (*bad*) mark in mathematics? 2. You won't sleep well if you take two cups of coffee. 3. Louis XIV succeeded his father, Louis XIII. 4. She complains that nothing interesting ever happens to her. 5. Do you happen to know their telephone number? 6. How did you succeed in getting rid of the moths? 7. The whole family was sleeping when I got home. 8. How many nights do you have to sleep on the train when you go from Toronto to Vancouver? 9. An accident happened on our street today. 10. I don't like waking her when she is sleeping so soundly. 11. The policeman succeeded in catching both thieves. 12. Sleep is more important than food. 13. How does she happen to let the dog sleep in the living-room? 14. Who will succeed Queen Elizabeth? 15. Something unpleasant happened this morning. 16. Do you want to sleep downstairs? It's very warm in your room. 17. Tell us what happened to you in Japan. 18. I'm glad you slept well last night. 19. How does the coffee happen to be cold? 20. How did you happen to choose that colour?

Lesson 31

The Subjunctive Mood (Part Two)

31.1 A subordinate clause dependent on verbs of *saying* or *thinking* has the indicative or subjunctive mood, according to the form (*i.e.*, affirmative, negative, interrogative, *etc.*) in which these verbs are used. The commonest of them are:

affirmer	to assert
certifier	to certify
croire	to believe, to think
dire	to say
se douter	to suspect
espérer	to hope
estimer	to consider
garantir	to guarantee
penser	to think
s'imaginer	to imagine
prétendre	to claim
prouver	to prove
se rappeler	to remember, to recall
se souvenir	to remember
trouver	to think, to find
voir	to see

31.2 When a verb of *saying* or *thinking* is affirmative, the dependent clause is considered to be expressing a fact; hence its verb is in the indicative mood.

J'espère que cela ne vous coupera pas l'appétit. I hope that won't spoil (*lit. cut off*) your appetite.

Avant d'aller en Allemagne, elle s'imaginait que tous les Allemands étaient blonds. Before going to Germany, she imagined that all Germans were fair(-haired).

31.3 When a verb of *saying* or *thinking* is negative, interrogative, or in an *if* clause, the dependent clause is considered to be expressing something doubtful or merely possible; hence its verb is in the subjunctive mood.

Je n'ai jamais affirmé que ce soit vrai. I have never asserted that it is (or was) true.

Prétendez-vous que l'argent rende paresseux? Are you claiming that money makes one lazy?

Allez-vous le punir si vous prouvez qu'il ait menti? Are you going to punish him if you prove that he lied?

31.4 The rule in 13.3 applies to **dire** when it expresses opinion, but not when it merely conveys information.

Je ne dis pas qu'il soit bête, mais il n'est pas exactement brillant. I don't say he's stupid, but he isn't exactly brilliant.

Ne leur dites pas que je suis de retour. Don't tell them I'm back.

31.5 Observation of the rule requiring the subjunctive when the verb of *saying* or *thinking* is negative, interrogative, or in an *if* clause, is a mark of careful speech; but in simple conversation, violations of the rule are frequent.

Je ne me doutais pas qu'il soit (or était) si malhonnête. I didn't suspect that he was so dishonest.

Croyez-vous que les jumeaux aient (or ont) les oreillons? Do you think the twins have the mumps?

Si vous estimez que le salaire soit (or est) insuffisant, cherchez ailleurs. If you consider that the salary is inadequate, look elsewhere.

Trouvez-vous que cette cravate jaune aille (or va) bien avec mon complet gris? Do you think this yellow tie goes well with my grey suit?

31.6 When a verb of *saying* or *thinking* is at the same time interrogative and negative, the two aspects cancel each other, and the verb is considered to be the equivalent of a simple affirmative. The dependent clause has, therefore, the indicative mood.

Ne voyez-vous pas que le plafond est sale? (= *Vous voyez que le plafond est sale, n'est-ce pas?*) Don't you see that the ceiling is dirty? (= *You see that the ceiling is dirty, don't you?*)

31.7 The verbs **admettre** and **supposer** differ from those listed in 31.1 in that, even when they are affirmative, they sometimes have a subordinate clause in the subjunctive. The rule is that the subordinate clause has the indicative or subjunctive according as it is felt to be expressing a fact or a mere possibility.

Il admet qu'il est coupable du vol. He admits that he is guilty of the theft.

Admettons qu'il ait raison. Et (puis) après? Let's assume he's right. So what?

31.8 Regardless of the form (affirmative, negative, interrogative, *etc.*) of any of these verbs of *saying* or *thinking*, the verb of the dependent clause is in the conditional mood when the meaning requires it. (Cf. the rule in 30.12.)

Il pourrait nous payer comptant.

He could (i.e. would be able to) pay us cash.

Croyez-vous qu'il pourrait nous payer comptant?

Do you think he could pay us cash?

La bombe à hydrogène mettrait fin à la civilisation.

The hydrogen bomb would put an end to civilization.

Rien ne prouve que la bombe à hydrogène mettrait fin à la civilisation.

Nothing proves that the hydrogen bomb would put an end to civilization.

31.9 The subjunctive mood is used in a subordinate clause dependent on impersonal verbs (or equivalent expressions) denoting *possibility, doubt, negation, necessity, feeling, opinion, etc.* The commonest of these are:

il est (or c'est) bizarre	it is odd
il est (or c'est) bon	it is good (<i>i.e. fitting</i>)
il est (or c'est) douteux	it is doubtful
il est (or c'est) étonnant	it is surprising
il est (or c'est) heureux	it is fortunate, it is lucky, it is a good thing
il est (or c'est) important	it is important
il est (or c'est) impossible	it is impossible
il est (or c'est) juste	it is right, it is just
il est (or c'est) naturel	it is natural
il est (or c'est) nécessaire	it is necessary
il n'est pas (or ce n'est pas) nécessaire	it is not necessary
il est (or c'est) possible	it is possible
il est (or c'est) peu probable	it is unlikely, it is not (very) likely
il est (or c'est) rare	it is rare, it is seldom
il est (grand) temps	it is (high) time
ce n'est pas	it is not
c'est dommage	it is a pity, it is too bad
ce n'est pas la peine	it is not worth while
cela (or ça) m'est égal	it is all the same to me, I don't care, I don't mind
il n'y a pas de doute	there is no doubt
il faut	it is necessary, one must
il ne faut pas	one must not
il (or cela or ça) se peut	it may be
il semble	it seems
il suffit	it is sufficient, it is enough
il vaut mieux	it is better
Comment se fait-il . . . ?	how is it . . . ?
Quelle chance . . . !	what luck . . . !

NOTE 1. **Il semble** is usually replaced by **il paraît**. (See 31.12.)

NOTE 2. **Il est** (or **c'est**) **heureux** plus the subjunctive is usually replaced by **heureusement** que plus the indicative.

NOTE 3. The clause in the subjunctive dependent on **cela** (*or ça*) **m'est égal** may be replaced by a clause in the indicative introduced by **si**.

Il est bizarre qu'elle ne nous ait pas invités à son mariage.	It's odd that she didn't invite us to her wedding.
Ce n'est pas nécessaire qu'il vienne me voir; un coup de téléphone suffira.	It isn't necessary for him to come (<i>or</i> He doesn't have to come) and see me; a telephone call will be enough.
Il ne faut pas qu'il vienne me voir quand j'ai du monde.	He mustn't come and see me when I have company.
Ce n'était pas qu'elle soit bête, mais la chimie ne l'intéressait pas.	It wasn't that she was stupid, but chemistry didn't interest her.
Cela m'est égal qu'il me contredise (<i>or s'il me contredit</i>).	I don't mind his contradicting me (<i>or</i> if he contradicts me).
Est-ce que ça vous est égal que je ne serve pas (<i>or si je ne sers pas</i>) de crème fouettée avec la tarte?	Do you mind my not serving (<i>or</i> if I don't serve) whipped cream with the pie?
Il se peut que mon beau-père ait l'intention de changer son testament; il a consulté un avocat.	It may be that my father-in-law intends to change his will; he has been consulting a lawyer.
Ça se pourrait (bien) que je sois obligé de décommander mon rendez-vous.	It's (quite) possible that I might have to cancel my appointment.
Comment se fait-il qu'il ait augmenté le loyer?	How is it that he has raised the rent?

31.10 Similarly, the subjunctive mood is used in a subordinate clause dependent on the noun **la possibilité** and others of similar meaning, such as **la chance**, **Quelle chance . . . !**, **le danger**, **le risque**. (Although these are not strictly impersonal expressions, they are classified here for the sake of convenience.)

Il y a toujours la chance que la bague ne soit pas perdue, mais simplement égarée.	There is always the chance that the ring is not lost, but merely mislaid.
---	---

31.11 Note that the expression **il n'y a pas de doute** is followed by the conditional under the same circumstances as the verb **douter**. (See the rule in 30.12.)

31.12 A subordinate clause dependent on certain impersonal verbs (or equivalent expressions) has the indicative or subjunctive mood, according to the form (affirmative, negative, interrogative, *etc.*) in which these verbs are used. The commonest of them are:

il est (<i>or c'est</i>) certain	it is certain
il est (<i>or c'est</i>) évident	it is evident, it is obvious
il est (<i>or c'est</i>) probable	it is probable, it is likely
il est (<i>or c'est</i>) sûr	it is sure
il est (<i>or c'est</i>) vrai	it is true

il arrive
il paraît
il me semble

it happens
it appears, it seems
it seems to me

31.13 When an expression listed in 31.12 is affirmative, the dependent clause is considered to be expressing a fact; hence its verb is in the indicative mood.

Il est évident que vous le connaissez moins bien que moi.

It's obvious that you don't know him as well as I do.

Il paraît que cette compagnie va bientôt faire faillite.

It seems that that company is soon going to fail.

Il me semble que votre nouvelle coiffure vous rajeunit.

It seems to me that your new hair-do makes you look younger.

31.14 When an expression listed in 31.12 is negative, interrogative, or in an *if* clause, the dependent clause is considered to be expressing something doubtful or merely possible; hence its verb is in the subjunctive mood.

Il n'arrive pas souvent qu'il fasse si doux en février.

It doesn't often happen that it's so mild in February.

Est-ce vrai que vous ayez rompu vos fiançailles?

Is it true that you have broken off your engagement?

S'il est sûr que votre gendre ait été élu, allons le féliciter.

If it is sure that your son-in-law has been elected, let's go and congratulate him.

31.15 If an expression listed in 31.12 is at the same time interrogative and negative, the two aspects cancel each other, and the verb is considered to be the equivalent of a simple affirmative. The dependent clause has, therefore, the indicative mood.

N'est-il pas évident que ces renseignements sont inexacts? (= *Il est évident que ces renseignements sont inexacts, n'est-ce pas?*)

Isn't it obvious that this information is inaccurate? (= *It's obvious that this information is inaccurate, isn't it?*)

31.16 Regardless of the form (affirmative, negative, interrogative, *etc.*) of an expression listed in 31.12, the verb of the dependent clause is in the conditional mood when the meaning requires it. (Cf. the rule in 30.12.)

Elle aurait donné sa démission si le comité avait rejeté son projet.

She would have resigned if the committee had rejected her plan.

Est-il vrai qu'elle aurait donné sa démission si le comité avait rejeté son projet?

Is it true that she would have resigned if the committee had rejected her plan?

L'air de la montagne lui conviendrait.

The mountain air would agree with him.

Il n'est pas certain que l'air de la montagne lui conviendrait.

It is not certain that the mountain air would agree with him.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. It's surprising that she went to the party without being invited. 2. I admit our team isn't the best one. 3. Is it true that you won a prize with one of your poems? 4. I hope my son hasn't damaged your new sailboat. 5. It's not that the salary is inadequate, but the work is too hard. 6. Uncle Edmund looks better. It's obvious that the sea air agrees with him. 7. I don't think you're stupid. Is it possible you are lazy? 8. Do you consider you have really done your share? 9. We had never suspected that he was so intelligent. 10. Don't surprising tell anybody I got frightened.

B. 1. It is unlikely that this company will go bankrupt. 2. It now appears that he was right to get rid of his shares at that price. 3. It doesn't often happen that it's so cold in June. 4. It's a pity that John didn't have a good time at the dance. 5. I was talking a few minutes ago to Paul Martin. He claims Fido has been barking at his sheep. 6. I may do the washing today. It's doubtful that I'll have time to do it tomorrow. 7. There is no doubt that he could have won a scholarship. 8. It seems they have broken off their engagement. 9. Don't you see that it'll spoil your appetite if you eat candy before dinner? 10. It isn't surprising that the play made a hit. It was to be expected.

C. 1. "It seems to me that Colette has a new hair-do." "I believe you are right. How do you like it?" 2. Do you mind if we leave early? 3. It isn't certain that they'll let us photograph the new plane. 4. Is it likely that you would have given up your studies if you had failed? 5. We didn't imagine Alice would invite us to her wedding. 6. I think the rent is going to be raised. 7. What luck that you didn't sell those shares! 8. I can't say that I'm looking forward to settling in New Zealand. 9. It's quite natural that she has got into the habit of talking like her mother. 10. Isn't it obvious that she lied to you?

D. 1. I'll come right away if you really believe that little Andrew swallowed all the pills. 2. Is it true that your son-in-law has resigned? 3. It seems to me that you would do better not to criticize your father-in-law so much. 4. It's high time we went to see her. They tell me she has been having visitors since last Wednesday. 5. You mustn't give up hope of solving your problems. 6. He looks so guilty, but I guarantee he didn't commit the crime. 7. Let's assume that he's dishonest; that doesn't prove that he robbed the bank. 8. How is it that he lost his job? 9. It's obvious the baby isn't feeling well. He has been crying for almost an hour. 10. It's a pity you missed such a fine opportunity.

VERB REVIEW

Mettez au passé composé.

1. Ils dînèrent très tard. 2. Je ne réussis pas à ouvrir la fenêtre. 3. Nous les entendîmes entrer. 4. Elle ne mangea rien. 5. Tu lui donnas la main. 6. J'annonçai la bonne nouvelle. 7. Nous faillîmes manquer le train. 8. Je ne leur répondis pas. 9. Ils vous désobéirent. 10. Nous décidâmes de partir. 11. Elles n'entendirent pas le bruit. 12. Vous signâtes le contrat. 13. Tu perdis ton temps. 14. Elle maigrit de onze livres. 15. Il ne me rendit pas mon livre. 16. Je n'eus jamais l'occasion de le faire. 17. Elle fut très malade pendant un mois. 18. Ils

firent un long voyage. 19. Nous ne sûmes jamais la raison de son départ. 20. Ils nous permirent de prendre leur bateau. 21. Il prit ses vacances en septembre. 22. Je ne pus pas le convaincre. 23. Vous ne vous vîtes pas. 24. Elle ouvrit la lettre. 25. Nous dûmes nous arrêter. 26. Tu lus le livre en une soirée. 27. Elle ne voulut pas nous accompagner. 28. Ils conduisirent toute la journée. 29. Il fallut appeler le docteur. 30. Cette nuit-là, je dormis très mal.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

28. in

63. so

71. think

1. My mother-in-law knitted this pull-over in three days. 2. I wonder why he is so selfish. 3. "My parents are very old-fashioned." "So are mine." 4. I'll be thinking of you when I'm in California this winter. 5. You appear on stage in ten minutes. 6. "Is he really guilty?" "I think so." 7. William thinks we'd do well to consult a lawyer. 8. When I came here the salary was small, but in six months I got a raise. 9. The boss has postponed his holidays so that Claude and Henry and I may go to the convention. 10. Why did you buy so much pineapple juice? 11. Don't you think she looks younger? 12. I think it was Edmund who gave us those begonias. 13. He was wrong, so I contradicted him. 14. I don't know what to think of your decision. 15. "Will she have to repeat her year?" "I don't think so." 16. The information was inaccurate, so that we had to give up the plan. 17. How much time shall I have to think it over before making up my mind? 18. I think this pie is delicious. 19. There aren't so many mosquitoes this year. 20. "Will your parents punish you?" "I'm afraid so."

Lesson 32

The Subjunctive Mood (Part Three)

32.1 The subjunctive mood is used in a subordinate clause introduced by certain conjunctions, the commonest of which are:

afin que	in order that, so that
à moins que	unless
avant que	before
bien que	although
de façon (à ce) que	in such a way that, so that
de peur que	for fear that
de sorte que	in order that, so that
jusqu'à ce que	until, till
malgré que	in spite of the fact that
pour que	in order that, so that
pourvu que	provided (that)
quoique	although
sans que	without

Je vous ferai un œuf sur le plat, à moins que vous (*ne*) le préfériez poché, brouillé ou à la coque. I'll fry you an egg, unless you prefer it poached, scrambled or boiled.

Il m'avait conseillé de retenir nos places avant qu'il (*ne*) soit trop tard. He had advised me to reserve our seats before it was too late.

Bien qu'elle jouisse d'une bonne santé, elle ne cesse pas de se plaindre. Although she enjoys good health, she is always (*lit. does not stop*) complaining.

Je m'arrangeais toujours de façon (à ce) qu'on vienne me chercher à l'aéroport. I always managed to have someone meet me at the airport.

Je laisserai mon bureau ouvert de sorte que vous puissiez prendre ma machine à écrire. I'll leave my office unlocked so that you can take my typewriter.

Frottez la tache jusqu'à ce qu'elle disparaisse. Rub the spot (*or* stain) until it disappears.

Il court trop vite pour que vous le rattrapiez. He's running too fast for you to catch up (*lit. in order that you catch up*) with him.

Y a-t-il assez d'eau chaude pour que ie puisse prendre un bain? Is there enough hot water for me to take (*lit. in order that I can take*) a bath?

32.2 Note, in the examples of the preceding section, the optional use of **ne** in the clauses dependent on **à moins que** and **avant que**. (This would also apply to **de peur que**.) This insertion of **ne** is a mark of careful usage; but it is not necessary, and in any case, it never has negative force. If the clause dependent on **à moins que** or **de peur que** is negative, the ordinary rules of negation apply and there is no question of an optional **ne**.

Je ne comprends pas pourquoi il ne m'a pas parlé, à moins qu'il ne m'ait pas reconnu.	I don't understand why he didn't speak to me, unless he didn't recognize me.
--	--

32.3 When **de façon que**, **de sorte que** mean *with the result that*, they express a fact; hence the verb is in the indicative mood.

Elle avait oublié le sel, de sorte que la farce n'avait pas de goût.	She had forgotten the salt, so that the dressing (or stuffing) was tasteless.
---	---

32.4 Following the verb **attendre**, the conjunction *until* or *till* is translated by **que**. (See 30.3.)

Attendez que je remplisse mon stylo, et je vous ferai un chèque.	Wait till I fill my (fountain) pen, and I'll write you a cheque.
---	--

32.5 Following a negative expression, the conjunction *until* or *till* is translated by **avant que** or **jusqu'à ce que**, according to what would be used in the corresponding affirmative form.

<i>Tirez les feux d'artifice avant qu'il (ne) fasse noir.</i>	<i>Let off the fireworks before it's dark.</i>
---	--

Ne tirez pas les feux d'artifice avant qu'il (ne) fasse noir.	Don't let off the fireworks until it's dark.
--	--

<i>Oui, tu peux veiller jusqu'à ce qu'il fasse noir.</i>	<i>Yes, you may stay up until it's dark.</i>
--	--

Non, tu ne peux pas veiller jusqu'à ce qu'il fasse noir.	No, you may not stay up until it's dark.
---	--

32.6 The conjunction *until* or *till* followed by a verb in a past tense must sometimes be translated by **jusqu'au moment où** (or **jusqu'au jour où**, according to the sense) with the indicative, rather than **jusqu'à ce que** with the subjunctive. **Jusqu'à ce que** implies that the action (or state) expressed by the following verb was looked forward to as something to be achieved (or avoided). The emphasis is on anticipation. **Jusqu'au moment où** (or **jusqu'au jour où**) implies that the action expressed by the following verb had not been looked forward to, but simply occurred (often unexpectedly).

Nous faisions du patinage sur l'étang jusqu'à ce que la glace soit trop mince.	We used to go skating on the pond until the ice was too thin.
---	---

Il a admiré le chapeau de sa femme jusqu'au moment où il a jeté un coup d'œil sur la facture.	He admired his wife's hat until he glanced at the bill.
--	---

32.7 When two consecutive subordinate clauses are introduced by the same conjunction, the conjunction is not repeated but is replaced in the second clause by **que**. The second clause has the same mood as the first.

Malgré que les pruneaux soient un aliment excellent et que vous les prépariez si bien, je refuse carrément d'en manger.

In spite of the fact that prunes are an excellent food and that you prepare them so nicely, I flatly (*lit. squarely*) refuse to eat any.

Comme l'eau était peu profonde et qu'il y avait des pierres cachées, il était dangereux de plonger.

As the water was shallow and (as) there were hidden rocks, it was dangerous to dive.

32.8 When the conjunction **si** introduces a condition, it requires a verb in the indicative mood. When, however, there are two consecutive *if* clauses, it is customary, in careful usage, to avoid the repetition of **si** by using **que** to introduce the second clause. In such a case, **que** requires a verb in the subjunctive mood.

S'il y a des courants d'air et que la salle ne soit pas bien chauffée, je suis sûre de m'enrhumer au concert.

If it is draughty and the hall is not well heated, I am sure to catch (a) cold at the concert.

32.9 The use of the conjunctions **afin que**, **à moins que**, **avant que**, **de façon (à ce) que**, **de peur que**, **pour que**, and **sans que**, is normally avoided when the subject of the subordinate clause would represent the same person or thing as the subject of the verb on which the clause depends. Instead, the corresponding preposition is used, followed by the infinitive. These prepositions are: **afin de**, **à moins de**, **avant de**, **de façon à**, **de peur de**, **pour**, and **sans**.

NOTE 1. The preposition **malgré** is never used with an infinitive.

NOTE 2. **Jusqu'à** is seldom used with an infinitive in simple speech.

NOTE 3. There are no prepositions corresponding to **bien que**, **de sorte que**, **pourvu que**, or **quoique**.

Mets tes caoutchoucs afin de ne pas te mouiller les pieds.

Put on your rubbers so as not to (*or* so that you won't) get your feet wet.

Je ne peux jamais enfoncer un clou sans me donner un coup sur le pouce.

I can never drive (in) a nail without hitting my thumb.

32.10 The subjunctive mood is used, under certain circumstances, in adjective clauses, because of the underlying doubt about the accuracy or possibility of what the clause states. (See 32.11, 32.12, 32.13, and 32.14.)

32.11 The subjunctive is used in an adjective clause modifying an antecedent which is negative or accompanied by a negative expression.

Je ne connais personne qui veuille entreprendre une tâche si dangereuse.

I do not know anyone who is willing to undertake such a dangerous task.

Il n'y a aucun pays où tout le monde soit heureux.

There is no country where everyone is happy.

32.12 The subjunctive is used in an adjective clause modifying an antecedent accompanied by some limiting expression which leaves room for difference of opinion. (The indicative is used in cases where there is no room for doubt or difference of opinion.)

Ma sœur aînée est la seule de la famille qui soit photogénique.

My older (*or* oldest) sister is the only one in the family who is photogenic.

Il y a peu de patrons qui puissent satisfaire tous les désirs de leurs employés.

There are few bosses who can grant all the wishes of their employees.

J'ai eu le seul pain bis qui restait.

I got the only brown loaf that was left.

32.13 Sometimes the form of a sentence is such as to throw doubt on the existence of a person or thing. This is frequently so when the noun or pronoun representing the person or thing is in an interrogative clause or an *if* clause. In such a case, an adjective clause modifying the noun or pronoun has its verb in the subjunctive mood.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un de la classe qui n'ait pas été vacciné contre la diphtérie?

Is there anybody in the class who has not been inoculated against diphtheria?

Si tu trouves un veston de sport à un prix qui te convienne, n'hésite pas à l'acheter.

If you find a sports jacket at a price that suits you, don't hesitate to buy it.

Où est la grappe de raisin que j'ai laissée ici?

Where is the bunch of grapes I left here?

Si tu n'aimes pas le bracelet que j'ai choisi, je l'échangerai.

If you don't like the bracelet I picked out, I'll exchange it.

32.14 The subjunctive is used in an adjective clause modifying an antecedent which is superlative or accompanied by a superlative or by **premier** or **dernier** (which are considered to be equivalent to superlatives). (In the present or past, the indicative is occasionally found when there is a strong affirmation of certainty; when the English verb is in the future, the corresponding French verb must be in the future indicative.)

C'est le moins que je puisse lui payer.

It's the least I can pay him.

C'est le roman le plus passionnant que j'aie jamais lu.

That's the most exciting novel I've ever read.

C'est le premier poulet que tu aies rôti convenablement.

This is the first chicken you have roasted properly.

Ce tapis est la peau du premier ours que j'ai jamais tué.

This rug is the skin of the first bear I ever shot (*lit. killed*).

C'est la première chose que je ferai en arrivant.

That's the first thing I'll do when I get there.

32.15 The subjunctive is never used in a clause following **la première fois** or **la dernière fois**.

La première fois que je le rencontrerai, je lui demanderai des nouvelles de sa sœur.

The first time I run across him, I'll ask him about (*lit. I'll ask him for news of*) his sister.

La dernière fois que je les ai vus, ils partaient pour l'Alaska.

The last time I saw them, they were leaving for Alaska.

32.16 The subjunctive is used in a clause which expresses some desirable quality or characteristic about an antecedent whose existence is in doubt.

Sa grande ambition est de posséder un diamant qui éblouisse ses amies.

Her great ambition is to possess a diamond which will dazzle her friends.

Je cherche une dactylo(graphe) qui sache taper vite et qui ne fasse pas de fautes d'orthographe.

I am looking for a typist who can type quickly and who makes no mistakes in spelling.

32.17 Regardless of the rules in 32.11, 32.12, 32.13, 32.14, and 32.16, the verb of the subordinate clause is in the conditional mood when the meaning requires it.

Un bouquet de chrysanthèmes est le seul cadeau qui lui ferait plaisir.

A bouquet of chrysanthemums is the only gift that would please her.

Connaissez-vous quelqu'un qui pourrait donner à mon fils des leçons particulières de latin?

Do you know anybody who could tutor (*lit. give private lessons to*) my son in Latin?

32.18 The subjunctive is used after certain indefinite expressions corresponding to English indefinite forms with the suffix *-ever*.

Qui que vous soyez, vous êtes le bienvenu.

Whoever you are, you are welcome.

Quoi que vous disiez, vous ne le convaincrez pas.

Whatever you (may) say, you will not convince him.

Quoi qu'il arrive, ne lâchez pas le volant!

Whatever happens, don't let go of the steering-wheel!

Quels que soient les avantages de cette méthode, il est trop têtu pour l'adopter.

Whatever may be the advantages of this method, he is too stubborn to adopt it.

Quelques promesses qu'il fasse, on ne peut pas se fier à lui.

Whatever promises he makes, you can't trust him.

Quelque (or Si) riche qu'il soit, il ne pourra pas acheter le bonheur.

However rich he may be, he will not be able to buy happiness.

32.19 Note the following French expressions which correspond to English forms with the suffix *-ever*, but which are followed by the indicative.

Chaque fois qu'elle mange des fraises, elle a des rougeurs.

Whenever she eats strawberries, she gets a rash.

Celui qui a dit cela devrait avoir honte. Whoever said that ought to be ashamed (of himself).

Partout où les sauterelles étaient passées, les champs étaient nus. Wherever the locusts (*or* grasshoppers) had passed, the fields were bare.

Vous pouvez partir quand vous voudrez. You may leave whenever you like.

32.20 There are many other indefinite expressions followed by the subjunctive mood, most of which are avoided in simple speech. However, the choice of substitute expressions is based not on rule, but on usage or style. For the translation of any English expressions with the suffix *-ever* which are not dealt with in the above examples, the only safe guide is a reliable dictionary.

32.21 All the preceding sections on the subjunctive mood have dealt with its uses in subordinate clauses. There are, however, a few cases of its use in main clauses. (See 32.22, 32.23, 32.24, 32.25, 32.26, 32.27, and 32.28.)

32.22 The present subjunctive, introduced by **que**, is used as a third person imperative.

Que personne ne bouge! Nobody move!

Que cela vous serve de leçon! Let that be a lesson to you!

Si quelqu'un a quelque chose à dire, qu'il le dise tout de suite! If anybody has anything to say, let him say it right now!

Puisqu'il est tellement difficile, qu'il fasse le travail lui-même! Since he is so hard to please, let him do the work himself!

32.23 In the imperative of the first and third persons, the English word *let* is merely an auxiliary which serves as the sign of the imperative. In the second person, *let* is a main verb equivalent to *allow*. There is no difficulty in the first person, but there may be difficulty in distinguishing between the second and third persons.

Taisons-nous et souffrons en silence! Let us keep (*or* be) quiet and suffer in silence!

Laissez-la réfléchir. Nous ne sommes pas pressés. Let her (*i.e.*, *Allow her time to*) think it over. We are not in a hurry.

Qu'elle réfléchisse bien avant de choisir! Let her think it over carefully before choosing!

32.24 The present subjunctive is used to express a wish in the third person. (This construction is very rare in simple speech, especially with a pronoun subject.) With a noun subject, the introductory **que** seems to be optional.

(Que) Dieu vous bénisse! (*May*) God bless you!

32.25 **Que** is always omitted in certain fixed expressions.
Dieu sauve la reine! God save the Queen!

32.26 With **Vive(nt)** . . . ! in the sense of *Hurray for* . . . ! **que** is omitted, and the subject is placed after the verb.

Vive la reine!

Long live the Queen!

Vive(nt) les Canadiens!

Hurray for the Canadians!

32.27 The present subjunctive of the auxiliary verb **pouvoir** may be used in all three persons to express a wish. **Que** is omitted, and the subject is placed after the verb.

Puissions-nous arriver à temps!

May we arrive in time!

Puissiez-vous ne jamais connaître la misère!

May you never know (what) poverty (is)!

Puissent mes enfants être plus heureux que moi!

May my children be happier than I!

32.28 A wish may also be expressed in all three persons by the use of **pourvu que** plus the subjunctive. (In simple speech, this construction is far commoner than the one with **pouvoir**.)

Pourvu que nous n'ayons pas de dépenses imprévues!

I only hope (*or* If only) we don't have any unexpected expenses!

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. He hasn't a single friend to whom he can confide a secret. 2. I want my daughter to learn to sew, so that she will be able to make her own dresses (*make her dresses herself*). 3. Your letter was the only one I received. 4. My watch ran well, until I dropped it on the sidewalk. 5. Which is the most interesting poem you have ever read? 6. He is looking for an American car which is not too long for his garage. 7. The car was already in the ditch before he had time to put on the brakes. 8. I only hope I don't lose my job! 9. Wherever he goes he is welcome. 10. He hadn't reserved any seats, so that he had to line up to see the game.

B. 1. Let's think it over carefully before we answer the letter. 2. The first country we shall study is India. 3. I always use a typewriter so that my teachers can read my homework. 4. If one has a job and enjoys good health, one shouldn't complain. 5. As the concert was long and we were very tired, we went home before the end. 6. Whatever we plant in our garden, we never have good results. 7. May you have a happier life than mine! 8. Wait till I finish writing this letter. It has to go tonight. 9. If he doesn't want us to go to his house, let him come here. 10. Whoever sold you these apricots robbed you.

C. 1. You shouldn't continue driving until the tank is completely empty. 2. This is the last time I'll answer that question. 3. In this country, there aren't many forests which are infested with bears. 4. Whatever her faults may be, she is congenial. 5. Do you know anybody who could come and mind the children tonight? 6. He had been ill for quite a while without our knowing it. 7. The first wedding present we got was an electric kettle. 8. I am looking for someone who saw the accident on Lorraine Boulevard. 9. Don't let her move the piano all alone. 10. We always used to play until everybody was tired.

D. 1. Is there anyone who recognizes his own faults? 2. Don't make the tea until the water boils. 3. That's the highest sky-scraper I've ever seen. 4. In spite of the fact that the hat is pretty and goes well with my suit, I can't buy it because of the price. 5. However old one is, one always wants to live longer. 6. He reads detective stories so as to forget his worries. 7. Whenever she roasts a chicken, she burns it. 8. Although her health is quite good, she complains about it a great deal. 9. Everybody be quiet! 10. I don't know anyone who has taken that trip.

VERB REVIEW

Mettez au passé composé.

1. Ce soir-là vous allâtes au théâtre. 2. Nous revînmes à pied. 3. Elles sortirent du magasin ensemble. 4. Je sortis la voiture du garage. 5. Tu ne restas pas longtemps chez eux. 6. L'actrice ne devint jamais célèbre. 7. Ils montèrent au cinquième étage. 8. Je descendis à huit heures. 9. Ils ne vinrent jamais nous voir. 10. Nous montâmes nos bagages. 11. Elle naquit en dix-neuf cent. 12. Nous partîmes de très bonne heure. 13. Le vieillard descendit la rue. 14. Ils moururent dans un accident. 15. Nous reçûmes deux lettres la même semaine. 16. Ils burent à notre santé. 17. Personne ne nous crut. 18. Les enfants coururent jusqu'au bout du jardin. 19. Tu ne nous envoyas pas de télégramme. 20. J'offris de les y conduire. 21. Elle servit le déjeuner à midi et demi. 22. Il y eut un long silence. 23. Les deux films nous plurent beaucoup. 24. Nous les suivîmes. 25. Tout le monde rit très fort. 26. Je ne sentis pas le froid. 27. Vous tîntes votre promesse. 28. On construisit une nouvelle route. 29. Dix mille francs ne lui suffirent pas. 30. Je ne les compris pas.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

72. till

74. until

1. My grandfather worked till the very day he died (*of his death*). 2. I'll not go to bed until you're back. 3. I'm going to complain till something is done. 4. If you had waited till the next morning, the traffic would not have been so heavy. 5. Do you mind waiting till I've served the others? 6. Did you wait till the train left? 7. I never leave till the concert is over (*till the end of the concert*). 8. Wait till you hear from him before deciding. 9. I thought he was a good driver (*that he drove well*), until he ran into a truck. 10. I was in good humour yesterday until Edmund broke the window (pane). 11. I won't open the parcel till you're here (*there*). 12. The new branch won't open till next year. 13. I won't move until you show me your driver's license. 14. Don't go on eating those cherries till you make yourself sick. 15. You should never drive until you're dead tired. 16. I bet this fire won't last till tomorrow morning. 17. Don't go to school till you've fed Fido. 18. We'll have to wait till the speaker has finished his speech. 19. I never go to bed till twelve o'clock. 20. He always admired his neighbour's dog, until it bit him.

Lesson 33

The *Faire* Causative Construction

33.1 **Faire**, followed by an infinitive corresponding to an English active form, is used in all tenses to express the idea of causing someone (or something) to perform the action expressed by the infinitive.

NOTE 1. A noun subject of the infinitive follows the infinitive.

NOTE 2. A conjunctive pronoun object of the infinitive, the neuter pronoun **tout** and the forms **y** and **en** are placed with **faire**, as if **faire** were a main verb.

NOTE 3. The past participle of **faire**, used causatively, is invariable.

Ce méchant garçon fait pleurer les petites filles. That bad boy is making the little girls cry.

Ce méchant garçon les fait pleurer. That bad boy is making them cry.

Le soleil a fait fondre la neige. The sun has made the snow melt.

Le soleil l'a fait fondre. The sun has made it melt.

Allez-vous faire chanter les enfants? Are you going to have the children sing?

Allez-vous les faire chanter? Are you going to have them sing?

Faites entrer le premier candidat. Show in (*lit. Make enter*) the first candidate.

Faites-le entrer. Show him in.

(Faites) attention! Vous allez tout faire tomber! Look out! You're going to knock everything over!

Avez-vous fait bouillir de l'eau pour le thé? Have you boiled (*lit. caused to boil*) any water for the tea?

En avez-vous fait bouillir? Have you boiled any?

33.2 In negative expressions involving **faire** causative, **ne** precedes the part which is made negative. The negative adverbs **pas**, **point**, **plus**, **guère**, **jamais**, **nullement**, and the negative pronoun **rien** (if it is the direct object) are placed

with **faire** as if **faire** were a main verb. The negative adverb **nul** **part** and the negative pronoun **personne** follow the whole verb phrase.

Est-ce que la crème ne vous fait pas grossir? Doesn't cream make you gain weight?

Je ne peux jamais rien faire pousser dans la maison. I can never make anything grow indoors.

Il prétend qu'il n'a jamais fait attendre personne. He claims that he has never kept anybody waiting.

33.3 The position of adverbial expressions, other than negatives, is not fixed. However, in general it may be said that:

- (i) short adverbial expressions modifying the whole verb phrase are placed with **faire**, as if **faire** were a main verb;
- (ii) longer adverbial expressions, or those of any length specifically modifying the infinitive, follow the infinitive.

La fumée la fait toujours tousser. Smoke always makes her cough.

As-tu déjà fait manger le chien? Have you fed the dog yet?

Pourquoi me faites-vous attendre si souvent? Why do you keep me waiting so often?

Les cachets d'aspirine l'ont fait dormir tranquillement. The aspirin tablets made her sleep peacefully.

33.4 **Faire**, followed by an infinitive corresponding to an English passive form, is used in all tenses to express the idea of causing the action of the infinitive to be performed upon someone or something.

NOTE 1. A noun object follows the infinitive.

NOTE 2. A conjunctive pronoun object, the neuter pronoun **tout**, and the forms **y** and **en** are placed with **faire**, as if **faire** were a main verb.

NOTE 3. For the position of negative and adverbial expressions, see 33.2 and 33.3.

Quand allez-vous faire arranger ces robinets? When are you going to get those taps fixed?

Quand allez-vous les faire arranger? When are you going to get them fixed?

N'avez-vous pas de côtelettes de porc? "Haven't you any pork chops?"
— Attendez, madame; je vous en ferai couper. "Just a moment, madam; I'll have some cut for you."

Cela coûtera cher si vous faites tout nettoyer (si vous allez tout faire nettoyer). It will be expensive if you have everything cleaned (if you are going to have everything cleaned).

Notre propriétaire ne fait jamais rien réparer. Our landlord never has anything repaired.

Avez-vous déjà fait vacciner le bébé? Have you had the baby vaccinated yet?

33.5 If the agent by whom the action is performed is mentioned, the noun or pronoun representing this agent is introduced by the preposition **par**. (The form with a disjunctive pronoun, **par moi, par lui, etc.**, is rarely used here.)

Mon beau-frère fait toujours vérifier le moteur de sa voiture par le même mécanicien. My brother-in-law always has the engine of his car checked by the same mechanic.

Par qui avez-vous fait enlever ce vieil arbre? Whom did you get to remove that old tree? (*lit. By whom did you have that old tree removed?*)

33.6 If the infinitive following **faire** has both a subject and a direct object, the subject assumes the indirect form.

NOTE 1. Nouns follow the infinitive, the direct form preceding the indirect, unless the direct form is somewhat longer.

NOTE 2. Conjunctive pronouns and **en** are placed with **faire**.

Quel ennui! Elle va faire jouer un morceau à sa fille! Oh dear! She's going to have her daughter play a piece!

Veux-tu faire visiter l'appartement à nos invités? Will you show our guests over the apartment?

Je fais souvent répéter à mes élèves les quatre voyelles nasales. I often have my pupils repeat the four nasal vowels.

Faites savoir à vos amis que j'arrive demain soir. Let your friends know that I am arriving tomorrow night.

Dès que j'ai vu l'erreur, je l'ai fait remarquer au gérant. As soon as I saw the mistake, I drew it to the manager's attention (*lit. I made the manager notice it*).

Ce docteur vous fera prendre certainement des vitamines; il en fait prendre à tous ses malades. That doctor will certainly have you take vitamins; he has all his patients take some.

Faites-leur-en prendre. Have them take some.

Je lui ai fait peler les pommes de terre. I had her peel the potatoes.

Faites-les-lui peler. Have her peel them.

Faites-leur emballer les cadeaux. Have them wrap up the presents.

J'ai fait un dessin comique au tableau (noir) et le professeur me l'a fait effacer. I drew a funny picture on the (black)-board and the teacher made me rub it out.

33.7 In this construction it is frequently not clear whether the indirect form is the subject of the infinitive or is the indirect object. In such a case, ambiguity may be avoided by using the construction with **par**, as in 33.5. This change will rarely be necessary, however, when the subject of the infinitive is a conjunctive pronoun. (Sentences of this type may usually be translated into English by either

an active or a passive form; but from the French point of view, the infinitive following **faire** is always active, and the noun or pronoun introduced by **par** is the subject of the infinitive.)

33.8 Using the form with **à**, the translation of *Have John carry the parcel* would be **Faites porter le paquet à Jean**. But the normal meaning of this French sentence is *Have the parcel carried to John*. To avoid this ambiguity, the translation should be **Faites porter le paquet par Jean**.

Faites distribuer ces lettres par les élèves.	Have the pupils distribute these letters (or Have these letters distributed by the pupils).
--	--

J'ai fait dire par Alain que nous serons en retard.	I have sent word by Alan (<i>lit. I have had Alan say</i>) that we shall be late.
--	---

33.9 The construction with **par** is obligatory whenever the infinitive has an indirect object. (This is to avoid the presence of two indirect forms.)

Je vous ferai faire une robe par la meilleure couturière de la ville.	I'll have the best dressmaker in the city make a dress for you (or I'll have a dress made for you by the best dressmaker in the city).
--	--

Il se faisait lire son courrier par sa secrétaire.	He used to have his secretary read his mail to him.
---	---

33.10 When the **faire** causative construction contains a pronominal verb, the reflexive pronoun is sometimes included, sometimes omitted. When included, it is placed with its infinitive. Similarly, the subject of the infinitive sometimes has the direct form, sometimes the indirect. (See 33.11, 33.12, 33.13, 33.14, 33.15, and 33.16.)

33.11 In the case of a reflexive pronominal, if the reflexive pronoun is the direct object, its inclusion is optional. The subject of the infinitive, contrary to the rule in 33.6, does not assume the indirect form.

NOTE 1. The reflexive pronoun must be included if its omission would lead to misunderstanding.

NOTE 2. **Faire asseoir** to ask someone to be seated is a fixed expression from which the reflexive pronoun is always omitted.

Le bruit de la clef dans la serrure (Le son de ma voix) l'a fait (se) lever.	The sound of the key in the lock (The sound of my voice) made him get up.
---	---

Nous l'avons fait s'arrêter. (<i>Nous l'avons fait arrêter.</i>)	We made him stop. (<i>We had him arrested.</i>)
---	---

Faites-les asseoir.	Ask them to be seated.
----------------------------	------------------------

33.12 If the reflexive pronoun is the indirect object, its inclusion is obligatory; and the subject of the infinitive assumes the indirect form, according to the rule in 33.6.

Sa mère lui a fait se nettoyer les ongles avant de se mettre à table. His mother made him clean his nails before sitting down to breakfast (to lunch, to dinner).

33.13 In the case of a reciprocal pronominal, the reflexive pronoun must be included. As with reflexive pronominals, the subject of the infinitive has the direct or indirect form according as the reflexive pronoun is the direct or indirect object.

Je les ai fait se regarder. I made them look at each other.

Je leur ai fait se donner la main. I had them shake hands.

33.14 With true pronominal verbs (listed in 23.6), the inclusion of the reflexive pronoun is obligatory. The subject of the infinitive has the direct form.

La douleur l'a fait s'évanouir. The pain caused her to faint.

33.15 With accidental pronominals (listed in 23.7), the inclusion of the reflexive pronoun is optional. The subject of the infinitive has the direct form.

NOTE 1. The reflexive pronoun must be included if its omission would lead to misunderstanding.

NOTE 2. **Faire taire** is a fixed expression from which the reflexive pronoun is always omitted.

Je l'ai fait se battre. (*Je l'ai fait battre.*) I made him fight. (*I had him thrashed.*)

Faites donc taire ces enfants! Do make those children keep quiet!

33.16 When the **faire** causative construction expresses the idea that a person causes the action of the infinitive to be performed on himself, the reflexive pronoun must be included and is placed with **faire** as if **faire** were a main verb.

Mon Dieu! Je croyais que vous alliez vous faire écraser. Goodness! I thought you were going to get run over (*lit. have yourself crushed*).

Je me ferai arracher cette dent si elle me fait encore mal demain. I shall have this tooth pulled (out) if it is still aching tomorrow.

Pourquoi ne vous faites-vous pas soigner par un spécialiste? Why don't you get treatment from (*lit. have yourself treated by*) a specialist?

33.17 If the sentence contains any other conjunctive pronoun, or **y** or **en**, such a pronoun is also placed with **faire**.

C'est un club très fermé. Comment pourrais-je m'y faire admettre? It's a very exclusive club. How could I get myself admitted (to it)?

33.18 Placing the reflexive pronoun with **faire** gives **faire** the appearance of a pronominal verb; hence the auxiliary for compound tenses is **être**.

Françoise s'est fait photographier pour son passeport. Frances has had her picture taken for her passport.

Elle s'est fait faire une permanente. She has had a permanent.

33.19 The semi-auxiliary verb **faire** cannot be used emphatically. If, in the corresponding English, the verb *make* is stressed, **faire** must be replaced by some main verb, such as **obliger**.

Votre fils ne vous obéit pas? Vous devriez l'obliger à vous obéir. Your son doesn't obey you? You ought to *make* him obey you.

33.20 Similarly, **faire** must be replaced by some main verb such as **obliger** in a context which suggests strong compulsion.

Nous l'avons obligé à s'excuser. We made him apologize.

TRANSLATION EXERCISES

A. 1. We are planning to have three trees planted in the garden,—one maple and two birches. 2. I always have the house (re) painted by Mr. Clermont. 3. Don't have them sing if they sing out of tune. 4. Be sure to have him visit the old castle. 5. When he's in Florida, he always has oranges and grapefruit sent to his friends. 6. Their parents made them break off their engagement. 7. We have sent word by James that we'll be arriving tomorrow morning. 8. How is it that you didn't get your hair cut, Paul. 9. The last time I had my picture taken I was six years old. 10. The doctor is having me take a new kind of pill, and I am feeling a lot better.

B. 1. Tea doesn't taste good if you boil it. 2. "What do you want Beatrice to do this morning?" "Have her clean the rugs with the vacuum-cleaner and dust the furniture." 3. The rain has made everything grow so quickly. 4. I can't make him eat spinach. 5. "At what time do you have to be at the dentist's?" "I have an appointment for three o'clock, but he always keeps me waiting half an hour." 6. He is going to have Mr. Gaudet make him an overcoat. 7. Did you make the wedding cake yourself or did you have it made? 8. We know he is overworked but we can't get him to rest. 9. I have already had her invite all our friends. 10. The children are disturbing me. Can't you make them keep quiet?

C. 1. Have him write his address so that we can send him his mail. 2. I wish you would have your father write this letter. 3. "What's making you yawn?" "I'm sleepy." 4. The sound of his voice made me turn around. 5. Make him pay cash. We don't know him. 6. I had them wait for each other near the exit. 7. I have sent Alice word that we'll not be able to be at the station. 8. As he was teasing the cat, I made him leave it alone. 9. That makes us realize (that) we are ageing. 10. She has each of the children do part (*a part*) of the work.

D. 1. Fear of being punished made her lie. 2. Don't make that horse gallop. It's tired. 3. The last time I had the curtains cleaned they tore them. 4. Could you have your secretary type these documents? 5. The telephone is out of order. We'll have to get it repaired. 6. We can't make him wash his neck. 7. Onions make you cry when you prepare them. 8. She wants to go out every afternoon instead of resting, but sometimes I *make* her rest. 9. Here is the medicine. Have him take a spoonful of it every four hours. 10. I had two of the tires replaced last March.

VERB REVIEW

Mettez au passé composé.

1. Je me levai très tard. 2. Ils se lavèrent les mains. 3. Nous nous regardâmes.
 4. En recevant la nouvelle, elle s'évanouit. 5. Elle s'acheta un nouveau chapeau.
 6. Vous vous fâchâtes contre eux. 7. L'abeille s'envola. 8. Nous nous réunîmes
 chez moi. 9. Les deux maisons se vendirent tout de suite. 10. Elles se moquèrent
 de nous. 11. Elle se mordit la langue. 12. Tu ne te réveillâs pas. 13. La soupe
 se refroidit. 14. Ils se réjouirent de la bonne nouvelle. 15. Ils ne se revirent plus
 jamais. 16. Nous nous aperçûmes de son absence. 17. Je m'endormis sur mon
 travail. 18. Toutes les lumières s'éteignirent. 19. Elle se plut beaucoup à la
 campagne. 20. En nous apercevant, ils se turent. 21. Nous ne nous reconnûmes
 pas. 22. Vous ne vous écrivîtes qu'une fois. 23. Elles se dirent bonjour. 24.
 Elle se mit au travail. 25. Nous nous enfûmes. 26. Tu ne t'en allas pas loin.
 27. Ils s'en souvinrent trop tard. 28. Je m'assis à côté de la porte. 29. Elles se
 sourirent aimablement. 30. Les soldats se battirent avec courage.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

37. make

43. mind

1. What are you going to make in the way of dessert? 2. My aunt has agreed to
 mind the children tomorrow evening. 3. A long walk will make us hungry.
 4. It makes me tired when I am kept waiting. 5. Salted fish makes you thirsty.
 6. Don't mind him; he is always like that. 7. If you criticize everybody, you are
 going to make enemies. 8. How much did you make this summer? 9. Do you
 mind the smell of paint? 10. Your new sailboat will make all your friends envious.
 11. "You'll have to go and get me a tin of salmon." "I don't mind." 12. She
 says it makes her cold to see all that snow. 13. Would you mind feeding the dog?
 14. Did you see the snow-man the children made? 15. Would he mind if I used
 his typewriter? 16. What made her ill? 17. Do you mind my going out to-
 night? 18. It makes me angry to see them damaging the trees. 19. Nothing
 makes them afraid. 20. Do you mind my having these shrubs removed?

Lesson 34

The Literary Tenses

(For the sake of convenience, the punctuation in some of the quotations given in this lesson has been changed from that used in the original text. This, however, does not involve any change of meaning.)

34.1 The past historic tense (**le passé simple**) is used in formal writing and oratory, to express an action or state which may have been of short or long duration, and which may have occurred once or many times, but which was complete at some moment in the past. (In conversation and correspondence, such an action or state is expressed by the present perfect.)

Enfin, un beau jour, Hippolyte demanda: — Eh bien, pour l'école, t'es-tu enfin décidée? (*Gabrielle Roy*)

At last, one fine day, Hippolyte asked: "Well, about the school, have you made up your mind at last?"

La guerre de Sept Ans eut lieu sous Louis XV, de 1756 à 1763. (*Nouveau Petit Larousse illustré*)

The Seven Years' War took place in the reign of Louis XV, from 1756 to 1763.

Ma guérison ne prit pas moins de deux longues semaines et je dus retourner plusieurs fois à l'hôpital. (*Georges Duhamel*)

My recovery took no less than two long weeks and I had to go back to the hospital several times.

Montcalm! Je viens de prononcer le nom de l'un des plus braves soldats de la France. Il ne perdit qu'une seule bataille, mais elle fut fatale. (*Sir Wilfrid Laurier*)

Montcalm! I have just uttered the name of one of France's bravest soldiers. He lost only one battle, but it was fatal.

34.2 The second past perfect (**le passé antérieur**) is used in a subordinate clause after **quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que, or après que**, to express a completed action or state prior to that of the main verb, when the main verb is in the past historic.

Lorsqu'ils eurent quitté la pièce, Fabien tourna les yeux vers Mme Fève. (*Julien Green*)

When they had left the room, Fabien turned his eyes towards Mme Fève.

Aussitôt que Mme Caravan les eut reconnus, elle leur fit des signes désespérés. (*Guy de Maupassant*)

As soon as Mme Caravan had recognized them, she motioned desperately to them.

34.3 The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in subordinate clauses dependent on a verb in a past tense or the conditional mood.

Il ne douta pas un instant que quelqu'un ne fût là. (*André Gide*)

He did not for an instant doubt that someone was there.

Avant qu'il eût fini, tous les officiers étaient debout. (*Alphonse Daudet*)

Before he had finished, all the officers were on their feet.

Francœur fut, de tous les maîtres de Georges, le seul qui lui apprît quelque chose, parce que c'était le seul qui l'aimât vraiment. (*Anatole France*)

Francœur was, of all George's masters, the only one who taught him anything, because he was the only one who really liked him.

Quoiqu'il eût d'énormes défauts, Armand Dubreuil rendait ses leçons claires. (*Gabrielle Roy*)

Although he had tremendous faults, Armand Dubreuil made his lessons clear.

Quoi qu'il arrivât, Vigneral ne quitterait pas la maison avant d'avoir cédé. (*Henri Troyat*)

Whatever might happen, Vigneral would not leave the house until he had given in.

Il chercha quelque chose à lui dire, une parole où il n'y eût ni méfiance ni ironie. (*Julien Green*)

He sought something to say to her, some word in which there was neither mistrust nor irony.

Il craignit que Georges ne devînt plus tard son rival et renversât ses projets. (*Anatole France*)

He feared that George might later become his rival and upset his plans.

Napoléon, un plat dans les mains, attendait que son père eût fini de rincer les verres. (*Roger Lemelin*)

Napoleon, with a dish in his hands, was waiting until his father had finished rinsing the glasses.

34.4 The past perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to replace the past conditional and the past perfect indicative.

Après coup, j'apercevais clairement ce que j'eusse dû (= aurais dû) faire. (*Albert Camus*)

Too late, I perceived clearly what I should have done.

Il lui semblait que Lequesne eût été (= aurait été) capable de le comprendre. (*Henri Troyat*)

It seemed to him that Lequesne would have been capable of understanding him.

On eût dit (= aurait dû) qu'elle avait découvert un secret, que sans doute elle m'eût confié (= aurait confié) si j'eusse été (= avais été) seul avec elle. (*André Gide*)

It seemed as though (*lit. One would have said that*) she had discovered a secret, which she doubtless would have confided to me if I had been alone with her.

VERB REVIEW

Mettez au passé composé.

1. Nous fûmes réveillés par une explosion. 2. Le canoë fut emporté par le courant.
 3. Je fus mordu par un chien. 4. Les acteurs furent applaudis pendant dix minutes.
 5. La douleur la fit pleurer. 6. Ils nous firent attendre trois quarts d'heure.
 7. Vous fîtes couper les arbres. 8. Je leur fis construire une maison. 9. Tu te fis
 couper les cheveux trop courts. 10. Je me fis faire une permanente. 11. Ils se
 firent conduire à la gare. 12. Nous fîmes taire les enfants. 13. Ils nous rejoignirent
 à Paris. 14. Il peignit deux paysages. 15. Je cueillis un panier de fraises.
 16. Il ne les convainquit pas. 17. Vous résolûtes le problème. 18. Le lait
 bouillit. 19. Il plut toute la semaine. 20. Son héroïsme lui valut la Croix de
 guerre. 21. L'enfant leur sourit. 22. Je promis de lui écrire. 23. Nous apprîmes
 la bonne nouvelle. 24. Elle vécut très vieille. 25. Les taches disparurent.
 26. Il découvrit une mine d'uranium. 27. Je traduisis plusieurs romans. 28.
 Elles cousirent la robe. 29. Vous souffrîtes beaucoup. 30. Tu consentis à nous
 aider.

SPECIAL TRANSLATION PROBLEMS

85. out of, etc.

1. He likes to drink his milk out of a cup rather than out of a glass. 2. Here is a
 good recipe that I cut out of a magazine. 3. Take your feet off the chesterfield.
 4. Take the bags out of the trunk of the car. 5. Take a few potatoes out of the
 bag they've just delivered. 6. As I was hungry, I took some cold salmon from the
 refrigerator. 7. Take the chicken out of the oven in half an hour. 8. He took
 some change from his pocket and gave it to me. 9. Take the glasses off the buffet
 and put them on the table. 10. The squirrels used to come and eat out of his
 hand. 11. Who took the carving-knife out of this drawer? 12. Take some
 money out of my wallet to pay for the parcels. 13. I've taken everything out of
 my bag, but I can't find my black socks. 14. Who took that list from my desk?
 15. When is tea drunk from a glass? 16. Come and take your boats out of the
 bath-tub. 17. Suddenly, he took a knife out of his pocket. 18. Help me take the
 slip covers off the armchairs. 19. The dog refuses to eat his meat off a plate.
 20. Our grandmother used to read us ghost stories from a very old book.

Special Translation Problems

1. ABOUT

1a. **About**, expressing an approximate quantity (including length of time), is rendered by **environ** or **à peu près**.

I spent about twenty-five dollars.

J'ai dépensé environ (*or* à peu près) vingt-cinq dollars.

The meeting will last about an hour.

La réunion durera environ (*or* à peu près) une heure.

1b. In familiar style, **dans les** is frequently used (except, of course, if the following number is singular, as in **un dollar, une livre, un million de francs**).

That car would cost you about three thousand dollars.

Cette voiture-là vous coûterait dans les trois mille dollars.

1c. Certain numbers have a special form to represent an approximate quantity. However, there is no rule as to when they should be used in preference to the construction above.

about ten	une dizaine (<i>de</i>)
about fifteen	une quinzaine (<i>de</i>)
about twenty	une vingtaine (<i>de</i>)
about thirty	une trentaine (<i>de</i>)
about forty	une quarantaine (<i>de</i>)
about fifty	une cinquantaine (<i>de</i>)
about sixty	une soixantaine (<i>de</i>)
about a hundred	une centaine (<i>de</i>)
about a thousand	un millier (<i>de</i>)

He is about sixty (years old).

Il a une soixantaine d'années *or* Il a environ soixante ans *or* Il a dans les soixante ans.

1d. Where the expression of approximate quantity does not contain a number, **à peu près** seems commoner than **environ**.

She is about the same age as I am.

Elle a à peu près le même âge que moi.

1e. **About**, followed by an expression of time (except length of time), is **vers**.

Could you come (at) about five (o'clock)?
Pourriez-vous venir vers cinq heures?

1f. About, meaning *concerning*, is **sur** or **au sujet de** (except in the cases explained below).

Did you read that article about the Prime Minister?	Avez-vous lu cet article sur le premier ministre (or au sujet du premier ministre)?
---	---

1g. To talk (or tell) about is **parler de**.

What were you talking about?	De quoi parliez-vous?
Whom are you talking about?	De qui parlez-vous?

1h. To think about, meaning *to direct one's thoughts towards*, is **penser à**.

What are you thinking about?	À quoi pensez-vous?
Whom are you thinking about?	À qui pensez-vous?

1i. To think about, meaning *to have an opinion about*, is **penser de**.

What do you think about the election results?	Que pensez-vous des résultats des élections?
---	--

1j. To be (just) about to . . . is **être sur le point de . . .**

I was (just) about to go out when the telephone rang.	J'étais sur le point de sortir quand le téléphone a sonné.
---	--

1k. The following are miscellaneous examples.

Several people asked about you.	Plusieurs personnes ont demandé de vos nouvelles.
What is it all about?	De quoi s'agit-il?
What about (or How about) going to the show?	Si nous allions au cinéma?
What about that letter you were going to write?	Et cette lettre que tu allais écrire?

2. AFTER

2a. The preposition **after**, followed by a noun or pronoun, is **après**.

I always feel weak after a cold.	Je me sens toujours faible après un rhume.
You arrived after them.	Vous êtes arrivé après eux.

2b. The preposition **after**, followed by the gerund, is rendered by **après** plus the perfect infinitive.

After removing the snow, they flooded (transl. watered) the rink.	Après avoir enlevé la neige, ils ont arrosé la patinoire.
---	---

2c. The conjunction **after** is **après que**. (Sometimes the clause can be replaced by a phrase.)

What did they do after he had left? Qu'est-ce qu'ils ont fait après qu'il a été parti (*or* après son départ)?

What are you going to do after I've left? Qu'est-ce que vous allez faire après que je serai parti (*or* après mon départ)?

3. AGAIN

3a. The English word **again** is usually best rendered by the French prefix **r(e)-**, unless the simple verb already begins with the letter *r*. (In the case of *saigner, saisir, sauter, semer, servir, sortir, suivre*, the initial *s* is doubled, giving the forms *ressaigner, ressaisir, ressauter, ressemer, resservir, ressortir, ressuivre*.)

Read the last paragraph again. Relisez le dernier paragraphe.

It's raining again. Il repleut.

It's snowing again. Il reneige.

I got up to leave, but he told me to sit down again. Je me suis levé pour partir, mais il m'a dit de me rasseoir.

3b. Otherwise, **again**, referring to the resumption of an interrupted activity or state, is **de nouveau**.

I have a sore throat again. J'ai de nouveau mal à la gorge.

3c. **Again**, meaning *one more time*, is expressed by **encore une fois**, or sometimes just **encore**. (**Encore** alone should be avoided where it might be taken to mean *still*.)

Tell us again what happened. Racontez-nous encore une fois ce qui s'est passé.

"We are going to move." "What, again!" Nous allons déménager. — Quoi, encore (une fois)!

3d. Not . . . **again** is expressed by **ne . . . plus**, and **never . . . again** by **ne . . . plus jamais**.

I shan't ask you to help me again. Je ne vous demanderai plus de m'aider.

We never heard from them (*or* of them) again. Nous n'avons plus jamais eu de leurs nouvelles.

4. AGREE

4a. **To agree**, in the sense that one person agrees to do what another person asks, is **accepter** (*de*) or **consentir** (*à*).

Did he agree to pay for the repairs? A-t-il accepté de (*or* consenti à) payer les réparations?

4b. To agree, meaning *to come to a mutual agreement*, is **convenir** (*de*). (This verb usually takes the auxiliary *avoir*.)

We have agreed to share the expenses. Nous avons convenu de partager les frais.

4c. To agree with someone, meaning *to be of the same opinion as someone*, is **être de l'avis de quelqu'un** or **être d'accord avec quelqu'un**.

I quite agree with you. Je suis tout à fait de votre avis (*or* d'accord avec vous).

The others want to leave right away, but I don't agree. Les autres veulent partir tout de suite, mais moi, je ne suis pas d'accord.

4d. To agree with, in the grammatical sense, is **s'accorder avec**.

The verb agrees with the subject. Le verbe s'accorde avec le sujet.

4e. To agree with, meaning *to be suitable for*, is **convenir à** (always with the auxiliary *avoir*).

The moist climate did not agree with him. Le climat humide ne lui a pas convenu.

4f. To agree with, referring to digestion, is expressed by the use of **digérer** (*to digest*).

Cucumber does not agree with me. Je ne digère pas le concombre.

5. ANOTHER

5a. Another, meaning *an additional*, is **encore un(e)**.

This coffee is delicious. Give me another cup, please. Ce café est délicieux. Donnez-m'en encore une tasse, s'il vous plaît.

5b. Another, meaning *a different*, is **un(e) autre**.

Waiter, bring me another fork; this one is dirty. Garçon, apportez-moi une autre fourchette; celle-ci est sale.

6. AS

6a. The formula of comparison **as . . . as . . .** is **aussi . . . que . . .** In the negative, **aussi** may be replaced by **si**. (Similarly, **as much . . . as . . .** or **as many . . . as . . .** is **autant . . . que . . .** In the negative, **autant** may usually be replaced by **tant**. See examples in 38c and 48d.)

Is he as shy as his brother? Est-il aussi timide que son frère?

Blue does not suit her as well as grey. Le bleu ne lui va pas aussi (*or* si) bien que le gris.

6b. In certain fixed expressions, **as . . . as . . .** is rendered by **comme . . .** (For further examples of this usage, see 16.6.)

It's as easy as anything!

C'est facile comme tout *or* C'est simple comme bonjour!

6c. The same . . . as . . . is **le (la, les) même(s) . . . que . . .**

I get off at the same stop as you.

Je descends au même arrêt que vous.

6d. **As**, meaning *while*, is **comme**.

As I was walking down the street, I saw clouds of smoke coming out of the baker's shop.

Comme je descendais la rue, j'ai vu des nuages de fumée qui sortaient de la boulangerie.

6e. **As**, meaning *at the moment when*, is **au moment où**.

(Just) as I was turning on the tap, I remembered there was no hot water.

Au moment (même) où j'ouvrais le robinet, je me suis rappelé qu'il n'y avait pas d'eau chaude.

6f. **As**, meaning *since, because*, is **comme** or **puisque**.

As I have neither needle nor thread (*transl. thread nor needle*), I can't sew that button on for you.

Comme (*or* Puisque) je n'ai ni fil ni aiguille, je ne peux pas vous recoudre ce bouton.

6g. **As if to . . .** is **comme pour . . .**

He raised his hand as if to strike me.

Il a levé la main comme pour me frapper.

6h. **As if . . .**, followed by a verb, is **comme si . . .**, followed by the imperfect indicative, the past perfect indicative, the present conditional, or the past conditional, according to the sense.

You shout as if I were deaf.

Vous criez comme si j'étais sourd.

She was trembling as if she had seen a ghost.

Elle tremblait comme si elle avait vu un fantôme.

As if I would refuse to help you!

Comme si je refuserais de vous aider!

As if they couldn't have done it themselves!

Comme s'ils n'auraient pas pu le faire eux-mêmes!

6i. **As for . . .**, followed by a noun, pronoun, or gerund, is **quant à . . .**, followed by a noun, pronoun, or infinitive.

As for the future, one must have confidence.

Quant à l'avenir, il faut avoir confiance.

As for lending him money, that's impossible; I haven't any.

Quant à lui prêter de l'argent, c'est impossible; je n'en ai pas.

6j. The following are miscellaneous examples.

Do as you like.

Faites comme vous voudrez.

He was disguised as an Arab.

Il était déguisé en Arabe.

Who is going to act as secretary?

Qui va servir de secrétaire?

7. ASK

7a. To ask someone (something) is **demander (quelque chose) à quelqu'un.**

Did you ask him his nationality?

Lui avez-vous demandé sa nationalité?

Ask him where the matches are.

Demandez-lui où sont les allumettes.

I don't know. Ask your father.

Moi, je ne sais pas. Demande à ton père.

7b. To ask (someone) for something is **demander quelque chose (à quelqu'un).**

My daughter has asked me for a record player.

Ma fille m'a demandé un tourne-disques.

7c. To ask (someone) a question is **poser une question (à quelqu'un).**

There are several questions I'd like to ask them.

Il y a plusieurs questions que je voudrais leur poser.

7d. To ask to . . ., meaning *to ask permission to . . .*, is **demander à** plus the infinitive.

He asked to leave.

Il a demandé à sortir.

7e. To ask (someone) for permission to . . . is **demander (à quelqu'un) la permission de . . .**

I shall ask (him) for permission to attend the meeting.

Je (lui) demanderai la permission d'assister à la réunion.

7f. To ask someone to do something is **demander à quelqu'un de faire quelque chose.**

I asked her to turn off the radio.

Je lui ai demandé d'arrêter la T.S.F.

8. BEFORE

8a. The adverb **before**, meaning *previously*, is **auparavant** or **avant**.

I have never tanned so well before.

Je n'ai jamais si bien bruni auparavant (or avant).

8b. The preposition **before**, followed by a noun or pronoun, is **avant**.

I seldom go to bed before twelve (o'clock).

Je me couche rarement avant minuit.

Julius Caesar was assassinated in the year 44 B.C. Jules César a été assassiné en l'an 44 av. J.-C. (= *avant Jésus-Christ*).

8c. The preposition **before**, followed by the gerund, is **avant de**, followed by the infinitive.

Before fleeing, the enemy burnt everything. Avant de s'enfuir, l'ennemi a tout brûlé.

8d. The conjunction **before** is **avant que**, followed by a verb in the subjunctive mood. (Sometimes the clause can be replaced by a phrase.)

I am going to hurry home before it rains. Je vais me dépêcher de rentrer avant qu'il (*ne*) pleuve.

She would like to see you again before you leave. Elle voudrait te revoir avant que tu (*ne*) partes (*or* avant ton départ).

8e. The day before (. . .) is **la veille** (de . . .). The week (the month, the year, the summer, etc.) before is **la semaine** (le mois, l'année, l'été, etc.) **d'avant**.

There had been a bad storm the day before (we arrived). Il y avait eu un gros orage la veille (de notre arrivée).

We had met them the year before. Nous avions fait leur connaissance l'année d'avant.

9. BRING, BRING BACK

9a. To bring (back), referring to a portable object (or a small animal which would be carried) is **(r)apporter**.

Don't forget to bring your camera. N'oubliez pas d'apporter votre appareil (photographique).

I brought back a menu to show you what we had on the boat. J'ai rapporté un menu pour vous montrer ce que nous avons eu sur le bateau.

9b. To bring (back), referring to a person (or to a large animal that would have to be led, or to a vehicle), is **(r)amener** (*j'amène, je ramène*).

I didn't know he was going to bring all his friends! Je ne savais pas qu'il allait amener tous ses amis!

John brought me back in his car. Jean m'a ramené dans sa voiture.

10. CAN, CAN HAVE

10a. Can, where the reference is to physical ability or circumstances, is rendered by **pouvoir**.

The wounded soldier can neither walk nor talk. Le soldat blessé ne peut ni marcher ni parler.

I can't see you tonight; I'm not free. Je ne peux pas vous voir ce soir; je ne suis pas libre.

Come when you can. Venez quand vous pourrez.

10b. Occasionally French does not use **pouvoir** where one would expect it. No rule can be given for this usage.

I can't find my keys. Je ne trouve pas mes clefs.

I can hear a tap running. J'entends un robinet qui coule.

I can't stand the heat. Je ne supporte pas la chaleur.

I can't get over it! Je n'en reviens pas!

10c. **Can**, referring to a skill that must be learned, is rendered by **savoir**.

My grandson can walk; but, of course, Mon petit-fils sait marcher; mais, he can't talk yet. évidemment, il ne sait pas encore parler.

10d. **Can have** (*done, etc.*) is expressed by the present perfect of **pouvoir** (to which is added the appropriate infinitive).

They can't have gone very far. Ils n'ont pas pu aller très loin.

11. CHANGE

11a. **To change**, except as explained below, is **changer** (*nous changeons*).

How you have changed! Comme vous avez changé!

Could you change this twenty-dollar bill for me? Pourriez-vous me changer ce billet de vingt dollars?

Will you change the bulb in the kitchen? It has just burnt out. Veux-tu changer l'ampoule de la cuisine? Elle vient de claquer (*or* griller).

I'll change the sheets tomorrow. Je changerai les draps demain.

I think it's time to change the needle of your record player. Je crois qu'il est temps de changer l'aiguille de votre tourne-disques.

11b. In many cases, **to change** (*one thing for another of the same sort*) is **changer de**. There does not seem to be any exact rule on this point, but the following list gives the commonest examples.

to change one's address

changer d'adresse

to change buses (trains, etc.)

changer d'autobus (de train, etc.)

to change dentists, etc.

changer de dentiste, etc.

to change gears (*transl. speed*)

changer de vitesse

to change one's hair-do

changer de coiffure

to change jobs

changer de situation

to change one's mind

changer d'avis

to change one's name

changer de nom

to change one's occupation	changer de métier
to change one's opinion	changer d'opinion
to change rooms	changer de chambre
to change schools	changer d'école
to change seats	changer de place
to change one's stockings (shoes, etc.)	changer de bas (de chaussures, etc.)
to change the subject	changer de sujet (or de conversation)

Do you want to change seats with me? Voulez-vous changer de place avec moi?

I've changed my mind. I'll have (transl. take) a salad. J'ai changé d'avis. Je prendrai une salade.

11c. Parler d'autre chose is very frequently used in place of **changer de sujet** or **changer de conversation**.

Let's change the subject! Parlons d'autre chose!

11d. To change, meaning *to change one's clothes*, is **se changer**.

Have I time to change before dinner? Est-ce que j'ai le temps de me changer avant le dîner?

12. COLD

12a. To be cold, referring to a thing, is **être froid(e)(s)**.

The toast was always cold. Le pain grillé était toujours froid.

12b. To be cold, referring to a person is:

(i) **avoir froid** for the physical sensation of coldness;

(ii) **être froid(e)(s)** for manner or personality.

Take a good hot bath if you are cold. Prends un bon bain chaud si tu as froid.

My ears are cold. J'ai froid aux oreilles.

He would have more friends if he weren't so cold. Il aurait plus d'amis s'il était moins froid.

12c. To be cold, referring to the weather, is **faire froid**.

It isn't very cold for December. Il ne fait pas très froid pour décembre.

Isn't it cold! Qu'il fait froid!

12d. The noun cold, referring to atmospheric temperature, is **le froid**.

I can't stand the cold; I'm too thin. Je ne supporte pas le froid; je suis trop maigre.

12e. The noun **cold**, meaning the illness, is **le rhume**. (To have a cold is either **avoir un rhume** or **être enrhumé**. Similarly, to catch (a) cold is either **attraper un rhume** or **s'enrhumer**.)

My cold will last at least a week.

Mon rhume durera au moins huit jours.

13. COULD, COULD HAVE

13a. **Could**, meaning *was able to* or *were able to*, referring to physical ability or possibility or circumstances, is expressed by the imperfect or present perfect of **pouvoir**. (The rules for distinguishing these two tenses are given in Lesson 19.)

I could always count on him to help me.

Je pouvais toujours compter sur lui pour m'aider.

We tried to lift the stone, but we couldn't.

Nous avons essayé de soulever la pierre, mais nous n'avons pas pu.

13b. Occasionally French does not use **pouvoir** where one would expect it. (Cf. 10b.)

I couldn't find my keys.

Je ne trouvais pas mes clefs.

I could hear a tap running.

J'entendais un robinet qui coulait.

I couldn't stand the heat.

Je ne supportais pas la chaleur.

What a surprise! I couldn't get over it!

Quelle surprise! Je n'en revenais pas!

13c. **Could**, meaning *should be able to* or *would be able to*, and referring to physical ability or possibility or circumstances, is expressed by the present conditional of **pouvoir**.

I could give him good advice if he would (*i.e., if he were willing to*) listen to me.

Je pourrais lui donner de bons conseils s'il voulait m'écouter.

13d. **Could**, meaning *knew how to*, is expressed by the imperfect or present perfect of **savoir**. (The rules for distinguishing these two tenses are given in Lesson 19.)

The child could talk at the age of two.

L'enfant savait parler à l'âge de deux ans.

I asked him very easy questions, but he couldn't answer them.

Je lui ai posé des questions très faciles, mais il n'a pas su y répondre.

13e. **Could**, meaning *should know how to* or *would know how to*, is expressed by the present conditional of **savoir**.

I couldn't do those problems now; I've forgotten all my algebra.

Je ne saurais plus faire ces problèmes; j'ai oublié toute mon algèbre.

13f. Could have, as a complete verb in itself, is expressed by the present conditional of **pouvoir** plus the infinitive **avoir**.

You could have fresh vegetables if you had a garden.	<i>Vous pourriez avoir des légumes frais si vous aviez un jardin.</i>
--	---

13g. Could have (*done, etc.*), meaning *had been able to* and referring to physical ability or possibility or circumstances, is expressed by the past perfect of **pouvoir** (to which is added the appropriate infinitive).

We were wondering how he could have forgotten our appointment.	<i>Nous nous demandions comment il avait pu oublier notre rendez-vous.</i>
--	--

13h. Could have (*done, etc.*), meaning *should have been able to* or *would have been able to*, and referring to physical ability or possibility or circumstances, is expressed by the past conditional of **pouvoir** (to which is added the appropriate infinitive).

We could have gone to the show if we had known they weren't coming.	<i>Nous aurions pu aller au cinéma si nous avions su qu'ils ne venaient pas.</i>
---	--

13i. Could have (*done, etc.*), meaning *should have known how to* or *would have known how to*, is expressed by the past conditional of **savoir** (to which is added the appropriate infinitive).

Could you have explained it more clearly?	<i>Est-ce que vous auriez su l'expliquer plus clairement?</i>
---	---

14. DAY

14a. The feminine **la journée** is used in reference to the activity or events of the day.

My day begins at half past six.	<i>Ma journée commence à six heures et demie.</i>
---------------------------------	---

What a day! I've hardly had time to eat.	<i>Quelle journée! J'ai à peine eu le temps de manger.</i>
--	--

14b. In other senses, **day** is rendered by the masculine **le jour**.

The day begins and ends at midnight.	<i>Le jour commence et finit à minuit.</i>
--------------------------------------	--

I shouldn't like to write such an exam(ination) every day.	<i>Je n'aimerais pas passer un tel examen tous les jours.</i>
--	---

"What day is it?" "It's Thursday."	<i>Quel jour sommes-nous? — Nous sommes jeudi.</i>
------------------------------------	--

15. EVENING

15a. The feminine **la soirée** is used for **evening** when the reference is to activity or events.

It was a marvellous evening!	<i>C'était une soirée merveilleuse!</i>
------------------------------	---

15b. In other senses, **evening** is expressed by the masculine **le soir**.

We shall have to go out together some evening. Il faudra que nous sortions ensemble un soir.

Why is he taking the evening train? Pourquoi prend-il le train du soir?

15c. The phrase **in the evening**, preceded by a clock time, is **du soir**; otherwise, it is **le soir**.

It began to snow about eight o'clock in the evening. Il a commencé à neiger vers huit heures du soir.

I don't like working in the evening. Je n'aime pas travailler le soir.

16. EXPECT

16a. To expect, meaning *to wait for*, is **attendre**.

I'm expecting a telephone call; otherwise I'd go out. J'attends un coup de téléphone; autrement je sortirais.

We are expecting friends about the middle of the week. Nous attendons des amis vers le milieu de la semaine.

16b. To expect, meaning *to anticipate* or *to look forward to*, is **s'attendre à**. (This expression never takes a personal object.)

We were expecting (to find) a quieter place. Nous nous attendions à (trouver) un endroit plus tranquille.

He was not expecting you to forgive him so quickly. Il ne s'attendait pas à ce que vous lui pardonniez si vite.

16c. To expect, meaning *to intend*, is **compter** or **penser**.

When do you expect to replace that old washbasin? Quand est-ce que tu comptes (or penses) remplacer ce vieux lavabo?

16d. To expect, meaning *to foresee*, is **prévoir**.

That was to be expected. C'était à prévoir.

17. FIRST

17a. The adjective **first** is **premier(s)**, **première(s)**.

What is the name of the first book of the Bible? Comment s'appelle le premier livre de la Bible?

17b. The adjective **first**, used predicatively, is **le premier**, **la première**, **les premiers**, **les premières**.

The one who finishes first will get a prize. Celui qui finira le premier aura un prix.

17c. The adverb **first** is rendered by **d'abord**, or by the use of the expression **commencer par**.

First I am going to post these letters,
then I am going to the tailor's.

D'abord je vais mettre ces lettres à la
poste, puis je vais chez le tailleur.

"First of all, tell me how many there are
of you." "There are four of us."

Tout d'abord, dites-moi combien vous
êtes. — Nous sommes quatre.

Why do you always wash the frying-pan
first?

Pourquoi commencez-vous toujours par
laver la poêle?

17d. The adverb phrase **at first** is **au début**.

At first I didn't like this work, but now
I'm used to it.

Au début je n'aimais pas ce travail,
mais maintenant j'y suis habitué.

18. FOR

18a. With the exceptions listed below, the preposition **for** is **pour**.

Have we any French homework for
tomorrow?

Avons-nous un devoir de français pour
demain?

18b. The phrase **for me, for you, for him, etc.** is expressed by the indirect object pronoun, except when it follows the verb *to be*, or when it is emphatic.

Would you mind carrying this package
for her?

Est-ce que tu voudrais bien lui porter
ce paquet?

Open the door for me, please.

Ouvre-moi la porte, s'il te plaît.

Are these chocolate bars for them?

Est-ce que ces tablettes de chocolat sont
pour eux?

You did that for me?

Vous avez fait cela pour moi?

18c. **For**, in an expression of time referring to a completed action, is rendered by **pendant**. (Sometimes **pendant** is understood, but not expressed.)

Where were you this afternoon? I
waited for you for an hour.

Où étiez-vous cet après-midi? Je vous
ai attendu (pendant) une heure.

18d. **For**, in an expression of time referring to an action begun in the past and still continuing in the present (or begun in a more remote past and still continuing at the past time referred to) is rendered by **depuis**. (Other constructions are explained in Lesson 19.)

You've been yawning for half an hour.
Go to bed.

Tu bâilles depuis une demi-heure. Va
te coucher.

18e. **For**, in an expression of time referring to the future, is rendered by **pendant** after verbs that express duration, and by **pour** after those that do not.

After her marriage, she is going to
continue working for a year or two.

Après son mariage, elle va continuer à
travailler pendant un an ou deux.

We are going away for a month.

Nous partons pour un mois.

He said he was going away for ever (*or* for good).

Il a dit qu'il partait pour toujours.

18f. Where **for** is in an expression of time in a negative clause referring to the future, and indicates a minimum time limit, the construction is **ne . . . pas (. . .) avant . . .**, or **ne . . . que dans . . .**

This highway will not be finished for six months.

Cette route ne sera pas terminée avant six mois (*or* ne sera terminée que dans six mois).

18g. If it were not for . . . and If it had not been for . . . are expressed by the preposition **sans**.

If it weren't for them, I couldn't go to university.

Sans eux, je ne pourrais pas aller à l'université.

If it hadn't been for them, I couldn't have gone to university.

Sans eux, je n'aurais pas pu aller à l'université.

18h. The conjunction **for** is **car**.

He must be out, for he doesn't answer the (tele)phone.

Il doit être sorti, car il ne répond pas au téléphone.

19. GET

19a. To get, meaning *to procure*, is rendered by **procurer**, **se procurer**, or **trouver**.

He was asking me if I could get him a French flag.

Il me demandait si je pourrais lui procurer un drapeau français.

I'd like to get a dog similar to yours.

J'aimerais trouver (*or* me procurer) un chien semblable au vôtre.

You can't get cloth of that quality any more.

On ne trouve plus de tissu de cette qualité-là.

19b. To get, meaning *to receive*, is **recevoir** or **avoir** (the latter being commoner in familiar style).

Did you get good marks at the Easter examinations?

As-tu reçu (*or* eu) de bonnes notes aux examens de Pâques?

19c. To go and get and to come and get are, respectively, **aller chercher** and **venir chercher**.

Go and get some chalk, please.

Allez chercher de la craie, s'il vous plaît.

You may come and get your records this evening if you wish.

Tu peux venir chercher tes disques ce soir si tu veux.

19d. To get, meaning *to arrive*, is **arriver**.

At what time did you get to Vancouver? À quelle heure êtes-vous arrivé à Vancouver?

19e. The translation of **to get**, meaning *to become*, is illustrated in the following examples.

It is getting late.	Il se fait tard.
It is getting dark.	Il commence à faire noir.
It was getting cold.	Il commençait à faire froid.
I am getting cold (hungry, thirsty).	Je commence à avoir froid (faim, soif).

19f. There are numerous other English expressions composed of **to get** plus an adjective, a past participle, or an adverb. The corresponding French form is simply a verb—pronominal in some cases, non-pronominal in others.

to get along (together)	s'entendre
to get along without	se passer de
to get angry	se fâcher, se mettre en colère
to get better (= <i>to recover</i>)	se remettre
to get bored	s'ennuyer (<i>je m'ennuie</i>), s'embêter
to get cold (<i>of thing</i>)	se refroidir
to get discouraged	se décourager (<i>nous nous décourageons</i>)
to get dressed	s'habiller
to get excited	s'exciter
to get frightened	s'effrayer (<i>je m'effraie, je m'effraie</i>)
to get impatient	s'impatiser
to get lost	s'égarer, se perdre
to get married	se marier
to get old	se faire vieux
to get over (<i>a cold, etc.</i>)	se remettre (<i>d'un rhume, etc.</i>)
to get (oneself) ready	se préparer
to get rich	s'enrichir
to get rid of	se débarrasser de
to get tired	se fatiguer
to get together	se réunir
to get undressed	se déshabiller
to get up	se lever (<i>je me lève</i>)
to get used to	s'habituer à
to get washed	se laver
to get wet	se mouiller
to get one's feet wet	se mouiller les pieds
to get back (= <i>to arrive home</i>)	rentrer
to get back (= <i>to go back</i>)	retourner
to get back (= <i>to withdraw</i>)	reculer
to get down(stairs)	descendre
to get fat	grossir, engraisser

to get home	rentrer
to get in (= to enter)	entrer (<i>dans</i>)
to get in (= to arrive)	arriver
to get in (= to arrive home)	rentrer
to get in (<i>to a car, etc.</i>)	monter (<i>dans une voiture, etc.</i>)
to get off	descendre (<i>de</i>)
to get old	vieillir
to get on (<i>a train, etc.</i>)	monter (<i>dans un train, etc.</i>)
to get out	sortir
to get out (<i>of a car, etc.</i>)	descendre (<i>d'une voiture, etc.</i>)
to get (<i>a thing, a person</i>) ready	préparer (<i>une chose, une personne</i>)
to get thin	maigrir
to get up (<i>on a chair, a table, etc.</i>)	monter (<i>sur une chaise, une table, etc.</i>)
to get upstairs	monter
to get (one) used to	habituer à
to get washed	faire sa toilette
to get well	guérir

19g. To get something repaired (painted, etc.) in the sense of having someone else do it, is **faire réparer** (peindre, etc.) **quelque chose**. (This *faire* causative construction is treated in detail in Lesson 33.) To get something repaired (painted, etc.) in the sense of doing it oneself, is simply **réparer** (peindre, etc.).

He's getting a swimming pool built in his garden.	Il fait construire une piscine dans son jardin.
---	---

I got my hair cut.	Je me suis fait couper les cheveux.
--------------------	-------------------------------------

I got all my homework finished by eight o'clock.	J'ai fini tous mes devoirs avant huit heures.
--	---

19h. To get someone to do something is also frequently expressed by the *faire* causative construction. However, if real persuasion is involved, it is preferable to use **persuader à quelqu'un de faire quelque chose**. (There is no exact rule on this point.)

Get him to wash the kitchen walls.	Faites-lui laver les murs de la cuisine
------------------------------------	---

I can't get him to take a holiday.	Je ne peux pas lui persuader de prendre des vacances.
------------------------------------	---

20. HALF

20a. The translation of the noun **half**, in mathematical calculations, is illustrated by the following examples.

"How much is a half and a third?"	Combien font un demi et un tiers?
"Five sixths."	— Cinq sixièmes.

Half of fifteen is seven and a half.	La moitié de quinze est sept et demi.
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

20b. In other cases, the noun **half** is rendered by **la moitié**.

The grocer has sent only half (of) my order.	L'épicer n'a envoyé que la moitié de ma commande.
--	---

20c. The adjective **half** is **demi(e)**.

Go and get half a pound of butter and half a dozen eggs.	Va chercher une demi-livre de beurre et une demi-douzaine d'œufs.
--	---

This chicken weighs five and a half pounds.	Ce poulet pèse cinq livres et demie.
---	--------------------------------------

It is half past one.	Il est une heure et demie.
----------------------	----------------------------

It is half past two.	Il est deux heures et demie.
----------------------	------------------------------

It is half past twelve (noon).	Il est midi et demi.
--------------------------------	----------------------

It is half past twelve (midnight).	Il est minuit et demi.
------------------------------------	------------------------

20d. The adverb **half** is **à moitié** or **à demi**.

He is half blind.	Il est à moitié (or à demi) aveugle.
-------------------	--------------------------------------

21. HAPPEN

21a. **To happen**, meaning *to occur*, is **arriver** or **se passer**. (The latter is not used when there is an indirect object.)

What happened next?	Qu'est-ce qui est arrivé (or Qu'est-ce qui s'est passé or Que s'est-il passé) ensuite?
---------------------	--

Something always happens to me when I travel.	Il m'arrive toujours quelque chose quand je voyage.
---	---

21b. The translation of **to happen** in other cases is illustrated by the following examples.

Do you happen to know how deep this river is (<i>transl. the depth of this river</i>)?	Savez-vous par hasard la profondeur de cette rivière?
--	---

How do you happen to have so much (small) change?	Comment se fait-il que vous ayez tant de (petite) monnaie?
---	--

How did you happen to leave the headlights on (<i>transl. lighted</i>)?	Comment se fait-il que vous ayez laissé les phares allumés?
---	---

22. HARD

22a. The adjective **hard** is rendered by **dur** to mean *physically hard*, and by **difficile** to mean *difficult*.

Iron is hard, but lead is rather soft.	Le fer est dur, mais le plomb est assez mou.
--	--

This lesson is hard, but the next one will be easy. Cette leçon-ci est difficile, mais la suivante sera facile.

22b. **Hard** is an adverb in the expressions **to work hard, to rain hard, to laugh hard, to hit hard**. The corresponding French expressions are **travailler dur, pleuvoir fort, rire fort, frapper fort**.

I have always worked hard, especially when I was young. J'ai toujours travaillé dur, surtout quand j'étais jeune.

Is it raining very hard? Est-ce qu'il pleut très fort?

23. HEAR

23a. **To hear**, except as explained below, is **entendre**.

"What's the matter?" "Don't you hear those wolves?" Qu'est-ce qu'il y a? — Est-ce que vous n'entendez pas ces loups?

23b. **To hear (that) . . . is entendre dire que . . .**

Did you hear (that) they are going to close the school because of the flu? Avez-vous entendu dire qu'on va fermer l'école à cause de la grippe?

23c. **To hear of is entendre parler de.**

Haven't you ever heard of the Great War? N'avez-vous jamais entendu parler de la Grande Guerre?

23d. **To hear from is recevoir (or avoir) des nouvelles de.**

Did you hear from Peter? Avez-vous eu des nouvelles de Pierre?

Did you hear from them? Avez-vous eu de leurs nouvelles?

24. HELP

24a. **To help**, meaning *to give assistance to*, is **aider**.

Little Michael wanted to help the firemen put out the fire. Le petit Michel voulait aider les pompiers à éteindre l'incendie.

24b. **Not to be able to help**, followed by the gerund, is **ne pas pouvoir s'empêcher de** plus the infinitive.

I can't help smiling when I think of the surprise he got. Je ne peux pas m'empêcher de sourire quand je pense à la surprise qu'il a eue.

24c. **To help oneself (to . . .) is se servir (de . . .).**

Help yourself. Servez-vous.

Help yourself to cream and sugar. Servez-vous de crème et de sucre.

24d. **Help!** (as a cry for aid) is **Au secours!** Similarly, **to cry for help** is **crier au secours**.

Suddenly we heard a cry: "Help! Help!" Tout à coup nous avons entendu un cri: «Au secours! Au secours!»

25. HOLIDAY

25a. Holiday, in the sense of a religious or political festival, is **la fête**.

The French national holiday is July 14th, the anniversary of the capture of the Bastille in 1789. La fête nationale française est le 14 juillet, anniversaire de la prise de la Bastille en 1789.

25b. The administrative term **public holiday** is **le jour férié** or **la fête légale**.

The public holidays in France are: Les jours fériés (*or* Les fêtes légales) en France sont:

New Year's Day	le jour de l'an
Easter Monday	le lundi de Pâques
May 1st	le premier mai (<i>fête du travail</i>)
May 8th	le huit mai (<i>Armistice 1945</i>)
Ascension Day	l'Ascension
Whit Monday	le lundi de Pentecôte
July 14th	le quatorze juillet
(the Feast of) the Assumption	l'Assomption (<i>le quinze août</i>)
All Saints' Day	la Toussaint (<i>le premier novembre</i>)
November 11th	le onze novembre (<i>Armistice 1918</i>)
Christmas (Day)	(le jour de) Noël

25c. Holiday, in the sense of a day (two days, an afternoon, *etc.*) off, is **le congé**.

Do pupils have a holiday for the Queen's birthday? Est-ce que les élèves ont congé pour la fête de la reine?

We had two days' holiday last week. Nous avons eu deux jours de congé la semaine dernière.

25d. Holiday(s), meaning *vacation*, is **les vacances**.

"Do you have a month's holiday?" Avez-vous un mois de vacances?

"No, only three weeks." — Non, seulement trois semaines.

He's on holiday (*or* on his holidays). Il est en vacances.

26. HOT

26a. To be hot, referring to a thing, is **être chaud(e)(s)**.

That iron is too hot. You're going to burn your slip. Ce fer est trop chaud. Tu vas brûler ta combinaison.

26b. To be hot, referring to a person, is **avoir chaud**.

I'm going to put on a nylon shirt so as not to be too hot. Je vais mettre une chemise de nylon pour ne pas avoir trop chaud.

My hands are hot; these gloves are too thick. J'ai chaud aux mains; ces gants sont trop épais.

26c. To be hot, referring to atmospheric temperature, is **faire chaud**. (Note, however, the idiomatic expression in the second example.)

Why light that fire? It's already too hot in this room. Pourquoi allumer ce feu? Il fait déjà trop chaud dans cette pièce.

Isn't it hot! Qu'il fait chaud (*or* Quelle chaleur)!

27. HOW

27a. How, meaning *in what manner* or *by what means* is **comment**.

I wonder how I can get rid of these ants. Je me demande comment je pourrai me débarrasser de ces fourmis.

27b. How often, meaning *how many times*, is **combien de fois**; meaning *at what interval*, it is **tous les combien**.

How often have you been there? Combien de fois y avez-vous été?

How often does the bus run? Il y a un autobus tous les combien?

27c. How long, referring to time, is translated as shown in the following examples.

How long will it take you to get dressed? Combien de temps vous faudra-t-il pour vous habiller?

How long have you been here? Depuis quand (*or* Depuis combien de temps) êtes-vous ici?

How long is it since they left? Combien (de temps) y a-t-il qu'ils sont partis?

27d. How far can refer to the distance between two points; or it can mean *up to what point*. The respective translations are given in the following examples.

How far is it from Toronto to Mexico City? Combien y a-t-il de Toronto à Mexico?

How far did you go the first day? Jusqu'où êtes-vous allé le premier jour?

27e. The following examples illustrate the translation of **how** in questions referring to dimensions.

How wide is (*transl. What is the width of*) your garage? Quelle est la largeur de votre garage?

How long is your swimming pool? Quelle est la longueur de votre piscine?

How tall is that apartment house? Quelle est la hauteur de cet immeuble?

How tall is your brother (*transl. How much does your brother measure*)? Combien votre frère mesure-t-il?

27f. **How**, introducing an exclamation, is **comme** or **que** or **ce que** (this last in familiar style).

How nice (*or* sweet) these flowers smell! Comme (*or* Que) ces fleurs sentent bon!

How bitter this medicine is! Ce que ce médicament est amer!

27g. For the translation of **how about**, see the second example under 1k.

27h. For the translation of **how many**, see 38g.

27i. For the translation of **how much**, see 48h.

27j. For the translation of **how old**, see the first example under 53c.

28. IN

28a. **In**, indicating duration or elapsed time, is **en**.

Can you run a hundred yards (*transl.* Pouvez-vous courir cent mètres en dix *mètres*) in ten seconds? secondes?

28b. **In**, in a phrase which is future in meaning, and which indicates the period of waiting before the action of the verb takes place, is **dans**.

Hurry up! The train leaves in three minutes! Dépêchez-vous! Le train part dans trois minutes!

28c. **In**, meaning *after* or *at the end of*, is **au bout de**.

They had said they were going away for a month, but they came back in a week. Ils avaient dit qu'ils partaient pour un mois, mais ils sont revenus au bout de huit jours.

29. KNOW

29a. **To know**, in the sense of being acquainted with a person or place, is **connaître**.

Do you know your new neighbours yet? Connaissez-vous déjà vos nouveaux voisins?

I don't know this road at all. Je ne connais pas du tout cette route.

29b. **To know**, in the sense of having a mere passive or recognition knowledge of a word, a fact, *etc.*, is **connaître**.

"Do you know this idiom?" "No, I have never run across it." Connaissez-vous cet idiotisme? — Non, je ne l'ai jamais rencontré.

29c. **To know**, in the sense of having an active knowledge or mastery of a word, a fact, *etc.*, is **savoir**.

Do you happen to know the price of that big picture? Savez-vous par hasard le prix de ce grand tableau?

Don't you know those dates yet?

Ne savez-vous pas encore ces dates?

I have heard that James is going to Italy. Does he know Italian?

J'ai entendu dire que Jacques va en Italie. Est-ce qu'il sait l'italien?

Do you know in what year the United States bought Alaska from Russia?

Savez-vous en quelle année les États-Unis ont acheté l'Alaska à la Russie?

30. LATE

30a. To be late, referring to a person, is **être en retard**. Similarly, **to make someone late** is **mettre quelqu'un en retard**.

The concert begins at eight o'clock sharp. Don't be late.

Le concert commence à huit heures précises. Ne soyez pas en retard.

You are going to make us late.

Vous allez nous mettre en retard.

30b. To be late, referring to a train, *etc.*, is **avoir du retard**.

The train was fifty minutes late because of a snowstorm.

Le train avait cinquante minutes de retard à cause d'une tempête de neige.

30c. The adverb late, meaning *at a late hour*, is **tard**.

It is late.

Il est tard.

It was getting late.

Il se faisait tard.

When I go to bed late, I am always tired the next day.

Quand je me couche tard, je suis toujours fatigué le lendemain.

On Sunday, I get up an hour later than during the week.

Le dimanche, je me lève une heure plus tard qu'en semaine.

31. LEAVE

31a. To leave, except as indicated below, is **laisser**.

May I use a pencil? I left my pen at home.

Puis-je employer un crayon? J'ai laissé mon stylo à la maison.

I don't like leaving the children alone in the evening.

Je n'aime pas laisser les enfants seuls le soir.

Leave me alone (= *Don't bother me*).

Laissez-moi tranquille (= *Ne me dérangez pas*).

Shall I leave the door open?

Voulez-vous que je laisse la porte ouverte?

31b. To leave (*a place*) is **quitter** (*un endroit*) or **partir** (*d'un endroit*), the former being commoner; or, if the sense requires it, **sortir** (*d'un endroit*).

Did you know that Edward is going to leave Toronto (leave school)?

Saviez-vous qu'Édouard va quitter Toronto (quitter l'école)?

If you want to be at the airport at three (o'clock), you will have to leave the house at a quarter past two.

On leaving the (*motion-picture*) theatre, I met some friends.

May I leave the room, sir?

Si vous voulez être à l'aéroport à trois heures, il (vous) faudra quitter la maison à deux heures et quart.

En sortant du cinéma, j'ai rencontré des amis.

Puis-je sortir, monsieur?

31c. To leave, used intransitively, is **partir**.

When are you leaving (for Argentina)? Quand partez-vous (pour l'Argentine)?

32. LEFT

32a. Left, as the opposite of *right*, is **gauche**.

Can you write with your left hand?

Savez-vous écrire de la main gauche?

Turn left at the first traffic lights.

Tournez à gauche aux premiers feux de circulation.

32b. To be left and to have left are rendered by the use of **rester**.

"Is there any turkey left?" "Only the wings."

Est-ce qu'il reste de la dinde?
— Seulement les ailes.

I have two sentences left to translate.

Il me reste deux phrases à traduire.

32c. For the cases where **left** is the past tense (or past participle) of the verb *to leave*, see Section 31.

33. LIKE

33a. To like is expressed by **aimer** or **plaire**. (In the conditional, **to like** may be expressed by **vouloir**.)

I don't like artificial flowers.

Je n'aime pas les fleurs artificielles.

I'd like to live somewhere else.

J'aimerais (*or* Je voudrais) habiter ailleurs.

Did you like the film?

Est-ce que le film vous a plu?

33b. How do you like . . . ? is rendered by the use of **trouver** when it asks for an opinion, and by **prendre** when it refers to a personal preference in food and drink.

How did you like the film?

Comment avez-vous trouvé le film?

"How do you like (*or* would you like) your tea?" "Quite strong."

Comment prenez-vous votre thé?
— Assez fort.

33c. When the form **How would you like . . . ?** simply means *Would you like . . . ?*, it is translated accordingly.

How would you like a cup of tea?

Aimeriez-vous (*or* Voudriez-vous) une tasse de thé?

How would you like to dine out tonight? Aimeriez-vous (or Voudriez-vous) dîner en ville ce soir?

33d. To like, meaning *to wish, to want*, is **vouloir**.

You may come with us if you like. Vous pouvez nous accompagner si vous voulez.

Do as you like; I don't care. Faites comme vous voudrez; cela m'est égal.

33e. To like it (*somewhere*) is **se plaire**.

(How) do you like it in Canada? Est-ce que vous vous plaisez au Canada?

34. LITTLE

34a. Little, referring to size, is rendered by **petit(e)(s)**.

He broke his little finger playing baseball. Il s'est cassé le petit doigt en jouant au baseball.

34b. Little, referring to quantity or degree, is rendered by **peu (de)**.

There is little hope of finding the ring you lost on the beach. Il y a peu d'espoir de retrouver la bague que tu as perdue sur la plage.

He's a little better this morning. Il va un peu mieux ce matin.

I have already forgotten the little I knew. J'ai déjà oublié le peu que je savais.

35. LONG

35a. The adjective long is **long(ue)(s)**. (For the position of **long**, see 15.6.)

I had a long conversation with him yesterday. J'ai eu une longue conversation avec lui hier.

She was very proud of her first long dress. Elle était très fière de sa première robe longue.

35b. When long means *a long time*, the French is **longtemps**.

"We'll have to install a new radiator." Il faudra installer un nouveau radiateur. —
"Will that take long?" Est-ce que cela prendra longtemps?

Do you mind waiting? I shan't be long. Est-ce que ça ne vous fait rien d'attendre? Je n'en ai pas pour longtemps.

35c. Not to be long (in) . . . is ne pas tarder à . . .

He wasn't long (in) catching up to us. Il n'a pas tardé à nous rattraper.

35d. The conjunctive phrase **as long as** is **tant que**.

I'll remember it as long as I live.

Je m'en souviendrai tant que je vivrai.

35e. **Long live . . . !** is **Vive(nt) . . . !**

Long live the Queen!

Vive la reine!

35f. For the translation of **how long**, see 27c and 27e.

36. LOOK

36a. **To look**, meaning *to cast a glance*, is **regarder**; and **to look**, meaning *to seek*, is **chercher**.

Look both ways before crossing the street.

Regarde des deux côtés avant de traverser la rue.

Why were you looking out of the window?

Pourquoi regardiez-vous par la fenêtre?

I've looked everywhere, but I can't find my purse.

J'ai cherché partout, mais je ne trouve pas mon sac (à main).

36b. Except as explained below, **to look**, meaning *to appear*, is **avoir l'air**.

Why does she always look so unhappy?

Pourquoi a-t-elle toujours l'air si malheureuse?

36c. **To look well** and **to look ill** are usually rendered by **avoir bonne mine** and **avoir mauvaise mine**.

You look well. You look better than (you did) yesterday.

Vous avez bonne mine. Vous avez meilleure mine qu'hier.

You look ill. You look worse than (you did) yesterday.

Vous avez mauvaise mine (or Vous avez l'air malade). Vous avez moins bonne mine qu'hier.

36d. **To look like** is **ressembler à** for a specific physical similarity, and **avoir l'air de** for a general impression.

Does he look like his father or his mother?

Ressemble-t-il à son père ou à sa mère?

He looks like a doctor

Il a l'air d'un médecin.

36e. The translation of **to look like** and **to look as if**, expressing probability, is illustrated by the following examples.

It looks like snow.

On dirait qu'il va neiger.

It looked like rain.

On aurait dit qu'il allait pleuvoir.

She looks as if she were going to cry.

On dirait qu'elle va pleurer.

She looked as if she were going to faint.

On aurait dit qu'elle allait s'évanouir.

36f. To look out, meaning *to be careful*, is **faire attention**.

Look out for the truck! (Faites) attention au camion!

36g. To look after is **s'occuper de**.

Who's going to look after the cat? Qui va s'occuper du chat?

37. MAKE

37a. To make, except as indicated below, is **faire**.

I've made a new dessert for dinner. J'ai fait un nouveau dessert pour le dîner.

37b. To make (*i.e., to win*) **friends** is **se faire des amis**.

She writes that she has already made several friends. Elle écrit qu'elle s'est déjà fait plusieurs amis.

37c. To make, meaning *to earn*, is **gagner**.

He makes seventy dollars a week. Il gagne soixante-dix dollars par semaine.

37d. To make, followed by an adjective, is usually **rendre**.

I think he'll make her very happy. Je crois qu'il la rendra très heureuse.

37e. In the following cases, to make, followed by an adjective, is rendered by **donner** or **faire**, followed by a noun.

to make (one) cold	donner froid (à)
to make (one) hot	donner chaud (à)
to make (one) hungry	donner faim (à)
to make (one) sleepy	donner sommeil (à)
to make (one) thirsty	donner soif (à)
to make (one) afraid	faire peur (à)
to make (one) envious	faire envie (à)

Reading always makes him sleepy. La lecture lui donne toujours sommeil.

37f. The following are miscellaneous examples.

to make (one) angry	fâcher, mettre en colère
to make (one) tired	fatiguer
to make (one) look older	vieillir
to make (one) look younger	rajeunir

What can have made him angry? Qu'est-ce qui a pu le fâcher?

37g. The translation of to make someone do something is explained in detail in Lesson 33.

38. MANY

38a. (**Very**) **many** is expressed by **beaucoup** (*de*) or **bien** (*des*). (As the latter has the force of *plenty of*, it should not be used unless that is the desired meaning.)

There are many flowers which have no scent.	Il y a beaucoup de fleurs (<i>or bien des fleurs</i>) qui n'ont pas de parfum.
---	--

Are there (very) many bones in this kind of fish?	Y a-t-il beaucoup d'arêtes dans ce genre de poisson?
---	--

38b. In the following expressions **beaucoup** (*de*) is not used, only **bien** (*des*).

many years	bien des années
many times	bien des fois

38c. **As many** (...) **as** ... is **autant** (*de* ...) **que** ... In the negative, **autant** may usually be replaced by **tant**.

What other country has as many lakes as Canada?	Quel autre pays a autant de lacs que le Canada?
---	---

No other country has as many lakes as Canada.	Aucun autre pays n'a autant (<i>or tant</i>) de lacs que le Canada.
---	---

38d. **Twice as many** is **deux fois plus** (*de*).

We shall have twice (three times) as many peaches as last year.	Nous aurons deux fois (trois fois) plus de pêches que l'année dernière.
---	---

38e. **So many** is **tant** (*de*) or **tellement** (*de*).

I have so many things to do (that) I don't know where to start.	J'ai tant de choses à faire que je ne sais pas par où commencer.
---	--

38f. **Too many** is **trop** (*de*).

There are too many knives and not enough forks.	Il y a trop de couteaux et pas assez de fourchettes.
---	--

38g. **How many** is **combien** (*de*).

How many legs has a spider?	Combien une araignée a-t-elle de pattes? (<i>Note the word order.</i>)
-----------------------------	--

39. MARRY

39a. **To marry**, meaning *to unite in marriage*, is **mari(er)**.

In France, it is the mayor (or the deputy mayor) who marries couples; the priest gives them the marriage blessing.	En France, c'est le maire (ou l'adjoint) qui marie les couples; le curé leur donne la bénédiction nuptiale.
--	---

39b. **To marry**, meaning *to get married*, is **se mari(er)**.

Why did she never marry?	Pourquoi ne s'est-elle jamais mariée?
--------------------------	---------------------------------------

39c. To marry, meaning *to become the husband or wife of*, is **épouser**.

He is going to marry an American girl. Il va épouser une Américaine.

39d. Married is **marié(e)(s)**.

Is she single, married, widowed or divorced? Est-elle célibataire, mariée, veuve ou divorcée?

40. MAY, MAY HAVE

40a. May, expressing permission, is rendered by the present indicative of **pouvoir**.

May I ask you a question?

Puis-je (*or* Est-ce que je peux *or* Est-ce que je puis) vous poser une question?

40b. May, expressing possibility or conjecture, is usually rendered by the use of **peut-être** with the indicative (present or future, according to the sense), or the impersonal expression **il (cela, ça) se peut que** plus the present subjunctive. (It is best to avoid **pouvoir** plus the infinitive here, because it frequently results in an awkward or stilted construction, especially in the negative.)

She may not know where we are.

Peut-être qu'elle ne sait pas (*or* Elle ne sait peut-être pas *or* Il se peut qu'elle ne sache pas) où nous sommes.

I may go downtown tomorrow.

Peut-être que j'irai (*or* J'irai peut-être *or* Cela se peut que j'aille) en ville demain.

40c. May have (*done, etc.*), expressing possibility or conjecture, and referring to a completed action in the past, is usually rendered by the use of **peut-être** with the present perfect indicative, or the impersonal expression **il (cela, ça) se peut que** plus the perfect subjunctive. (It is best to avoid **pouvoir** plus the infinitive.)

He may have changed his mind.

Peut-être qu'il a changé d'avis (*or* Il a peut-être changé d'avis *or* Ça se peut qu'il ait changé d'avis).

40d. May have (*done, etc.*), expressing possibility or conjecture, and referring to a state in the past, or to an incomplete or repeated action in the past, is usually rendered by the use of **peut-être** with the imperfect indicative. (Both **pouvoir** plus the infinitive, and the impersonal **il se peut que** plus the subjunctive, should be avoided here.)

She may have been afraid.

Peut-être qu'elle avait peur (*or* Elle avait peut-être peur).

He may have been driving too fast.

Peut-être qu'il conduisait (*or* Il conduisait peut-être) trop vite.

40e. In some cases, **may** and **may have** are merely modal forms in a verb phrase corresponding to the French subjunctive.

Speak more loudly so that everyone may hear you. Parlez plus fort pour que tout le monde vous entende.

I'm afraid she may have hurt herself. J'ai peur qu'elle (*ne*) se soit fait mal.

40f. For the translation of **may** in expressing a wish, see 32.24 and 32.27.

41. MEET

41a. **To meet**, meaning *to run across*, is **rencontrer**.

This morning I met a friend (whom) I hadn't seen for years. Ce matin j'ai rencontré un ami que je n'avais pas vu depuis des années.

41b. **To meet**, meaning *to make the acquaintance of*, is **faire la connaissance de** or **connaître**, if used transitively; and **faire connaissance** or **se connaître**, if used intransitively.

I should like to meet your brother-in-law. J'aimerais faire la connaissance de (*or* J'aimerais connaître) votre beau-frère.

I should like to meet him. J'aimerais faire sa connaissance (*or* J'aimerais le connaître).

We met in London during the war. Nous avons fait connaissance (*or* Nous nous sommes connus) à Londres pendant la guerre.

41c. **To meet**, in the sense of meeting by previous agreement, is **retrouver**, if transitive; and **se retrouver**, if intransitive.

I'll meet you in front of the (*motion-picture*) theatre. Je vous retrouverai devant le cinéma.

We are going to meet in front of the theatre. Nous allons nous retrouver devant le cinéma.

41d. **To meet** (*someone at the station, etc.*) is **aller chercher** or **venir chercher**, according to the sense.

Excuse me, but I have to meet a friend at the station. Excusez-moi, mais je dois aller chercher un ami à la gare.

Will someone be able to meet me at the airport? Quelqu'un pourra-t-il venir me chercher à l'aéroport?

41e. **To meet**, meaning *to get together*, is **se réunir**.

Our group meets every Tuesday. Notre groupe se réunit tous les mardis.

42. MIGHT, MIGHT HAVE

42a. **Might**, expressing permission or reproach, is rendered by the present conditional of **pouvoir**, to which is added the appropriate infinitive. Similarly, **might have** (*done, etc.*) is rendered by the past conditional of **pouvoir**.

Might I ask you for a bit of information? Pourrais-je vous demander un petit renseignement?

You might at least be on time! Vous pourriez au moins être à l'heure!

They might have been a little more polite! Ils auraient pu être un peu plus polis!

42b. Might, expressing possibility or conjecture, is usually rendered by the use of **peut-être** with the present conditional, or the impersonal expression **il (cela, ça) se pourrait que** with the present subjunctive. (It is best to avoid **pouvoir** plus the infinitive here, because it frequently results in an awkward or stilted construction, especially in the negative.)

You might not like the climate. Peut-être que vous n'aimeriez pas (or Vous n'aimeriez peut-être pas or Il se pourrait que vous n'aimiez pas) le climat.

He said he might have time to drop in this evening. Il a dit qu'il aurait peut-être le temps de passer ce soir. (*The other forms would be awkward in a subordinate clause.*)

42c. Might have (*done, etc.*), expressing possibility or conjecture, is usually rendered by the use of **peut-être** with the past conditional. (Both **pouvoir** plus the infinitive, and the impersonal expression **il se pourrait que**, should be avoided here.)

They might have been happier if they had not been so rich. Peut-être qu'ils auraient été (or Ils auraient peut-être été) plus heureux s'ils avaient été moins riches.

42d. In some cases **might** and **might have** are merely modal forms in a verb phrase corresponding to the French subjunctive.

She had wrapped the baby in a blanket so that it might not be cold. Elle avait roulé le bébé dans une couverture pour qu'il n'ait pas froid.

We didn't go near the dog for fear that it might bite us. Nous ne nous sommes pas approchés du chien de peur qu'il (*ne*) nous morde.

I was afraid you might have forgotten our appointment. J'avais peur que vous (*n'*)ayez oublié notre rendez-vous.

43. MIND

43a. To mind, in the sense of heeding or attaching importance to, is **faire attention (à)**.

Don't mind them. Ne faites pas attention à eux.

Don't mind what they say. Ne faites pas attention à ce qu'ils disent.

43b. To mind, meaning *to look after*, is **garder**.

We'd like to go out this evening, but we have no one to mind the baby. Nous aimerions sortir ce soir, mais nous n'avons personne pour garder le bébé.

43c. The translations of **to mind**, meaning *to object (to)*, are illustrated in the following examples.

Would you mind holding these packages while I open the door? Voudriez-vous bien tenir ces paquets pendant que j'ouvre la porte?

Do you mind if I don't come tomorrow? Ça ne vous fait rien (*or* Ça ne vous ennuie pas *or* Ça vous est égal) si je ne viens pas demain?

I hope you don't mind the noise. J'espère que le bruit ne vous gêne pas.

"You will have to drive Aunt Martha to the station." "I don't mind." Il faudra que tu conduises tante Marthe à la gare. — Je veux bien.

"There are only prunes for dessert." "I don't mind." Il n'y a que des pruneaux pour le dessert. — Cela m'est égal.

43d. To mind one's own business is **s'occuper de ses affaires**.

Mind your own business! Occupe-toi de tes affaires!

44. MISS

44a. To miss, in the sense of failing to catch or hit, is **manquer** (*or*, in familiar style, **rater**).

I almost missed my bus. J'ai failli manquer (*or* rater) mon autobus.

He threw a snowball at me, but he missed me. Il m'a lancé une boule de neige, mais il m'a manqué (*or* raté).

44b. To miss, in the sense of regretting the absence of, is **manquer**, with the English subject becoming the French indirect object.

Do you miss your family? Est-ce que votre famille vous manque?

Does your family miss you? Est-ce que vous manquez à votre famille?

44c. To be missing is expressed by **manquer**, usually in the impersonal form.

I am going to take this shirt back to the store; there is a button missing. Je vais rapporter cette chemise au magasin; il manque un bouton.

Is there anything (anyone) missing? Est-ce qu'il manque quelque chose (quelqu'un)?

45. MORE

45a. More, expressing a comparison, is **plus**.

The beginning of this novel is more interesting than the end(ing). Le commencement de ce roman est plus intéressant que la fin.

Canada has more than seventeen million inhabitants. Le Canada a plus de dix-sept millions d'habitants.

45b. More, meaning *additional*, is *encore*.

May I have (some) more ice cream? Est-ce que je peux avoir encore de la glace?

Won't you have a little more meat? Ne voulez-vous pas encore un peu de viande?

45c. More and more is *de plus en plus*.

He is becoming more and more independent. Il devient de plus en plus indépendant.

45d. The more . . . the more . . . is *Plus . . . plus . . .*

The more I rest, the more tired I feel. Plus je me repose, plus je me sens fatigué.

45e. Not any more or no more is *ne . . . plus*.

The doorbell doesn't work any more. La sonnette ne marche plus.

We have no more strawberries. Nous n'avons plus de fraises.

46. MORNING

46a. The feminine **la matinée** is used for **morning** when the reference is to activity or events.

I don't like wasting a whole morning. Je n'aime pas perdre toute une matinée.

46b. In other senses, **morning** is expressed by the masculine **le matin**.

Morning is the part of the day between sunrise and noon. Le matin est la partie du jour entre le lever du soleil et midi.

I advise you to take the morning train. Je vous conseille de prendre le train du matin.

46c. The phrase **in the morning**, preceded by a clock time, is **du matin**; otherwise it is **le matin**, except in the sense of *tomorrow morning*, which is **demain matin**.

I find my bed extraordinarily comfortable at seven (o'clock) in the morning. Je trouve mon lit extraordinairement confortable à sept heures du matin.

It's in the morning that I do my best work. C'est le matin que je fais mon meilleur travail.

He told me he's leaving in the morning. Il m'a dit qu'il part demain matin.

47. MOST

47a. As part of a superlative expression, **most** is rendered by **plus**.

It's the most natural thing in the world. C'est la chose la plus naturelle du monde.

Which of these tales amused you (the) most? Lequel de ces contes vous a amusé le plus?

Which of these trees gives (the) most fruit? Lequel de ces arbres donne le plus de fruits?

It's a most dangerous operation. C'est une opération des plus dangereuses.

47b. **Most**, meaning *the majority* or *the greatest part*, is **la plupart**.

Most of my friends (Most of them) have a pet (animal). La plupart de mes amis (La plupart d'entre eux) ont un animal familier.

He is probably going to fail; he is absent most of the time. Il va probablement échouer; il est absent (*or* il manque) la plupart du temps.

47c. Sometimes **most** is rendered merely by **très** or **extrêmement**.

It was most unpleasant. C'était très (*or* extrêmement) désagréable.

48. MUCH

48a. The adverb (**very**) **much** is **beaucoup** or **bien**.

You are (very) much slimmer than before. Vous êtes beaucoup (*or* bien) plus mince qu'avant.

"Thank you very much." "Don't mention it." Merci beaucoup (*or* bien). — Il n'y a pas de quoi.

48b. The adjective (**very**) **much** is expressed by **beaucoup** (*de*). (*In the second example below, much is not really an adjective, but it is included in this section for the sake of convenience.*)

We haven't (very) much hope. Nous n'avons pas beaucoup d'espoir.

"Is there any salad left?" "No, (there is) not much (left)." Est-ce qu'il reste de la salade? — Non, (il n'en reste) pas beaucoup.

48c. When (**very**) **much** has the force of a noun, it is rendered in the affirmative by **beaucoup de choses**, and in the negative by (**ne . . .**) **pas grand-chose**.

Did you bring back much from Europe? Avez-vous rapporté beaucoup de choses d'Europe?

I was downtown all morning, but I didn't buy much. J'ai été toute la matinée en ville, mais je n'ai pas acheté grand-chose.

"What are you going to do this summer?" "Not (very) much." Qu'allez-vous faire cet été? — Pas grand-chose.

48d. As much (. . .) as . . . is autant (de . . .) que . . . (In the negative, **autant** may usually be replaced by **tant**.)

Do all Europeans drink as much (wine) as the French? Est-ce que tous les Européens boivent autant (de vin) que les Français?

48e. Twice as much is deux fois plus (de).

What an appetite! He eats twice (three times) as much meat as I do. Quel appétit! Il mange deux fois (trois fois) plus de viande que moi.

48f. So much is tant (de) or tellement (de).

There is so much snow in front of the garage (that) I can't get the car out. Il y a tant de neige (or tellement de neige) devant le garage que je ne peux pas sortir la voiture.

48g. Too much is trop (de).

He claims that Canada grows too much wheat. Il prétend que le Canada cultive trop de blé.

48h. How much is combien (de).

How much soap have we left? Combien de savon nous reste-t-il (or Combien nous reste-t-il de savon)?

49. NEW

49a. New, meaning *brand-new*, is **neuf** (always following the noun).

As we cannot afford new furniture, we are looking for second-hand furniture in good condition. Comme nous ne pouvons pas nous payer de meubles neufs, nous cherchons des meubles d'occasion en bon état.

I just saw a collision between two (brand-)new cars. Je viens de voir une collision entre deux voitures (toutes) neuves.

49b. New, in the sense of appearing for the first time, only recently available, innovative, *etc.*, is **nouveau**, following the noun.

Today at the market I saw the first new potatoes. Aujourd'hui au marché j'ai vu les premières pommes de terre nouvelles.

He reads only new books. Il ne lit que des livres nouveaux.

Our company is going to bring out a new car, the car of the future. Notre compagnie va sortir une voiture nouvelle, la voiture de l'avenir.

49c. New, in the sense of recently acquired, is **nouveau**, preceding the noun.

How do you like your new boss? Comment trouvez-vous votre nouveau patron?

What colour is your new car?

De quelle couleur est votre nouvelle voiture?

49d. In case of doubt about the translation of **new**, the safest solution is to apply Section 49c.

50. NEXT

50a. The adjective **next**, meaning *following*, is **suivant**. In other cases, it is **prochain**. The adjective **prochain** follows the noun to render expressions such as *next week (month, year, summer, Monday, etc.)*; otherwise it precedes.

Tomorrow we shall study the next chapter.	Demain nous étudierons le chapitre suivant.
---	---

There will be a wonderful film next week.	Il y aura un film épatant la semaine prochaine.
---	---

Let's hope the next turkey will be tenderer than this one.	Espérons que la prochaine dinde sera plus tendre que celle-ci.
--	--

50b. In certain expressions, there is no separate French word corresponding to the English word **next**. These are:

the next day	le lendemain
the next morning	le lendemain matin
the next afternoon	le lendemain après-midi
the next evening	le lendemain soir

We had (<i>transl. spent</i>) an excellent evening, but I was tired the next morning.	Nous avons passé une excellente soirée, mais j'étais fatigué le lendemain matin.
---	--

50c. The adverb **next** is **puis** or **ensuite**.

First he rubbed his eyes, next he began to yawn, and finally he fell asleep.	D'abord il s'est frotté les yeux, puis (<i>or ensuite</i>) il a commencé à bâiller, et finalement il s'est endormi.
--	---

51. NIGHT

51a. With the exceptions given below, **night** is **la nuit**.

Nights are longer in winter than in summer.	Les nuits sont plus longues en hiver qu'en été.
---	---

Put on another blanket; it's going to be cold tonight.	Mettez encore une couverture; il va faire froid cette nuit.
--	---

You should take a berth if you travel by the night train.	Vous devriez prendre une couchette si vous voyagez par le train de nuit.
---	--

51b. The phrase **at night**, preceded by a clock time, is **du soir**; otherwise it is **la nuit**, except for certain idiomatic expressions which require **de nuit**.

The doctor could not come until eleven o'clock at night.

At night there are a great many trucks on the road (*transl. roads*).

You spend less when you travel at night, but it's very tiring.

Le docteur n'a pas pu venir avant onze heures du soir.

La nuit il y a beaucoup de camions sur les routes.

On dépense moins quand on voyage de nuit, mais c'est très fatigant.

51c. Night, meaning *evening*, is rendered by **le soir**.

What did you do last night?

What are you going to do tonight (tomorrow night)?

Qu'est-ce que vous avez fait hier soir?

Qu'est-ce que vous allez faire ce soir (demain soir)?

51d. The French for **last night**, not meaning *evening*, depends on the time at which the expression is used. Spoken (or written) in the morning, **last night** is rendered by **cette nuit**; later in the day, it is **la nuit dernière**. (There can be no confusion between **cette nuit** meaning *last night* and **cette nuit** meaning *tonight*, because of the tense of the verb in the sentence.)

I don't want any breakfast; I didn't sleep well last night.

I have been tired all day; I didn't sleep well last night.

Je ne veux pas déjeuner; je n'ai pas bien dormi cette nuit.

J'ai été fatigué toute la journée; je n'ai pas bien dormi la nuit dernière.

52. NUMBER

52a. Number, expressing quantity, is **le nombre**.

There are always a certain number of individuals who like to be different.

Il y a toujours un certain nombre d'individus qui aiment être différents.

52b. Number, referring to position in a series, is **le numéro**.

What is your telephone number?

Quel est votre numéro de téléphone?

53. OLD

53a. With the exceptions given below, **old** is **vieux**. (Note that **le vieil homme** is unusual, the normal expression for **old man** being **le vieillard**.)

That clock is very old, but it still runs perfectly.

I am not yet old in spite of my white hair.

Allow me to introduce an old friend to you.

It was an old man (an old woman) who was all alone in the world.

Cette horloge est très vieille, mais elle marche encore parfaitement.

Je ne suis pas encore vieux malgré mes cheveux blancs.

Permettez que je vous présente un vieil ami.

C'était un vieillard (une vieille femme) qui était tout seul (toute seule) au monde.

53b. Old, meaning *former*, is rendered by **ancien**, placed before the noun.

Yesterday I met my old French teacher.	Hier j'ai rencontré mon ancien professeur de français.
She recognized me immediately.	Elle m'a reconnu tout de suite.

53c. The following examples illustrate the translation of **old** in reference to a person's age.

"How old are you?" "I am nineteen (years old)."	Quel âge avez-vous? — J'ai dix-neuf ans.
He is older than I am.	Il est plus âgé que moi.
He is four years older than I am.	Il a quatre ans de plus que moi.
He wants to be a doctor, like his older (or oldest) brother.	Il veut être médecin, comme son frère aîné.

54. ONLY

54a. Only, in *only child* (*son, daughter*), is **unique**, following the noun.

He's an only child (an only son).	Il est enfant unique (fils unique).
-----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

54b. Only, in forms such as *the only . . .*, *my only . . .*, *etc.*, is **seul**.

The only colour I can't wear is brown.	La seule couleur que je ne peux pas porter est le brun.
--	---

54c. Only, preceding a subject (and also preceding the article, possessive adjective, *etc.* which may accompany the subject) is rendered either by **seul**, or by the formula **il n'y a que . . .** (Note that with a pronoun subject, **seul** follows.)

Only a miracle can save him.	Seul un miracle pourra le sauver (or Il n'y a qu'un miracle qui puisse le sauver).
------------------------------	--

Only they could advise us.	Eux seuls pourraient nous conseiller (or Il n'y a qu'eux qui pourraient nous conseiller).
----------------------------	---

54d. Only one is rendered by **un seul, une seule**. Similarly, **the only one** is rendered by **le seul, la seule**.

Only one passenger was hurt.	Un seul voyageur a été blessé.
"How many lumps (<i>transl. pieces</i>) of sugar do you take?" "Only one."	Combien de morceaux de sucre prenez-vous? — Un seul.
This room is rather expensive, but it was the only one (that was) left.	Cette chambre est assez chère, mais c'était la seule qui restait.

54e. The adverb **only** is rendered by **ne . . . que . . .** or **seulement**, the former usually being preferable. (Note that where **only** modifies the verb, the use of **ne . . . que . . .** requires the addition of *faire* as an auxiliary.)

I see only two ways of solving this problem.

Je ne vois que deux façons de résoudre ce problème.

If you want me to help you, you have only to say so.

Si vous voulez que je vous aide, vous n'avez qu'à le dire.

If you ask him what he thinks, he only smiles.

Si on lui demande ce qu'il pense, il sourit seulement (*or* il ne fait que sourire).

54f. In an expression of regret or vain wish, **only** is rendered by **seulement**. (**Ne . . . que . . .** cannot be used.)

If only I could persuade him to see a doctor!

Si seulement je pouvais lui persuader de voir un médecin!

54g. The following examples are miscellaneous.

His only answer was to show his empty wallet.

Pour toute réponse il a montré son portefeuille vide.

If only it doesn't rain!

Pourvu qu'il ne pleuve pas!

55. PEOPLE

55a. **People** may usually be rendered by **les gens m.**

I know some people who have lived in the same house for forty years.

Je connais des gens qui habitent la même maison depuis quarante ans.

55b. **People**, referring to the group as a whole rather than to the individuals in it, is rendered by **le monde**.

"Were there many people at the market?" "There are never many people there in the afternoon."

Est-ce qu'il y avait beaucoup de monde au marché? — Il n'y a jamais grand monde l'après-midi.

55c. **People**, following a numeral (or an equivalent, such as *several*), is rendered by **les personnes f.**

When I am introduced to three or four people at the same time, I have difficulty remembering their names.

Quand on me présente à trois ou quatre personnes en même temps, j'ai de la peine à retenir leurs noms.

55d. **People**, in the sense of nation, is rendered by **le peuple**.

Democracy is government by the people.

La démocratie est le gouvernement par le peuple.

55e. **People**, in a vague, general sense, is rendered by the indefinite pronoun **on**.

People don't always follow their own advice.

On ne suit pas toujours ses propres conseils.

55f. Occasionally, the word **people** is not expressed in French.

Don't French people talk faster than we do?	Est-ce que les Français ne parlent pas plus vite que nous?
---	--

56. PIECE

56a. With the exceptions given below, **piece** is **le morceau**.

I had (<i>transl. took</i>) a piece of apple pie for dessert.	J'ai pris un morceau de tarte aux pommes pour le dessert.
---	---

What is the name of the piece she just played? --	Comment s'appelle le morceau qu'elle vient de jouer?
---	--

56b. **Piece**, referring to string, ribbon, *etc.*, is **le bout**.

I need a piece of string.	J'ai besoin d'un bout de ficelle.
---------------------------	-----------------------------------

56c. **Piece**, referring to a coin, is **la pièce**.

Do you happen to have a fifty-cent piece?	Avez-vous par hasard une pièce de cinquante sous?
---	---

56d. In the following cases, **piece** is not expressed in French.

a piece of advice	un conseil
a piece of furniture	un meuble
a piece of ground	un terrain
a piece of jewelry	un bijou
a piece of news	une nouvelle

57. PLAY

57a. **To play**, referring to a musical instrument, is **jouer** (*de*).

John plays the violin very well.	Jean joue très bien du violon.
----------------------------------	--------------------------------

57b. **To play** (*tennis, football, cards, etc.*) is **jouer** (*à*). However, **to play** (*or to have*) **a game of** (*tennis, football, cards, etc.*) is **faire une partie de**.

Do you like playing cards?	Aimez-vous jouer aux cartes?
----------------------------	------------------------------

What about playing (<i>or having</i>) a game of tennis?	Si on faisait une partie de tennis?
---	-------------------------------------

57c. **To play**, in other cases, is **jouer** with no preposition.

Play us one of your own compositions.	Jouez-nous une de vos propres compositions.
---------------------------------------	---

57d. The noun **play**, in the sense of a drama, is **la pièce**.

What play are we going to study this year?	Quelle pièce allons-nous étudier cette année?
--	---

58. RETURN

58a. To return, meaning *to give back*, is **rendre**.

He always returns the things he borrows, but he doesn't take care of them.	Il rend toujours les choses qu'il emprunte, mais il n'en prend pas soin.
--	--

58b. To return, meaning *to come back*, is **revenir** or **rentrer**.

"When did you return?" "Last Sunday."	Quand êtes-vous revenu (<i>or</i> rentré)? — Dimanche dernier.
---------------------------------------	--

58c. To return, meaning *to go back*, is **retourner** or **rentrer**.

They arrived in Canada twenty-seven years ago, and they have never returned to England.	Ils sont arrivés au Canada il y a vingt-sept ans, et ils ne sont jamais retournés (<i>or</i> rentrés) en Angleterre.
---	---

58d. The noun **return** is **le retour**.

The return trip was less interesting.	Le voyage de retour était moins intéressant.
---------------------------------------	--

59. RIGHT

59a. The noun **right**, in the sense of the right to do something, is **le droit**.

You have no right to do that.	Vous n'avez pas le droit de faire cela.
-------------------------------	---

59b. The adjective **right**, meaning *just*, is **juste**.

It is only right that he have his share.	Il n'est que juste qu'il ait sa part.
--	---------------------------------------

59c. The adjective **right**, referring to the right hand, foot, *etc.*, or to a ninety-degree angle, is **droit**.

He is deaf in his right ear.	Il est sourd de l'oreille droite.
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

"How many degrees are there in a right angle?" "Ninety."	Combien de degrés y a-t-il dans un angle droit? — Quatre-vingt-dix.
--	---

59d. To be **right**, meaning *not to be mistaken*, is **avoir raison**; but to be **right**, meaning *not to contain mistakes*, is **être correct**.

You don't believe it, but I know I'm right.	Vous ne le croyez pas, mais je sais que j'ai raison.
---	--

You were quite right to refuse (<i>or</i> in refusing).	Vous avez eu tout à fait raison de refuser.
--	---

All these sentences are right.	Toutes ces phrases sont correctes.
--------------------------------	------------------------------------

59e. The translation of the adjective **right**, meaning *exact* or *proper*, is illustrated by the following examples.

Could you tell me the right time?	Pourriez-vous me dire l'heure exacte?
You haven't the right book.	Vous n'avez pas le livre qu'il faut.
You haven't done the right exercise.	Vous n'avez pas fait l'exercice qu'il fallait.
Is this the right amount of soap for the washing?	Est-ce que c'est la bonne quantité de savon pour la lessive?

59f. That's right, expressing agreement with or confirmation of a statement, is **C'est ça**.

"You have to add an <i>s</i> to the past participle, sir."	"That's right."	Il faut ajouter un <i>s</i> au participe passé, monsieur. — C'est ça.
--	-----------------	---

60. SHOULD, SHOULD HAVE

60a. Should, meaning *ought to*, is rendered by the present conditional of **devoir**. Similarly, **should have**, meaning *ought to have*, is rendered by the past conditional of **devoir**.

You should eat more fruit and less candy.	Vous devriez manger plus de fruits et moins de bonbons.
He shouldn't have been driving so fast.	Il n'aurait pas dû conduire si vite.

60b. Should, when it does not mean *ought to* but is the equivalent of *would*, is merely the sign of the present conditional.

We should be very happy to go with you.	Nous serions très heureux de vous accompagner.
---	--

60c. Should have, not meaning *ought to have*, is usually the sign of the past conditional. As a complete verb in itself, it is the present conditional of *avoir*.

We shouldn't have been late if we had started (out) a little earlier.	Nous n'aurions pas été en retard si nous étions partis un peu plus tôt.
I was sure that I should never have the opportunity of taking such a trip.	J'étais sûr que je n'aurais jamais l'occasion de faire un tel voyage.

60d. The following example illustrates a use of **should** which does not fit the preceding rules.

If you should find a green ball-point pen, it's mine.	Si vous trouvez par hasard un stylo à bille vert, il est à moi.
---	---

61. SINCE

61a. The adverb **since** is **depuis**.

We took the same course at university, but I haven't seen her (again) since.	Nous avons suivi le même cours à l'université, mais je ne l'ai pas revue depuis.
--	--

61b. The preposition **since** is **depuis**.

He has been ill since March.

Il est malade depuis (le mois de) mars.

61c. The conjunction **since**, referring to time, is **depuis que**.

He has been finding life much more pleasant since he changed his job.

Il trouve la vie beaucoup plus agréable depuis qu'il a changé de situation.

61d. The conjunction **since**, meaning *as, because*, is **puisque** or **comme**.

Since my back still hurts me, I shall not be able to go skiing yet.

Puisque (*or* Comme) j'ai encore mal au dos, je ne pourrai pas encore faire de ski.**62. SLEEP****62a.** To sleep, in the sense of being unconscious, is **dormir**.I sleep so soundly (*transl. deeply*) that even thunder doesn't wake me.

Je dors si profondément que même le tonnerre ne me réveille pas.

62b. To sleep, in the sense of passing the night, is **coucher**.

When it's really hot, I sleep downstairs.

Quand il fait vraiment chaud, je couche en bas.

62c. The noun **sleep** is **le sommeil**.

I got only three hours' sleep.

Je n'ai eu que trois heures de sommeil.

63. SO**63a.** **So**, meaning *to such an extent*, is **si** or **tellement**.

He looks so busy (that) I don't dare (to) disturb him.

Il a l'air si (*or* tellement) occupé que je n'ose pas le déranger.**63b.** For the translation of **so many**, see 38e.**63c.** For the translation of **so much**, see 48f.**63d.** **So**, meaning *also*, is rendered by (**et**) . . . **aussi**.

"I tan very quickly." "So do I."

Je brunis très vite. — (Et) moi aussi.

63e. **So**, meaning *hence, therefore*, is **alors**.

The water was very cold, so we didn't go in swimming.

L'eau était très froide, alors nous ne nous sommes pas baignés.

63f. The translation of **so**, used to represent a clause, is illustrated by the following examples.

"Did you lock the door?" "I think so
(= *that I locked the door*)."

"Is it worth while taking an umbrella?"
"I don't think so."

"They say the weather will be better
tomorrow." "Let's hope so."

As-tu fermé la porte à clef? — Je le
crois (*or Je le pense or Je crois que oui
or Je pense que oui*).

Est-ce que cela vaut la peine d'emporter
un parapluie? — Je ne le crois pas
(*or Je ne crois pas or Je crois que non
or Je ne le pense pas or Je ne pense pas
or Je pense que non*).

On dit qu'il fera meilleur demain.
— Espérons-le.

63g. So that, meaning *in order that*, is **pour que** or **afin que** or **de sorte que** or **de façon (à ce) que** (followed, in each case, by the subjunctive).

He had disguised himself so that no one
might recognize him.

Il s'était déguisé pour que (*or afin que
or de sorte que or de façon que or de
façon à ce que*) personne ne le recon-
naisse.

63h. So that, meaning *with the result that*, is **de sorte que** or **de façon que**
(followed, in each case, by the indicative).

He had disguised himself, so that no
one recognized him.

Il s'était déguisé, de sorte que (*or de
façon que*) personne ne l'a reconnu.

63i. The prepositional phrase **so as to** is **pour** or **afin de** or **de façon à**.

I did it on purpose, so as not to worry
you.

Je l'ai fait exprès, pour (*or afin de or de
façon à*) ne pas vous inquiéter.

64. SUCCEED

64a. To succeed, meaning *to be successful*, is **réussir** or **arriver**.

You must not become discouraged if
you don't succeed in doing it the first
time.

Il ne faut pas vous décourager si vous
ne réussissez pas (*or si vous n'arrivez
pas*) à le faire la première fois.

64b. To succeed, meaning *to follow after*, is **succéder** (*je succède*) (*à*).

Elizabeth II succeeded George VI.

Élisabeth II a succédé à George VI.

65. TAKE

65a. With the exceptions given below, **to take** is rendered by **prendre**.

Somebody took my wrist-watch while
I was asleep.

Quelqu'un a pris ma montre-bracelet
pendant que je dormais.

Take this armchair. It is very comfort-
able.

Prenez ce fauteuil. Il est très confor-
table.

Are you going to take the train when you go to New York? Allez-vous prendre le train quand vous irez à New York?

Did you take many pictures on your trip? Avez-vous pris beaucoup de photos pendant votre voyage?

65b. To take, referring to the amount of time required to do something, is expressed:

- (i) by **falloir**, with the impersonal subject **il**;
- (ii) by **prendre**, having as subject the pronoun **cela**, or a noun representing a thing;
- (iii) by **mettre**, with a personal subject.

It will take us a week to go to Mexico City. Il nous faudra huit jours pour aller à Mexico.

That (*or It*) won't take long. Ça ne prendra pas longtemps.

The crossing took nine days. La traversée a pris neuf jours.

I took about three hours to pack the trunks. J'ai mis environ trois heures à faire les malles.

65c. To take, meaning *to require*, and referring to something other than time, is rendered by **falloir**.

It took seven yards of material to make this dress. Il a fallu sept mètres de tissu pour faire cette robe.

65d. To take a trip (a walk, a stroll) is **faire un voyage (une promenade, un tour)**; and **to take a course (in . . .)** is **suivre un cours (de . . .)**.

We are going to take a trip to the east coast. Nous allons faire un voyage à la côte est.

What course are you taking at university? Quel cours suivez-vous à l'université?

65e. To take, meaning *to lead, to conduct*, is **conduire** or **mener** (*je mène*).

The guide took us to the centre of the city to show us the cathedral. Le guide nous a conduits (*or menés*) au centre de la ville pour nous montrer la cathédrale.

65f. To take, in the sense of taking a portable object somewhere, is **porter**; unless the meaning is *to transport*, in which case the French is **transporter**.

Will you take these forks to the dining-room? Veux-tu porter ces fourchettes à la salle à manger?

We'll need a truck to take all this furniture to the farm. Nous aurons besoin d'un camion pour transporter tous ces meubles à la ferme.

65g. To take, in the sense of taking a portable object (or animal) along with one, is **emporter**.

We'll have to take a lunch; we shan't be back until seven.	Il faudra emporter un goûter; nous ne serons pas de retour avant sept heures.
--	---

65h. To take, in the sense of taking a person (or a large animal, or a vehicle) somewhere, is **emmener** (*j'emmène*).

Her father is going to take her to Holland next summer.	Son père va l'emmener en Hollande l'été prochain.
---	---

66. TAKE AWAY

66a. To take away, meaning *to deprive of*, is **enlever** (*j'enlève*) or **ôter**.

The mother took the matches away from the children.	La mère a enlevé (or ôté) les allumettes aux enfants.
---	---

66b. To take away, meaning *to remove*, and referring to a portable object (or even a person or animal, if carried) is **emporter**; otherwise, it is **emmener** (*j'emmène*).

Waiter, take away this dish, please.	Garçon, emportez ce plat, s'il vous plaît.
--------------------------------------	--

Take the prisoners away!	Emmenez les prisonniers!
--------------------------	--------------------------

67. TAKE BACK

67a. To take back, meaning *to accept*, is **reprendre**.

The company refused to take him back.	La compagnie a refusé de le reprendre.
---------------------------------------	--

67b. To take back, in the sense of taking a portable object back somewhere, is **rapporter**; unless the meaning is *to transport back*, in which case the French is **re-transporter**.

Could you take these records back to the library?	Pourriez-vous rapporter ces disques à la bibliothèque?
---	--

67c. To take back, in the sense of taking a portable object (or animal) back along with one, is **reporter**.

Throw away the sandwiches that are left. It's not worth while taking them back home.	Jette les sandwich(e)s qui restent. Ce n'est pas la peine de les rapporter à la maison.
--	---

67d. To take back, in the sense of taking a person (or a large animal, or a vehicle) back somewhere, is **ramener** (*je ramène*).

I have to take these children (back) home; it is too late for them to go home alone.	Je dois ramener ces enfants chez eux; il est trop tard pour qu'ils rentrent seuls.
--	--

68. TAKE OFF

68a. To take off, meaning *to remove*, is **enlever** (*j'enlève*) or **ôter**.

He took off his coat and threw it on a chair. Il a enlevé (or ôté) son veston et l'a jeté sur une chaise.

68b. To take off, referring to an airplane, is **décoller**.

A plane takes off against the wind. Un avion décolle contre le vent.

69. TAKE OUT

69a. To take out, meaning *to remove*, is **sortir**.

Take your hands out of your pockets, and stand up straight. Sortez les mains de vos poches, et tenez-vous droit.

69b. To take out, referring to an invitation, is **sortir** if the destination is not specified, and **emmener** (*j'emmène*) if the destination is specified.

I have known her for some time, but I have never taken her out. Je la connais depuis quelque temps, mais je ne l'ai jamais sortie.

Peter took me out to dinner last night. Pierre m'a emmenée dîner hier soir.

70. TELL

70a. Except as stated below, to tell is **dire**.

He always tells the truth. Il dit toujours la vérité.

She tells me she is very good in mathematics. Elle me dit qu'elle est très forte en mathématiques.

Tell him to park here. Dites-lui de stationner ici.

70b. To tell, having as its object *story* (or some equivalent), is rendered by **raconter**.

He told me that story yesterday. Il m'a raconté cette histoire hier.

70c. To tell about is expressed by **parler de**.

Tell me about the exhibition. Parlez-moi de l'exposition.

71. THINK

71a. To think, meaning *to reflect*, *to ponder*, is **réfléchir**.

He often talks without thinking. Il parle souvent sans réfléchir.

I'd like to think it over. Je voudrais y réfléchir.

71b. To think of is **penser à** referring to what is occupying one's thoughts, and **penser de** in the sense of having an opinion.

I was thinking of what you told me yesterday. Je pensais à ce que vous m'avez dit hier.

What do you think of my plans? Que pensez-vous de mes projets?

71c. Except as stated in 71d, **to think** (*that*) . . . is expressed by **croire** or **penser** (the latter suggesting somewhat deeper thought than the former).

I think (that) he must have lost my address. Je pense qu'il a dû perdre mon adresse.

I think (that) there is going to be a storm. Je crois qu'il va y avoir un orage.

71d. **To think** (*that*) . . ., used to express judgment, criticism, or advice, is rendered by **trouver**.

You think (that) they should do away with streetcars? Vous trouvez qu'on devrait supprimer les tram(way)s?

I think (that) she's very pretty. What about you? Moi, je la trouve très jolie. Et vous?

72. TILL

72a. Except as explained below, the preposition **till** is **jusqu'à**; and the conjunction **till** is **jusqu'à ce que** (followed by the subjunctive).

We were able to go in swimming till the beginning of October. Nous avons pu nous baigner jusqu'au début d'octobre.

I shall talk till I convince them. Je parlerai jusqu'à ce que je les convainque.

72b. Following the verb *to wait*, the preposition **till** is translated by **jusqu'à**; but the conjunction **till** is translated merely by **que** (followed by the subjunctive). (Note that sometimes the clause can be replaced by a noun or an infinitive.)

Wait till tomorrow to make up your mind. Attendez jusqu'à demain pour vous décider.

Wait till I finish painting my house, and I'll lend you my ladder. Attendez que j'aie fini de peindre ma maison, et je vous prêterai mon échelle.

Wait till John arrives. Attendez l'arrivée de Jean.

Wait till John leaves. Attendez le départ de Jean.

Wait till you have a little more experience. Attendez d'avoir un peu plus d'expérience.

72c. The conjunction **till**, in a clause expressing a fact rather than a possibility, is rendered by **jusqu'au moment où** or **jusqu'au jour où** (according to the sense). In this case the indicative is used.

We were good friends till he had an accident with my car. Nous avons été de bons amis jusqu'au jour où il a eu un accident avec ma voiture.

72d. When **not . . . till** is the equivalent of *not . . . before*, it can be expressed in French in two different ways:

- (i) **ne . . . pas (. . .) avant** (for the preposition) and **ne . . . pas (. . .) avant que** (for the conjunction);
- (ii) **ne . . . que.** (This form seems commoner for the preposition than for the conjunction.)

My suit will not be ready till Saturday. Mon complet ne sera pas prêt avant samedi (*or* ne sera prêt que samedi).

We shall not start till éveryone is here (*transl. there*). Nous ne commencerons pas avant que tout le monde soit là (*or* Nous ne commencerons que quand tout le monde sera là).

72e. Except as explained in 72d, **not . . . till** is rendered by **ne . . . pas (. . .) jusqu'à** (for the preposition) and **ne . . . pas (. . .) jusqu'à ce que** (for the conjunction).

But you don't intend to work till ten o'clock without eating! Mais tu ne penses pas travailler jusqu'à dix heures sans manger!

Don't tease the dog till it bites you. Ne taquine pas le chien jusqu'à ce qu'il te morde.

73. TIME

73a. Except as stated below, **time** is rendered by **le temps**.

It was a waste of time. C'était une perte de temps.
I didn't have time to clean the bath-tub. Je n'ai pas eu le temps de nettoyer la baignoire.

It's time to replace this old refrigerator. Il est temps de remplacer ce vieux réfrigérateur.

It's time for you to start (*or* It's time you started) earning your living. Il est temps que vous commenciez (*subjunctive*) à gagner votre vie.

Both your letters arrived at the same time. Vos deux lettres sont arrivées en même temps.

We hear from them from time to time. Nous avons de leurs nouvelles de temps en temps.

We arrived just in time to save them. Nous sommes arrivés juste à temps pour les sauver.

73b. **Time**, in the sense of time by the clock, is **l'heure**.

What time is it? Quelle heure est-il?

Have you the (right) time?

Don't go too far away. It will soon be dinner time.

This train always arrives on time.

Avez-vous l'heure (exacte)?

Ne t'en va pas trop loin. Ce sera bientôt l'heure du dîner.

Ce train arrive toujours à l'heure.

73c. Time, when it means *occasion* or when it indicates repetition, is **la fois**.

I've told you a hundred times not to leave the taps running.

These chairs are quite light; you will be able to carry them two at a time.

"How much is seven times eleven?"
"Seventy-seven."

He has been of service to me many times.

Sometimes (At times) he is very unpleasant.

Je t'ai dit cent fois de ne pas laisser couler les robinets.

Ces chaises sont assez légères; vous pourrez les porter deux à la fois.

Combien font sept fois onze?
— Soixante-dix-sept.

Il m'a rendu service bien des fois.

Quelquefois (*or* Parfois) il est très désagréable.

73d. In certain idiomatic expressions, time is rendered by **le moment**.

There are times when I feel discouraged.

This little apartment is enough for us for the time being.

According to a businessman I know, this is no time to buy a house.

I was in Lyons at the time (*or* at that time).

Il y a des moments où je me sens découragé.

Ce petit appartement nous suffit pour le moment.

Selon un homme d'affaires que je connais, ce n'est pas le moment d'acheter une maison.

J'étais à Lyon à ce moment-là.

73e. The translation of to have a good time is illustrated by the following examples.

Did you have a good time?

"Didn't you have a good time?"
"No, not very."

Est-ce que vous vous êtes bien amusé?

Est-ce que vous ne vous êtes pas amusé?
— Non, pas beaucoup.

74. UNTIL (See TILL, Section 72.)

75. USE, USED

75a. To use is generally **employer** (*j'emploie*) or **se servir** (*de*). (Note, however, the construction in the third example.)

What do you use to clean the sink and the bath-tub?

Qu'est-ce que vous employez pour nettoyer l'évier et la baignoire?

I think I'll sell my bicycle; I don't use it any more. Je crois que je vendrai ma bicyclette; je ne m'en sers plus.

When I travel, I use my raincoat as a dressing-gown. Quand je voyage, mon imperméable me sert de robe de chambre.

75b. To use, meaning *to put to use*, is **utiliser.**

I'm going to use the material that is left (over) to make a skirt for little Jane. Je vais utiliser le tissu qui reste pour faire une jupe pour la petite Jeanne.

75c. To use (*gas, oil*), referring to a car, is **consommer.**

My car is beginning to use oil. Ma voiture commence à consommer de l'huile.

75d. To be (used) for is **servir à.**

Do you know what all those gadgets are (used) for? Savez-vous à quoi servent tous ces trucs-là?

A hammer is used for driving nails. Un marteau sert à enfoncer les clous.

75e. Used to, meaning *accustomed to*, is **habitué(e)(s) à.**

The noise of the traffic doesn't disturb me; I'm used to it. Le bruit de la circulation ne me dérange pas; j'y suis habitué.

75f. Used (*to do, to be, etc.*), indicating a habitual action or state in the past, is expressed by the imperfect indicative of the appropriate verb.

I used to sleep better when I was younger. Je dormais mieux quand j'étais plus jeune.

75g. Sometimes the imperfect indicative alone is not adequate to express **used (*to do, to be, etc.*), and the adverb **autrefois** must be added. There is no exact rule to indicate when this is necessary.**

I used to hate (*transl. Formerly I hated*) olives, but now I love them. Autrefois je détestais les olives, mais maintenant je les adore.

76. WALK

76a. To walk is **marcher, unless there is an expressed or implied contrast with some other form of locomotion, in which case it is **aller** (*venir, etc.*) **à pied**.**

At what age does a child learn to walk? À quel âge un enfant apprend-il à marcher?

Don't walk so fast! Ne marchez pas si vite!

"Do you walk to school?" "No, but I often walk home." Allez-vous à l'école à pied? — Non, mais je rentre souvent à pied.

77. WARM (See **HOT**, Section 26.)

78. WAY

78a. Way, indicating means, is rendered by **le moyen**.

For me, the only way to learn words is to write them.	Pour moi, le seul moyen d'apprendre des mots, c'est de les écrire.
---	--

78b. Way, indicating manner, is rendered by **la façon**. (In familiar style, **That's the way . . .** is rendered by **C'est comme ça . . .**)

I don't like the way he drives.	Je n'aime pas la façon dont il conduit.
That's not the way to hold (or the way you hold) a paddle.	Ce n'est pas comme ça qu'on tient une pagaie.

78c. The following examples show renderings of **way** meaning *route*.

It took me a quarter of an hour to find the way to the station.	J'ai mis un quart d'heure à trouver le chemin de la gare.
They are very late. They must have lost their way.	Ils sont très en retard. Ils ont dû s'égarer (or se perdre).

78d. The following examples show renderings of **way** meaning *direction*.

Which way did he go?	De quel côté est-il allé?
"Where is the post office?" "That way."	Où est le bureau de poste? — Par là.
"This way", the guide said to us.	«Par ici», nous a dit le guide.

78e. The following examples are miscellaneous.

Is this chair in your way?	Est-ce que cette chaise vous gêne?
What is there in the way of amusements?	Qu'est-ce qu'il y a comme distractions?
We aren't hungry; we had lunch on the way.	Nous n'avons pas faim; nous avons déjeuné en route.
By the way, how tall are you?	À propos, combien mesurez-vous?
Warsaw is half-way between Paris and Moscow.	Varsovie est à mi-chemin entre Paris et Moscou.

79. WILL

79a. Will is usually the sign of the future tense.

He wrote that he will not (or won't) arrive until Thursday.	Il a écrit qu'il n'arrivera pas avant jeudi.
---	--

79b. Will, indicating willingness, is expressed by the verb **vouloir**.

I'd like to buy his house, but he won't sell it.	J'aimerais acheter sa maison, mais il ne veut pas la vendre.
--	--

80. WOULD, WOULD HAVE

80a. **Would** is usually the sign of the present conditional.

That wouldn't be worth while.

Ça ne vaudrait pas la peine.

80b. **Would**, indicating willingness, is rendered by **vouloir** (in the imperfect, present perfect or present conditional, according to the sense).

The cat wouldn't eat when the dog was there.

Le chat ne voulait pas manger quand le chien était là.

We asked him to stay to dinner, but he wouldn't.

Nous lui avons demandé de rester (à) dîner, mais il n'a pas voulu.

Would you pass me the salt, please?

Voudriez-vous me passer le sel, s'il vous plaît?

80c. When **would** means *used to, was accustomed to, were accustomed to*, the corresponding French has the imperfect of the appropriate verb.

When he was on holiday, he would often go for a walk before breakfast.

Quand il était en vacances, il faisait souvent une promenade (or un tour) avant le petit déjeuner.

80d. **Would have**, as a complete verb in itself, is expressed by the present conditional of **avoir**.

He wanted to know if you would have time to go there this afternoon.

Il voulait savoir si vous auriez le temps d'y aller cet après-midi.

80e. **Would have** (*done, etc.*) is expressed by the past conditional of the appropriate verb.

She would have been disappointed if he had forgotten her birthday.

Elle aurait été déçue s'il avait oublié sa fête.

81. WRONG

81a. **To be wrong**, referring to a person, and meaning *to be in the wrong, to be ill-advised*, is **avoir tort**; meaning *to be mistaken*, it is **se tromper**.

You were wrong to contradict him.

Vous avez eu tort de le contredire.

You are wrong. He said Thursday, not Wednesday.

Vous vous trompez. Il a dit jeudi, pas mercredi.

81b. **To be wrong**, referring to illness or improper functioning, is rendered by the use of **avoir**, as illustrated by the following examples.

There must be something wrong with me; I don't feel well.

Je dois avoir quelque chose; je ne me sens pas bien.

What's wrong with him?

Qu'est-ce qu'il a?

What's wrong (*i.e., What's the matter*)?

Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?

There's something wrong with my knee.	J'ai quelque chose au genou.
The doctor says there is absolutely nothing wrong with my heart.	Le docteur dit que je n'ai absolument rien au cœur.

81c. The following examples are miscellaneous.

Your answer is wrong.	Votre réponse n'est pas correcte.
He gave the wrong answer.	Il a mal répondu.
This name is spelt wrong.	Ce nom est mal écrit.
The baby was holding the spoon by the wrong end.	Le bébé tenait la cuiller par le mauvais bout.
I took the wrong bus.	Je me suis trompé d'autobus.
He came (on) the wrong day.	Il s'est trompé de jour.

82. YEAR

82a. In counting, **year** is rendered by the masculine form **l'an**, unless it is also modified by a descriptive adjective.

I have been living in this same house for forty-one years.	J'habite cette même maison depuis quarante et un ans.
"How old is your dog?" "He's two and a half (years old)."	Quel âge votre chien a-t-il? — Il a deux ans et demi.
They were the finest three years of my life.	C'étaient les trois plus belles années de ma vie.

82b. **Year** is rendered by the masculine form **l'an** in certain idiomatic expressions.

Do we have a holiday on the Monday when New Year's Day falls on a Sunday?	Est-ce qu'on a congé le lundi quand le jour de l'an tombe un dimanche?
He earns five thousand dollars a year.	Il gagne cinq mille dollars par an.

82c. In *last year*, *next year*, the word **year** is rendered by either **l'an** or **l'année**, but the feminine is commoner in simple speech. For **every year** there seems to be no difference in the three expressions **tous les ans**, **toutes les années**, **chaque année**.

I didn't take any holidays last year.	Je n'ai pas pris de vacances l'année dernière (<i>or l'an dernier</i>).
We are going to Europe next year.	Nous allons en Europe l'année prochaine (<i>or l'an prochain</i>).
They used to move every year.	Ils déménageaient tous les ans (<i>or toutes les années or chaque année</i>).

82d. In other cases, **year** is rendered by the feminine form **l'année**.

The year did not always start on the first of January.	L'année n'a pas toujours commencé le premier janvier.
--	---

We shall have a good crop of cherries this year.	Nous aurons une bonne récolte de cerises cette année.
--	---

He had known several years (many years) of poverty.	Il avait connu plusieurs années (bien des années) de misère.
---	--

Happy New Year!	Bonne (et heureuse) année!
-----------------	----------------------------

83. YET

83a. **Yet**, referring to time, and used in an affirmative question, is **déjà**.

Have you made plans for this summer yet?	Avez-vous déjà fait des projets pour cet été?
--	---

83b. Otherwise, **yet**, referring to time, is **encore**.

He has a lot to learn yet.	Il a encore beaucoup à apprendre.
Haven't you had lunch yet?	N'avez-vous pas encore déjeuné?

83c. **Yet**, meaning *however*, is **cependant** or **pourtant**.

I know the language well, and yet I find this book hard to read.	Je connais bien la langue, et pourtant (or cependant) je trouve ce livre difficile à lire.
--	--

84. (to borrow, etc.) FROM

84a. Although the preposition **from** is generally rendered by **de**, there are certain expressions in which **from**, followed by a noun or pronoun representing a person, must be rendered by **à**. The commonest of these are:

to borrow	} sth. from s.o.	emprunter	} qch. à qn
to buy		acheter	
to hide		cacher	
to snatch		arracher	
to steal		voler	
to take		prendre	
to take sth. away from s.o.		enlever (or ôter) qch. à qn	

(In these cases, the preposition **à** is a relic of the Latin preposition *a*, ab.)

From whom did you borrow these records?	À qui as-tu emprunté ces disques?
---	-----------------------------------

We must hide the presents from the children.	Il faut cacher les cadeaux aux enfants.
--	---

Take that knife away from him.	Enlevez-lui (or Ôtez-lui) ce couteau.
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------

84b. In a case like the following, the rule in 84a does not apply, because the reference is not to a person but merely to a part of the body.

Seeing that he was going to open my letter, I snatched it from his hand.	Voyant qu'il allait ouvrir ma lettre, je la lui ai arrachée de la main.
--	---

(The lui in this sentence is merely the indirect object used with a part of the body, and has no connection with the rule in 84a.)

84c. The expression **acheter quelque chose à quelqu'un** deserves special comment, as it can mean both **to buy something from someone** and **to buy something for someone**. This does not cause the confusion one might expect, since the meaning is usually made clear by the context.

I bought these pins and needles from a poor old man who was going from door to door.	J'ai acheté ces épingles et ces aiguilles à un pauvre vieillard qui allait de porte en porte.
--	---

I shall soon have to buy new shoes for the children.	Je devrai bientôt acheter de nouvelles chaussures aux enfants.
--	--

84d. The preposition **for** in the expression **to buy something for someone** may, in many cases, be rendered by **pour**. The only case where **pour** cannot be used is in translating unemphatic *for me, for you, for him, for her, for us, for them*.

I shall soon have to buy new shoes for the children.	Je devrai bientôt acheter de nouvelles chaussures pour les enfants.
--	---

What did you buy (for) me?	Qu'est-ce que tu m'as acheté?
----------------------------	-------------------------------

What did you buy (for) me?	Qu'est-ce que tu m'as acheté à moi? or Qu'est-ce que tu as acheté pour moi?
----------------------------	--

85. OUT OF, etc.

85a. There are certain cases in English where the movement of a thing from a place is expressed by a preposition; whereas, in the corresponding French, the preposition does not express movement, but merely indicates where the thing was before it was moved. (Sometimes the movement is figurative rather than literal.)

One drinks tea out of a cup, and wine out of a glass.	On boit le thé dans une tasse, et le vin dans un verre.
---	---

Did you write that yourself, or did you copy it out of a book?	Avez-vous écrit cela vous-même, ou l'avez-vous copié dans un livre?
--	---

The pigeons come and eat out of your hand.	Les pigeons viennent vous manger dans la main.
--	--

Here is an interesting article I cut out of yesterday's (news)paper.	Voici un article intéressant que j'ai découpé dans le journal d'hier.
--	---

He took (He stole) the key from the drawer of my desk.	Il a pris (Il a volé) la clef dans le tiroir de mon bureau.
--	---

85b. In the case of the expression **to take something off something**, there are two French constructions, according to the meaning.

- (i) If the phrase **off . . .** merely adds a detail, and the rest of the sentence forms a complete thought without it, the French is **prendre quelque chose sur quelque chose**.
- (ii) If the phrase **off . . .** is necessary to make the thought complete, the French is **enlever (or ôter) quelque chose de quelque chose**.

The dog took the roast (off the table). Le chien a pris le rôti (sur la table).

Take your elbows off the table. Enlève (or Ôte) tes coudes de la table.

85c. Similarly, the expression **to take something out of something** is rendered by:

- (i) **prendre quelque chose dans quelque chose**;
- (ii) **sortir (or ôter) quelque chose de quelque chose**.

He took some money (out of my wallet). Il a pris de l'argent (dans mon portefeuille).

Take your hands out of your pockets. Sortez (or Ôtez) les mains de vos poches.

Supplementary Translation Exercises

LESSONS 1-6

A. 1. There are ants in the sugar! 2. Jacques Cartier, a Saint-Malo pilot, discovered Canada in 1534. 3. She tried her matriculation last year, didn't she? 4. One cannot get along without friends. 5. Most of our pupils come to school on foot, but there are several who come by bicycle or streetcar. 6. I always take tea with my meals. 7. It takes great courage not to be afraid of death. 8. We need note-paper and a bottle of ink. 9. My grandfather has a lot of mahogany furniture and some lovely Persian rugs. 10. There are fewer trucks on our street now.

B. 1. Most children like candy. 2. There's a black velvet dress in the window at Martin's. I'd like you to look at it. 3. "This butter tastes bad." "What! I paid seventy-nine cents a pound for it!" 4. Why are some of these words in italics? 5. During my stay in Quebec, I intend to take a room not far from the university. 6. He has a truck, but he hasn't a car. 7. Will you help me a little? There are so many dishes to wash. 8. That poor old doll has neither hands nor feet. 9. Edward doesn't look well. He shouldn't be at school. 10. May I have some more potatoes and carrots? I'm as hungry as a wolf.

C. 1. Madagascar, a large island near Africa, was discovered by the Portuguese in 1506. 2. Everything will be in blossom when we are on our holidays. 3. I have looked up (*looked for*) that word many times, but I always forget it. 4. I couldn't get along without my neighbour's lawn-mower. 5. Are you going to take the trip by boat or by plane? 6. Here's my grandmother's address. I gave you my aunt's by mistake. 7. "What did you get for Christmas?" "A wrist-watch and a dress." 8. Will you have room for such a big armchair? 9. Do you mind if Aunt Mary spends two or three days at our house? Uncle Edward is on a business trip. 10. He expresses himself wonderfully well. How old is he?

D. 1. "Is there a jewelry store near here?" "Yes, there's a good one on George Street." 2. If he wants money, I'll give him some with pleasure. 3. We have enough milk, but we need cream and butter. 4. We've sold all our ducks, but we still have some geese to sell. 5. That poor old man looks ill. 6. I'm afraid the baby will hurt himself if you give him that. 7. Most of the inhabitants of Portugal are Catholics. 8. We'll need sixteen five-cent stamps. 9. How long would it take to make a dozen jars of jam? 10. I feel like making a cake. Have we lots of eggs and butter?

LESSONS 7-12

A. 1. If you'll lend me this record, I'll give it back on Thursday. 2. Your grandmother told you not to eat all that taffy, and you disobeyed her. 3. All that France has left in North America is some little islands south of Newfoundland. 4. What! You're afraid of snakes? They don't frighten *me*. 5. "I've just torn my shirt." "Give it to me, and I'll mend it for you." 6. Which of the twins is left-handed? 7. What gets on my nerves in a big city is the heavy traffic. 8. It is pleasant to see one's friends in the evening. 9. It's odd. The simple toys are the ones the baby seems to prefer. 10. These envelopes are too small. Have you any others?

B. 1. It's tiring to plough all day. 2. All she wants for Christmas is a doll with blue eyes and fair hair. 3. Corsica and Sardinia are important islands; the former is French, the latter is Italian. 4. Roller skates are skates which have little wheels instead of blades. 5. Will you lend me your axe? I'll take good care of it. 6. "Have you any weeds in your garden?" "Yes, it's full of them." 7. "Who spilled ink on the rug?" "I didn't." 8. Tell me what the mistakes are in this sentence. 9. "What's making that noise?" "It's the refrigerator." 10. All she wants is a tomato sandwich and a cup of tea.

C. 1. The water heater you installed for us yesterday isn't working. 2. I'm going to serve pineapple ice cream tonight, which will please the children. 3. Where's my overcoat? I can't find it. 4. I beg your pardon. Did I hurt you? 5. My father doesn't need the car tonight. I'll ask him for it. 6. "I like that belt you made." "Would you like me to make you one?" 7. "Which are the important languages of Switzerland?" "They are French, German and Italian." 8. I'm afraid I've put too much pepper in the soup. What do you think (*think of it*)? 9. If you are short of cream, I'll go and get some. 10. Uncle Maurice allowed the children to feed the horse, which pleased them.

D. 1. The axe you left outside yesterday is rusty now. 2. Maine is a large state, in which there are thousands of rivers and lakes. 3. "Have you any room for these books at your house?" "We could put them in the dining-room." 4. "I was going to wash the dishes, but I can't find any soap." "Did you look in that drawer? I think there's some there." 5. George is talkative but Peter isn't. 6. "What street is this?" "It's Vavin Street." 7. It's unpleasant being sick. 8. "Where did you put the tomatoes and lettuce I brought home?" "In the refrigerator." 9. Give me those shirts so that I can wash them. 10. Don't mention it to Isabel. She can't be trusted.

E. 1. What is heat? 2. "Are the twins very fond of sports?" "Yes, they are." 3. The news of her husband's death upset her. She wasn't expecting it. 4. Take this armchair. It's more comfortable than that one. 5. These turkeys and geese are all of good quality. 6. Irene wants you to come and see the cupboards I've made for her in the kitchen. 7. I was looking for a leg of lamb at the butcher's, but there were none left. 8. "You're an American, aren't you, Jean?" "No, I'm not. Who told you that?" 9. Whose motorcycle is that in front of the house? 10. It's in Maine that they eat so much lobster.

F. 1. I'd like to know which one of these dictionaries you recommend. 2. It's at Christmas that we have two weeks' holiday. 3. I was asking *you* the question, Christopher. 4. The cars between which he had parked were both yellow convertibles. 5. "Do you know the name of the large city which is situated half-way between Boston and Washington?" "New York." 6. Do you know how the Duponts got that vacuum-cleaner wholesale? 7. Mary has just telephoned to invite you and Madeline to spend the evening at her house. 8. "What have you in that bag?" "Fruit." 9. Go and get me another plank. This one isn't strong enough for a diving board. 10. "Do you know how the novel ends?" "The hero commits suicide."

G. 1. The castles I was talking about a few minutes ago are near Tours. 2. If you'll wash the dishes, I'll dry (*wipe*) them. 3. I'll be thinking of you when you're trying your music examination this afternoon. 4. Who is it who is waving to us? 5. I wonder what she is thinking about. 6. Here is something I found in the garden. Do you know what it is? 7. We'll have to pick some more flowers. The ones I picked the day before yesterday are withered. 8. What he likes best in the morning is a good cup of coffee. 9. Where is the store you work in every Saturday? 10. Let's give them all that china. We don't need it.

H. 1. How high is the leaning tower of Pisa? 2. Have you met Charles Smith yet? He's my wife's brother. 3. I don't understand what's going on. 4. My father got this chesterfield and these armchairs for us wholesale. 5. "You and your wife are fond of sports, aren't you?" "No, we aren't." 6. "Whom does he look like?" "His grandmother." 7. All I am asking you to do is to prepare the vegetables. 8. The maple sugar I like comes from Quebec. 9. What is the plural of this word? 10. We haven't a rug for the living-room yet, but we're going to buy one in the spring.

I. 1. What frightened them? 2. "Is he a bachelor?" "No, he has been married for two years." 3. The cod is a big fish which is found between Iceland and Newfoundland. 4. Guess what I found on the street—a pen-knife. 5. What I am afraid of is running into debt. 6. The French cities I like best are Paris and Bordeaux. 7. Which of the children looks like you? 8. What attracts tourists is the fishing. 9. Do you know what sort of novel he prefers? 10. "Which is the largest of the New England states?" "Maine."

J. 1. What is the name of that architect you recommended to me? 2. It was a puncture (*punctured tire*) that made us late. 3. Do you know the name of the little country which is between Belgium and Germany? 4. What made that noise? Did something fall? 5. Whom did you invite to the picnic? 6. "What is your son's profession?" "He is an engineer." 7. From what cities can you leave to go from France to England? 8. "Do you know what mercury is?" "It is a liquid metal." 9. These oranges and lemons come from California. 10. Plums are delicious this year, but there aren't many of them.

LESSONS 13-18

A. 1. If you want to reduce, you have to do without pastry and cakes. 2. Little boys like white mice. 3. Children are usually fonder of sweets than grown-ups

are. 4. I wonder what the parade was like. 5. Does Mary know there's a letter for her? 6. One is always needing something. 7. She can't hear you. She's as deaf as a post. 8. Have you as many violets as you used to have (*as formerly*)? 9. She bought herself a grey squirrel coat this winter. 10. The car is being repaired. It won't be ready until next Monday.

B. 1. Don't be afraid of the dog. He never bites. 2. Is it clear now? 3. The climate of Mexico City isn't as hot as you'd think. 4. "Is there enough gas for this evening?" "No, the tank is almost empty." 5. If one borrows books, one shouldn't forget to give them back. 6. Does that hurt? 7. I'm sure you'll recognize this song. It's as old as the hills. 8. When I turned around, I caught sight of a huge black bear. 9. We were requested not to smoke on the bus. 10. Did you like the main feature?

C. 1. Why is this sand so red? 2. Dennis is lazy. He works as little as possible. 3. Are there as many French-speaking people in Toronto as in Winnipeg? 4. This is the narrowest street in Boston. 5. The moon isn't as big as the earth, is it? 6. Anne has made herself a very pretty green velvet dress. 7. Every time I go to the market, I buy celery. My family never tires of it. 8. "How is pineapple prepared?" "With sugar and very little water." 9. Come back and see us as soon as possible. 10. If people talk only about themselves, others don't like associating with them.

D. 1. Why did you get angry? 2. "Has little George been good?" "Yes, as good as gold." 3. Most of my cups are china, but a few are earthenware. 4. "What fur is that?" "It's blue mink." 5. One must never take oneself too seriously. 6. What are you looking at? 7. Monica can't write. She has sprained her wrist. 8. Do you have to like rice in order to like Chinese food? 9. I'd be interested to know why you've never gone to see her. 10. In what store did you buy that vacuum-cleaner?

E. 1. "What became of your sister-in-law?" "She is married and has two children." 2. Her right arm is a little longer than her left arm. 3. Leonardo da Vinci was a famous Italian artist. 4. Whom is Fred going to bring to dinner tonight? 5. Margaret is not as talkative as Jean. 6. Where did you put the table-napkins I ironed? I can't find (*don't find*) them anywhere. 7. Which suit did you decide on, the brown one or the grey one? 8. This is the noisiest street in the city. 9. Poor Philip hurt his left arm when he fell. 10. "Whom are you looking for?" "The head of the shoe department."

F. 1. What do you take in your tea—lemon or milk? 2. Her father made her a huge snow-man. 3. Is cotton much heavier than silk? 4. John Cabot was the famous navigator who discovered Newfoundland in 1497. 5. Doesn't travelling make you tired? 6. They've left all the dirty cups in the sink. 7. Is French literature as interesting as ours? 8. I have only three or four handkerchiefs left to iron. 9. How is it that you haven't finished your algebra and geometry? 10. This washing-machine is the best you can buy.

G. 1. Do you see that little fair-haired boy? He's my grandson. 2. Paris is one of the most exciting cities in the world. 3. There isn't any rice left. Would you like something else? 4. Come back after the last class and we'll talk about it

at greater length. 5. How many of the peaches have gone bad? 6. Mink is one of the most expensive furs you can buy. 7. "Who recognizes his own faults?" "Hardly anybody." 8. Maybe I'll study law. 9. Who put the tea-towels in this drawer? 10. "Which is the longest river in France?" "The Loire."

H. 1. Which tie goes best with this pull-over? 2. They say that traffic is twice as heavy as it was ten years ago. 3. What's the difference between measles and German measles? 4. These figs are not as good as the ones that come from Turkey. 5. Is there any brown sugar? I want to make some taffy. 6. I've planted more onions than carrots. 7. Whom is Aunt Susan going to invite for the weekend? 8. It was nobody's fault. 9. "Is Monica better this morning?" "Yes, she looks better, and she no longer refuses to eat." 10. Mount Everest is the highest peak in the world.

LESSONS 19-24

A. 1. "Fish can swim." "Really?" 2. I've been using the same recipe for ten years. 3. "She says she catches cold every time she washes her hair (*head*)."

"But that's incredible!" 4. I hope you like the wrist-watch Uncle Roger gave you for Christmas. I chose it. 5. "Were you out during the shower?" "Yes, and I had no raincoat." 6. If it hadn't been for this swimming pool, we'd never have learned to swim. 7. I'm sorry I can't recommend him to you. I've known him for five years, and I've found he isn't too honest. 8. "Why don't you play with Isabel?" "She always makes fun of me." 9. How many of these pills have you taken? 10. When he had shaved, he went out.

B. 1. "Which of these cups and saucers did you borrow from Louise?" "The ones I put on the sideboard." 2. If there's a storm, we'll have to bring in the chairs. 3. We need a new chesterfield. We've had this one for more than fifteen years. 4. When the children were in swimming, they got out of their depth and nearly drowned. 5. What! He has squandered all the money his grandfather left him? 6. Was it cold yesterday? 7. As soon as the guests had gone, we washed and put away the dishes. 8. Who was elected president? 9. If you have finished correcting the exercise, you may leave. 10. "Are you looking forward to the arrival of spring?" "Yes, I get tired of winter by (*before*) the end of February."

C. 1. She would play the piano if you asked her to. 2. I must hang up now. I'll phone you after lunch. 3. We have been getting more and more interested in gardening since we bought the house. 4. Our street is always muddy after a heavy rain. 5. The girl Claude married is a good friend of mine. 6. I've been having the same dream every night for three weeks. 7. How about making me a new blouse, mother? 8. Why are you buying yourself another skirt? Your cupboard is full of them. 9. I met a cousin of Mrs. Fortier's when I was studying music in Germany. 10. "What changes have been made in the school?" "We have a swimming pool now, and a second gymnasium."

D. 1. If only we hadn't given away that armchair! 2. I hope you won't change your mind. 3. To play the piano well, you have to practise every day. 4. I

was furious when George took my bicycle. 5. The three cars he has had have all been of different makes. 6. "They don't get along too well, do they?" "No, they quarrel all the time." 7. She always used to complain about everything. 8. "You haven't been looking well since lunch." "I shouldn't have eaten all that cucumber." 9. The watch I bought isn't running well. 10. We had to stop on the way. Dumont Boulevard was closed because of a fire.

E. 1. I'd be scared stiff if I had to stay here alone at night. 2. She sprained her wrist when she fell. 3. There haven't been any Indians in this part of the province for years. 4. You feel depressed? Here's ten dollars. Go and buy yourself those records you've been wanting for so long. 5. "Where's your motorcycle?" "I left it at home because of the slippery streets. I came to school by streetcar." 6. When I was looking for my grey pull-over in the drawer, I found the gloves you had lost. 7. If they haven't left any address, how will Anne be able to write to them? 8. I can recommend to you a good little hotel in Edinburgh. It was Catherine who told me about it. 9. It's so annoying! On Sunday, when I don't want to get up, I wake at six o'clock. 10. Did anybody take a little blue box I had hidden in this cupboard?

F. 1. How long have you had a foam-rubber mattress? 2. How would you have acted if such a thing had happened to you? 3. She had run across an old friend and had brought her back for lunch. 4. She has got a lot thinner since her illness. 5. If you give the baby five drops of this medicine every three hours, he'll be better by (*before*) tomorrow morning. 6. After he had hung up his coat, he warmed himself by the fire. 7. "Did Uncle Stephen answer the letter you wrote him?" "Not yet." 8. He had known her for only two months when he asked her to marry him. 9. Why do you persist in frowning? You are much prettier when you smile. 10. The cucumber I ate has given me indigestion.

G. 1. "I haven't gone to the theatre since we've been in New York." "That's hard to believe." 2. You'll have a good time in Texas if you don't suffer from the heat. 3. Teresa had telephoned them before going to see them. 4. He plays the piano wonderfully well. He has been winning scholarships and prizes since the age of ten. 5. Would you like to come tonight if I went and got you? 6. How long have you been doing without sugar? 7. They're expecting a storm this morning. Don't forget to take your raincoat. 8. What are you complaining about? Haven't you a family and friends? 9. Do you remember Dr. Paul, who used to be our neighbour? He is in Brazil now. 10. What are we going to do with all the pumpkins we've grown?

H. 1. I spent ages doing my geometry last night. 2. Have you been feeling better since you took that treatment? 3. We're going to buy ourselves a new washing-machine. The old one doesn't work very well any more. 4. What nasty weather it was yesterday! 5. The baby goes to sleep at eight and doesn't wake up until six the next morning. 6. I don't know the song very well. I've heard it sung only two or three times. 7. You must be looking forward to seeing your grandson for the first time. 8. She made herself sick by dint of worrying. 9. "The snowball he threw cost him two dollars." "Did he break a window (*window pane*)?" 10. Where are the pills the druggist sent?

LESSONS 25-29

A. 1. My daughter's husband is in Holland on a business trip, and she plans to join him in the Hague at the end of the month. 2. I know this garage is well built for I built it myself. 3. She sings wonderfully well. Have you ever heard her sing on the radio? 4. Who hasn't handed in his (answer) paper? There's one missing. 5. I advise you to buy yourself a good dictionary. 6. The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell. 7. Everything is ready. Now we have only to wait for the guests. 8. "What do you think of Monica?" "I think she's pretty, but she might use less make-up." 9. Marion has been spoiled by her grandmother. 10. It hurts your eyes to look at television too much, they say.

B. 1. What Albert dislikes above all is going with his wife when she does her shopping. 2. He must have sold all his shares before the newspaper went bankrupt. 3. He'd do well not to try to escape. 4. "Do you like playing golf?" "Not too much. I prefer fishing." 5. Could you tell me the date of the election? 6. "Do you know how to prepare lobsters?" "You cook them in boiling water until they get quite red." 7. I wonder where in the world those flying saucers can be coming from. 8. Looking at a magazine isn't studying. 9. The drugstore is open until nine o'clock. 10. We'll have to encourage her to be generous.

C. 1. What you should try to avoid is worrying too much. 2. I saw a bear catching fish in the river this morning. 3. This magazine is published by an American company. 4. I hear the water boiling. It's time to make the tea. 5. My children spend a lot of time asking each other riddles. 6. Putting out the light, the nurse came out of the patient's room. 7. We don't mind replacing the shrubs that don't grow, madam. 8. She must have been very tired. She went to bed at eight o'clock. 9. I admit his story is convincing; I'd like to know if it's true. 10. Nobody ever succeeds by cheating.

D. 1. The child was playing on the street in front of his house when he was knocked down by a motorcycle. 2. Landing at Cherbourg, she left at once for Paris. 3. She is anxious to make some money, but she can't make up her mind to take in a boarder. 4. Quickly swallowing the piece of taffy, she got up to answer the question. 5. Do you feel rested after your holidays? 6. By avoiding walking under a ladder, she shows that she's superstitious. 7. Our school was visited by a group of French-speaking pupils. 8. You would help us a great deal by picking some of these plums. 9. This whole meal was prepared by my granddaughter. 10. By replacing the tires and the engine, we'll be able to use the car for a long time yet.

E. 1. We're getting ready to move. That's why the house is untidy. 2. Deciding to declare everything, she first made a list of what she had bought. 3. By whom were his poems published? 4. He fell while working on a sky-scraper. 5. I have a new kind of vacuum-cleaner to show you, madam. 6. "I smell something cooking. What is it?" "Cauliflower." 7. Which city was occupied by the Germans between June 13th, 1940 and August 23rd, 1944? 8. Michael asked to see your new projector. 9. He was running so quickly! He might have knocked me down! 10. By going to (the province of) Quebec, Alice will be able to improve her French.

F. 1. She boasts of having the loveliest grandchildren in the world. 2. "Aren't the clothes dry yet?" "No, it's so damp today." 3. Stephen is swamped with work. He won't be able to join us. 4. Most people hate going through customs. 5. I don't mind helping you make your dress if you are willing to let me use your sewing-machine. 6. He worried so much that he nearly went out of his mind. 7. It had been freezing, and the road was slippery. 8. You might have written to us once during your trip! 9. Did you hear Queen Elizabeth speak on Christmas Day? 10. It's too bad to miss such an opportunity.

G. 1. "How old is her grandfather?" "He must be more than ninety." 2. You run the risk of being swept away by the current if you make the crossing in a canoe. 3. She may have suspected the truth. 4. His wife denied that she had thrown out his old slippers. 5. The attack had been preceded by heavy shelling. 6. It would be easy to improve your German if you went and spent a year in Germany. 7. You ought to see the pictures we took this winter in Mexico! 8. You would be wrong to accuse him of the crime. 9. One of the players was hurt by a hockey stick. 10. Be sure to fix your hair before going out.

H. 1. There are quite a few people who say that to get rich is to succeed. In my opinion they are mistaken. 2. Why is that gentleman always accompanied by a dog? 3. I explained to the dentist that I preferred not to come in the afternoon, but he had to give me an appointment for two o'clock. 4. He may have been too busy to stop working. 5. Be sure to try our oysters! 6. We'll not be able to deliver your suit until tomorrow, madam. 7. I love pineapple, but I don't like preparing it. 8. These watches are imported from Switzerland. 9. What do you think of that? Teresa came in without even saying hello. 10. You might have killed yourself.

I. 1. I don't dare tell him he's wasting his time. 2. America was discovered by Christopher Columbus in the fifteenth century. 3. Don't hesitate to send it back if it's damaged. 4. The best scholarship was won by a boy from our school. 5. Will man ever succeed in discovering all of nature's secrets? 6. You're wanted on the phone. 7. "She's really very congenial, isn't she?" "I'd say she's too anxious to please everybody." 8. He will never be able to understand their point of view. 9. This programme will have to be directed by a *young* man with *new* ideas. 10. Why didn't you do what you were told (to do)?

LESSONS 30-32

A. 1. Is it true that you borrowed money to pay for our vacation? 2. There are too many weeds for me to be able to pull them all out in a single afternoon. 3. We haven't gone skiing this winter, in spite of the fact that we've had lots of snow. 4. Do you think they would have come if we had invited them? 5. I have something else to put in my bag before you put it in the trunk of the car. 6. "Would you like a poached egg?" "Yes, provided it's quite fresh." 7. It seems to me that we should have gone and congratulated him. 8. There isn't a single plumber who is willing to come and repair the water heater today. 9. That's the best piece of music I've ever heard. 10. I don't say he can pay cash, but I guarantee he'll finally pay.

B. 1. See (to it) that we have enough milk and bread for the weekend. 2. I'm anxious for you to meet my sister-in-law. 3. You don't have to get up so early during the holidays. 4. I'll write you a cheque so that you can choose your present yourself. 5. That's the prettiest dress you've ever had. 6. "What do you suggest we order?" "Oysters." 7. Do you think that this blue belt goes well with my grey dress? 8. I wish you would go and get me half a pound of mushrooms. 9. We waited until the train had gone. 10. I am looking for someone who wants to go to Montreal.

C. 1. Whatever occupation one chooses, one needs courage and enthusiasm. 2. It annoys me that the birds have eaten all the cherries. 3. I'd like my son to study medicine. 4. The omelette wasn't good because the eggs weren't fresh enough. 5. We can't go until Claude is back. 6. I don't doubt that the change of air will do her a great deal of good. 7. However odd he is, he's a good doctor. 8. They'd like to find a house on a street where there isn't any noise at night. 9. I think he's waiting for me to apologize to him. 10. Don't you think the twins look like me?

D. 1. We must read the whole chapter without skipping anything. 2. I wish you'd wait until you're eighteen to start smoking. 3. That's the last time I'll buy a used car. 4. I hate sweeping the cellar stairs. 5. He doesn't have to be brilliant. It's sufficient that he be intelligent. 6. My parents are anxious for me and my brother to go to Europe, but they are opposed to our spending a whole year there. 7. He had told us that we didn't need to give him back his ladder until he was ready to paint his house. 8. Is it true that you've found (*found again*) your ring? 9. Whatever I do, I don't succeed in pleasing him. 10. It's a good thing the weather is fine for the exhibition.

LESSON 33

A. 1. Have you ever had Mrs. Gervais make a dress for you? She's a very good dressmaker. 2. I'll have to get vaccinated before I leave. 3. What are you going to have her sing? 4. Where did you have your rugs cleaned? 5. We'll have to have the dining-room painted (*repainted*). The walls are very dirty. 6. "What's making you sneeze?" "It's the pepper." 7. Can't you make them understand your point of view? 8. Do you know what makes a watch go? 9. What would it cost to get the windows (*window panes*) washed? 10. I don't care if you have the fruit and vegetables delivered, but be sure to bring the meat yourself.

B. 1. That child looks ill. You'd do well to have the doctor come. 2. I'm going to Alphonse's this morning to have my hair cut. 3. Have the cook make us some pancakes. 4. I can't make Michael drink milk. 5. I'll have my grandson gather the dead leaves on Saturday. 6. "What made the spot disappear?" "I put lemon juice and salt on it." 7. Have these letters typed right away. They have to go before noon. 8. We always feed the horses before breakfast. 9. I had the tooth that was aching pulled out. 10. I made them wash their hands before sitting down to lunch.

Appendices

Appendices

Appendix 1

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

The following examples show the forms of the definite article, both alone and with the prepositions **à** and **de**.

(a) Masculine, preceding a consonant or aspirate *h*:

le garçon	au garçon	du garçon
les garçons	aux garçons	des garçons
le héros	au héros	du héros
les héros	aux héros	des héros

(b) Masculine, preceding a vowel or mute *h*:

l'oiseau	à l'oiseau	de l'oiseau
les oiseaux	aux oiseaux	des oiseaux
l'homme	à l'homme	de l'homme
les hommes	aux hommes	des hommes

(c) Feminine, preceding a consonant or aspirate *h*:

la femme	à la femme	de la femme
les femmes	aux femmes	des femmes
la haie	à la haie	de la haie
les haies	aux haies	des haies

(d) Feminine, preceding a vowel or mute *h*:

l'actrice	à l'actrice	de l'actrice
les actrices	aux actrices	des actrices
l'héroïne	à l'héroïne	de l'héroïne
les héroïnes	aux héroïnes	des héroïnes

Appendix 2

THE INDEFINITE AND PARTITIVE ARTICLES

The following examples show the forms of the indefinite article.

(a) Masculine:

un sac des sacs	un hêtre des hêtres	un œuf des œufs	un habitant des habitants
---------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------------------

(b) Feminine:

une tache des taches	une housse des housses	une église des églises	une huître des huîtres
--------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------------

The following examples show the forms of the partitive article.

(a) Masculine, preceding a consonant or aspirate *h*:

du beurre	du hachis
------------------	------------------

(b) Masculine, preceding a vowel or mute *h*:

de l'argent	de l'hydrogène
--------------------	-----------------------

(c) Feminine, preceding a consonant or aspirate *h*:

de la neige	de la haine
--------------------	--------------------

(d) Feminine, preceding a vowel or mute *h*:

de l'eau	de l'humidité
-----------------	----------------------

Appendix 3

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

The following table shows the forms of the interrogative adjective.

MASCULINE SINGULAR	MASCULINE PLURAL	FEMININE SINGULAR	FEMININE PLURAL
quel	quels	quelle	quelles

The following table shows the forms of the interrogative pronouns corresponding to the English *who*, *whom*, *what*, as used in direct questions.

	<i>who, whom</i>	<i>what</i>
SUBJECT	qui (est-ce qui)	qu'est-ce qui
SUBJECTIVE COMPLETION	qui	que
DIRECT OBJECT	qui	que
OBJECT OF A PREPOSITION	qui	quoi

The following table shows the forms of the interrogative pronoun **lequel**, both alone and with the prepositions **à** and **de**.

MASCULINE SINGULAR	MASCULINE PLURAL	FEMININE SINGULAR	FEMININE PLURAL
lequel auquel duquel	lesquels auxquels desquels	laquelle à laquelle de laquelle	lesquelles auxquelles desquelles

Appendix 4

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

The following table shows the forms of the relative pronouns.

	PERSONS	THINGS
SUBJECT	qui	qui
DIRECT OBJECT	que	que
OBJECT OF A PREPOSITION	qui	lequel

- NOTE 1. The various forms of **lequel** are shown in full at the end of Appendix 3.
- NOTE 2. The relative pronoun containing the preposition **de** is **dont**.
- NOTE 3. With the prepositions **parmi**, **entre** (and often **avec**), **qui** is replaced by **lequel**.

Appendix 5

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

The following table shows the forms of the possessive adjectives.

	MASCULINE SINGULAR	FEMININE SINGULAR preceding a vowel or mute <i>h</i>	FEMININE SINGULAR preceding a consonant or aspirate <i>h</i>	PLURAL
<i>my</i>	mon	mon	ma	mes
<i>your</i>	ton	ton	ta	tes
<i>his, her, its</i>	son	son	sa	ses
<i>our</i>	notre	notre	notre	nos
<i>your</i>	votre	votre	votre	vos
<i>their</i>	leur	leur	leur	leurs

The following table shows the forms of the possessive pronouns, both alone and with the prepositions **à** and **de**.

	MASCULINE SINGULAR	MASCULINE PLURAL	FEMININE SINGULAR	FEMININE PLURAL
<i>mine</i> <i>to mine</i> <i>of mine</i>	le mien au mien du mien	les miens aux miens des miens	la mienne à la mienne de la mienne	les miennes aux miennes des miennes
<i>yours</i> <i>to yours</i> <i>of yours</i>	le tien au tien du tien	les tiens aux tiens des tiens	la tienne à la tienne de la tienne	les tiennes aux tiennes des tiennes
<i>his, hers</i> <i>to his, to hers</i> <i>of his, of hers</i>	le sien au sien du sien	les siens aux siens des siens	la sienne à la sienne de la sienne	les siennes aux siennes des siennes
<i>ours</i> <i>to ours</i> <i>of ours</i>	le nôtre au nôtre du nôtre	les nôtres aux nôtres des nôtres	la nôtre à la nôtre de la nôtre	les nôtres aux nôtres des nôtres
<i>yours</i> <i>to yours</i> <i>of yours</i>	le vôtre au vôtre du vôtre	les vôtres aux vôtres des vôtres	la vôtre à la vôtre de la vôtre	les vôtres aux vôtres des vôtres
<i>theirs</i> <i>to theirs</i> <i>of theirs</i>	le leur au leur du leur	les leurs aux leurs des leurs	la leur à la leur de la leur	les leurs aux leurs des leurs

Appendix 6

THE MASCULINE FORMS OF ADJECTIVES

1. The adjectives **beau**, **nouveau**, and **vieux** have the special forms **bel**, **nouvel**, and **vieil**, which are used only before masculine singular nouns beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

un beau homard

un nouveau hangar

un vieux héros

un bel arbre

un nouvel uniforme

un vieil oncle

un bel homme

un nouvel hôpital

un vieil hôtel

The adjectives **fou** and **mou** also have the special forms **fol** and **mol**, but these are rare in simple speech.

2. The masculine plural of an adjective is usually formed by adding **-s** to the singular.

un complet bleu

des complets bleus

3. Adjectives which end in **-s** or **-x** in the masculine singular have the same form in the masculine plural.

un livre épais
un jeu dangereux

des livres épais
des jeux dangereux

4. The adjectives **beau** and **nouveau** form the masculine plural by adding **-x**.

un beau jardin
un nouveau professeur

de beaux jardins
de nouveaux professeurs

5. Most adjectives ending in **-al** have the masculine plural in **-aux**.

un parc national

des parcs nationaux

6. The adjectives **fatal**, **final**, **glacial**, and **naval** form the masculine plural by adding **-s**.

un combat naval

des combats navals

7. Compound adjectives of colour are invariable.

un complet bleu marine

des complets bleu marine

Appendix 7

THE FEMININE FORMS OF ADJECTIVES

1. Basically, the feminine singular of an adjective is formed by adding **-e** to the masculine singular.

un homme intelligent

une femme intelligente

2. The feminine singular is the same as the masculine singular if the latter ends in **-e**.

un manteau rouge

une fleur rouge

3. The feminine of **chic** is the same as the masculine.

un chic restaurant

une chic voiture

4. Compound adjectives of colour are invariable.

un chapeau bleu ciel

une blouse bleu ciel

5. Adjectives which have the masculine singular in **-eux** have the feminine singular in **-euse**. Some common examples are:

courageux
creux
curieux
dangereux
délicieux

douteux
ennuyeux
fameux
furieux
généreux

heureux
joyeux
malheureux
merveilleux
paresseux

poussièreux
sérieux
silencieux
soigneux
superstitieux

un arbre creux

une dent creuse

6. In certain adjectives the final consonant of the masculine singular is doubled before the feminine ending **-e** is added. Some common examples are:

ancien	cruel	gentil	norvégien
artificiel	épais	gras	nul
autrichien	éternel	gros	pareil
bas	européen	habituel	personnel
bon	exceptionnel	italien	quel
canadien	frisquet	naturel	tel

un plat italien

une actrice italienne

7. Adjectives which have the masculine singular in **-if** have the feminine singular in **-ive**. Some common examples are:

actif	décisif	portatif
affirmatif	juif	sportif
approximatif	négatif	vif

un garçon actif

une vie active

8. Certain adjectives assume a *grave* accent in the feminine. Some common examples are:

amer	entier	irrégulier	régulier
cher	familier	léger	secret
complet	fier	particulier	
dernier	inquiet	premier	

un pardessus léger

une couverture légère

9. The following adjectives cannot be classified under any of the preceding sections:

aigu	aiguë	franc	franche	public	publique
beau	belle	grec	grecque	roux	rousse
blanc	blanche	jaloux	jalouse	sec	sèche
bref	brève	long	longue	trompeur	trompeuse
doux	douce	mou	molle	turc	turque
faux	fausse	neuf	neuve	vieux	vieille
frais	fraîche	nouveau	nouvelle		

du beurre frais

de la crème fraîche

10. Except for invariable adjectives, the feminine plural is formed by adding **-s** to the feminine singular.

une grande maison
une boîte vide
une robe chic
une cravate gris foncé

de grandes maisons
des boîtes vides
des robes chics
des cravates gris foncé

Appendix 8

THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS

1. Regular adverbs are formed in French by adding **-ment** to the feminine singular of the adjective. (Cf. the use of the suffix *-ly* in English, *e.g.*, *silent*, *silently*.)

étroit	étroite	étroitement
facile	facile	facilement
silencieux	silencieuse	silencieusement
naturel	naturelle	naturellement
actif	active	activement
complet	complète	complètement
doux	douce	doucement

2. In the case of adjectives ending in **-ai**, **-é**, **-i**, or **-u**, the adverb no longer has the feminine *-e*. Some common examples are:

vrai	vraiment	indéfini	indéfiniment
BUT: gai	gaiement	infini	infiniment
		poli	poliment
carré	carrément		
désespéré	désespérément	absolu	absolument

3. When an adjective ends in **-ant** or **-ent**, the corresponding adverb ends in **-amment** or **-emment**. Some common examples are:

abondant	abondamment	différent	différemment
brillant	brillamment	évident	évidemment
constant	constamment	fréquent	fréquemment
courant	couramment	impatient	impatiemment
élégant	élégamment	patient	patiemment
épatant	épatamment	prudent	prudemment
étonnant	étonnamment	récent	récemment
méchant	méchamment	violent	violemment
puissant	puissamment		
suffisant	suffisamment	BUT: lent	lentement

4. Certain adverbs are irregular. Some common examples are:

aveugle	aveuglément	mauvais	mal
bon	bien	meilleur	mieux
bref	brièvement	moindre	moins
énorme	énormément	petit	peu
gentil	gentiment	précis	précisément
immense	immensément	profond	profondément
intense	intensément		

5. Not all French adjectives have corresponding adverbs. (Cf. the English adjective *difficult*.) Some common examples are:

amusant
charmant

intéressant
reconnaissant

In such cases an adverbial phrase is used, *e.g.*,

d'une façon amusante amusingly (*lit. in an amusing way*)
avec reconnaissance gratefully (*lit. with gratitude*)

6. Sometimes an adverbial phrase is used even when there is an adverb. This is a matter of usage and is not subject to rule.

Elle s'habille toujours
avec élégance.

She always dresses elegantly
(*lit. with elegance*).

Appendix 9

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

The following lists are not intended to be exhaustive. They contain the names which are most likely to be useful to the student.

l'Asie f. (asiatique)

l'Arabie f. (arabe)	l'Iran m. (iranien, -ienne)
Bornéo m. (bornéen, -enne)	Israël m. (israélien, -ienne)
Ceylan m. (cingalais, -e)	le Japon (japonais, -e)
la Chine (chinois, -e)	Java m. (javanais, -e)
Chypre f. (cyprïote)	le Pakistan (pakistanaï, -e)
la Corée (coréen, -enne)	la Perse (perse)
l'Inde f. (indien, -ienne)	les Philippines f. (philippin, -e)
l'Irak m. (irakien, -ienne)	la Syrie (syrien, -ienne)

l'Afrique f. (africain, -e)

l'Algérie f. (algérien, -ienne)	le Maroc (marocain, -e)
l'Égypte f. (égyptien, -ienne)	la Tunisie (tunisien, -ienne)
l'Éthiopie f. (éthiopien, -ienne)	l'Union Sud-Africaine
Madagascar m. (malgache)	

l'Australie f. (australien, -ienne)
la Nouvelle-Zélande (néo-zélandais, -e)

l'Europe f. (européen, -enne)

l'Albanie <i>f.</i> (albanais, -e)	l'Islande <i>f.</i> (islandais, -e)
l'Allemagne <i>f.</i> (allemand, -e)	l'Italie <i>f.</i> (italien, -ienne)
l'Angleterre <i>f.</i> (anglais, -e)	la Lettonie (letton, -onne)
l'Autriche <i>f.</i> (autrichien, -ienne)	la Lituanie (lituanien, -ienne)
la Belgique (belge)	le Luxembourg (luxembourgeois, -e)
la Bulgarie (bulgare)	la Norvège (norvégien, -ienne)
la Corse (corse)	les Pays-Bas <i>m.</i> (néerlandais, -e)
la Crète (crétois, -e)	le pays de Galles (gallois, -e)
le Danemark (danois, -e)	la Pologne (polonais, -e)
l'Écosse <i>f.</i> (écossais, -e)	le Portugal (portugais, -e)
l'Espagne <i>f.</i> (espagnol, -e)	la Roumanie (roumain, -e)
l'Estonie <i>f.</i> (estonien, -ienne)	la Russie (russe)
la Finlande (finlandais, -e)	la Sardaigne (sarde)
la France (français, -e)	la Suède (suédois, -e)
la Grande-Bretagne (britannique)	la Suisse (suisse)
la Grèce (grec, grecque)	la Tchécoslovaquie (tchécoslovaque)
la Hollande (hollandais, -e)	la Turquie (turc, turque)
la Hongrie (hongrois, -e)	l'Union soviétique <i>f.</i>
l'Irlande <i>f.</i> (irlandais, -e)	la Yougoslavie (yougoslave)

l'Amérique du Sud *f.* (sud-américain, -e)

l'Argentine <i>f.</i> (argentin, -e)	l'Équateur <i>m.</i> (équatorien, -ienne)
la Bolivie (bolivien, -ienne)	le Paraguay (paraguayen, -enne)
le Brésil (brésilien, -ienne)	le Pérou (péruvien, -ienne)
le Chili (chilien, -ienne)	l'Uruguay <i>m.</i> (uruguayen, -enne)
la Colombie (colombien, -ienne)	le Vénézuéla (vénézuélien, -ienne)

l'Amérique du Nord *f.*

l'Amérique centrale <i>f.</i>	les États-Unis <i>m.</i> (américain, -e)
les Bermudes <i>f.</i>	le Groenland (groenlandais, -e)
le Canada (canadien, -ienne)	le Mexique (mexicain, -e)
Cuba <i>f.</i> (cubain, -e)	
l'Alberta <i>m.</i>	la Nouvelle-Écosse
la Colombie britannique	l'Ontario <i>m.</i>
l'île du Prince-Édouard <i>f.</i>	le Québec
le Manitoba	la Saskatchewan
le Nouveau-Brunswick	Terre-Neuve <i>f.</i>
la Californie	les îles Hawaï <i>f.</i>
la Caroline du Nord	la Louisiane
la Caroline du Sud	l'État de New York <i>m.</i>
le Dakota du Nord	le Nouveau-Mexique
le Dakota du Sud	la Pennsylvanie
le District de Columbia	la Virginie
la Floride	la Virginie de l'Ouest
la Georgie	

The names of all the other states are spelt as in English, preceded by the masculine definite article, *e.g.*, **l'Alaska**, **le New Jersey**.

Alger	La Havane	Moscou
Athènes	La Haye	La Nouvelle-Orléans
Bruxelles	Jérusalem	Pékin
Le Caire	Lisbonne	Pise
Changhaï	Londres	Québec
Copenhague	Lyon	Trois-Rivières
Édimbourg	Marseille	Varsovie
Genève	Mexico	Venise
Hambourg	Montréal	Vienne

The names of important cities which have the same spelling in English and French, *e.g.*, **Paris, Berlin, Rome, New York**, are not included in the above list.

For the gender of the names of cities, see the note at the head of the vocabulary.

l'Atlantique <i>m.</i>	l'océan Arctique <i>m.</i>
le Pacifique	l'océan Antarctique <i>m.</i>
l'océan Indien <i>m.</i>	la Méditerranée
les Grands Lacs	le lac Huron
le lac Supérieur	le lac Érié
le lac Michigan	le lac Ontario
le Saint-Laurent	le Danube
le Mississip(p)i	la Volga
la Seine	le Nil
la Tamise	l'Amazone <i>m.</i>
le Rhin	
les Alpes <i>f.</i>	les (montagnes) Rocheuses

Appendix 10

CARDINAL NUMBERS

zéro [ZERŌ]

un, une [œ̃, yn]

- NOTE 1. The **n** of **un** is sounded in liaison, *e.g.*, **un ours** [œ̃ nʊrs], **un h** [œ̃ naʃ].
- NOTE 2. The feminine form **une** is not used to translate *one* where the meaning is *number one*, *e.g.*, **la chambre un**.
- NOTE 3. The number **un, une** (as distinct from the indefinite article or pronoun **un, une**) is usually treated as if it began with a consonant.

Répétez les nombres de un à dix.

Ce un ressemble à un sept.

J'ai travaillé de une heure à cinq heures et demie.

J'ai cinq frères mais je n'ai que une soeur.

BUT: Il n'y en a qu'un(e).

deux [dø]

NOTE: In liaison, the **x** of **deux** is pronounced [z], *e.g.*, **deux ans** [dø zɑ̃].

trois [trwɑ̃]

NOTE: The **s** of **trois** is sounded in liaison, *e.g.*, **trois œufs** [trwɑ̃ zøf], **trois huitres** [trwɑ̃ zɥitʁ].

quatre [katʁ]**cinq** [sɛ̃:k]

NOTE: The **q** of **cinq** is not sounded before a consonant or aspirate *h*, *e.g.*, **cinq voyelles** [sɛ̃ vwajɛl], **cinq hangars** [sɛ̃ ɑ̃ga:ʁ].

six [sis]

NOTE 1. In liaison, the **x** of **six** is pronounced [z], *e.g.* **six arbres** [si zaʁbʁ].

NOTE 2. The **x** of **six** is not sounded before a consonant or aspirate *h*, *e.g.* **six filles** [si fij], **six Hollandais** [si ɔlədə̃].

sept [set]

NOTE: The pronunciation [sɛ] before a consonant or aspirate *h* is disappearing.

huit [ɥit]

NOTE 1. The **t** of **huit** is not sounded before a consonant or aspirate *h*, *e.g.* **huit mouchoirs** [ɥi muʃwa:ʁ], **huit Hongrois** [ɥi ɑ̃grwa].

NOTE 2. Since the **h** of **huit** is aspirate, there is neither elision nor liaison.

Je n'ai que huit dollars.

Il est arrivé le huit.

J'ai pris le train de huit heures vingt.

ses huit enfants [se ɥi tɑ̃fɑ̃]

neuf [nœf]

NOTE 1. The **f** of **neuf** is pronounced [v] in front of **ans**, **heures**, **hommes**, and **autres**, *e.g.*, **neuf hommes** [nœ vɑ̃m].

NOTE 2. The pronunciation [nø] before a consonant or aspirate *h* is disappearing.

dix [dis]

NOTE 1. In liaison, the **x** of **dix** is pronounced [z], *e.g.*, **dix enveloppes** [di zɑ̃vlop].

NOTE 2. The **x** of **dix** is not sounded before a consonant or aspirate *h*, *e.g.*, **dix cravates** [di kʁavat], **dix héros** [di ɛʁo].

The various notes given on the numbers from **un(e)** to **dix** apply to compounds, such as **vingt-deux**, **quarante-cinq**, **soixante-dix**.

onze [ɔ̃ːz]

- NOTE 1. In the expressions **il est onze heures**, **il était onze heures**, there is usually liaison (although it may be omitted in familiar speech). Otherwise, there is no liaison.

Il est onze heures [il ɛ tɔ̃ zœːR or il ɛ ɔ̃ zœːR].
les onze [le ɔ̃z] **prisonniers**

- NOTE 2. The **e** of **le** does not elide before **onze**.

Nous sommes aujourd'hui le onze.

Elision is optional in **de** and **que** preceding the expression **onze heures**.

Il n'est que onze heures (or **qu'onze heures**).
le train de onze heures (or **d'onze heures**)

Otherwise, there is no elision in **de** and **que**.

Comptez de onze à vingt.
Il n'a que onze ans.

douze [duːz]

treize [trɛːz]

quatorze [katɔʀz]

quinze [kɛ̃ːz]

seize [sɛːz]

dix-sept [dis(s)ɛt]

dix-huit [dizɥit]

dix-neuf [diznœf]

vingt [vɛ̃]

- NOTE. The **t** of **vingt** is sounded in liaison, *e.g.*, **vingt invités** [vɛ̃ tɛ̃vite], **vingt hommes** [vɛ̃ tɔm].

vingt et un [vɛ̃ te œ̃]

vingt et une [vɛ̃ te yn]

vingt-deux [vɛ̃tdø]

vingt-trois [vɛ̃ttrwa]

vingt-quatre [vɛ̃tkatr]

vingt-cinq [vɛ̃tsɛ̃ːk]

vingt-six [vɛ̃tsis]

vingt-sept [vɛ̃tset]

vingt-huit [vɛ̃tɥit]

vingt-neuf [vɛ̃tnœf]

quarante [karɑ̃ːt]

quarante et un [karɑ̃t e œ̃]

quarante et une [karɑ̃t e yn]

quarante-deux [karɑ̃tdø]

quarante-trois [karɑ̃ttrwa]

quarante-quatre [karɑ̃tkatr]

quarante-cinq [karɑ̃tsɛ̃ːk]

quarante-six [karɑ̃tsis]

quarante-sept [karɑ̃tset]

quarante-huit [karɑ̃tɥit]

quarante-neuf [karɑ̃tnœf]

trente [trɑ̃ːt]

trente et un [trɑ̃t e œ̃]

trente et une [trɑ̃t e yn]

trente-deux [trɑ̃tdø]

trente-trois [trɑ̃ttrwa]

trente-quatre [trɑ̃tkatr]

trente-cinq [trɑ̃tsɛ̃ːk]

trente-six [trɑ̃tsis]

trente-sept [trɑ̃tset]

trente-huit [trɑ̃tɥit]

trente-neuf [trɑ̃tnœf]

cinquante [sɛ̃kɑ̃ːt]

cinquante et un [sɛ̃kɑ̃t e œ̃]

cinquante et une [sɛ̃kɑ̃t e yn]

cinquante-deux [sɛ̃kɑ̃tdø]

cinquante-trois [sɛ̃kɑ̃ttrwa]

cinquante-quatre [sɛ̃kɑ̃tkatr]

cinquante-cinq [sɛ̃kɑ̃tsɛ̃ːk]

cinquante-six [sɛ̃kɑ̃tsis]

cinquante-sept [sɛ̃kɑ̃tset]

cinquante-huit [sɛ̃kɑ̃tɥit]

cinquante-neuf [sɛ̃kɑ̃tnœf]

soixante [swasũ:t]

soixante et un [swasũt e œ]

soixante et une [swasũt e yn]

soixante-deux [swasũtdø]

soixante-trois [swasũttrwɑ]

soixante-quatre [swasũtkatr]

soixante-cinq [swasũtsɛ:k]

soixante-six [swasũtsis]

soixante-sept [swasũtset]

soixante-huit [swasũtɥit]

soixante-neuf [swasũtnœf]

soixante-dix [swasũtdis]

soixante et onze [swasũt e ɔ̃:z]

soixante-douze [swasũtdu:z]

soixante-treize [swasũttrɛ:z]

soixante-quatorze [swasũtkatɔʀz]

soixante-quinze [swasũtkɛ:z]

soixante-seize [swasũtsɛ:z]

soixante-dix-sept [swasũtdis(s)et]

soixante-dix-huit [swasũtdizɥit]

soixante-dix-neuf [swasũtdiznœf]

quatre-vingts [katʀvɛ̃]

NOTE 1. The **s** of **quatre-vingts** is sounded in liaison, *e.g.*, **quatre-vingts ouvriers** [katʀvɛ̃ zuvʀiɛ].

NOTE 2. The number 80 is written **quatre-vingt** (*i.e.*, without an **s**) in expressions such as **la page quatre-vingt** and **l'an dix-neuf cent quatre-vingt**.

NOTE 3. The spelling **quatre-vingt** is also used when another numeral adjective follows, *e.g.*, **quatre-vingt mille**. (Note, however, that the **s** is used in **quatre-vingts millions**, since **million** is a noun, not an adjective.)

quatre-vingt-un [katʀvɛ̃œ]

quatre-vingt-une [katʀvɛ̃yn]

quatre-vingt-deux [katʀvɛ̃dø]

quatre-vingt-trois [katʀvɛ̃trwɑ]

quatre-vingt-quatre [katʀvɛ̃katʀ]

quatre-vingt-cinq [katʀvɛ̃sɛ:k]

quatre-vingt-six [katʀvɛ̃sis]

quatre-vingt-sept [katʀvɛ̃set]

quatre-vingt-huit [katʀvɛ̃ɥit]

quatre-vingt-neuf [katʀvɛ̃nœf]

quatre-vingt-dix [katʀvɛ̃dis]

quatre-vingt-onze [katʀvɛ̃ɔ̃:z]

quatre-vingt-douze [katʀvɛ̃du:z]

quatre-vingt-treize [katʀvɛ̃trɛ:z]

quatre-vingt-quatorze [katʀvɛ̃katɔʀz]

quatre-vingt-quinze [katʀvɛ̃kɛ:z]

quatre-vingt-seize [katʀvɛ̃sɛ:z]

quatre-vingt-dix-sept [katʀvɛ̃dis(s)et]

quatre-vingt-dix-huit [katʀvɛ̃dizɥit]

quatre-vingt-dix-neuf [katʀvɛ̃diznœf]

cent [sɑ̃]

NOTE 1. Although, in English, the number 100 may be expressed as *a hundred* or *one hundred*, in French it can be expressed only by **cent**.

NOTE 2. The **t** of **cent** is sounded in liaison with a following noun or adjective, *e.g.*, **cent appartements** [sɑ̃ tapartəmɑ̃], **cent autres** [sɑ̃ to:tʀ]. (Note, however, in the examples below, the absence of liaison between **cent** and another numeral.)

cent un, cent une [sɑ̃ œ, sɑ̃ yn]

cent huit [sɑ̃ ɥit]

cent onze [sɑ̃ ɔ̃:z]

deux cents [dø sɑ̃]

- NOTE 1. The **s** of **deux cents** is sounded in liaison, *e.g.*, **deux cents avions** [dø sɑ̃ zavjɑ̃].
- NOTE 2. The number 200 is written **deux cent** (*i.e.*, without an **s**) in expressions such as **la salle deux cent** and **l'an deux cent**.
- NOTE 3. The spelling **deux cent** is also used when another numeral adjective follows, *e.g.*, **deux cent cinquante**. (However, the **s** is used in **deux cents millions**, since **million** is a noun, not an adjective.)
- NOTE 4. Notes 1, 2, and 3 above also apply to the numbers 300, 400, *etc.*
- NOTE 5. Although, in English, counting by hundreds may be carried as high as 9900 (*ninety-nine hundred*), French goes only up to **1900** (**dix-neuf cents**).

mille [mil]

- NOTE: Although, in English, the number 1000 may be expressed as *a thousand* or *one thousand*, in French it can be expressed only by **mille**.

mille un, mille une [mil œ̃, mil yn]**deux mille** [dø mil]

- NOTE 1. The word **mille** is invariable.
- NOTE 2. In dates, **mille** is used when no other number follows, *e.g.*, **l'an deux mille**; otherwise, it is replaced by the short form **mil**, *e.g.*, **mil neuf cent cinquante-neuf**.
- NOTE 3. In simple speech it is commoner to count by hundreds in expressing the date, *e.g.*, **dix-neuf cent cinquante-neuf**. (The word **cent** cannot be omitted.)
- NOTE 4. In numbers from one thousand on, English uses a comma to mark off groups of three digits, *e.g.*, 65,972. French uses a period *e.g.*, **65.972**; or simply leaves a space, *e.g.*, **65 972**.

un million [œ̃ miljɑ̃]

- NOTE: The preposition **de** is required after **million(s)** when no other number follows, *e.g.*,
un million de voitures
cent cinquante millions de kilomètres
 BUT: **un million trois cent mille habitants**

un milliard [œ̃ milja:R] (*a billion*)

- NOTE: **Milliard** is a noun, and is used in the same way as **million**, *e.g.*,
deux milliards de personnes
cing milliards trois cent millions de francs
un milliard six cent millions huit cent mille dollars

Appendix 11

ORDINAL NUMBERS

Usually, an ordinal number is formed by adding **-ième** to the corresponding cardinal number. (If the cardinal number ends in **-e**, this **-e** is dropped.)

premier, première [prəmje, prəmje:r]

NOTE 1. The following examples illustrate the liaison of **premier, premiers, premières** with a following noun.

le premier accident [lə prəmje raksidɑ̃]

les premiers exemples [le prəmje zɛgzɑ̃:pl]

les premières étoiles [le prəmjer zetwa]

NOTE 2. A cardinal number precedes the ordinal **premier**. (This is the reverse of English usage.)

les trois premières pages

second, seconde [səgɔ̃, səgɔ̃:d]

deuxième [døzjem]

NOTE 1. The **d** of **second** is pronounced [t] in liaison, *e.g.*, **le second étage** [lə səgɔ̃ teta:ʒ].

NOTE 2. Only **deuxième** can be used in the compounds **vingt-deuxième, trente-deuxième, etc.** Otherwise **second** and **deuxième** appear to be interchangeable.

troisième [trwazjem]

quatrième [katʁi(j)em]

cinquième [sɛkjem]

NOTE: As the **q** is no longer final, it has to be followed by **u**.

sixième [sizjem]

septième [setjem]

huitième [ɥitjem]

neuvième [nœvjem]

NOTE: The **f** of **neuf** is changed to **v** before the ordinal ending. This also applies in **dix-neuvième, vingt-neuvième, etc.**

dixième [dizjem]

vingt et unième [vɛ te ynjem]

vingt-deuxième [vɛtdøzjem]

trente et unième [trɑ̃ te ynjem]

trente-deuxième [trɑ̃tdøzjem]

quarante et unième [karɑ̃ te ynjem]

quarante-deuxième [karɑ̃tdøzjem]

cinquante et unième [sɛkɑ̃ te ynjem]

cinquante-deuxième [sɛkɑ̃tdøzjem]

soixante et unième [swasɑ̃ te ynjem]

soixante-deuxième [swasɑ̃tdøzjem]

soixante et onzième [swasɑ̃ te ɔ̃zjem]

soixante-douzième [swasɑ̃tduzjem]

quatre-vingtième [katʁəvɛ̃tjem]

NOTE: The **s** of **quatre-vingts** is dropped before the ordinal ending.

quatre-vingt-unième [katʁəvɛ̃njɛm]
 quatre-vingt-deuxième [katʁəvɛ̃døzjɛm]
 quatre-vingt-onzième [katʁəvɛ̃ɔzjɛm]
 quatre-vingt-douzième [katʁəvɛ̃duzjɛm]

centième [sɑ̃tjɛm]
 cent unième [sɑ̃ jɛnjɛm]
 cent deuxième [sɑ̃ døzjɛm]
 deux centième [dø sɑ̃tjɛm]

NOTE: The **s** of **deux cents** is dropped before the ordinal ending. This also applies to **trois cents**, **quatre cents**, *etc.*

deux cent unième [dø sɑ̃ jɛnjɛm]
 deux cent deuxième [dø sɑ̃ døzjɛm]
 millième [miljɛm]
 mille unième [mil jɛnjɛm]

mille deuxième [mil døzjɛm]
 deux millième [dø miljɛm]
 millionième [miljɔnjɛm]
 milliardième [miljardjɛm]

Appendix 12

FRACTIONS

un demi, trois demis
 un tiers, deux tiers, cinq tiers
 un quart, sept quarts
 huit onzièmes

six et demi
 quatre neuf seizièmes

la moitié de douze
 la moitié d'une vieille carte
 la moitié des oranges

le tiers de quinze
 le tiers d'une pomme
 le tiers de mon argent
 les deux tiers des livres

le quart de seize
 les trois quarts du pays
 cinq virgule vingt-neuf (5,29)
 trois virgule mille quatre cent seize
 (3,1416)

zéro virgule sept (0,7)
 zéro virgule zéro six (0,06)

un demi-congé
 une demi-douzaine
 une demi-douzaine d'œufs
 mes demi-frères
 deux demi-sœurs
 deux livres et demie

un quart de livre
 à demi (*or* à moitié) mort
 s'arrêter à mi-chemin

one half, three halves
 one third, two thirds, five thirds
 one fourth, seven fourths
 eight elevenths

six and a half
 four and nine sixteenths

half of twelve
 half of an old map
 half (of) the oranges

a third of fifteen
 a third of an apple
 a third of my money
 two thirds of the books

a quarter of sixteen
 three quarters of the country
 five point two nine (5·29)
 three point one four one six (3·1416)

point seven (·7)
 point 0 six (·06)

a half-holiday
 a half-dozen
 half a dozen eggs
 my half-brothers
 two half-sisters
 two pounds and a half, two and a half
 pounds
 a quarter-pound, a quarter of a pound
 half dead
 to stop half-way

Appendix 13

LENGTH OF TIME

un an et demi	a year and a half
deux ans et demi	two years and a half, two and a half years
une heure et demie	an hour and a half
deux heures et demie	two hours and a half, two and a half hours
une demi-heure	a half-hour, half an hour
un quart d'heure	a quarter of an hour
trois quarts d'heure	three quarters of an hour
une heure vingt minutes	an hour and twenty minutes
la moitié du temps	half the time
les trois quarts du temps	three quarters of the time

Appendix 14

TIME OF DAY

Quelle heure est-il?	What time is it? <i>or</i> What's the time?
Quelle heure avez-vous?	What time have you? <i>or</i> What time do you make it?
Avez-vous l'heure exacte?	Have you the right time?
Ma montre avance de trois minutes.	My watch is three minutes fast.
Ma montre retarde d'un quart d'heure.	My watch is a quarter of an hour slow.
Il est une heure.	It's one o'clock.
Il est deux heures.	It's two o'clock.
trois heures une	one minute past three
quatre heures dix	ten (minutes) past four
cinq heures et quart (<i>or</i> cinq heures un quart)	a quarter past five
six heures vingt et un(e)	twenty-one minutes past six
sept heures et demie	half past seven
huit heures moins vingt et un(e)	twenty-one minutes to eight
neuf heures moins le quart (<i>or</i> moins un quart)	a quarter to nine
dix heures moins dix	ten (minutes) to ten
onze heures moins une	one minute to eleven
Il est midi.	It's twelve o'clock (<i>or</i> It's noon).
midi et demi	half past twelve
Il est minuit.	It's twelve o'clock (<i>or</i> It's midnight).
minuit et demi	half past twelve
Il est une heure une.	It's one 0 one.
deux heures quinze	two fifteen

cinq heures vingt et un(e)
six heures trente
sept heures trente et un(e)
huit heures quarante et un(e)
neuf heures quarante-cinq
dix heures cinquante et un(e)
onze heures cinquante-neuf

à cinq heures et quart
à cinq heures quinze
vers quatre heures et demie
vers quatre heures trente

five twenty-one
 six thirty
 seven thirty-one
 eight forty-one
 nine forty-five
 ten fifty-one
 eleven fifty-nine

at a quarter past five
 at five fifteen
 (at) about half past four
 (at) about four thirty

The term *sharp*, expressing exact time, is rendered in French by **précis** or **tapant**. **Précis** agrees with **heure(s)**, **midi** or **minuit**, as the case may be. **Tapant** frequently agrees, but is usually invariable.

Il est une heure précise or Il est une heure tapant(e).

Il est deux heures et demie précises or Il est deux heures et demie tapant(es).
à midi précis or à midi tapant

à neuf heures du matin

à cinq heures de l'après-midi

à six heures du soir

It's one o'clock sharp.

It's half past two sharp.

at twelve o'clock sharp

at nine (o'clock) in the morning *or* at nine a.m.

at five (o'clock) in the afternoon *or* at five p.m.

at six (o'clock) in the evening *or* at six p.m.

NOTE: There is no fixed time at which one ceases to say **de l'après-midi** and begins to say **du soir**.

In France a twenty-four hour system is used for train, bus, and plane schedules, for theatre, radio and television programmes, *etc.*

zéro heure une
une heure quinze
deux heures vingt et un(e)
trois heures trente
cinq heures trente et un(e)
sept heures quarante et un(e)
neuf heures quarante-cinq
dix heures cinquante et un(e)
onze heures cinquante-neuf
douze heures
douze heures une
treize heures quinze
quatorze heures vingt et un(e)
quinze heures trente

twelve 0 one a.m.
 one fifteen a.m.
 two twenty-one a.m.
 three thirty a.m.
 five thirty-one a.m.
 seven forty-one a.m.
 nine forty-five a.m.
 ten fifty-one a.m.
 eleven fifty-nine a.m.
 twelve noon
 twelve 0 one p.m.
 one fifteen p.m.
 two twenty-one p.m.
 three thirty p.m.

dix-sept heures trente et un(e)
 dix-neuf heures quarante et un(e)
 vingt et une heures quarante-cinq
 vingt-deux heures cinquante et un(e)
 vingt-trois heures cinquante-neuf
 vingt-quatre heures

five thirty-one p.m.
 seven forty-one p.m.
 nine forty-five p.m.
 ten fifty-one p.m.
 eleven fifty-nine p.m.
 twelve midnight

Appendix 15

THE DATE

Quel jour sommes-nous aujourd'hui?
 — (Nous sommes) mercredi.

"What day is it today?" "(It's) Wednesday."

Quel jour est-ce aujourd'hui?
 — (C'est) mardi.

"What day is it today?" "(It's) Tuesday."

Le combien (du mois) sommes-nous
 aujourd'hui? — Nous sommes le
 onze.

"What day of the month is it (or
 "What's the date) today?" "It's the
 eleventh."

Le combien (du mois) est-ce au-
 jourd'hui? — C'est le huit.

"What day of the month is it (or
 "What's the date) today?" "It's the
 eighth."

Nous serons (or Ce sera) demain le
 neuf.

Tomorrow will be the ninth.

Quelle date sommes-nous aujour-
 d'hui? — Nous sommes le premier
 octobre.

"What's the date today?" "It's the
 first of October."

Quelle est la date aujourd'hui?
 — C'est le trente et un août.

"What's the date today?" "It's the
 thirty-first of August."

Nous sommes (or C'est) le vendredi
 treize (mars).

It's Friday the thirteenth (of March).

Il est né le vingt et un mai, dix-neuf
 cent un (or mil neuf cent un).

He was born (on) the twenty-first of
 May, nineteen hundred and one.

En quel mois . . . ?

(In) what month . . . ?

en juin

in June

au mois de juin

in the month of June

En quelle année . . . ?

(In) what year . . . ?

en (l'année) dix-sept cent (or mil sept
 cent)

in (the year) seventeen hundred

En quel siècle . . . ?

In what century . . . ?

au vingtième siècle

in the twentieth century

Appendix 16

DIMENSIONS

(Where two forms are given, it is the first which seems to be commoner in simple conversation.)

Ces deux bateaux ont tous les deux dix-sept pieds de long (*or Ces deux bateaux sont tous les deux longs de dix-sept pieds*). Those boats are both seventeen feet long.

Les rues avaient cinquante pieds de large (*or étaient larges de cinquante pieds*). The streets were fifty feet wide.

Ces arbres auront au moins dix pieds de haut (*or seront hauts d'au moins dix pieds*) l'année prochaine. These trees will be at least ten feet high next year.

La piscine a neuf pieds de profondeur à l'autre bout (*or est profonde de neuf pieds à l'autre bout*). The (swimming) pool is nine feet deep at the other end.

La glace sur la rivière a six pouces d'épaisseur (*or est épaisse de six pouces*). The ice on the river is six inches thick.

une ligne de cinq pouces de long (*or une ligne longue de cinq pouces*) a line five inches long

une route de soixante pieds de large (*or une route large de soixante pieds*) a road sixty feet wide

un lac de plus de deux cents pieds de profondeur (*or un lac profond de plus de deux cents pieds*) a lake more than two hundred feet deep

Ce tapis a neuf pieds (de large) sur douze (pieds de long). This rug is nine feet (wide) by twelve (feet long).

une salle de gymnastique de 110 pieds de long sur 75 pieds de large sur 45 pieds de haut a gymnasium 110 feet long by 75 feet wide by 45 feet high

Appendix 17

PUNCTUATION

le point	period
la virgule	comma
le point-virgule, le point et virgule	semicolon
le deux-points, les deux points	colon
le point d'interrogation	question mark
le point d'exclamation	exclamation mark

la parenthèse	bracket
le crochet	square bracket
le tiret	dash
les points de suspension	points of suspense
le trait d'union	hyphen
l'apostrophe <i>f.</i>	apostrophe
les guillemets <i>m.</i>	quotation marks
l'astérisque <i>m.</i>	asterisk
l'accent aigu <i>m.</i>	acute accent
l'accent grave	<i>grave</i> accent
l'accent circonflexe	circumflex accent
la cédille	cedilla
le tréma	diaeresis
«À la ligne.»	"New paragraph."

Appendix 18

SYLLABIFICATION

The two basic principles that govern the division of French words into syllables are:

- (i) that the number of syllables in a word is equal to the number of vowel sounds;
- (ii) that, as far as possible, consonants come at the beginning of syllables, rather than at the end.

From these principles are derived the detailed rules given below.

1. A single consonant occurring between two vowels sounds begins a new syllable.

beau-coup, ci-né-ma, e-xa-men

2. The groups **ch, ph, th, gn** are treated as single consonants, since they represent only single sounds.

Mi-chel, té-lé-pho-ner, é-ther, a-gneau

3. Certain groups of two consonants are treated as one, in spite of the fact that they represent two sounds. These groups are:

**bl cl fl gl pl
br cr dr fr gr pr tr vr**

ré-flé-chir, re-froi-dir, a-près, ci-tron, a-vril

4. Except as explained in rules 2 and 3, two consonants (either the same or different) occurring between two vowel sounds, are separated.

ac-teur, dor-mir, bril-ler, dis-cours, par-des-sus

5. When three consonants occur between two vowel sounds, two of the consonants usually form one of the groups listed in rules 2 and 3.

mar-ché, al-pha-bet, ex-pli-quer, mer-cre-di

6. In the case of three consonants not coming under rule 5, the division is made after the second consonant.

comp-ter, trans-por-ter, ins-tant, obs-cur

7. In the rare cases where four consonants occur between two vowel sounds, the same principles apply as for three consonants.

abs-trait

8. As explained in Appendix 20, the so-called mute *e* is pronounced in some cases, and dropped in others. The division of a word at the end of a line is made as if all mute *e*'s were pronounced. Consequently, syllable division at the end of a line does not always correspond to the normal pronunciation of a word.

Division in speech

ba-gag^(es)

é-lèv^(e)

al-gèbr^(e)

rev^(e)-nir

sam^(e)-di

Division at the end of a line

baga-ges

élè-ve

algè-bre

re-venir

sa-medi

9. Except as explained in rule 10, the letters **i** and **u**, and the group **ou**, when they immediately precede a vowel sound, are, phonetically, not vowels, but semiconsonants, representing, respectively, the sounds [j], [ɥ], and [w]. They do not, therefore, form the basis of a separate syllable.

ca-na-dien, si-tua-tion, fouet-ter, souhai-ter

10. Following one of the consonant groups listed in rule 3, the letters **i** and **u** and the group **ou** do represent vowel sounds, and form the basis of a separate syllable. (However, **u** is still a semiconsonant if followed by **i**.)

cri-er, cru-el, clou-er, dé-truir^(e)

Appendix 19

LIAISON

There are many French words ending in a consonant which is silent if the word stands alone, e.g., **en** [ɑ̃], **vos** [vo]. Sometimes such a final consonant is pronounced when the following word begins with a vowel or mute *h*, e.g., **en_hiver** [ɑ̃ niver], **vos_amis** [vo zami]. (In the word **yeux** the *y* is treated as a vowel: **les_yeux** [le zjø].) This phenomenon is called *liaison*. (It does not take place in the case of aspirate *h*, e.g., **les_haricots** [le ariko].)

Liaison does not take place every time a word ending in a silent consonant is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or mute *h*. There are certain cases in which liaison is obligatory; there are many others in which it is possible. In

familiar conversation, a French person usually makes only the minimum number of liaisons. As the formality of the circumstances increases (*e.g.*, in a lecture, a sermon, or the reading of poetry), a greater number of liaisons is desirable. This may be compared roughly to forms of dress, which vary according to the formality or informality of the occasion. A foreigner learning French is well advised to limit himself to the minimum number of liaisons (as indicated in the rules below) until he has acquired a certain degree of fluency.

In liaison, the consonants **s** and **x** are pronounced [z], **d** is pronounced [t], and **g** is pronounced [k]. (This last case is rare.)

Sometimes liaison involves a change in the sound of the vowel immediately preceding the liaison. This is usually the denasalization of a nasal vowel; less frequently it is a change of [e] to [ɛ]. All examples of such changes given below are marked with an asterisk.

1. There is liaison between the articles **un**, **les** (and the contracted forms **aux**, **des**) and the following word. (This also applies to the number **un**, but not to the pronoun **un**.)

un_ami	[œ nami]
les_asperges	[le zaspeʁʒ]
aux_autres	[o zo:tr]
des_hommes	[de zɔm]
un_homme (<i>et deux femmes</i>)	[œ nɔm]
BUT: J'en donnerai un_à Jean.	[ʒɑ̃ dɔnʁe œ a ʒɑ̃]

- 2a. There is liaison between an adjective (possessive, demonstrative, qualifying, *etc.*) and the following noun or adjective. (The adjective **quels**, **quelles** also links with the verb *être*.)

* mon_argent	[mɔ̃ naʁʒɑ̃] or [mɔ naʁʒɑ̃]
* mon_autre complet	[mɔ̃ notʁ kɔ̃plɛ] or [mɔ notʁ kɔ̃plɛ]
* ton_oncle	[tɔ̃ nɔ̃:kl] or [tɔ nɔ̃:kl]
* son_adresse	[sɔ̃ nadʁɛs] or [sɔ nadʁɛs]
mes_arbres	[me zaʁbʁ]
leurs_examens	[løʁ zɛgzamɛ̃]
cet_oiseau	[sɛ twazo]
ces_objets	[sɛ zɔbʒɛ]
* un_bon_exemple	[œ bɔ̃ negzɑ̃:pl]
de bons_élèves	[dɔ̃ bɔ̃ zelev]
de bonnes_intentions	[dɔ̃ bɔ̃ n zɛ̃tɑ̃sjɔ̃]
les_meilleurs_orchestres	[le mɛjœʁ zɔʁkestr]
les_meilleures_omelettes	[le mɛjœʁ zɔmlet]
un_grand_appartement	[œ grɑ̃ tapartamɑ̃]
les_grands_artistes	[le grɑ̃ zartist]
de grandes_oreilles	[dɔ̃ grɑ̃d zɔʁɛj]
un_long_hiver	[œ lɔ̃ kive:ʁ]
de longs_articles	[dɔ̃ lɔ̃ zartikl]
en_mauvais_état	[ɑ̃ mɔvɛ zeta]
les_mauvaises_habitudes	[le mɔvɛz zabityd]
* un_ancien_officier	[œ nɑ̃sjɛ nɔfisjɛ]
d'anciens_officiers	[dɑ̃sjɛ zɔfisjɛ]

d'anciennes_actrices	[dāsʝən zaktris]
*en plein_air	[ā ple nɛ:R]
*d'un certain_âge	[dœ sɛʁtɛ nɑ:ʒ]
certain_s auteurs	[sɛʁtɛ̃ zotæ:R]
certaines_opérations	[sɛʁtɛn zɔpɛrasjɔ̃]
deux_accidents	[dø zaksidā]
trois_histoires	[tʁwa zistwa:R]
cinq_avions	[sɛ̃ kavjɔ̃]
six_heures	[si zœ:R]
huit_invités	[qi tɛ̃vite]
dix_huit fois	[dizqi fwa]
vingt_assiettes	[vɛ tasjet]
quatre-vingts_ans	[katʁəvɛ zā]
cent_enveloppes	[sā tāvlɔp]
cinq cents_ouvriers	[sɛ̃ sā zuvʁi(j)e]
*le premier_étage	[lə pʁəmʝɛ ʁeta:ʒ]
les premiers_habitants	[le pʁəmʝɛ zabitā]
les premières_invitations	[le pʁəmʝɛʁ zɛvitasjɔ̃]
*un dernier_effort	[œ dɛʁnjɛ ʁefɔ:R]
les derniers_oignons	[le dɛʁnjɛ zɔɲɔ̃]
les dernières_aventures	[le dɛʁnjɛʁ zavūty:R]
quel(le)s_autres?	[kɛl zo:tr]
quel(le)s_étaient . . .?	[kɛl zɛtɛ]
aucun_avantage	[okœ navūta:ʒ]
les_autres_hôpitaux	[le zotrə zɔpito]
les mêmes_idées	[le mɛm zide]
plusieurs_exceptions	[plyzʝœʁ zɛksɛpsjɔ̃]
quelques_églises	[kɛlkə zɛgli:z]
de tels_individus	[də tɛl zɛ̃dividy]
de telles_industries	[də tɛl zɛ̃dystri]
tout_un_été	[tu tœ netɛ]

- 2b. There is no liaison of the **t** of **vingt** or **cent** in the numbers **quatre-vingt-un(e)**, **quatre-vingt-huit**, **quatre-vingt-onze**, **cent un(e)**, **cent huit**, **cent onze**, **deux cent un(e)**, **deux cent huit**, **deux cent onze**, *etc.*

quatre-vingt -un	[katʁəvɛ̃œ]
cent onze	[sā ɔ:z]

- 2c. The number **neuf** (with its compounds **dix-neuf**, **vingt-neuf**, *etc.*) is a special case. Preceding most words beginning with a vowel or mute *h*, it is pronounced [nœf], just as if it were standing alone; but its pronunciation changes when it precedes the words **ans**, **heures**, **hommes**, **autres**.

neuf_agneaux	[nœ faɲo]
neuf_ans	[nœ vā]
neuf_heures	[nœ vœ:R]
neuf_hommes	[nœ vɔm]
neuf_autres	[nœ vo:tr]

- 2d. When an adjective follows a noun there is no liaison, except in certain fixed expressions.

un garçon intelligent	[œ̃ ɡarsõ ête(l)liʒã]
des gants usés	[de ɡã yze]
BUT: un accent_aigu	[œ̃ naksũ tegy]
les États-Unis	[le zetazyɲi]
les Jeux_Olympiques	[le ʒø zɔlêpik]
les Nations_Unies	[le nasjõ zɲi]

- 3a. There is liaison between any two of the pronouns **nous, vous, ils, elles, les, on, en, y**, provided they are related to the same verb; or between one of these pronouns and a following verb.

Nous_en_avons.	[nu zã navõ]
Tu peux en_avoir.	[ty pø ã navwa:r]
Ils_y vont.	[il zi võ]
Les_aimez-vous?	[le zeme vu]
On_arrive.	[õ nar'i:v]
Conduisez-nous_y.	[kõdɥize nu zi]
Allez-vous_en.	[ale vu zã]
N'en_achetez pas.	[nã naʃte pa]
BUT: Pouvez-vous y aller?	[puve vu jale]

- 3b. There is no liaison with the pronouns **chacun, quelqu'un**, or with a noun subject.

Chacun a reçu un cadeau.	[ʃakœ a ʀəsy œ̃ kado]
Quelqu'un a téléphoné.	[kɛlkœ a telefɔne]
Jean écoute.	[ʒã ekut]
Les garçons y vont.	[le ɡarsõ i võ]
Les_enfants arrivent.	[le zãfũ ar'i:v]

- 3c. In the case of an interrogative or imperative verb form, the pronouns **nous, vous, ils, elles, les, on, en, y** do not link with a word outside the verb-pronoun group.

Avez-vous un livre?	[ave vu œ̃ li:vʀ]
Sont-ils arrivés?	[sõ til ar'ive]
Asseyez-vous ici.	[aseje vu isi]
Donnez-les à Robert.	[dɔne le a ʀɔbe:r]
Donnez-m'en un.	[dɔne mũ œ̃]
Achètes-en aujourd'hui.	[aʃet zã ozurɥi]

- 3d. There is liaison between a verb in the affirmative imperative and the pronouns **en, y**, provided the pronoun is dependent on the imperative.

Prenez-en.	[prɔne zã]
Allons-y.	[alõ zi]
BUT: Allez en_acheter.	[ale ã naʃte]

- 3e. A verb in the imperative does not link with the preposition **en**.

Dînons en ville.	[dinõ ã vil]
------------------	--------------

- 4a. There is liaison between the interrogative form of a verb in the third person and its subject **il, elle, ils, elles, on.**

finit-il?	[fini til]
invitent-elles?	[ɛvit tɛl]
répondent-elles?	[ʁepɔ̃d tɛl]
peut-on?	[pø tɔ̃]

- 4b. There is liaison between a form of the verb **être** (except **tu seras**) and a past participle.

je suis arrivé	[ʒə sɥi zaʁive]
tu es arrivé	[ty ɛ zaʁive]
il est arrivé	[il ɛ taʁive]
nous sommes arrivés	[nu sɔm zaʁive]
vous êtes arrivé(s)	[vu zɛt zaʁive]
ils sont arrivés	[il sɔ̃ taʁive]
BUT: tu seras invité	[ty sʁa ɛvite]

- 4c. There is liaison between a third person form of the verb **avoir** and a past participle. (Liaison is optional in the first and second persons; except that there is no liaison with **tu as** or **tu auras**.)

tu as été	[ty a ete]
nous avons été	[nu zavɔ̃ zete]
<i>or nous avons été</i>	[nu zavɔ̃ ete]
vous avez été	[vu zave zete]
<i>or vous avez été</i>	[vu zave ete]
ils ont été	[il zɔ̃ tete]

- 4d. Except as explained in rules 4a, 4b, and 4c, there is no liaison between a verb and a following word.

Il veut un chien.	[il vø œ̃ ʃjɛ̃]
Nous allons à Montréal.	[nu zalɔ̃ a mɔ̃ʁeal]
Il doit être fatigué.	[il dwa ɛtr fatigue]
Ils jouent ensemble.	[il ʒu œ̃sɑ̃:bl]

- 4e. However, there is liaison in the case of a third person form of **être**. (It is optional with a preposition.)

C'est un loup.	[sɛ tœ̃ lu]
Ils sont horribles.	[il sɔ̃ tɔʁibl]
Il est à Paris.	[il ɛ ta paʁi]
<i>or Il est à Paris.</i>	[il ɛ a paʁi]

5. There is liaison between the relative pronoun **dont** and a following word.

<i>(le livre)</i> dont il parle	[dɔ̃ til paʁl]
--	----------------

6. There is liaison between **rien** and an infinitive, or a past participle, or **à** plus an infinitive.

sans rien offrir	[sɑ̃ ʁjɛ̃ nɔfri:ʁ]
Il n'a rien expliqué.	[il na ʁjɛ̃ nɛksplike]
rien à manger	[ʁjɛ̃ na mɑ̃ʒe]

7. There is liaison between the indefinite pronoun **tout** and a following verb form.

Tout_est fini.	[tu tɛ fini]
Elle veut tout_avoir.	[ɛl vø tu tavwa:R]
J'ai tout_emballé.	[ʒɛ tu tãbale]
BUT: Elle achètera tout en ville.	[ɛl aʃɛtra tu ɑ̃ vil]

- 8a. There is liaison between a monosyllabic adverb and a following word, except a proper noun. (Liaison is optional with **trop**. For **bien**, **mieux**, **moins**, see rule 8b; for **quand**, see rule 10.)

pas_ici	[pa zisi]
plus_intéressant	[ply zɛtɛrɛsɑ̃]
de plus_en plus	[də ply zɑ̃ ply]
tout_à coup	[tu ta ku]
tout_à fait	[tu ta fɛ]
tout_à l'heure	[tu ta lœ:R]
très_âgé	[trɛ zaʒɛ]
trop_avare	[trɔ pava:R]
or trop avare	[trɔ ava:R]
BUT: Il ne connaît pas Alice.	[il nə kənɛ pa alis]

- 8b. There is liaison between the adverbs **bien**, **mieux**, and the following word, provided they are related. This also applies to **moins** (adverb or preposition).

bien_habillé	[bjɛ nabije]
mieux_informé	[mjø zɛfɔrmɛ]
de moins_en moins	[də mwɛ zɑ̃ mwɛ]
J'en_ai moins_envie.	[ʒɑ̃ ne mwɛ zɑ̃vi]
minuit moins_une minute	[minɥi mwɛ zyn minyt]
BUT: J'aime bien écrire.	[ʒɛm bjɛ ekri:R]
Il va mieux aujourd'hui.	[il va mjø oʒurdɥi]
Il en donne moins aux_autres.	[il ɑ̃ dɔn mwɛ o zo:tr]

9. There is liaison between a monosyllabic preposition (except **vers**) and the following word.

chez_un cousin	[ʃɛ zœ kuzɛ̃]
dans_un tiroir	[dɑ̃ zœ tirwa:R]
en_Espagne	[ɑ̃ nɛspaɲ]
en_écrivain	[ɑ̃ nekri:vɑ̃]
sans_eau	[sɑ̃ zo]
sous_une chaise	[su zyn ʃɛ:z]
BUT: vers une heure	[vɛR yn œ:R]

10. There is liaison between the conjunctions **quand**, **donc**, and the following word. (This does not apply to the interrogative adverb **quand**.)

quand_il pleut	[kɑ̃ til plø]
Il est donc_entré.	[il ɛ dɔ̃ kɑ̃trɛ]
BUT: Quand arrive-t-il?	[kɑ̃ ar'ivtil]

11. There is liaison in many fixed expressions such as **quant à** and **de temps en temps**.

quant_à moi	[kã ta mwa]
de temps_en temps	[də tã zã tã]

Appendix 20

MUTE E

The name “mute *e*” is used to designate the letter **e** in such words as **je**, **que**, **petite**, **mangeant**, **venir**. (Phonetically, the vowel in the first syllable of **faisons**, **faisant**, and **monsieur** is also a mute *e*.) In spite of its name, this letter is not always silent. The name is, therefore, inaccurate, but it continues to be used because no satisfactory substitute has ever been found.

There are certain cases in which the mute *e* must be pronounced; dropping it in those cases is a mistake in pronunciation.

1. Mute *e* is pronounced at the end of a word when the following word begins with aspirate *h*, or when the following word is **onze**. (This rule does not apply to **trente-huit**, **quarante-huit**, *etc.*; and it is optional in the case of **onze heures**.)

une hache	[ynə aʃ]
une grande haie	[yn grãdə ɛ]
un jeune héros	[œ ʒœnə ɛrɔ]
elles hurlent	[ɛlə yri]
la ligne huit	[la lijə ɥit]
Charles VIII	[ʃarlə ɥit]
Il est presque huit heures.	[il ɛ prɛskə ɥit œ:r]
le chapitre onze	[lə ʃapitrə ð:z]
entre onze heures et midi	[ãtr(ə) ðz œr ɛ midi]
BUT: trente-huit	[trãtɥit]

2. Mute *e* is pronounced at the end of a word when the following word begins with the sounds [ʀj] or [ʀw].

Ils ne vendent rien.	[il nə vãdə ʀjɛ]
le même roi	[lə mɛmə ʀwa]

3. Mute *e* is pronounced at the end of a word if dropping it would bring four (or more) consonant sounds together.

une chambre bleue	[yn ʃãbrə blø]
un artiste brillant	[œ nartistə brijã]
des arbres fruitiers	[de zarbrə frɥitje]

4. Mute *e* is usually pronounced at the end of **puisque** and **quelque(s)** if the following word begins with a consonant.

puisque vous l'avez fait	[pɥiskə vu lave fɛ]
quelque chose	[kɛlkə ʃo:z]
quelque part	[kɛlkə pa:r]
quelques personnes	[kɛlkə pɛrsɔn]

5. Mute *e* is pronounced inside a word (or group of words forming a unit) if it is preceded by two consonant sounds.

aimablement	[ɛmabləmã]
Angleterre	[ãglɛtɛ:r]
apercevoir	[apɛrsɔvwa:r]
appartement	[apartəmã]
appartenir	[apartɛni:r]
autrefois	[otrɛfwã]
autrement	[otrɛmã]
bombardement	[bɔbardəmã]
brusquement	[brɛskəmã]
confortablement	[kɔfɔrtabləmã]
contredire	[kɔtrɛdi:r]
crever	[krɛvɛ]
entreprendre	[ãtrɛprã:dr]
exactement	[ɛgzaktəmã]
gouvernement	[guvɛrnəmã]
grenier	[grɛnjɛ]
incroyablement	[ɛkrɔvajabləmã]
inévitablement	[inevitabləmã]
lisiblement	[lizibləmã]
Marguerite	[margɛrit]
mercredi	[mɛrkrɛdi]
montre-bracelet	[mɔtrɛbraslɛ]
pamplemousse	[pãpləmɔs]
pardessus	[pardɛsy]
premier	[prɛmjɛ]
probablement	[prɔbabləmã]
quatre-vingts	[katrɔvɛ]
quelquefois	[kɛlkɛfwã]
quelques-uns	[kɛlkɛzɔ̃]
simplement	[sɛpləmã]
tartelette	[tartɛlɛt]
tendrement	[tãdrɛmã]
terriblement	[tɛr'iblɛmã]
tourne-disques	[turnɛdisk]
vendredi	[vãdrɛdi]
lampe de poche	[lãp də pɔʃ]
pomme de terre	[pɔm də tɛ:r]

6. Mute *e* is pronounced inside a word if it is followed by the sounds [lj] or [nj] or [rj] or [lj].

nous appelions	[nu zapɛljɔ̃]
que vous peliez	[kə vu pɛljɛ]
nous nous souvenions	[nu nu suvɛnjɔ̃]
nous donnerions	[nu dɔnɛrjɔ̃]
vous mangeriez	[vu mãzɛrjɛ]
celui-ci	[sɛlɥisi]

The preceding rules have shown where a mute *e* must be pronounced. It does not follow, however, that all other mute *e*'s must be silent. The pronunciation or dropping of mute *e* in other cases is governed by the following general principles:

- (a) Except as indicated in the preceding rules, and except for the monosyllables **ce, de, je, le, me, ne, que, se, te**, mute *e* at the end of a word is always silent.
- (b) It is never an actual mistake to pronounce mute *e* inside a word (or group of words forming a unit), but one cannot achieve real fluency and naturalness of speech without learning to drop mute *e*'s in the places where a native speaker drops them.
- (c) It is seldom correct to drop two consecutive mute *e*'s, and never correct to drop three or more.

The following examples illustrate the dropping, inside a word (or group of words forming a unit), of mute *e* preceded by a single consonant sound. (Note that this is the reverse of rule 5 above.)

un ch(e)val	[œ ʃval]
la f(e)nêtre	[la fnɛtr]
une env(e)loppe	[yn œvlɔp]
la pâtiss(e)rie	[la patisri]
la boulang(e)rie	[la bulɑ̃ʒri]
la prom(e)nade	[la prɔmnad]
un p(e)tit garçon	[œ pti ɡarsɔ̃]
ach(e)ter	[aʃte]
app(e)ler	[aple]
vous v(e)nez	[vu vne]
tu n(e) vas pas	[tyn va pa]
j(e) vous r(e)garde	[ʒvu ʀɡard]
nous chant(e)rons	[nu ʃɑ̃trɔ̃]
vous trouv(e)rez	[vu truvʀe]
tu s(e)ras	[ty sʀa]
on arriv(e)rait	[ɔ̃ narivʀe]
mutuell(e)ment	[mytɥelmɑ̃]
tout d(e) suite	[tud sɥit]
un morceau d(e) pain	[œ mɔʀsɔd pɛ̃]
un coup d(e) téléphone	[œ kud telefɔ̃n]
mais c(e) n'est pas lui	[mɛ snɛ pa lɥi]

The following examples are guides to pronunciation in cases where there are two, three or four consecutive mute *e*'s. (It is possible to have as many as nine.) Note that in the case of two, one is pronounced and one is dropped. (As mentioned above, it is occasionally correct to drop both.) In the case of three or more, there is usually alternation.

Nous rev(e)nons.	[nu rəvnɔ̃]
Je n(e) sais pas.	[ʒən sɛ pa]
Il te r(e)ssemble.	[il tɛ ʀsɑ̃bl]
Dites-leur de l(e) prendre.	[dit lœʀ dɛl prɑ̃dr]
Tu n(e) s(e)ras pas là.	[tyn sʀa pa la]

Je n(<i>e</i>) le savais pas.	[ʒən lə save pɑ]
Je m(<i>e</i>) repose.	[ʒəm ʀəpo:z]
J(<i>e</i>) te l(<i>e</i>) vendrai.	[ʒtəl vʊdʀe]
Voilà c(<i>e</i>) que j(<i>e</i>) veux.	[vwala skə ʒvø]

Je n(<i>e</i>) le f(<i>e</i>)rai plus.	[ʒən lə fre ply]
Je n(<i>e</i>) me r(<i>e</i>)pose pas.	[ʒən mə ʀpo:z pɑ]
Je n(<i>e</i>) te l(<i>e</i>) vendrai pas.	[ʒən təl vʊdʀe pɑ]
Voilà c(<i>e</i>) que j(<i>e</i>) faisais.	[vwala skə ʒfəzɛ]

Appendix 21

VOWEL HARMONY

The phonetic transcriptions of the French-English vocabulary show the symbol [e] in certain cases where one would expect [ɛ]. For example, although **maigre**, **conseil**, and **fouet** are pronounced [mɛgr], [kɔ̃sɛ] and [fwɛ], **maigrir**, **conseiller** and **fouetter** are pronounced [megri:ʀ], [kɔ̃seʒ] and [fwetɛ]. This change from [ɛ] to [e], known as vowel harmony (*l'harmonisation vocalique*), takes place, in conversational pronunciation, because of the influence of a following [i], [e] or [y]. Some other words illustrating this phenomenon are:

aiguille	[egɥij]	araignée	[arene]	aigu	[egy]
bêtise	[beti:z]	arrêter	[ar'ete]	laitue	[lety]
saisir	[sezi:ʀ]	laitier	[letʃe]	têtu	[tety]
librairie	[librɛri]	payer	[peʒe]		

This change does not take place

- (i) if the [ɛ] is in a closed syllable, as in **Mexique** [meksik], **rester** [ʀeste], **perdu** [pɛrdy];
- (ii) if the [ɛ] is followed by *rr*, as in **atterrir** [atɛr'i:ʀ], **enverrai** [ɑvɛr'e], **serrure** [sɛr'y:ʀ];
- (iii) if the [ɛ] is followed by a mute *e*, either pronounced or silent, as in **paierai** [pɛre].

In the case of first conjugation verbs it should be noted that the [e] resulting from vowel harmony which appears in the phonetic transcription of the infinitive does not occur in all forms of the verb, since not all forms fulfil the required conditions. The forms in which this phenomenon appears, in the verb **aimer** for example, are:

the infinitive **aimer** [eme],
the past participle **aimé(e)(s)** [eme],
the second person plural of the present indicative **aimez** [eme],
the second person plural of the imperfect indicative **aimiez** [emje],
the second person plural of the present subjunctive **aimiez** [emje].

(The past historic **aimai** is not a conversational form.)

In the verbs of the second conjugation the [e] occurs in all forms since there is always an [i] in the following syllable.

In the third conjugation the problem does not arise.

In the case of irregular verbs, vowel harmony occurs in those forms which fulfil the necessary conditions, *e.g.*, **ayez**, **connaissez**, **mettrai**, **peignez**, *etc.*

Appendix 22

THE VERB: TENSE, VOICE, MOOD

Tense is the form of a verb which indicates whether a given action or state is situated in past, present, or future time. Within these general divisions, the French verb has the following tenses:

le présent	present
l'imparfait	imperfect
le passé simple	past historic
le passé composé	present perfect
le passé surcomposé	double compound present perfect
le plus-que-parfait	past perfect
le plussé antérieur	second past perfect
le futur	future
le futur antérieur	future perfect
le futur du passé	future in the past
le futur antérieur du passé	future perfect in the past

The last two in the above list, as forms of the conditional mood, are called:

le conditionnel présent	present conditional
le conditionnel passé	past conditional

Voice is the form of a verb which indicates the relation of the subject to the action. **La voix active** (active voice) indicates that the subject performs the act; **la voix passive** (passive voice) indicates that the act is performed upon the subject. In French, pronominal verbs are frequently considered as forming a separate voice, *i.e.*, **la voix pronominale** (pronominal voice), but may be considered as belonging to the active voice. (Some verbs, *e.g.*, **être**, are considered as active, although there is no real action involved.)

Mood is the form of a verb which indicates the way in which the action or state is considered. In French there are four moods: **l'indicatif** (indicative), which states a fact objectively; **le subjonctif** (subjunctive), which presents an action or state subjectively, or as an uncertainty or a mere possibility; **l'impératif** (imperative), which expresses a command; **le conditionnel** (conditional), which expresses an action or state as dependent upon the fulfilment of some condition.

Appendix 23

REGULAR VERBS
ACTIVE VOICE: SIMPLE TENSES

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
<i>Present Indicative</i>		
je donne	je finis	je vends
tu donnes	tu finis	tu vends
il donne	il finit	il vend
elle donne	elle finit	elle vend
nous donnons	nous finissons	nous vendons
vous donnez	vous finissez	vous vendez
ils donnent	ils finissent	ils vendent
elles donnent	elles finissent	elles vendent
<i>Imperfect Indicative</i>		
je donnais	je finissais	je vendais
tu donnais	tu finissais	tu vendais
il donnait	il finissait	il vendait
elle donnait	elle finissait	elle vendait
nous donnions	nous finissions	nous vendions
vous donniez	vous finissiez	vous vendiez
ils donnaient	ils finissaient	ils vendaient
elles donnaient	elles finissaient	elles vendaient
<i>Past Historic</i>		
je donnai	je finis	je vendis
tu donnas	tu finis	tu vendis
il donna	il finit	il vendit
elle donna	elle finit	elle vendit
nous donnâmes	nous finîmes	nous vendîmes
vous donnâtes	vous finîtes	vous vendîtes
ils donnèrent	ils finirent	ils vendirent
elles donnèrent	elles finirent	elles vendirent
<i>Future</i>		
je donnerai	je finirai	je vendrai
tu donneras	tu finiras	tu vendras
il donnera	il finira	il vendra
elle donnera	elle finira	elle vendra
nous donnerons	nous finirons	nous vendrons
vous donnerez	vous finirez	vous vendrez
ils donneront	ils finiront	ils vendront
elles donneront	elles finiront	elles vendront

Present Conditional (and Future in the Past)

je donnerais
tu donnerais
il donnerait
elle donnerait
nous donnerions
vous donneriez
ils donneraient
elles donneraient

je finirais
tu finirais
il finirait
elle finirait
nous finirions
vous finiriez
ils finiraient
elles finiraient

je vendrais
tu vendrais
il vendrait
elle vendrait
nous vendrions
vous vendriez
ils vendraient
elles vendraient

Present Subjunctive

que je donne
que tu donnes
qu'il donne
qu'elle donne
que nous donnions
que vous donniez
qu'ils donnent
qu'elles donnent

que je finisse
que tu finisses
qu'il finisse
qu'elle finisse
que nous finissions
que vous finissiez
qu'ils finissent
qu'elles finissent

que je vende
que tu vendes
qu'il vende
qu'elle vende
que nous vendions
que vous vendiez
qu'ils vendent
qu'elles vendent

Imperfect Subjunctive

que je donnasse
que tu donnasses
qu'il donnât
qu'elle donnât
que nous donnassions
que vous donnassiez
qu'ils donnassent
qu'elles donnassent

que je finisse
que tu finisses
qu'il finît
qu'elle finît
que nous finissions
que vous finissiez
qu'ils finissent
qu'elles finissent

que je vendisse
que tu vendisses
qu'il vendît
qu'elle vendît
que nous vendissions
que vous vendissiez
qu'ils vendissent
qu'elles vendissent

NOTE 1. **Rompre** and its compounds add the ending **-t** in the third person singular of the present indicative, *e.g.*, **il rompt, il interrompt.**

NOTE 2. Regular pronominal verbs are conjugated as shown above, with the addition of the reflexive pronouns. The following table shows the present indicative of a pronominal verb of each of the three conjugations.

je me cache
tu te caches
il se cache
elle se cache
nous nous cachons
vous vous cachez
ils se cachent
elles se cachent

je me réjouis
tu te réjouis
il se réjouit
elle se réjouit
nous nous réjouissons
vous vous réjouissez
ils se réjouissent
elles se réjouissent

je me détends
tu te détends
il se détend
elle se détend
nous nous détendons
vous vous détendez
ils se détendent
elles se détendent

ACTIVE VOICE: COMPOUND TENSES

VERBS CONJUGATED WITH *avoir**Present Perfect Indicative*

j'ai parlé
tu as parlé
il a parlé
elle a parlé
nous avons parlé
vous avez parlé
ils ont parlé
elles ont parlé

Past Perfect Indicative

j'avais parlé
tu avais parlé
il avait parlé
elle avait parlé
nous avions parlé
vous aviez parlé
ils avaient parlé
elles avaient parlé

Future Perfect

j'aurai parlé
tu auras parlé
il aura parlé
elle aura parlé
nous aurons parlé
vous aurez parlé
ils auront parlé
elles auront parlé

Perfect Subjunctive

que j'aie parlé
que tu aies parlé
qu'il ait parlé
qu'elle ait parlé
que nous ayons parlé
que vous ayez parlé
qu'ils aient parlé
qu'elles aient parlé

*Double Compound
Present Perfect Indicative*

j'ai eu parlé
tu as eu parlé
il a eu parlé
elle a eu parlé
nous avons eu parlé
vous avez eu parlé
ils ont eu parlé
elles ont eu parlé

Second Past Perfect

j'eus parlé
tu eus parlé
il eut parlé
elle eut parlé
nous eûmes parlé
vous eûtes parlé
ils eurent parlé
elles eurent parlé

*Past Conditional
(and Future Perfect in the Past)*

j'aurais parlé
tu aurais parlé
il aurait parlé
elle aurait parlé
nous aurions parlé
vous auriez parlé
ils auraient parlé
elles auraient parlé

Past Perfect Subjunctive

que j'eusse parlé
que tu eusses parlé
qu'il eût parlé
qu'elle eût parlé
que nous eussions parlé
que vous eussiez parlé
qu'ils eussent parlé
qu'elles eussent parlé

NON-PRONOMINAL VERBS CONJUGATED WITH *être**Present Perfect Indicative*

je suis entré(e)
 tu es entré(e)
 il est entré
 elle est entrée
 nous sommes entré(e)s
 vous êtes entré(e)(s)
 ils sont entrés
 elles sont entrées

Past Perfect Indicative

j'étais entré(e)
 tu étais entré(e)
 il était entré
 elle était entrée
 nous étions entré(e)s
 vous étiez entré(e)(s)
 ils étaient entrés
 elles étaient entrées

Future Perfect

je serai entré(e)
 tu seras entré(e)
 il sera entré
 elle sera entrée
 nous serons entré(e)s
 vous serez entré(e)(s)
 ils seront entrés
 elles seront entrées

Perfect Subjunctive

que je sois entré(e)
 que tu sois entré(e)
 qu'il soit entré
 qu'elle soit entrée
 que nous soyons entré(e)s
 que vous soyez entré(e)(s)
 qu'ils soient entrés
 qu'elles soient entrées

*Double Compound
Present Perfect Indicative*

j'ai été entré(e)
 tu as été entré(e)
 il a été entré
 elle a été entrée
 nous avons été entré(e)s
 vous avez été entré(e)(s)
 ils ont été entrés
 elles ont été entrées

Second Past Perfect

je fus entré(e)
 tu fus entré(e)
 il fut entré
 elle fut entrée
 nous fûmes entré(e)s
 vous fûtes entré(e)(s)
 ils furent entrés
 elles furent entrées

*Past Conditional
(and Future Perfect in the Past)*

je serais entré(e)
 tu serais entré(e)
 il serait entré
 elle serait entrée
 nous serions entré(e)s
 vous seriez entré(e)(s)
 ils seraient entrés
 elles seraient entrées

Past Perfect Subjunctive

que je fusse entré(e)
 que tu fusses entré(e)
 qu'il fût entré
 qu'elle fût entrée
 que nous fussions entré(e)s
 que vous fussiez entré(e)(s)
 qu'ils fussent entrés
 qu'elles fussent entrées

PRONOMINAL VERBS

Present Perfect Indicative

je me suis caché(e)
tu t'es caché(e)
il s'est caché
elle s'est cachée
nous nous sommes caché(e)s
vous vous êtes caché(e)(s)
ils se sont cachés
elles se sont cachées

Past Perfect Indicative

je m'étais caché(e)
tu t'étais caché(e)
il s'était caché
elle s'était cachée
nous nous étions caché(e)s
vous vous étiez caché(e)(s)
ils s'étaient cachés
elles s'étaient cachées

Future Perfect

je me serai caché(e)
tu te seras caché(e)
il se sera caché
elle se sera cachée
nous nous serons caché(e)s
vous vous serez caché(e)(s)
ils se seront cachés
elles se seront cachées

Perfect Subjunctive

que je me sois caché(e)
que tu te sois caché(e)
qu'il se soit caché
qu'elle se soit cachée
que nous nous soyons caché(e)s
que vous vous soyez caché(e)(s)
qu'ils se soient cachés
qu'elles se soient cachées

*Double Compound
Present Perfect Indicative*

je me suis eu caché(e)
tu t'es eu caché(e)
il s'est eu caché
elle s'est eu cachée
nous nous sommes eu caché(e)s
vous vous êtes eu caché(e)(s)
ils se sont eu cachés
elles se sont eu cachées

Second Past Perfect

je me fus caché(e)
tu te fus caché(e)
il se fut caché
elle se fut cachée
nous nous fûmes caché(e)s
vous vous fûtes caché(e)(s)
ils se furent cachés
elles se furent cachées

*Past Conditional
(and Future Perfect in the Past)*

je me serais caché(e)
tu te serais caché(e)
il se serait caché
elle se serait cachée
nous nous serions caché(e)s
vous vous seriez caché(e)(s)
ils se seraient cachés
elles se seraient cachées

Past Perfect Subjunctive

que je me fusse caché(e)
que tu te fusses caché(e)
qu'il se fût caché
qu'elle se fût cachée
que nous nous fussions caché(e)s
que vous vous fussiez caché(e)(s)
qu'ils se fussent cachés
qu'elles se fussent cachées

The compound tenses of the second and third conjugations are formed in the same way as those of the first, e.g., *j'ai obéi, j'avais obéi, etc.*; *j'ai entendu, j'avais entendu, etc.*

PASSIVE VOICE: SIMPLE TENSES

(The term *simple* refers here to the auxiliary verb.)*Present Indicative*

je suis invité(e)
 tu es invité(e)
 il est invité
 elle est invitée
 nous sommes invité(e)s
 vous êtes invité(e)(s)
 ils sont invités
 elles sont invitées

Imperfect Indicative

j'étais invité(e)
 tu étais invité(e)
 il était invité
 elle était invitée
 nous étions invité(e)s
 vous étiez invité(e)(s)
 ils étaient invités
 elles étaient invitées

Future

je serai invité(e)
 tu seras invité(e)
 il sera invité
 elle sera invitée
 nous serons invité(e)s
 vous serez invité(e)(s)
 ils seront invités
 elles seront invitées

Present Subjunctive

que je sois invité(e)
 que tu sois invité(e)
 qu'il soit invité
 qu'elle soit invitée
 que nous soyons invité(e)s
 que vous soyez invité(e)(s)
 qu'ils soient invités
 qu'elles soient invitées

Past Historic

je fus invité(e)
 tu fus invité(e)
 il fut invité
 elle fut invitée
 nous fûmes invité(e)s
 vous fûtes invité(e)(s)
 ils furent invités
 elles furent invitées

*Present Conditional
(and Future in the Past)*

je serais invité(e)
 tu serais invité(e)
 il serait invité
 elle serait invitée
 nous serions invité(e)s
 vous seriez invité(e)(s)
 ils seraient invités
 elles seraient invitées

Imperfect Subjunctive

que je fusse invité(e)
 que tu fusses invité(e)
 qu'il fût invité
 qu'elle fût invitée
 que nous fussions invité(e)s
 que vous fussiez invité(e)(s)
 qu'ils fussent invités
 qu'elles fussent invitées

PASSIVE VOICE: COMPOUND TENSES

(The term *compound* refers here to the auxiliary verb.)*Present Perfect Indicative*

j'ai été invité(e)
 tu as été invité(e)
 il a été invité
 elle a été invitée
 nous avons été invité(e)s
 vous avez été invité(e)(s)
 ils ont été invités
 elles ont été invitées

Past Perfect Indicative

j'avais été invité(e)
 tu avais été invité(e)
 il avait été invité
 elle avait été invitée
 nous avions été invité(e)s
 vous aviez été invité(e)(s)
 ils avaient été invités
 elles avaient été invitées

Future Perfect

j'aurai été invité(e)
 tu auras été invité(e)
 il aura été invité
 elle aura été invitée
 nous aurons été invité(e)s
 vous aurez été invité(e)(s)
 ils auront été invités
 elles auront été invitées

Perfect Subjunctive

que j'aie été invité(e)
 que tu aies été invité(e)
 qu'il ait été invité
 qu'elle ait été invitée
 que nous ayons été invité(e)s
 que vous ayez été invité(e)(s)
 qu'ils aient été invités
 qu'elles aient été invitées

*Double Compound
Present Perfect Indicative*

j'ai eu été invité(e)
 tu as eu été invité(e)
 il a eu été invité
 elle a eu été invitée
 nous avons eu été invité(e)s
 vous avez eu été invité(e)(s)
 ils ont eu été invités
 elles ont eu été invitées

Second Past Perfect

j'eus été invité(e)
 tu eus été invité(e)
 il eut été invité
 elle eut été invitée
 nous eûmes été invité(e)s
 vous eûtes été invité(e)(s)
 ils eurent été invités
 elles eurent été invitées

*Past Conditional
(and Future Perfect in the Past)*

j'aurais été invité(e)
 tu aurais été invité(e)
 il aurait été invité
 elle aurait été invitée
 nous aurions été invité(e)s
 vous auriez été invité(e)(s)
 ils auraient été invités
 elles auraient été invitées

Past Perfect Subjunctive

que j'eusse été invité(e)
 que tu eusses été invité(e)
 qu'il eût été invité
 qu'elle eût été invitée
 que nous eussions été invité(e)s
 que vous eussiez été invité(e)(s)
 qu'ils eussent été invités
 qu'elles eussent été invitées

The passive voice of the second and third conjugations is formed in the same way as that of the first, *e.g.*, **je suis choisi(e), j'étais choisi(e), etc.**; **je suis interrompu(e), j'étais interrompu(e), etc.**

IMPERATIVE

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
donne donnons donnez	finis finissons finissez	vends vendons vendez
NOTE 1. In the first conjugation, the second person singular of the affirmative imperative adds an -s when the adverbial pronoun en is joined to it, <i>e.g.</i>, manges-en. (This rule also applies to y in the rare cases where such a construction is used.) NOTE 2. Regular pronominal verbs form the imperative as shown above, with the addition of the reflexive pronoun. The following table shows the imperative forms (affirmative and negative) of a pronominal verb of each of the three conjugations.		
cache-toi cachons-nous cachez-vous	réjouis-toi réjouissons-nous réjouissez-vous	détends-toi détendons-nous détendez-vous
ne te cache pas ne nous cachons pas ne vous cachez pas	ne te réjouis pas ne nous réjouissons pas ne vous réjouissez pas	ne te détends pas ne nous détendons pas ne vous détendez pas

PRESENT INFINITIVE: ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
donner	finir	vendre
In the case of pronominal verbs, the appropriate reflexive pronoun is added, as shown in the following table:		
me cacher te cacher se cacher se cacher nous cacher vous cacher se cacher se cacher	me réjouir te réjouir se réjouir se réjouir nous réjouir vous réjouir se réjouir se réjouir	me détendre te détendre se détendre se détendre nous détendre vous détendre se détendre se détendre

PERFECT INFINITIVE: ACTIVE VOICE

VERBS CONJUGATED WITH avoir	NON-PRONOMINAL VERBS CONJUGATED WITH être	PRONOMINAL VERBS
avoir parlé	être entré(e) être entré(e) être entré être entrée être entré(e)s être entré(e)(s) être entrés être entrées	m'être caché(e) t'être caché(e) s'être caché s'être cachée nous être caché(e)s vous être caché(e)(s) s'être cachés s'être cachées
The perfect infinitives (active voice) of the second and third conjugations are formed in the same way as those of the first, <i>e.g.</i>, avoir obéi; avoir entendu; être descendu(e), <i>etc.</i>; m'être réjoui(e), <i>etc.</i>; m'être détendu(e), <i>etc.</i>		

INFINITIVES: PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT	PERFECT
être invité(e) être invité(e) être invité être invitée être invité(e)s être invité(e)(s) être invités être invitées	avoir été invité(e) avoir été invité(e) avoir été invité avoir été invitée avoir été invité(e)s avoir été invité(e)(s) avoir été invités avoir été invitées
The passive infinitives of the second and third conjugations are formed in the same way as those of the first, <i>e.g.</i>, être choisi(e), <i>etc.</i>; être interrompu(e), <i>etc.</i>; avoir été choisi(e), <i>etc.</i>; avoir été interrompu(e), <i>etc.</i>	

PRESENT PARTICIPLE: ACTIVE VOICE

FIRST CONJUGATION	SECOND CONJUGATION	THIRD CONJUGATION
donnant	finissant	vendant
In the case of pronominal verbs, the appropriate reflexive pronoun is added, as shown in the following table:		
me cachant	me réjouissant	me détendant
te cachant	te réjouissant	te détendant
se cachant	se réjouissant	se détendant
se cachant	se réjouissant	se détendant
nous cachant	nous réjouissant	nous détendant
vous cachant	vous réjouissant	vous détendant
se cachant	se réjouissant	se détendant
se cachant	se réjouissant	se détendant

PERFECT PARTICIPLE: ACTIVE VOICE

VERBS CONJUGATED WITH avoir	NON-PRONOMINAL VERBS CONJUGATED WITH être	PRONOMINAL VERBS
ayant parlé	étant entré(e) étant entré(e) étant entré étant entrée étant entré(e)s étant entré(e)(s) étant entrés étant entrées	m'étant caché(e) t'étant caché(e) s'étant caché s'étant cachée nous étant caché(e)s vous étant caché(e)(s) s'étant cachés s'étant cachées
The perfect participles (active voice) of the second and third conjugations are formed in the same way as those of the first, <i>e.g.</i>, ayant obéi; ayant entendu; étant descendu(e), <i>etc.</i>; m'étant réjoui(e), <i>etc.</i>; m'étant détendu(e), <i>etc.</i>		

PARTICIPLES: PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT	PERFECT
étant invité(e)	ayant été invité(e)
étant invité(e)	ayant été invité(e)
étant invité	ayant été invité
étant invitée	ayant été invitée
étant invité(e)s	ayant été invité(e)s
étant invité(e)(s)	ayant été invité(e)(s)
étant invités	ayant été invités
étant invitées	ayant été invitées

The participles of the passive voice of the second and third conjugations are formed in the same way as those of the first, *e.g.*, **étant choisi(e)**, *etc.*; **étant interrompu(e)**, *etc.*; **ayant été choisi(e)**, *etc.*; **ayant été interrompu(e)**, *etc.*

Appendix 24

VERBS WITH ORTHOGRAPHIC CHANGES

1. In some verbs of the first conjugation, the spelling of the stem changes under certain circumstances to conform to the pronunciation.

(a) A final **c** of the stem assumes a cedilla before an **a** or **o**. The commonest verbs which make this change are:

agacer	commencer	exercer	menacer	remplacer
annoncer	effacer	froncer	placer	renoncer
avancer	enfoncer	lancer	prononcer	rincer

<i>Present Participle</i>	<i>Present Indicative</i>	<i>Imperfect Indicative</i>
commençant	je commence tu commences il commence elle commence nous commençons vous commencez ils commencent elles commencent	je commençais tu commençais il commençait elle commençait nous commencions vous commenciez ils commençaient elles commençaient

<i>Past Historic</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>
je commençai	que je commençasse
tu commenças	que tu commençasses
il commença	qu'il commençât
elle commença	qu'elle commençât
nous commençâmes	que nous commençassions
vous commençâtes	que vous commençassiez
ils commencèrent	qu'ils commençassent
elles commencèrent	qu'elles commençassent

(b) When the stem ends in *g*, an *e* is inserted between the *g* and a following *a* or *o*. The commonest verbs which make this change are:

allonger	décourager	encourager	manger	plonger
arranger	déménager	endommager	nager	protéger
bouger	déranger	engager	négliger	ranger
changer	diriger	exiger	neiger	ranger
charger	échanger	interroger	obliger	soulager
corriger	emménager	loger	partager	voyager

Present Participle

mangeant

Present Indicative

je mange
tu manges
il mange
elle mange
nous mangeons
vous mangez
ils mangent
elles mangent

Imperfect Indicative

je mangeais
tu mangeais
il mangeait
elle mangeait
nous mangions
vous mangiez
ils mangeaient
elles mangeaient

Past Historic

je mangeai
tu mangeas
il mangea
elle mangea
nous mangeâmes
vous mangeâtes
ils mangèrent
elles mangèrent

Imperfect Subjunctive

que je mangeasse
que tu mangeasses
qu'il mangeât
qu'elle mangeât
que nous mangeassions
que vous mangeassiez
qu'ils mangeassent
qu'elles mangeassent

(c) In most verbs where the stem ends in an unaccented *e* plus a single consonant, this *e* of the stem assumes a *grave* accent when the consonant is followed by mute *e*. The commonest verbs which make this change are:

congeler	semer	amener	peser	acheter	crever
dégeler		emmener			enlever
geler		mener			lever
peler		promener			soulever
		ramener			
		surmener			

Present Indicative

j'achète
tu achètes
il achète
elle achète
nous achetons
vous achetez
ils achètent
elles achètent

Future

j'achèterai
tu achèteras
il achètera
elle achètera
nous achèterons
vous achèterez
ils achèteront
elles achèteront

Present Subjunctive

que j'achète
que tu achètes
qu'il achète
qu'elle achète
que nous achetions
que vous achetiez
qu'ils achètent
qu'elles achètent

*Present Conditional
(and Future in the Past)*

j'achèterais
tu achèterais
il achèterait
elle achèterait
nous achèterions
vous achèteriez
ils achèteraient
elles achèteraient

(d) Some verbs whose stem ends in **el** or **et** double the **l** or **t** before a mute *e*.
The commonest verbs which make this change are:

appeler
épeler
rappeler

épousseter
jeter
rejeter

Present Indicative

je jette
tu jettes
il jette
elle jette
nous jetons
vous jetez
ils jettent
elles jettent

Future

je jetterai
tu jetteras
il jettera
elle jettera
nous jetterons
vous jetterez
ils jetteront
elles jetteront

Present Subjunctive

que je jette
que tu jettes
qu'il jette
qu'elle jette
que nous jetions
que vous jetiez
qu'ils jettent
qu'elles jettent

*Present Conditional
(and Future in the Past)*

je jetterais
tu jetterais
il jetterait
elle jetterait
nous jetterions
vous jetteriez
ils jetteraient
elles jetteraient

(e) When the stem ends in *é* plus a consonant, the *é* changes to *è* in the present indicative and subjunctive when the consonant is followed by mute *e*. (In the future and conditional, the *é* is retained but is pronounced as *è*.) The commonest verbs which make this change are:

céder	digérer	opérer	protéger	sécher
célébrer	espérer	posséder	régner	succéder
compléter	exagérer	précéder	répéter	suggérer
considérer	inquiéter	préférer	révéler	tolérer
désespérer				

Present Indicative

j'espère
tu espères
il espère
elle espère
nous espérons
vous espérez
ils espèrent
elles espèrent

Present Subjunctive

que j'espère
que tu espères
qu'il espère
qu'elle espère
que nous espérions
que vous espériez
qu'ils espèrent
qu'elles espèrent

2. In verbs whose stem ends in *ay*, there is an optional change of *y* to *i* before a mute *e*. The two spellings correspond to two pronunciations: e.g., **je paye** [pɛ], **je payerai** [pɛjɛ]; **je paie** [pɛ], **je paierai** [pɛɛ]. The commonest verbs which make this change are:

balayer
bégayer
effrayer

essayer
pagayer
payer

Present Indicative

je paye	je paie
tu payes	tu paies
il paye	il paie
elle paye	elle paie
nous payons	nous payons
vous payez	vous payez
ils payent	ils paient
elles payent	elles paient

Present Subjunctive

que je paye	que je paie
que tu payes	que tu paies
qu'il paye	qu'il paie
qu'elle paye	qu'elle paie
que nous payions	que nous payions
que vous payiez	que vous payiez
qu'ils payent	qu'ils paient
qu'elles payent	qu'elles paient

Future

je payerai	je paierai
tu payeras	tu paieras
il payera	il paiera
elle payera	elle paiera
nous payerons	nous paierons
vous payerez	vous paierez
ils payeront	ils paieront
elles payeront	elles paieront

*Present Conditional
(and Future in the Past)*

je payerais	je paierais
tu payerais	tu paierais
il payerait	il paierait
elle payerait	elle paierait
nous payerions	nous paierions
vous payeriez	vous paieriez
ils payeraient	ils paieraient
elles payeraient	elles paieraient

3. In verbs whose stem ends in **oy** or **uy**, the **y** changes to **i** before a mute *e*. (Note that this change is obligatory.) The commonest verbs which make this change are:

aboyer
employer
nettoyer
noyer

appuyer
ennuyer
essuyer

Present Indicative

je nettoie
tu nettoies
il nettoie
elle nettoie
nous nettoyons
vous nettoyez
ils nettoient
elles nettoient

Present Subjunctive

que je nettoie
que tu nettoies
qu'il nettoie
qu'elle nettoie
que nous nettoyions
que vous nettoyez
qu'ils nettoient
qu'elles nettoient

Future

je nettoierai
tu nettoieras
il nettoiera
elle nettoiera
nous nettoierons
vous nettoierez
ils nettoieront
elles nettoieront

*Present Conditional
(and Future in the Past)*

je nettoierais
tu nettoierais
il nettoierait
elle nettoierait
nous nettoierions
vous nettoieriez
ils nettoieraient
elles nettoieraient

Appendix 25

IRREGULAR VERBS

1. **abstenir** (s') like **tenir** (100), but conjugated with **être**

2. **admettre** like **mettre** (53)

3. aller	allant	allé	vais	allai
irai	allais			allasse
irais	aille			

Pres. Ind.: **vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont**

Pres. Sub.: **aille, ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent**

Imperative: **va** (*but*: **vas-y**), **allons, allez**

4. **apercevoir** like **recevoir** (71)

5. **apparaître** like **connaître** (16), but conjugated with **être**

6. **appartenir** like **tenir** (100)

7. apprendre like prendre (67)

8. asseoir	asseyant	assis	assieds	assis
assiérai	asseyais			assisse
assiérais	asseye			

Pres. Ind.: assieds, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent

Pres. Sub.: asseye, asseyes, asseye, asseyions, asseyiez, asseyent

or

asseoir	asseyant	assis	assois	assis
assoirai	asseyais			assisse
assoirais	asseye			

Pres. Ind.: assois, assois, assoit, asseyons, asseyez, assoient

Pres. Sub.: asseye, asseyes, asseye, asseyions, asseyiez, asseyent

9. avoir	ayant	eu	ai	eus
aurai	avais			eusse
aurais	aie			

Pres. Ind.: ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont

Pres. Sub.: aie, aies, ait, ayons, ayez, aient

Imperative: aie, ayons, ayez

10. battre	battant	battu	bats	battis
battrai	battais			battisse
battrais	batte			

Pres. Ind.: bats, bats, bat, battons, battez, battent

11. boire	buvant	bu	bois	bus
boirai	buvais			busse
boirais	boive			

Pres. Ind.: bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent

Pres. Sub.: boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent

12. bouillir	bouillant	bouilli	bous	bouillis
bouillirai	bouillais			bouillisse
bouillirais	bouille			

Pres. Ind.: bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent

13. commettre like mettre (53)

14. comprendre like prendre (67)

15. conduire	conduisant	conduit	conduis	conduisis
conduirai	conduisais			conduisisse
conduirais	conduise			

Pres. Ind.: conduis, conduis, conduit, conduisons, conduisez, conduisent

16. connaître	connaissant	connu	connais	connus
connaîtrai	connaissais			connusse
connaîtrais	connaisse			

Pres. Ind.: connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent

17. **consentir** like **sentir** (91)

18. **construire** like **conduire** (15)

19. contredire	contredisant	contredit	contredis	contredis
contredirai	contredisais			contredisse
contredirais	contredise			

Pres. Ind.: contredis, contredis, contredit, contredisons, contredisez, contredisent

20. **convaincre** like **vaincre** (103)

21. **convenir** like **venir** (105), but conjugated with **avoir**

22. coudre	cousant	cousu	couds	cousis
coudrai	cousais			cousisse
coudrais	couse			

Pres. Ind.: couds, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent

23. courir	courant	couru	cours	courus
courrai	courais			courusse
courrais	coure			

Pres. Ind.: cours, cours, court, courons, courez, courent

24. **couvrir** like **ouvrir** (57)

25. craindre	craignant	craint	crains	craignis
craindrai	craignais			craignisse
craindrais	craigne			

Pres. Ind.: crains, crains, craint, craignons, craignez, craignent

26. croire	croyant	cru	crois	crus
croirai	croyais			crusse
croirais	croie			

Pres. Ind.: crois, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient

Pres. Sub.: croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient

27. cueillir	cueillant	cueilli	cueille	cueillis
cueillerai	cueillais			cueillisse
cueillerais	cueille			

Pres. Ind.: cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillons, cueillez, cueillent

Imperative: cueille (*but:* cueilles-en), cueillons, cueillez

28. cuire	cuisant	cuit	cuis	cuisis
cuirai	cuisais			cuisisse
cuirais	cuise			

Pres. Ind.: cuis, cuis, cuit, cuisons, cuisez, cuisent

29. **décevoir** like **recevoir** (71)

30. **découvrir** like **ouvrir** (57)

31. **décrire** like **écrire** (38)

32. détruire like conduire (15)

33. devenir like venir (105)

34. devoir	devant	dû	dois	du
devrai	devais			du
devrais	doive			du

Pres. Ind.: dois, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent

Pres. Sub.: doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent

Past Participle: dû, due, dus, dues

35. dire	disant	dit	dis	dis
dirai	disais			disse
dirais	dise			

Pres. Ind.: dis, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent

36. disparaître like connaître (16)

37. dormir	dormant	dormi	dors	dormis
dormirai	dormais			dormisse
dormirais	dorme			

Pres. Ind.: dors, dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment

38. écrire	écrivant	écrit	écris	écrit
écrirai	écrivais			écrivisse
écrirais	écrive			

Pres. Ind.: écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent

39. élire like lire (51)

40. endormir like dormir (37)

41. enfuir (s') like fuir (48), but conjugated with être

42. entreprendre like prendre (67)

43. envoyer	envoyant	envoyé	envoie	envoyai
enverrai	envoyais			envoyasse
enverrais	envoie			

Pres. Ind.: envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient

Pres. Sub.: envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions, envoyiez, envoient

Imperative: envoie (*but:* envoies-y, envoies-en), envoyons, envoyez

44. éteindre like peindre (60)

45. être	étant	été	suis	fus
serai	étais			fusse
serais	sois			

Pres. Ind.: suis, es, est, sommes, êtes, sont

Pres. Sub.: sois, sois, soit, soyons, soyez, soient

Imperative: sois, soyons, soyez

46. faire faisant fait fais fis
ferai faisais fisse
ferais fasse
- Pres. Ind. : fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font*
47. falloir ——— fallu il faut il fallut
il faudra il fallait il fallût
il faudrait il faille
48. fuir fuyant fui fuis fuis
fuirai fuyais fuisse
fuirais fuie
- Pres. Ind. : fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient*
Pres. Sub. : fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient
49. interdire like contredire (19)
50. joindre joignant joint joins joignis
joindrai joignais joignisse
joindrais joigne
- Pres. Ind. : joins, joins, joint, joignons, joignez, joignent*
51. lire lisant lu lis lus
lirai lisais lusse
lirais lise
- Pres. Ind. : lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent*
52. mentir like sentir (91)
53. mettre mettant mis mets mis
mettrai mettais misse
mettrais mette
- Pres. Ind. : mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent*
54. mourir mourant mort meurs mourus
mourrai mourais mourusse
mourrais meure
- Pres. Ind. : meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent*
Pres. Sub. : meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent
55. naître naissant né nais naquis
naîtrai naissais naquisse
naîtrais naisse
- Pres. Ind. : nais, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent*
56. offrir offrant offert offre offris
offrirai offrais offrisse
offrirais offre
- Pres. Ind. : offre, offres, offre, offrons, offrez, offrent*
Imperative : offre (but: offres-en), offrons, offrez

57.	ouvrir	ouvrant	ouvert	ouvre	ouvrís
	ouvrirai	ouvrais			ouvrísse
	ouvrirais	ouvre			

Pres. Ind.: ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent

Imperative: ouvre (*but: ouvres-en*), ouvrons, ouvrez

58. paraître like connaître (16)

59.	partir	partant	parti	pars	partis
	partirai	partais			partisíse
	partirais	parte			

Pres. Ind.: pars, pars, part, partons, partez, partent

60.	peindre	peignant	peint	peins	peignís
	peindrai	peignais			peignísse
	peindrais	peigne			

Pres. Ind.: peins, peins, peint, peignons, peignez, peignent

61. permettre like mettre (53)

62. plaindre like craindre (25)

63.	plaíre	plaisant	plu	plais	plus
	plairai	plaisais			plusse
	plairais	plaise			

Pres. Ind.: plais, plais, plaît, plaísons, plaísez, plaísent

64.	pleuvoir	pleuvant	plu	il pleut	il plut
	il pleuvra	il pleuvait			il plût
	il pleuvrait	il pleuve			

65. poursuivre like suivre (98)

66.	pouvoir	pouvant	pu	peux	pus
	pourrai	pouvais			pusse
	pourrais	puisse			

Pres. Ind.: peux (*or puis*), peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent

67.	prendre	prenant	pris	prends	pris
	prendrai	prenais			prisíse
	prendrais	prenne			

Pres. Ind.: prends, prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent

Pres. Sub.: prenne, prennés, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent

68.	prévoir	prévoyant	prévu	prévoís	prévis
	prévoirai	prévoyais			prévisíse
	prévoírais	prévoíe			

Pres. Ind.: prévoís, prévoís, prévoít, prévoyons, prévoyez, prévoíent

Pres. Sub.: prévoíe, prévoíes, prévoíe, prévoyions, prévoyiez, prévoíent

69. promettre like mettre (53)

70. **rasseoir** like **asseoir** (8)

71.	recevoir	recevant	reçu	reçois	reçus
	recevrai	recevais			reçusse
	recevrais	reçoive			

Pres. Ind.: reçois, reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent

Pres. Sub.: reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent

72. **reconnaître** like **connaître** (16)

73. **recoudre** like **coudre** (22)

74. **refaire** like **faire** (46)

75. **rejoindre** like **joindre** (50)

76. **relire** like **lire** (51)

77. **remettre** like **mettre** (53)

78. **renvoyer** like **envoyer** (43)

79. **repartir** like **partir** (59)

80. **repeindre** like **peindre** (60)

81. **repleuvoir** like **pleuvoir** (64)

82. **reprendre** like **prendre** (67)

83.	résoudre	résolvant	résolu	résous	résolus
	résoudrai	résolvais			résolusse
	résoudrais	résolve			

Pres. Ind.: résous, résous, résout, résolvons, résolvez, résolvent

84. **ressortir** like **sortir** (93)

85. **retenir** like **tenir** (100)

86. **revenir** like **venir** (105)

87. **revoir** like **voir** (107)

88.	rire	riant	ri	ris	ris
	rirai	riais			risse
	rirais	rie			

Pres. Ind.: ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient

Pres. Sub.: rie, ries, rie, riions, riiez, rient

89. **satisfaire** like **faire** (46)

90.	savoir	sachant	su	sais	sus
	saurai	savais			susse
	saurais	sache			

Pres. Ind.: sais, sais, sait, savons, savez, savent

Imperative: sache, sachons, sachez

91.	sentir	sentant	senti	sens	sentis
	sentirai	sentais			sentisse
	sentirais	sente			

Pres. Ind.: sens, sens, sent, sentons, sentez, sentent

92.	servir	servant	servi	sers	servis
	servirai	servais			servisse
	servirais	serve			

Pres. Ind.: sers, sers, sert, servons, servez, servent

93.	sortir	sortant	sorti	sors	sortis
	sortirai	sortais			sortisse
	sortirais	sorte			

Pres. Ind.: sors, sors, sort, sortons, sortez, sortent

94. souffrir like offrir (56)

95. sourire like rire (88)

96. souvenir (se) like venir (105)

97.	suffire	suffisant	suffi	suffis	suffis
	suffirai	suffisais			suffisse
	suffirais	suffise			

Pres. Ind.: suffis, suffis, suffit, suffisons, suffisez, suffisent

98.	suivre	suivant	suivi	suis	suivis
	suivrai	suivais			suivisse
	suivrais	suive			

Pres. Ind.: suis, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent

99.	taire	taisant	tu	tais	tus
	tairai	taisais			tusse
	tairais	taise			

Pres. Ind.: tais, tais, tait, taisons, taisez, taisent

100.	tenir	tenant	tenu	tiens	tins
	tiendrai	tenais			tinsse
	tiendrais	tienne			

Pres. Ind.: tiens, tiens, tient, tenons, tenez, tiennent

Pres. Sub.: tienne, tiennes, tienne, tenions, teniez, tiennent

Past Hist.: tins, tins, tint, tîmes, tîntes, tinrent

Impf. Sub.: tinsse, tinsses, tînt, tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent

101. traduire like conduire (15)

102.	traire	trayant	trait	trais	_____
	trairai	trayais			_____
	trairais	traie			

Pres. Ind.: traie, traie, traie, trayons, trayez, traient

Pres. Sub.: traie, traies, traie, trayons, trayiez, traient

103.	vaincre vaincrai vaincrais	vainquant vainquais vainque	vaincu	vaincs	vainquis vainquisse
------	---	--	---------------	---------------	--------------------------------------

Pres. Ind.: vaincs, vaincs, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent

104.	valoir vaudrai vaudrais	valant valais vaille	valu	vaux	valus valusse
------	--	---	-------------	-------------	--------------------------------

Pres. Ind.: vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent

Pres. Sub.: vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent

105.	venir viendrai viendrais	venant venais vienne	venu	viens	vins vinsse
------	---	---	-------------	--------------	------------------------------

Pres. Ind.: viens, viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent

Pres. Sub.: vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, veniez, viennent

Past Hist.: vins, vins, vint, vînmes, vîntes, vinrent

Impf. Sub.: vinsse, vinsses, vînt, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent

106.	vivre vivrai vivrais	vivant vivais vive	vécu	vis	vécus vécusse
------	---	---	-------------	------------	--------------------------------

Pres. Ind.: vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent

107.	voir verrai verrais	voyant voyais voie	vu	vois	vis visse
------	--	---	-----------	-------------	----------------------------

Pres. Ind.: vois, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient

Pres. Sub.: voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient

108.	vouloir voudrai voudrais	voulant voulais veuille	voulu	veux	voulus voulusse
------	---	--	--------------	-------------	----------------------------------

Pres. Ind.: veux, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent

Pres. Sub.: veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veuillent

Vocabularies

- NOTE 1. The phonetic transcriptions in this vocabulary are based on **TRAITÉ DE PRONONCIATION FRANÇAISE** by Pierre Fouché (Librairie C. Klincksieck, Paris, 1956).
- NOTE 2. The letters *h.v.* which appear in brackets following the phonetic transcription of certain infinitives, *e.g.*, **aider**, **aimer**, stand for *harmonisation vocalique*. For an explanation of this phenomenon, see Appendix 21, page 311.
- NOTE 3. When the definite article forms part of the name of a city, as in **Le Havre**, **La Havane**, *etc.*, the gender of the name is obvious. In the case of names of cities not including the definite article, there is no fixed rule for gender. One often finds examples of a name treated as masculine by one author and feminine by another. As there is, however, in simple conversation, a tendency to treat all such names of cities as masculine, they are so shown in this vocabulary.

French-English Vocabulary

A

abandonner [abūdāne] to give up
 une **abeille** [abej] bee
abîmer [abime] to injure, to damage
abondamment [abōdamū] abundantly
abondant, -e [abōdā, -ā:t] abundant
 un **abord** [abō:r] access; **d'abord** first; **tout d'abord** first of all
aboyer [abwaje] (*il aboie*) to bark;
aboyer après to bark at
Abraham [abraam] Abraham
 un **abricot** [abriko] apricot
 une **absence** [apsū:s] absence
absent, -e [apsū, -ā:t] absent
absolu, -e [apsōly] absolute
absolument [apsōlymū] absolutely, simply; **vouloir absolument** to insist
abstenir [apstēni:r]: **s'abstenir** to abstain, to refrain
abstrait, -e [apstre, -et] abstract
l'acajou [akaʒu] *m.* mahogany
 un **accent** [aksā] accent
accepter [aksepte] to accept, to agree, to consent
 un **accident** [aksidū] accident; un **accident d'auto** (*pl.* accidents d'auto) car accident
accompagner [akōpane] to accompany, to come (*or* go) with
 un **accord** [akō:r] agreement; **être d'accord** to agree
accorder [akorde] to tune; **s'accorder** to agree
accrocher [akrōʃe] to hook; **s'accrocher** to cling
accuser [akyze] to accuse
 un **achat** [aʃa] purchase
acheter [aʃte] (*j'achète*) to buy
 un **acheteur** [aʃtœ:r] buyer

l'acier [asje] *m.* steel
 un **acte** [akt] act
 un **acteur** [aktœ:r] actor
actif, -ive [aktif, -i:v] active, busy
 une **action** [aksjō] share
 une **actrice** [aktris] actress
Adam [adū] Adam
 un **adjoint** [adʒwē] deputy mayor
admettre [admɛtr] to admit, to assume
admirer [admire] to admire
adopter [adōpte] to adopt
adorer [adōre] to adore, to love
 une **adresse** [adres] address
adresser [adrese] (*h.v.*) to address; **s'adresser** to apply
 un **aéroport** [aerōpō:r] airport
 une **affaire** [afe:r] affair; les **affaires** belongings, business; un **homme d'affaires** businessman; **s'occuper de ses affaires** to mind one's own business; **en voyage d'affaires** on a business trip; **avoir affaire à** to have to deal with
 une **affiche** [afiʃ] poster
affirmatif, -ive [afirmatif, -i:v] affirmative
affirmer [afirme] to assure, to assert
l'affluence [aflyũ:s] *f.* crowd;
l'heure d'affluence (*pl.* heures d'affluence) rush hour
afin [afē]: **afin de** in order to; **afin que** in order that, so that
africain, -e [afrikē, -en] African
l'Afrique [afrik] *f.* Africa; **l'Afrique du Nord** North Africa; **l'Afrique du Sud** South Africa
agacer [agase] (*nous agaçons*) to annoy
 un **âge** [a:ʒ, a:ʒ] age; **Quel âge a-t-elle?** How old is she?
âgé, -e [aʒe, aʒe] old
 un **agent** [aʒū] agent; un **agent de**

- police** (*pl. agents de police*) policeman
agir [aʒi:R] to act; **il s'agit de** it is a question of; **De quoi s'agit-il?** What is it all about? **il s'agit de savoir si . . .** the question is whether . . .
agiter [aʒite] to excite, to wave; **s'agiter** to get (all) wrought up
 un **agneau**, -x [aɲo] lamb
agrandir [agrɑ̃di:R] to enlarge
agréable [agreabl] pleasant
aider [ede] (*h.v.*) to help
aigu, **aiguë** [egy] acute
 une **aiguille** [eguij] needle
aiguiser [egize] to sharpen (*a knife, etc.*)
l'ail [aj] *m.* garlic
 une **aile** [el] wing
ailleurs [ajœ:R] elsewhere; **partout ailleurs** anywhere (*or everywhere*) else; **nulle part ailleurs** nowhere else
aimable [emabl] pleasant, amiable
aimablement [emabləmɑ̃] pleasantly, amiably
aimer [eme] (*h.v.*) to like, to love; **aimer beaucoup** to be very fond of; **aimer autant** to like as well; **aimer mieux** to prefer
aîné, -e [ene] older, oldest
 un **air** [ɛ:R] appearance, air, tune; **avoir l'air** to look, to seem, to look as if one were; **en plein air** in the open air
l'aise [ɛ:z] *f.* ease; **à l'aise** comfortable, at ease
ajouter [aʒute] to add
Alain [alɛ̃] Alan
l'Alaska [alaska] *m.* Alaska
albanais, -e [albanɛ, -ɛ:z] Albanian
l'Albanie [albani] *f.* Albania
Albert [albɛ:R] Albert
l'Alberta [albɛrta] *m.* Alberta
Albion [albjiɔ̃] *f.* Albion
l'algèbre [alzɛbr] *f.* algebra
Alger [alzɛ] *m.* Algiers
l'Algérie [alzɛri] *f.* Algeria
algérien, -ienne [alzɛrjɛ̃, -jɛn] Algerian
Alice [alis] Alice
 un **aliment** [alimɑ̃] food
l'Allemagne [alman] *f.* Germany
allemand, -e [almɑ̃, -ɑ̃:d] German
aller [ale] to go, to suit; **aller à pied** to walk; **aller chercher** to go and get, to go for; **Comment va-t-il?** How is he?; **s'en aller** to go away
allô [alo] hello (*on telephone*)
allonger [alɔ̃ʒe] (*nous allongeons*) to stretch out; **s'allonger** to lie down
allumer [alyme] to light
 une **allumette** [alymɛt] match
alors [alo:R] then, so
les Alpes [alp] *f.* the Alps
 un **alphabet** [alfabɛ] alphabet
Alphonse [alfɔ̃:s] *proper noun*
l'aluminium [alyminjəm] *m.* aluminum (i)um
 une **amande** [amɑ̃:d] almond
 un **amandier** [amɑ̃dje] almond tree
l'Amazone [amazɔn] *m.* the Amazon
 une **ambition** [ɑ̃biʒjɔ̃] ambition
amener [amne] (*j'amène*) to bring
amer, -ère [amɛ:R] bitter
américain, -e [amerikɛ̃, -ɛn] American
l'Amérique [amerik] *f.* America; **l'Amérique du Nord** North America; **l'Amérique du Sud** South America; **l'Amérique centrale** Central America
 un **ami**, une **amie** [ami] friend
 une **ampoule** [ɑ̃pul] (light) bulb
amusant, -e [amyzɑ̃, -ɑ̃:t] amusing
amuser [amyze] to amuse; **s'amuser** to amuse oneself, to pass the time; **s'amuser bien** to have a good time, to enjoy oneself
 un **an** [ɑ̃] year; **le jour de l'an** New Year's Day
 un **ananas** [anana] pineapple

ancien, -ienne [ɑ̃sjɛ̃, -jɛn] **an-**
cient, former, old
André [ɑ̃dʁe] Andrew
anglais, -e [ɑ̃gle, -ɛ:z] English
un **angle** [ɑ̃gl] angle
l'**Angleterre** [ɑ̃glɛtɛ:ʁ] *f.* England
Anne [an, ɑ:n] Anne
une **année** [ane] year
un **anniversaire** [anivɛʁsɛ:ʁ] anni-
versary, birthday
une **annonce** [anɔ̃s:] announcement,
advertisement
annoncer [anɔ̃se] (*nous annonçons*)
to announce, to forecast
antarctique [ɑ̃tarktik] Antarctic
antérieur, -e [ɑ̃tɛʁjɔ:ʁ] anterior;
le **futur antérieur** future per-
fect; le **futur antérieur du**
passé future perfect in the past;
le **passé antérieur** second past
perfect
une **antiquité** [ɑ̃tikite] antique
août [u] *m.* August
apercevoir [apɛʁsɔvwa:ʁ] to catch
sight of, to perceive; **s'aperce-**
voir de to notice
une **apostrophe** [apostrɔf] apostrophe
apparaître [apareʁtʁ] to appear
un **appareil** [aparej] apparatus; un
appareil photographique ca-
mera
une **apparence** [aparɑ̃:s] appearance
un **appartement** [apartəmɑ̃] apart-
ment
appeler [aple] (*j'appelle*) to call;
s'appeler to be called; **Com-**
ment s'appelle(nt) . . . ? What
is the name of . . . ?
un **appétit** [apeti] appetite; **mettre**
qn en appétit to give s.o. an
appetite, to whet s.o.'s appetite
applaudir [aplodi:ʁ] to applaud
apporter [apɔʁte] to bring, to
take
apprendre [apʁɑ̃:dr] to learn, to
teach, (*of news*) to hear
approcher [apʁɔʃe] to bring
near; **s'approcher** to come
near, to approach

approximatif, -ive [apʁɔksimatif,
-i:v] approximate
appuyer [apɥije] (*j'appuie*) to lean,
to support
après [apʁe] after; **après que**
after; **d'après** according to;
Et (puis) après? So what?
après-demain [apʁɛdmɛ̃] the day
after tomorrow
un **après-midi** [apʁɛmidi] (*invar.*)
afternoon; **l'après-midi** in the
afternoon
arabe [arab] Arab, Arabian
l'**Arabie** [arabi] *f.* Arabia
une **araignée** [arene] spider
un **arbitre** [arbitʁ] referee, umpire
un **arbre** [arbr] tree
un **arbuste** [arbyst] shrub
un **architecte** [arʃitekt] architect
arctique [arktik] Arctic
une **arête** [aret] (fish) bone
l'**argent** [arʒɑ̃] *m.* silver, money
l'**argenterie** [arʒɑ̃tʁi] *f.* silverware
argentin, -e [arʒɑ̃tɛ̃, -tin] Ar-
gentine
l'**Argentine** [arʒɑ̃tin] *f.* Argentina
un **argument** [argymɑ̃] argument
Armand [armɑ̃] *proper noun*
une **armée** [arme] army
un **armistice** [armistis] armistice
arracher [arɑʃe] to pull out, to
snatch
arranger [arɑ̃ʒe] (*nous arrangeons*)
to arrange, to fix; **s'arranger** to
manage
un **arrêt** [arɛ] stop
arrêter [arɛte] (*h.v.*) to stop, to
arrest; **ne pas arrêter de . . .** to
be always . . . ; **s'arrêter** to stop
une **arrière-grand-mère** (*pl.* **arrière-**
grand-mères) [arjɛʁɡʁɑ̃mɛ:ʁ]
great-grandmother
une **arrivée** [arive] arrival
arriver [arive] to arrive, to hap-
pen; **arriver à** to get to, to reach,
to manage to, to succeed in
un **arrosage** [arɔza:ʒ] watering,
spraying
arroser [arɔze] to water, to spray

- un **article** [artikl] article
artificiel, -ielle [artifisjel] artificial
l'artiste [artist] *m.f.* artist
un **ascenseur** [asœsœ:R] elevator
l'Ascension [asœsjɔ̃] *f.* Ascension Day
asiatique [azjatik] Asiatic
l'Asie [azi] *f.* Asia
les **asperges** [aspɛʁʒ] *f.* asparagus
un **aspirateur** [aspiratœ:R] vacuum-cleaner
l'aspirine [aspirin] *f.* aspirin
un **assassin** [asasɛ̃] murderer
assassiner [asasine] to assassinate, to murder
asseoir [aswa:R] to seat; **s'asseoir** to sit down; **faire asseoir qn** to ask s.o. to be seated
assez [asɛ] enough, rather; **j'en ai assez de . . .** I'm tired of . . .
une **assiette** [asjet] plate
assis, -e [asi, -i:z] seated, sitting
assister [asiste] to help; **assister à** to attend
l'Assomption [asɔ̃psjɔ̃] *f.* (the Feast of) the Assumption
assurer [asyʁɛ] to assure
Athènes [atɛn] *m.* Athens
un **athlète** [atlet] athlete
l'Atlantique [atlâtik] *m.* the Atlantic
attacher [ataʃɛ] to attach, to tie
une **attaque** [atak] attack
attaquer [atake] to attack
attendre [atũ:dr] to wait (for), to expect; **faire attendre qn** to keep s.o. waiting; **s'attendre à** to expect
l'attention [atãsjɔ̃] *f.* attention; **faire attention** to pay attention, to be careful, to mind
atterrir [ateri:R] to land
attirer [atire] to attract
une **attitude** [atityd] attitude
attraper [atrape] to catch; **attraper un coup de soleil** to get sunburned
une **aubergine** [oberʒin] eggplant
aucun, -e [okœ, okyn] no, none
une **augmentation** [ɔgmãtasjɔ̃] raise
augmenter [ɔgmãte] to increase; **être augmenté(e)** to get a raise
aujourd'hui [oʒurdi] today
auparavant [oparavã] before
aussi [osi] also, too, therefore, so; **(Et) moi aussi** So am (do, etc.) I;
aussi . . . que as . . . as
l'Australie [ɔstrali] *f.* Australia
australien, -ienne [ɔstraljɛ̃, -jen] Australian
autant [otũ] as much, as many; **en faire autant** to do the same; **autant (vaut)** one may as well
un **auteur** [otœ:R] author
une **auto** [ɔto, oto] car
un **autobus** [ɔtɔ-, otɔbys] (*city*) bus
un **autocar** [ɔtɔ-, otɔka:R] (*interurban*) bus
un **automne** [otɔn] autumn
autour [otur]: **autour de** around
autre [otr] other
autre chose [otrɔ ʃo:z] *m.* something else, anything else
autrefois [otrɔfwa] formerly, once
autrement [otrɛmũ] otherwise
l'Autriche [otriʃ] *f.* Austria
autrichien, -ienne [otriʃjɛ̃, -jen] Austrian
aval [avale] to swallow
avancer [avũse] (*nous avançons*) to put forward, to stretch out, (*of a clock*) to be fast
avant [avũ] before; **avant de** before; **avant que** before; **avant tout** above all; **d'avant-guerre** pre-war; **le mois d'avant** the month before
un **avantage** [avũta:ʒ] advantage
avant-hier [avũtje:R] the day before yesterday
avare [ava:R] stingy
avec [avɛk] with
l'avenir [avni:R] *m.* future
une **aventure** [avũty:R] adventure
une **averse** [avɛʁs] shower
aveugle [avœgl] blind
aveuglément [avœglemũ] blindly

un **aviateur** [avjatœ:R] airman
 un **avion** [avjɔ̃] (air)plane
 un **avis** [avi] opinion; à **mon avis** in my opinion; **changer d'avis** to change one's mind; **être de l'avis de** to agree with
 un **avocat** [avoka] lawyer
 l'**avoine** [avwan] *f.* oats
avoir [avwa:R] to have, to get;
Qu'est-ce que vous avez? What's the matter with you?
Qu'est-ce qu'il y a? What's the matter? **il y a** there is, there are; **il y a trois jours** three days ago; **il y a de cela un an** that was a year ago; **avoir beau** (*faire*) to (*do*) in vain
avouer [avwe] to confess
avril [avril] *m.* April

B

le **baccalauréat** [bakalœrea] matriculation
 les **bagages** [baga:ʒ] *m.* baggage
 la **bague** [bag] ring
 la **baie** [be] bay
baigner [bepe] (*h.v.*) to bathe; **se baigner** to bathe, to take a bath, to go (in) swimming
 la **aignoire** [beɲwa:R] bath-tub
bâiller [baʒe] to yawn
 le **bain** [bɛ̃] bath
baïsser [bese] (*h.v.*) to lower
 le **bal** [bal] dance
 le **balai** [bale] broom
balayer [baleʒe] (*h.v.*) (*je balaye, je balaie*) to sweep
 la **balle** [bal] ball (*golf, tennis, etc.*)
 le **ballon** [balɔ̃] ball (*football, basketball, etc.*)
 la **banane** [banan] banana
 le **banc** [bɑ̃] bench
 la **banlieue** [bɑ̃ljœ] suburbs
 la **banque** [bɑ̃:k] bank
barrer [ba:ʁe] to block, to close
bas, basse [ba, ba:s] low
 le **bas** [ba] stocking, lower part; **en bas** downstairs

le **base-ball** [bezbo:l] baseball
 la **Bastille** [bastij] the Bastille
 la **bataille** [bata:j] battle
 le **bateau, -x** [bato] boat
 le **bâton** [batɔ̃] stick
battre [batʁ] to beat, to thrash;
se battre to fight
bavard, -e [bava:R, -va:ʁd] talkative
Béatrice [beatris] Beatrice
beau, bel, belle, beaux, belles [bo, bel] fine, beautiful, handsome; **avoir beau** (*faire*) to (*do*) in vain
beaucoup [boku] much, many, a great many, a great deal, a lot, lots
 le **beau-frère** (*pl. beaux-frères*) [bofʁe:R] brother-in-law
 le **beau-père** (*pl. beaux-pères*) [bope:R] father-in-law
 la **beauté** [bote] beauty
 le **bébé** [bebe] baby
bégayer [begeʒe] (*h.v.*) (*je bégaye, je bégaiè*) to stutter
 le **bégonia** [begonja] begonia
 le **beignet** [bene] doughnut
belge [belʒ] Belgian
 la **Belgique** [belʒik] Belgium
 la **belle-fille** (*pl. belles-filles*) [belfij] daughter-in-law
 la **belle-mère** (*pl. belles-mères*) [belme:R] mother-in-law
 la **belle-sœur** (*pl. belles-sœurs*) [belsœ:R] sister-in-law
 la **bénédiction** [benediksjɔ̃] blessing
bénir [beni:R] to bless
 les **Bermudes** [bɛʁmyd] *f.* Bermuda
 le **besoin** [bɛzwɛ̃] need; **avoir besoin de** to need
bête [bet] stupid
 la **bêtise** [beti:z] nonsense; **dire des bêtises** to talk nonsense
 la **betterave** [bɛtʁa:v] beet
 le **beurre** [bœ:ʁ] butter
 la **Bible** [bibl] Bible
 la **bibliothèque** [bibli(j)otek] library
 la **bicyclette** [bisiklet] bicycle

- bien** [bjɛ̃] well, very, indeed, properly, nicely, much, many;
eh bien well
- le **bien** [bjɛ̃] good; **dire du bien de** to speak well of
bien que [bjɛ̃ kə] although
bientôt [bjɛ̃to] soon
- le **bienvenu**, la **bienvenue**, les **bienvenus**, les **bienvenues** [bjɛ̃vny] welcome
- le **bifteck** [biftɛk] steak
- le **bijou** [bizu] piece of jewelry; les **bijoux** jewelry
- la **bijouterie** [bizutʁi] jewelry store
- le **billet** [bijɛ] ticket, bill
- la **biologie** [bjolɔʒi] biology
- bis**, -e [bi, biːz] greyish-brown; le **pain bis** brown bread (*or* loaf)
- bizarre** [bizaːʁ] odd
- blanc**, **blanche** [blɑ̃, blɑ̃ʃ] white
- le **blé** [ble] wheat; le **blé noir** buckwheat
- blesser** [blese] (*h.v.*) to hurt, to injure
- bleu**, -e [blø] blue
- blond**, -e [blɔ̃, blɔ̃ːd] fair(-haired)
- la **blouse** [bluːz] blouse
- le **bœuf** [boɛf] (*pl.* **bœufs** [bø]) ox, beef
- boire** [bwaːʁ] to drink
- le **bois** [bwa] wood
- la **boîte** [bwat] box, tin, can; la **boîte aux lettres** mailbox
- boiter** [bwate] to limp
- la **Bolivie** [bɔlivɪ] Bolivia
- bolivien**, -ienne [bɔlivjɛ̃, -jen] Bolivian
- le **bombardement** [bɔbardəmɑ̃] shelling
- la **bombe** [bɔ̃ːb] bomb
- bomber** [bɔ̃be] to cause to bulge;
bomber la poitrine to throw out one's chest
- bon**, **bonne** [bɔ̃, bɔn] good, nice, right, fitting; **bon marché** (*invar.*) cheap; **meilleur marché** (*invar.*) cheaper; **sentir bon** (*invar.*) to smell sweet
- le **bonbon** [bɔ̃bɔ̃] candy
- le **bonheur** [bɔ̃œːʁ] happiness, (good) luck
- le **bonhomme** (*pl.* **bonshommes**) [bɔ̃nɑ̃m, bɔ̃zɑ̃m] fellow, chap;
 le **bonhomme de neige** (*pl.* **bonshommes de neige**) snowman
- bonjour** [bɔ̃ʒuːʁ] good morning, good day, good afternoon, hello
- bonsoir** [bɔ̃swaːʁ] good evening, good night, hello
- la **bonté** [bɔ̃te] goodness
- le **bord** [bɔːʁ] edge, shore; le **bord de la mer** seaside; **à bord (de)** on board
- bornéen**, -enne [bɔ̃rneɛ̃, -ɛn] Bornean
- Bornéo** [bɔ̃rneo] *m.* Borneo
- la **bouche** [buʃ] mouth
- le **oucher** [buʃe] butcher
- la **boucherie** [buʃʁi] butcher store
- la **boue** [bu] mud
- boueux**, -euse [bwø, bwøːz] muddy
- bouger** [buʒe] (*nous bougeons*) to move
- bouillir** [bujiːʁ] to boil; **bouillir de colère** to boil with rage
- la **bouilloire** [bujwaːʁ] kettle
- le **boulangier** [bulɑ̃ʒe] baker
- la **boulangerie** [bulɑ̃ʒʁi] baker's shop
- la **boule** [bul] ball (*bowling, etc.*); la **boule de neige** (*pl.* **boules de neige**) snowball
- le **bouleau**, -x [bulo] birch (tree)
- le **boulevard** [bulvaːʁ] boulevard
- bouleverser** [bulverse] to upset
- Boulogne** [bulɔ̃] *m.* Boulogne
- le **bouquet** [buke] bouquet
- la **bourse** [burs] scholarship
- le **bout** [bu] end, piece, bit
- la **bouteille** [butej] bottle
- la **boutique** [butik] shop
- le **bouton** [butɔ̃] button
- le **bracelet** [braslɛ] bracelet
- la **branche** [brɑ̃ːʃ] branch
- le **bras** [bra] arm; **en bras de chemise** in (one's) shirt sleeves

- brave** [bra:v] (*before noun*) good, decent; (*after noun*) brave, courageous
- bréf, brève** [brɛf, brɛ:v] brief, short
- le **Brésil** [brezil] Brazil
- brésilien, -ienne** [breziljɛ̃, -jɛn] Brazilian
- brèvement** [bri(j)ɛvm̃] briefly
- brillamment** [brijam̃] brightly, brilliantly
- brillant, -e** [brijɑ̃, -jɑ̃:t] bright, brilliant
- briller** [brije] to shine, to glitter
- britannique** [britan(n)ik] British
- la **brosse** [brɔs] brush; la **brosse à dents** tooth-brush; la **brosse à habits** clothes-brush
- brosser** [brɔsɛ] to brush
- le **brouillard** [bruja:r] fog
- brouiller** [bruje] to mix up, to scramble; les **œufs brouillés** scrambled eggs
- le **bruit** [bʁi] noise, sound
- Brûlé** [bʁylɛ] *proper noun*
- brûler** [bʁylɛ] to burn
- brun, -e** [brœ̃, bryn] brown, dark (-haired)
- le **brun** [brœ̃] brown
- brunir** [bryni:r] to tan
- brusque** [brysk] abrupt, sudden
- brusquement** [bryskəm̃] abruptly, suddenly
- Bruxelles** [brysel] *m.* Brussels
- bruyant, -e** [bʁujɑ̃, -jɑ̃:t] noisy
- le **buffet** [byfɛ] buffet, sideboard
- bulgare** [bylga:r] Bulgarian
- la **Bulgarie** [bylgari] Bulgaria
- le **bureau, -x** [byʁo] office, desk; le **bureau de poste** (*pl.* **bureaux de poste**) post office
- le **but** [by; *in sports* byt] goal
- le **buvard** [byva:r] blotter
- la **cabane** [kaban] cabin
- la **cabine** [kabin] cabin (*of boat*)
- la **cacahuète** [kakaʁɛt] peanut
- le **cacao** [kakao] cocoa
- cacher** [kaʃɛ] to hide; **se cacher** to hide (oneself)
- le **cachet** [kaʃɛ] tablet
- le **cadeau, -x** [kado] present, gift
- le **café** [kafɛ] coffee
- la **cafetière** [kafɛje:r] coffee pot
- la **cage** [ka:ʒ] cage
- le **cahier** [kaʃɛ] notebook
- Le **Caire** [kɛ:r] Cairo
- Calais** [kalɛ, kalɛ] *m.* Calais
- le **caleçon** [kalsɔ̃] undershorts; le **caleçon de bain** (*pl.* **caleçons de bain**) (pair of) bathing-trunks
- la **Californie** [kalifɔrni] California
- camarade** [kamarad] *m.f.* comrade, friend; **camarade de classe** (*pl.* **camarades de classe**) class-mate
- le **camion** [kamjɔ̃] truck
- le **camp** [kɑ̃] camp
- la **campagne** [kɑ̃paɲ] country
- Camus** [kamy] *proper noun*
- le **Canada** [kanada] Canada
- canadien, -ienne** [kanadjɛ̃, -jɛn] Canadian
- le **canapé** [kanapɛ] chesterfield
- le **canard** [kana:r] duck
- le **canari** [kanari] canary
- le **candidat** [kɑ̃dida] candidate
- le **canif** [kanif] pen-knife
- la **canne** [kan] cane; la **canne à pêche** (*pl.* **cannes à pêche**) fishing-rod
- le **canoë** [kanœ] canoe
- le **caoutchouc** [kautʃu] rubber
- capable** [kapabl] capable, good
- la **capitale** [kapital] capital
- car** [kar] for
- le **caractère** [karakte:r] character
- le **caramel** [karamel] taffy
- la **Caroline** [karolin] Carolina; la **Caroline du Nord** North Carolina; la **Caroline du Sud** South Carolina

C

ça [sa] that

- la **carotte** [kaʁɔt] carrot
 le **carré** [kaʁ'e] square
carré, -e [kaʁ'e] square
carrément [kaʁ'emũ] squarely;
refuser carrément to refuse flatly
 la **carte** [kart] card, map; la **carte postale** postcard
Cartier [kartje] *proper noun*
 le **carton** [kartõ] cardboard, (card-board) box
 le **cas** [ka] case; **au cas où** in case
 la **casquette** [kasket] cap
casser [kase] to break
 la **casserole** [kasʁɔl] saucepan
 la **cassonade** [kasɔnad] brown sugar
 la **cathédrale** [katedral] cathedral
Catherine [katrin] Catherine
catholique [katolik] (Roman) Catholic
 la **cause** [ko:z] cause; **à cause de** because of
causer [koze] to cause, to chat
 la **cave** [ka:v] cellar
ce [sə] (*pron.*) it, this, that
ce, cet, cette (*pl. ces*) [sə, sɛt, sɛt, sɛ] (*adj.*) this, that
ceci [səsi] (*pron.*) this
céder [sede] (*je cède*) to give in
 la **cédille** [sedij] cedilla
 la **ceinture** [sɛty:ʁ] belt
cela [sɛla] (*pron.*) that
célèbre [selebr] famous
célébrer [selebre] (*je célèbre*) to celebrate
 le **céleri** [selri] celery
célibataire [selibate:ʁ] unmarried
 le **célibataire** [selibate:ʁ] bachelor
Celsius [selsjys] *proper noun*
celui, celle (*pl. ceux, celles*) [søli, sel, sɔ, sɛl] the one;
celui-ci this one, the latter;
celui-là that one, the former;
celui qui he who, whoever
 le **cendrier** [sũdri(j)e] ash-tray
 une **centaine** [sũten] (about) a hundred
central, -e (-aux) [sũtral, -tro] central
- le **centre** [sũ:tr] centre
cependant [səpũdũ] yet, however
 la **cerise** [səri:z] cherry
 le **cerisier** [sərizje] cherry tree
certain, -e [sɛʁtɛ, -tɛn] certain
certainement [sɛʁtenmũ] certainly
certifier [sɛʁtifje] to certify
César [seza:ʁ] Caesar
cesser [sesɛ] (*h.v.*) to cease, to stop
Ceylan [selũ] *m.* Ceylon
chacun, -e [ʃakœ, -kyn] each one, everyone
 la **chaise** [ʃe:z] chair
 la **chaleur** [ʃalœ:ʁ] heat
 la **chambre** [ʃã:br] (bed)room
 le **champ** [ʃã] field
 le **champignon** [ʃãpijõ] mushroom
 le **championnat** [ʃãpjõna] championship
 la **chance** [ʃã:s] chance, luck; **avoir de la chance** to be lucky
 le **changement** [ʃãʒmũ] change
changer [ʃãʒɛ] (*nous changeons*) to change; **se changer** to change (one's clothes)
Changhai [ʃãgaj] *m.* Shanghai
 la **chanson** [ʃãsõ] song
chanter [ʃãte] to sing
 le **chanteur** [ʃãtœ:ʁ] singer
 la **chanteuse** [ʃãtø:z] singer
 le **chapeau, -x** [ʃapo] hat
 le **chapitre** [ʃapitr] chapter
chaque [ʃak] each
 le **charbon** [ʃarbõ] coal
charger [ʃaʒɛ] (*nous chargeons*) to charge, to instruct; **se charger** to undertake
Charles [ʃaʁl] Charles
charmant, -e [ʃarmũ, -ã:t] charming, delightful
 la **chasse** [ʃas] hunting; **aller à la chasse** to go hunting
 le **chat, la chatte** [ʃa, ʃat] cat
 le **château, -x** [ʃato] castle
chaud, -e [ʃo, ʃo:d] warm, hot;
avoir chaud to be (or feel) warm;
il fait chaud it is warm (weather)

le **chauffe-eau** [ʃofo] (*invar.*) water heater
chauffer [ʃofɛ] to heat
la **chaussette** [ʃosɛt] sock
la **chaussure** [ʃosy:R] shoe
le **chef** [ʃɛf] head, chief
le **chemin** [ʃəmɛ̃] way, road; le **chemin de fer** (*pl. chemins de fer*) railway
la **cheminée** [ʃəmɛ̃nɛ] fireplace
la **chemise** [ʃəmiz] shirt
le **chêne** [ʃɛn] oak (tree)
le **chèque** [ʃɛk] cheque; **faire un chèque** to write a cheque
cher, chère [ʃɛ:R] dear, expensive
Cherbourg [ʃɛrbu:R] *m.* Cherbourg
chercher [ʃɛʁʃɛ] to look (for)
le **cheval**, **-aux** [ʃəval, -vo] horse
un **cheveu** [ʃəvø] a hair; les **cheveux** hair; **aux cheveux blonds** fair-haired
la **cheville** [ʃəvij] ankle
chez [ʃɛ] at (*or to*) the home of
chic, -s [ʃik] (*fem. same as masc.*) smart
le **chien**, la **chienne** [ʃjɛ̃, ʃjɛn] dog
le **Chili** [ʃili] Chile
chilien, -ienne [ʃiljɛ̃, -jɛn] Chilean
la **chimie** [ʃimi] chemistry
la **Chine** [ʃin] China
chinois, -e [ʃinwa, -wa:z] Chinese
le **chirurgien** [ʃiryʁʒjɛ̃] surgeon
le **chocolat** [ʃokola] chocolate
choisir [ʃwazi:R] to choose, to pick out
le **choix** [ʃwa] choice, selection
choquer [ʃoke] to shock
la **chose** [ʃo:z] thing
le **chou, -x** [ʃu] cabbage
le **chou-fleur** (*pl. choux-fleurs*) [ʃuflo:R] cauliflower
Christophe [kʁistɔf] Christopher
le **chrysanthème** [kʁizɑ̃tɛm] chrysanthemum
la **chute** [ʃyt] fall
Chypre [ʃipʁ] *f.* Cyprus

le **ciel** (*pl. ciels*) [sjɛl, sjø] sky; **bleu ciel** (*invar.*) sky-blue
la **cigarette** [sigaʁɛt] cigarette
le **cinéma** [sinema] cinema, movies, show, (motion-picture) theatre
cingalais, -e [sɛgale, -ɛ:z] Cingalese
une **cinquantaine** [sɛ̃kɑ̃tɛn] (about) fifty
le **cintre** [sɛ̃:tr] coat-hanger
circonflexe [sirkɔ̃fleks] circumflex
la **circulation** [sirkylasjɔ̃] traffic
la **cire** [si:R] wax
le **cirque** [sirk] circus
les **ciseaux** [sizo] *m.* scissors
le **citron** [sitʁɔ̃] lemon
la **citronnade** [sitʁonad] lemonade
la **citrouille** [sitʁuj] pumpkin
le **civil** [sivil] civilian; **en civil** in civilian clothes
la **civilisation** [sivilizasjɔ̃] civilization
clair, -e [klɛ:R] clear, bright; **il fait clair** it is light
le **clair de lune** [klɛʁ də lyn] moonlight
clairement [klɛrmɑ̃] clearly
claquer [klake] to slam, (*of bulb*) to burn out
la **clarinette** [klarinet] clarinet
la **classe** [kla:s] class; le **livre de classe** (*pl. livres de classe*) schoolbook
Claude [klo:d] Claude
la **clef, la clé** [kle] key
le **client, la cliente** [kli(j)ɑ̃, -ɑ̃:t] customer, client, patient
le **climat** [klima] climate
le **clou, -s** [klu] nail
clouer [klue] to nail
le **club** [klœb] club
le **cochon** [kɔʃɔ̃] pig
le **cœur** [kœ:R] heart
le **coffre** [kɔfr] trunk (*of car*)
cogner [kɔne] to bump
coiffer [kwafɛ] to fix (s.o.'s) hair; **se coiffer** to fix one's (*own*) hair
le **coiffeur** [kwafœ:R] barber, hair-dresser

- la **coiffeuse** [kwafø:z] hairdresser
 la **coiffure** [kwafy:R] hair-do
 le **coin** [kwɛ̃] corner
 la **colère** [køɛ:R] anger; **en colère** angry; **mettre qn en colère** to make s.o. angry; **se mettre en colère** to get angry
Colette [kølet] *proper noun*
 le **colis** [køli] parcel
 la **colle** [køl] glue
coller [køle] to stick
 le **collier** [kølje] necklace
 une **collision** [køllizjɔ̃] collision
Colomb [kølɔ̃]: **Christophe Colomb** Christopher Columbus
 la **Colombie** [kølɔ̃bi] Columbia; la **Colombie britannique** British Columbia
colombien, -ienne [kølɔ̃bjɛ̃, -jɛ̃n] Columbian
 la **colonne** [kølɔ̃n] column
 le **combat** [køba] combat, fight, engagement
combien [købjɛ̃] how much, how many; **combien de fois** how often; **combien de temps** how long; **Il y a un autobus tous les combien?** How often does the bus run? **Combien y a-t-il de ... à ...?** How far is it from ... to ...?
 la **combinaison** [købinezɔ̃] slip
comique [kømik] comical, funny
 le **comité** [kømite] committee
 la **commande** [kømɑ̃:d] order
commander [kømɑ̃de] to order
comme [køm] how, like, as, since, in the way of
 le **commencement** [kømɑ̃smɑ̃] beginning
commencer [kømɑ̃se] (*nous commençons*) to start, to begin; **commencer par (faire)** to (do) first (of all)
comment [kømɑ̃] how; **Comment est ...?** What is ... like? **Comment!** What!
commettre [kømetʁ] to commit
 la **compagnie** [køpaɲi] company
complet, -ète [køple, -ɛt] complete
 le **complet** [køple] suit
complètement [køpletmɑ̃] completely
compléter [køplete] (*je complète*) to complete
compliquer [køplikɛ] to complicate
composé, -e [køpoze] compound; le **passé composé** present perfect
composer [køpoze] to compose; **se composer de** to consist of; **composé(e) de** consisting of
 la **composition** [køpozisjɔ̃] composition
comprendre [køprɑ̃:dr] to understand
comptant [køtɑ̃]: **payer comptant** to pay cash
 le **compte** [kø:t] account; **se rendre compte de** to realize
compter [køtte] to count, to expect, to plan
 le **concert** [køse:R] concert
 le **concombre** [køkɔ̃:bʁ] cucumber
 le **conditionnel** [kødisjɔ̃nel] conditional
conduire [kødʁi:R] to conduct, to take, to drive; **se conduire** to behave
 la **conduite** [kødʁit] conduct
 le **conférencier** [køferɑ̃sje] speaker
 la **confiance** [køfjɑ̃:s] confidence
confier [køfje] to confide, to entrust; **se confier à qn** to confide in s.o.
 la **confiture** [køfity:R] jam
confortable [køfɔrtabl] comfortable
confortablement [køfɔrtabləmɑ̃] comfortably
 le **congé** [køʒe] holiday
congeler [køʒle] (*je congèle*) to freeze (*food*)
 le **congrès** [køgrɛ] convention
 la **connaissance** [kønesɑ̃:s] acquaintance, consciousness; **faire la connaissance de** to meet

- connaître** [kənɛtr] to know, to be acquainted with; **se connaître** to meet, to become acquainted; **s'y connaître** to know all about it
- consacrer** [kōsakre] to devote
- le **conseil** [kōsɛj] (piece of) advice; les **conseils** advice
- conseiller** [kōseje] (*h.v.*) to advise
- consentir** [kōsɛti:r] to consent, to agree
- considérer** [kōsidere] (*je considère*) to consider
- consommer** [kōsɔme] to use (up)
- constituer** [kōstitɥe] to constitute
- la **construction** [kōstryksjō] construction
- construire** [kōstrɥi:r] to build
- consulter** [kōsɥlte] to consult
- le **conte** [kō:t] tale
- content**, **-e** [kōtā, -ā:t] glad, satisfied, pleased
- contenter** [kōtāte] to satisfy; **se contenter (de)** to content oneself (with), to merely (*do*)
- continuer** [kōtinɥe] to continue, to go on, to keep (on)
- contraire** [kōtrɛ:r] contrary, opposite
- le **contrat** [kōtra] contract
- contre** [kō:tr] against
- contredire** [kōtrɛdi:r] to contradict
- convaincant**, **-e** [kōvɛkā, -ā:t] convincing
- convaincre** [kōvɛ:kr] to convince
- convenablement** [kōvnabləmā] properly
- convenir** [kōvni:r] to agree, to suit
- la **conversation** [kōvɛrsasjō] conversation
- Copenhague** [kəpɛnag] *m.* Copenhagen
- la **copie** [kəpi] copy, (answer) paper
- copier** [kəpje] to copy
- la **coque** [kək] shell; un **œuf à la coque** (*pl. œufs à la coque*) (soft-)boiled egg
- la **corde** [kōrd] rope; la **corde à sauter** (*pl. cordes à sauter*) skipping-rope
- le **cordonnier** [kōrdɔnje] shoemaker
- la **Corée** [kōre] Korea
- coréen**, **-enne** [kōrɛɛ, -ɛn] Korean
- le **corps** [kō:r] body
- correct**, **-e** [kōrɛkt] correct, right
- la **correspondance** [kōrɛspōdā:s] correspondence
- corriger** [kōrɛʒe] (*nous corrigeons*) to correct
- la **Corse** [kōrs] Corsica
- corse** [kōrs] Corsican
- le **costume** [kōstym] suit; le **costume de bain** (*pl. costumes de bain*) bathing-suit
- la **côte** [kō:t] coast, hill; **dans une côte** on a hill
- le **côté** [kote] side; **à côté de** beside; **De quel côté est la gare?** Which way is the station?
- la **côtelette** [kōtlet, kotlet] chop
- le **coton** [kōtō] cotton
- le **cou**, **-s** [ku] neck
- coucher** [kuʃe] to sleep; **se coucher** to go to bed, (*of sun*) to set
- le **coucher** [kuʃe] setting; le **coucher du soleil** (*pl. couchers du soleil*) sunset
- la **couchette** [kuʃet] berth
- le **coucou** [kuku] cuckoo
- le **coude** [kud] elbow
- coudre** [kudr] to sew, to sew on; la **machine à coudre** (*pl. machines à coudre*) sewing-machine
- couler** [kule] to run, to flow, to sink
- la **couleur** [kulœ:r] colour; **de couleur** coloured
- le **couloir** [kulwa:r] corridor, hall
- le **coup** [ku] blow; un **coup de main** (helping) hand; le **coup d'œil** (*pl. coups d'œil*) glance; le **coup de soleil** sunburn; le **coup de téléphone** (*pl. coups de téléphone*) telephone call

coupable [kupabl] guilty
 la **coupe** [kup] cut
couper [kupe] to cut, to cut off;
couper bien to be sharp; **couper mieux** to be sharper; **couper l'appétit à qn** to spoil s.o.'s appetite
 le **couple** [kupl] couple
 le **courage** [kura:ʒ] courage; **avec courage** courageously
courageux, -euse [kuraʒø, -ø:z] brave, courageous
couramment [kuramɑ̃] fluently
courant, -e [kurɑ̃, -ɑ̃:t] usual, fluent
 le **courant** [kurɑ̃] current, stream; le **courant d'air** (*pl.* **courants d'air**) draught; **être au courant (de)** to be up to date (on)
courir [kuri:R] to run
 le **courrier** [kur'je] mail
 le **cours** [ku:R] course; **suivre un cours (de)** to take a course (in)
 la **course** [kurs] race, errand; **faire des courses** to go shopping
court, -e [ku:R, kurt] short; **à court de** (*invar.*) short of
 le **cousin, la cousine** [kuzɛ̃, kuzin] cousin
 le **coussin** [kusɛ̃] cushion
 le **couteau, -x** [kuto] knife; le **couteau à découper** (*pl.* **couteaux à découper**) carving-knife; le **couteau de poche** (*pl.* **couteaux de poche**) pocket-knife
coûter [kute] to cost; **coûter cher** (*invar.*) to be expensive
 la **couturière** [kutyʀje:R] dressmaker
 le **couvercle** [kuvɛʀkl] lid
 la **couverture** [kuvɛʀty:R] blanket
couvrir [kuvʀi:R] to cover (up)
 la **craie** [kre] chalk
craindre [krɛ̃:dr] to fear
 la **crainte** [krɛ̃:t] fear
 le **crapaud** [krapo] toad
 la **cravate** [kravat] tie
 le **crayon** [krejɔ̃] pencil; le **crayon de couleur** (*pl.* **crayons de couleur**) coloured pencil

la **crème** [krem] cream
 la **crêpe** [kreɔ̃] pancake
 la **Crète** [kʀet] Crete
crétois, -e [kʀetwa, -a:z] Cretan
creux, creuse [krø, krø:z] hollow
crever [krøve] (*je crève*) to burst, to have a puncture
 le **cri** [kʀi] cry, shout
crier [kʀi(j)e] to shout
 le **crime** [krim] crime
 la **crise** [kʀi:z] crisis
critiquer [kʀitike] to criticize
 le **crochet** [kʀøʃɛ] square bracket
croire [kʀwa:R] to believe, to think
 la **croix** [kʀwa] cross; la **Croix de guerre** Military Cross
 la **crosse** [kʀɔs] crook, stick; la **crosse de hockey** (*pl.* **crosses de hockey**) hockey stick
cru, -e [kʀy] raw
 la **cruche** [kʀyʃ] jug, pitcher
cruel, -elle [kʀyɛl] cruel
Cuba [kyba] *f.* Cuba
cubain, -e [kybɛ̃, -ɛn] Cuban
cueillir [kœji:R] to pick, to gather
 la **cuiller** [kɥijɛ:R] spoon
 la **cuillerée** [kɥijʀe] spoonful
 le **cuir** [kɥi:R] leather
cuire [kɥi:R] to cook; **cuire à l'eau** to boil
 la **cuisine** [kɥizin] kitchen, cooking
 le **cuisinier** [kɥizinje] cook
 la **cuisinière** [kɥizinje:R] cook, stove
cuit, -e [kɥi, kɥit] cooked; **trop cuit(e)** too well done
cultiver [kyltivre] to grow
 le **curé** [kyʀe] (parish) priest
curieux, -ieuse [kyʀjø, -jɔ:z] curious, odd, interested
cyprïote [sipʀi(j)ot] Cypriot

D

dactylo [daktilo] *m.f.* familiar form of **dactylographe**
dactylographe [daktilɔɡraf] *m.f.* typist
 la **dactylographie** [daktilɔɡʀafi] typing
 le **Dakota** [dakɔta] **Dakota**; le **Dakota**

- du Nord** North Dakota; **le Dakota du Sud** South Dakota
 la **dame** [dam] lady
 le **Danemark** [danmark] Denmark
 le **danger** [dãʒe] danger
dangereux, -euse [dãʒRø, -ø:z] dangerous
danois, -e [danwa, -a:z] Danish; un **Danois**, une **Danoise** a Dane
dans [dã] in, into, on, about
 la **danse** [dã:s] dance, dancing
danser [dãse] to dance
 le **Danube** [danyb] the Danube
 la **date** [dat] date
 la **datte** [dat] date (*fruit*)
débarquer [debarke] to land, to disembark
débarrasser [debar'ase] to rid; **débarrasser la table** to clear the table; **se débarrasser de** to get rid of
déborder [debørde] to overflow; **débordé(e) (de)** swamped (with)
debout [dəbu] (*invar.*) standing
 le **début** [deby] beginning; **au début** at first
décapotable [dekapøtabl] convertible
décembre [desũ:br] *m.* December
décevoir [desəvwɑ:R] to disappoint
déchirer [deʃire] to tear, to tear up
décider [deside] to decide, to induce, to persuade; **se décider** to make up one's mind; **se décider pour** to decide on
décisif, -ive [desizif, -i:v] decisive
 la **décision** [desizjõ] decision
déclarer [deklare] to declare
décoller [dekøle] to unstick, (*of airplane*) to take off; les **oreilles décollées** protruding ears
décommander [dekãmũde] to cancel
découper [dekupe] to cut out, to cut up, to carve
décourager [dekuraze] (*nous dé-*
courageons) to discourage; **se décourager** to get (*or* become) discouraged
découvrir [dekuvri:R] to discover
décrire [dekrĩ:R] to describe
décrocher [dekrøʃe] to unhook, to pick up (the receiver)
déçu, -e [desy] disappointed
défaire [defe:R] to undo
 le **défaut** [defø] fault
défendre [defũ:dr] to forbid
 le **défenseur** [defũsø:R] defender
défier [defje] to defy
 le **défilé** [defile] parade
défini, -e [defini] definite
dégeler [deʒle] (*il dégèle*) to thaw
 le **degré** [dəgre] degree
déguiser [degize] to disguise; **se déguiser** to disguise oneself, to dress up
dehors [dəø:R] outside
déjà [deʒa] already, yet
déjeuner [deʒœne] to have breakfast, to have lunch
 le **déjeuner** [deʒœne] lunch; le **petit déjeuner** breakfast
délicieux, -ieuse [delisjø, -jø:z] delicious
demain [dəmẽ] tomorrow
 la **demande** [dəmũ:d] request, application; la **demande d'emploi** (*pl. demandes d'emploi*) application for a job
demander [dəmũde] to ask, to ask for; **se demander** to wonder
déménager [demenaze] (*nous déménageons*) to move
démener [demne]: **se démener** (*je me démène*) to go to a lot of trouble
demeurer [dəmø:Re] to remain, to stay, to live
demi, -e [dəmi] half; une **demi-douzaine** half a dozen; une **demi-heure** half an hour; une **demi-livre** half a pound; **à huit heures et demie** at half past eight; **à midi et demi** at half past twelve

- un **demi** [dəmi] half
 la **démission** [dəmisjɔ̃] resignation
démissionner [dəmisjɔne] to resign
 la **démocratie** [dəmɔkrasi] democracy
démodé, -e [dəmɔde] old-fashioned
 la **démoiselle** [dəmwazɛl] young lady
démonter [dəmɔ̃te] to take apart
Denis [dəni] Dennis
 la **dent** [də̃] tooth
 le **dentiste** [də̃tist] dentist
 le **départ** [dəpa:r] departure
dépêcher [dəpeʃe] (*h.v.*) to dispatch; **se dépêcher** to hurry, to hasten, to hurry (and)
dépendre [dəpɑ̃:dr] to depend
 la **dépense** [dəpɑ̃:s] expense, **expenditure**
dépenser [dəpɑ̃se] to spend
déplier [dəpli(j)e] to unfold
déposer [dəpoze] to lay down
déprimer [dəprime] to depress
depuis [dəpɥi] since, for; **depuis que** since
 le **dérangement** [dərɑ̃ʒmɑ̃] trouble, fault; **en dérangement** out of order (*of telephone*)
déranger [dərɑ̃ʒe] (*nous dérangeons*) to disturb, to bother
dernier, -ière [dərnje, -je:r] last
derrière [dər:je:r] behind
dès que [də kə] as soon as
désagréable [dəzagreabl] unpleasant
désapprouver [dəzapruve] to disapprove
descendre [dəsɑ̃:dr] to go (*or come*) down(stairs), to get down (*or off or out*), to stay (*at hotel, etc.*), to carry (*or bring or take*) down(stairs)
désespéré, -e [dəzɛspere] desperate
désespérément [dəzɛperemɑ̃] desperately
désespérer [dəzɛspere] (*je désespère*) to despair, to lose all hope
 le **désespoir** [dəzɛspwa:r] despair
déshabiller [dəzabije] to undress; **se déshabiller** to undress, to get undressed
désillusionner [dəzilyzjɔne] to disillusion
 le **désir** [dəzi:r] desire, wish
désirer [dəzi:re] to desire, to want, to wish
désobéir [dəzɔbei:r] to disobey
désolé, -e [dəzɔle] very sorry
 le **désordre** [dəzɔrdr] disorder; **en désordre** untidy
 le **dessert** [dəsɛ:r] dessert
 le **dessin** [dəsɛ̃] drawing, picture
 le **dessinateur** [dəsinatœ:r] draughtsman
 le **détail, -s** [dətaj] detail
détendre [dətɑ̃:dr] to slacken, to loosen; **se détendre** to relax
détester [dəteste] to dislike, to hate
détrôner [dətrɔne] to dethrone
détruire [dətruɥi:r] to destroy
 la **dette** [dət] debt; **faire des dettes** to run into debt
 le **deux-points** [dəpɔwɛ̃] colon
devant [dəvɑ̃] in front of
devenir [dəvni:r] to become, to get; **Qu'est-ce qu'elle est devenue?** What became of her?
deviner [dəvine] to guess
 la **devinette** [dəvinet] riddle
devoir [dəvwa:r] to have to, to be to, must
 le **devoir** [dəvwa:r] duty, exercise, homework exercise; un **devoir de français** French homework; les **devoirs** homework
 le **diamant** [djamɑ̃] diamond
 le **diamètre** [djamɛtr] diameter
 le **dictionnaire** [diksɔ̃nɛ:r] dictionary
Dieu [djø] *m.* God
 le **dieu, -x** [djø] god
différemment [diferamɑ̃] differently
 la **différence** [diferɑ̃:s] difference
différent, -e [diferɑ̃, -ɑ̃:t] different

- difficile** [difisil] difficult, hard, hard to please
 la **difficulté** [difikylte] difficulty
digérer [diʒere] (*je digère*) to digest
Dijon [diʒɔ̃] *m.* Dijon
 le **dimanche** [dimɑ̃ːʃ] Sunday
 la **dinde** [dêːd] turkey
 le **dîner** [dine] dinner
dîner [dine] to dine, to have dinner
 la **diphthérie** [difteri] diphtheria
dire [diːR] to say, to tell
diriger [dirizɛ] (*nous dirigeons*) to direct, to manage
 le **discours** [diskuːR] speech
 la **discussion** [diskysjɔ̃] discussion, argument
disparaître [disparetR] to disappear
disponible [dispɔnibl] available
 la **dispute** [dispyt] dispute, argument
disputer [dispyte] to dispute, to contest; **se disputer** to quarrel
 le **disque** [disk] record
 la **distance** [distɑ̃ːs] distance
 la **distraktion** [distraksjɔ̃] amusement
distribuer [distribɥe] to distribute
 le **District de Columbia** [distrik(t) də kɔləbjɑ] the District of Columbia
divorcer [divɔRse] to divorce
 une **dizaine** [dizen] (about) ten
 le **docteur** [dɔktœːR] doctor
 le **doigt** [dwa] finger
 le **dollar** [dɔlaːR] dollar
 le **dommage** [dɔmaːʒ] damage, pity; **c'est dommage** it's a pity, it's too bad
donc [*at head of phrase* dɔ̃ːk, *in liaison* dɔ̃k, *otherwise* dɔ̃] therefore, so
donner [dɔne] to give, to give away; **donner à manger à qn** to feed s.o.; **donner la main à qn** to shake hands with s.o.
dormir [dɔRmiːR] to sleep
 le **dos** [do] back

- la **douane** [dwan] customs
doubler [duble] to pass (*a vehicle*)
 la **douche** [duʃ] shower
 la **douleur** [dulœːR] pain
 le **doute** [dut] doubt; **sans doute** likely, doubtless
douter [dute] to doubt; **j'en doute** I doubt it; **se douter de** to suspect
douteux, -euse [dutø, -øːz] doubtful
doux, douce [du, dus] gentle, sweet, mild, soft
 une **douzaine** [duzen] a dozen
 le **drap** [dra] sheet
 le **drapeau, -x** [drapo] flag
droit, -e [drwa, drwat] right, straight; **se tenir droit(e)** to stand up straight
 le **droit** [drwa] right, law; **faire son droit** to study law; **le droit de vote** franchise
drôle [droːl] funny, queer
Dupont [dypɔ̃] *proper noun*
dur, -e [dyːR] hard, tough
dur [dyːR] (*adv.*) hard
durer [dyRe] to last

E

- l'**eau, -x** [o] *f.* water
éblouir [ebluiːR] to dazzle
échanger [eʃɑ̃ʒe] (*nous échangeons*) to exchange
échapper [eʃape] to escape; **s'échapper** to escape
 une **écharpe** [eʃarp] scarf
 une **échelle** [eʃel] ladder
échouer [eʃwe] to fail
éclabousser [eklabuse] to splash
 un **éclair** [ekleːR] flash of lightning; **il fait des éclairs** there is lightning; **un éclair au chocolat** (*pl. éclairs au chocolat*) chocolate éclair
 une **école** [ekɔl] school
 une **économie** [ekɔnɔmi] saving; **faire des économies** to save

- écossais, -e** [ekɔsɛ, -ɛ:z] Scottish, Scotch; un **Écossais** a Scot, a Scotchman; une **Écossaise** a Scotchwoman
 l'**Écosse** [ekɔs] *f.* Scotland
écouter [ekute] to listen, to listen to
 un **écran** [ekrɑ̃] screen
écraser [ekrɑzɛ] to crush; **s'écraser** to crash (*of plane*); **se faire écraser** to get run over
 une **écrevisse** [ekrəvis] crayfish; **rouge comme une écrevisse** as red as a beet
écrier [ekri(j)ɛ]: **s'écrier** to exclaim, to cry (out)
écrire [ekri:R] to write; **Comment s'écrit . . . ?** How is . . . spelt?
 une **écriture** [ekʁity:R] (hand)writing
 un **écrivain** [ekrivɛ̃] writer
écrouler [ekrule]: **s'écrouler** to collapse
 un **écureuil** [ekyʁœj] squirrel
Édimbourg [edɛbu:R] *m.* Edinburgh
 un **éditeur** [editɔɛ:R] publisher
Edmond [edmɔ̃] Edmund
Édouard [edwa:R] Edward
effacer [efasɛ] (*nous effaçons*) to rub out, to erase; **effacer les épaules** to throw one's shoulders back
efficace [efikas] effective
 un **effort** [efɔ:R] effort
effrayer [efʁɛjɛ] (*h.v.*) (*j'effraie, j'effraie*) to frighten; **s'effrayer** to get frightened
égal, -e (-aux) [egal, ego] equal; **ça lui est égal** that's all the same to him, he doesn't care
égarer [egare] to mislay; **s'égarer** to get lost, to lose one's way
 une **église** [egli:z] church
égoïste [egoist] selfish
 l'**Égypte** [ɛʒipt] *f.* Egypt
égyptien, -ienne [ɛʒipsjɛ̃, -jen] Egyptian
eh [ɛ]: **eh bien** well
 les **élections** [eleksjɔ̃] *f.* election
 un **électricien** [elektrisjɛ̃] electrician
 l'**électricité** [elektrisite] *f.* electricity
électrique [elektrik] electric
élégamment [elegamɑ̃] elegantly
 l'**élégance** [elegɑ̃:s] *f.* elegance
élégant, -e [elegɑ̃, -ɑ̃:t] elegant
 un **éléphant** [elefɑ̃] elephant
 l'**élève** [ele:v] *m.f.* pupil
élire [eli:R] to elect
Élisabeth [elizabet] Elizabeth
emballer [ābale] to wrap up; **s'emballer pour** to become very enthusiastic over, to be carried away by
embarquer [ābarke] to put on board; **s'embarquer** to embark, to go on board
embêtant, -e [ābetɑ̃, -ɑ̃:t] tiresome, boring
embêter [ābete] (*h.v.*) to bore; **s'embêter** to be (*or get*) bored
emménager [āmenaʒɛ] (*nous emménageons*) to move in
emmener [āmne] (*j'emmène*) to take (along), to take away, to take out
 une **émotion** [emosjɔ̃] emotion; **avec émotion** feelingly
emparer [āpare]: **s'emparer de** to seize
empêcher [āpeʃɛ] (*h.v.*) to prevent; **ne pas pouvoir s'empêcher de** not to be able to keep from, not to be able to help
 un **emploi** [āplwa] employment; un **emploi du temps** (*pl.* **emplois du temps**) time-table
 un **employé, une employée** [āplwaje] employee
employer [āplwaje] (*j'emploie*) to use
emporter [āpɔrte] to take (along), to take away, to sweep away
emprunter [āprɑ̃te] to borrow
en [ɑ̃] (*adv. pron.*) some, any, of it, of them, from it, from them, from there
en [ɑ̃] (*prep.*) in, on, by, while
encadrer [ākadre] to frame

- enchanté, -e** [ãʃãte] delighted, (very) pleased
enchanter [ãʃãte] to delight
 une **enchère** [ãʃɛ:R] bid; la **vente aux enchères** auction sale
encombrer [ãkõbre] to clutter up, to congest
encore [ãkõ:R] still, yet, more, even; **encore un(e)** another
encourager [ãkuraʒe] (*nous encourageons*) to encourage
 l'**encre** [ã:kR] *f.* ink
endommager [ãdõmaʒe] (*nous endommageons*) to damage
endormir [ãdõrmi:R] to put to sleep; **s'endormir** to go to sleep, to fall asleep
 un **endroit** [ãdrwa] place
 l'**énergie** [enɛʒi] *f.* energy
énervé [enɛrvɛ] to get on one's nerves; **s'énervé** to become irritable
 l'**enfance** [ãfã:s] *f.* childhood
 l'**enfant** [ãfã] *m.f.* child
enfin [ãfẽ] at last
enfoncer [ãfõse] (*nous enfonçons*) to drive in (*nail, etc.*)
enfuir [ãfui:R]: **s'enfuir** to flee
engager [ãgaʒe] (*nous engageons*) to engage; **s'engager** to undertake, to enlist
engraisser [ãgɛɾse] (*h.v.*) to get fat
enlever [ãlve] (*j'enlève*) to remove, to take away, to take off
 un **ennemi** [ɛnmi] enemy
 un **ennui** [ãnui] worry, bother; **Quel ennui!** What a nuisance!, Oh dear!
ennuyer [ãnuije] (*j'ennuie*) to bore, to make (s.o.) feel badly; **être ennuyé(e)** to be troubled, to feel badly; **s'ennuyer** to be (*or get*) bored
ennuyeux, -euse [ãnuijø, -ø:z] annoying, tedious, boring
énorme [enõrm] enormous, huge, tremendous
énormément [enõrmemã] enormously, tremendously
- enregistrer** [ãrɛʒistɾe] to register, to record, to check (*baggage*); **faire enregistrer** to check, to have checked
enrhumer [ãryme] to give (s.o.) a cold; **être enrhumé(e)** to have a cold; **s'enrhumer** to catch (a) cold
enrichir [ãriʃi:R] to make (s.o.) rich; **s'enrichir** to get rich
enseigner [ãsepe] (*h.v.*) to teach
ensemble [ãsã:bl] together
ensuite [ãsuit] next, then
entendre [ãtũ:dr] to hear; **entendre dire que** to hear that; **entendre parler de** to hear about; **s'entendre** to get along
 un **enterrement** [ãtɛr˙mã] funeral
 l'**enthousiasme** [ãtuʒjasm] *m.* enthusiasm
enthousiaste [ãtuʒjast] enthusiastic
entier, -ière [ãtje, -jɛ:R] entire; **en entier** all
entourer [ãtũrɛ] to surround
entre [ãtr] between
entreprendre [ãtrãprã:dr] to undertake
entrer [ãtre] to enter; **entrer en scène** to appear on the stage
 une **enveloppe** [ãvlãp] envelope
 l'**envie** [ãvi] *f.* desire, inclination; **avoir envie de** to feel like, to fancy; **faire envie à qn** to make s.o. envious
environ [ãvirõ] about
envoler [ãvõle]: **s'envoler** to fly away
envoyer [ãvwaje] to send; **envoyer chercher** to send for
épais, épaisse [epɛ, epɛs] thick
épatant, -e [epatã, -ã:t] wonderful
 une **épaule** [epo:l] shoulder
épeler [epɛl] (*j'épelle*) to spell
 une **épice** [epis] spice; le **pain d'épice** gingerbread
 une **épicerie** [episɾi] grocery store
 un **épicier** [episje] grocer
 les **épinards** [epina:R] *m.* spinach
 une **épingle** [epẽ:gl] pin

- l'**Épiphanie** [epifani:] *f.* Epiphany, Twelfth Night
épouser [epuze] to marry
épousseter [epuste] (*j'époussette*) to dust
épuiser [epɥize] to exhaust
l'**Équateur** [ekwatœ:r] *m.* Ecuador
équatorien, -ienne [ekwatørjɛ, -jɛn] Ecuadorian
une **équation** [ekwasjɔ̃] equation
une **équipe** [ekip] team
un **érable** [erabl] maple (tree)
Érié [erje]: le **lac Érié** Lake Erie
une **erreur** [ɛr'œ:r] error, mistake
un **escalier** [eskalje] staircase, stairs;
un **escalier roulant** escalator
l'**Espagne** [espan] *f.* Spain
espagnol, -e [espanɔl] Spanish;
un **Espagnol, une Espagnole** a Spaniard
une **espèce** [espɛs] kind, sort, species
espérer [espere] (*j'espère*) to hope
l'**espoir** [espwa:r] *m.* hope
esquimaux, -x [eskimo] (*fem. usually same as masc., occasionally*
esquimaude [eskimo:d]) Eskimo
essayer [eseje] (*h.v.*) (*j'essaye, j'essaie*) to try, to try on, to try out
l'**essence** [esã:s] *f.* gas(oline)
essoufflé, -e [esufle] out of breath
un **essuie-mains** [esɥimɛ̃] (*invar.*) (hand-)towel
essuyer [esɥije] (*j'essuie*) to wipe, to dry (*dishes*)
l'**est** [ɛst] *m.* east
estimer [estime] to esteem, to consider
l'**Estonie** [estɔni:] *f.* Estonia
estonien, -ienne [estɔnjɛ, -jɛn] Estonian
établir [etabli:r] to establish; **s'établir** to settle
un **étage** [eta:ʒ] floor, story
un **étang** [etã] pond
un **état** [eta] state, condition
les **États-Unis** [etazyni] *m.* the United States
un **été** [ete] summer; **en plein été** in the middle of (the) summer
éteindre [etɛ:dr] to put out (*a light, a fire*); **s'éteindre** to go out
étendre [etũ:dr] to stretch; **s'étendre** to lie down
éternel, -elle [etɛrnɛl] eternal, everlasting
une **éternité** [etɛrnite] eternity, ages
éternuer [eternɥe] to sneeze
l'**éter** [ete:r] *m.* ether
l'**Éthiopie** [etjɔpi:] *f.* Ethiopia
éthiopien, -ienne [etjɔpjɛ, -jɛn] Ethiopian
Étienne [etjen] Stephen
une **étoile** [etwal] *f.* star
étonnamment [etɔnamã] surprisingly, astonishingly
étonnant, -e [etɔnã, -ã:t] surprising, astonishing
étonner [etɔne] to surprise, to astonish; **s'étonner** to be surprised
étouffant, -e [etufã, -ã:t] stifling, suffocating, sultry
étouffer [etufe] to smother, to stifle, to suffocate; **on étouffe** it is stifling
étrange [etrã:ʒ] strange
étranger, -ère [etrãʒɛ, -ɛ:r] foreign; un **étranger, une étrangère** foreigner
l'**étranger** [etrãʒɛ] *m.* foreign parts; à l'**étranger** abroad
être [etr] to be
étroit, -e [etrwa, -at] narrow
une **étude** [etyd] study
un **étudiant, une étudiante** [etydjã, -jã:t] student
étudier [etydje] to study
l'**Europe** [ørop] *f.* Europe
européen, -enne [øropeɛ, -ɛn] European
évasion [evade]: **s'évader** to escape
évanouir [evanwi:r]: **s'évanouir** to faint
évidemment [evidamã] obviously, of course
évident, -e [evidã, -ã:t] evident, obvious

un **évier** [evje] sink
éviter [evite] to avoid
évoquer [evøke] to evoke
exact, -e [egzakt] exact, accurate,
 (of time) right, correct
exactement [egzaktəmā] exactly
exagérer [egzaʒere] (*j'exagère*) to
 exaggerate
 un **examen** [egzamē] exam(ination)
excellent, -e [eksɛlā, -ā:t] excel-
 lent
 une **exception** [eksepʃjō] exception
exceptionnel, -elle [eksepʃjønɛl]
 exceptional
exceptionnellement [eksepʃjønɛl-
 mū] exceptionally
exciter [ɛksite] to excite; **s'exciter**
 to get excited
 une **exclamation** [eksklamasi] excla-
 mation
 une **excuse** [ɛksky:z] excuse; **faire des**
excuses to apologize
excuser [ekskyze] to excuse; **s'ex-**
cuser to apologize
 un **exemple** [egzā:pl] example
exercer [egzɛrse] (*nous exerçons*) to
 exercise; **s'exercer** to practise
 un **exercice** [egzɛrsis] exercise
exiger [egziʒe] (*nous exigeons*) to
 demand, to insist
exister [egziste] to exist
 une **expansion** [eksɥāsijō] expansion
 une **expérience** [eksɥɛrjā:s] experi-
 ence, experiment
 une **explication** [eksplikasi] explan-
 ation
expliquer [eksplike] to explain
explorer [ekspløre] to explore
 une **explosion** [eksplɔzjō] explosion
exporter [eksɔrte] to export
 une **exposition** [eksɔzisi] exhibition
exprès [eksɥrɛ] on purpose
exprimer [eksɥrime] to express
extraordinaire [ɛkstr(a)ɔrdinɛ:r]
 extraordinary, unusual
extraordinairement [ɛkstr(a)ɔr-
 dinɛrmū] extraordinarily, un-
 usually
extrême [ɛkstre] extreme

extrêmement [ɛkstremmā] ex-
 tremely, very, most

F

Fabien [fabjē] Fabian
fâché, -e [faʃe] angry
fâcher [faʃe] to make (s.o.) angry;
se fâcher to get angry
facile [fasil] easy
facilement [fasilmū] easily
 la **facilité** [fasilite] ease, easiness;
avec facilité with ease, easily
 la **façon** [fasō] way, manner; **de**
façon à so as to; **de façon (à ce)**
que so that
 le **facteur** [faktœ:r] postman
 la **facture** [fakty:r] bill
faible [febl] weak
 la **faïence** [fajā:s] earthenware
faillir [faji:r] to nearly (*do*)
 la **faillite** [fajit] bankruptcy; **faire**
faillite to go bankrupt
 la **faim** [fē] hunger; **avoir faim** to be
 (or feel) hungry
faire [fɛ:r] to do, to make, to
 write (*a cheque*), to tie (*a knot*),
 to take (*a trip*), to pack (*a trunk*),
 to be (*of weather*); **Comment**
fait-il? What is the weather
 like? **faire semblant** to pretend;
cela ne fait rien that doesn't
 matter; **Est-ce que ça ne vous**
fait rien? Do you mind? **se**
faire to get, to become; **se faire**
du souci to worry; **il se fait**
tard it is getting late
falloir [falwa:r] to have to, must,
 to be necessary, to need, to
 require
fameux, -euse [famø, -ø:z] famous
familier, -ière [familje, -jɛ:r]
 familiar, domestic; un **animal**
familier (*pl. animaux familiers*)
 pet
 la **famille** [famij] family
fané, -e [fane] faded, withered,
 wilted

le **fantôme** [fãto:m] ghost
 la **farce** [fars] dressing, stuffing
 la **farine** [farin] flour
fatal, -e (-als) [fatal] fatal, fated, inevitable
fatigant, -e [fatigã, -ã:t] tiring
 la **fatigue** [fatig] fatigue
fatigué, -e [fatige] tired, weary
fatiguer [fatige] to tire, to make (s.o.) tired; **se fatiguer** to tire, to get tired
 la **faute** [fo:t] mistake, fault, lack; **faute de** for lack of
 le **fauteuil** [fotœj] armchair
faux, fausse [fo, fo:s] false; **chanter faux** (*invar.*) to sing out of tune
 la **fée** [fe] fairy; le **conte de fées** fairy tale
féliciter [felisite] to congratulate
 la **femme** [fam] woman, wife
 la **fenêtre** [fœnɛtr] window
 le **fer** [fɛ:r] iron
férié [fɛrje]: le **jour férié** public holiday
 la **ferme** [fɛrm] farm
fermé, -e [fɛrme] closed, (*of club*) exclusive
fermer [fɛrme] to close, to turn off; **fermer à clef** to lock
 la **fermeture** [fɛrmɔtɔ:r] closing; la **fermeture éclair** (*pl. fermetures éclair*) zipper
 le **fermier** [fɛrmje] farmer
 la **fête** [fet] holiday, birthday; **tout Paris était en fête** all Paris was celebrating
 le **feu, -x** [fø] fire; les **feux d'artifice** fireworks; le **feu de circulation** (*pl. feux de circulation*) traffic light
 la **feuille** [føej] leaf
 la **fève** [fɛv] bean
février [fɛvri(j)e] *m.* February
 les **fiançailles** [fjãsa:j] engagement
fiancé, -e [fjãse] engaged
 la **ficelle** [fisɛl] string
fidèle [fidɛl] faithful
fier, fière [fjɛ:r] proud

fier [fjɛ]: se fier à to trust
 la **figue** [fig] fig
 la **figure** [figy:r] face, figure
 le **fil** [fil] thread, wire
 le **filet** [filɛ] fillet; le **filet de porc** pork tenderloin
 la **filles** [fij] daughter, girl; la **jeune fille** girl; la **petite fille** little girl
 le **film** [film] film; le **grand film** main feature
 le **fil** [fis] son
 la **fin** [fɛ̃] end
fin, -e [fɛ̃, fin] fine
final, -e (-als) [final] final
finale [finalmũ] finally
financier, -ière [finãsjɛ, -jɛ:r] financial
finir [fini:r] to finish, to end; **finir par** to finally (*do*)
finlandais, -e [fɛ̃lãdɛ, -ɛ:z] Finnish; un **Finlandais**, une **Finlandaise** a Finn
 la **Finlande** [fɛ̃lã:d] Finland
 le **finnois** [finwa] Finnish (*i.e., language*)
fixe [fiks] fixed
flatter [flate] to flatter
 la **fleur** [flœ:r] flower; **en fleur** in flower, in blossom
 le **fleuve** [flœ:v] (great) river (*flowing into the sea*)
 la **Floride** [flɔrid] Florida
 le **foie** [fwa] liver; le **foie gras** *paste made of fattened goose livers*
 le **foin** [fwɛ̃] hay
 la **foire** [fwa:r] fair
 la **fois** [fwa] time; **une fois** once; **deux fois** twice; **encore une fois** (once) again; **deux à la fois** two at a time; **chaque fois que** whenever
foncé, -e [fɔ̃se] dark (*of colour*)
fonctionner [fɔ̃ksjɔ̃nɛ] to work, to run, to operate
 le **fond** [fɔ̃] basis
fondre [fɔ̃:dr] to melt
 le **football** [futbo:l] football
 la **force** [fɔrs] force, strength; **à force de** by dint of

la **forêt** [fɔʀɛ] forest; la **Forêt-Noire**
the Black Forest
la **forme** [fɔʀm] form, shape
Formose [fɔʀmoːz] *f.* Formosa
fort, **-e** [fɔːʀ, fɔʀt] (*adj.*) strong,
loud; **fort(e) en français** good
in French
fort [fɔːʀ] (*adv.*) hard, loud
la **fortune** [fɔʀtyn] fortune
le **fossé** [fɔsɛ] ditch
fou, **fol**, **folle**, **fous**, **folles** [fu,
fɔl] mad, insane, crazy
le **fou**, **-s** [fu] fool, jester, lunatic
fouetter [fwetɛ] (*h.v.*) to whip;
la **crème à fouetter** whipping
cream; la **crème fouettée** whip-
ped cream
la **foule** [ful] crowd
fouler [fule] to sprain
le **four** [fuːʀ] oven
la **fourchette** [fʊʀʃɛt] fork
la **fourmi** [fʊʀmi] ant
fournir [fʊʀniːʀ] to supply
la **fournure** [fʊʀˈnyːʀ] fur
frais, **fraîche** [frɛ, frɛʃ] fresh,
cool
les **frais** [frɛ] *m.* expenses
la **fraîse** [frɛːz] strawberry
la **framboise** [frãbwɑːz] raspberry
franc, **franche** [frã, frãːʃ] frank
le **franc** [frã] franc
français, **-e** [frãsɛ, -ɛːz] French
la **France** [frãːs] France
franchement [frãʃmã] frankly
François [frãswɑ] Frank, Francis
Françoise [frãswɑːz] Frances
frapper [frapɛ] to strike, to hit
Frédéric [frɛdɛʀik] Fred(erick)
le **frein** [frɛ̃] brake
fréquemment [frɛkamã] frequently
fréquent, **-e** [frɛkã, -ãːt] frequent
fréquenter [frɛkãtɛ] to associate
with, to go to (*a school*)
le **frère** [frɛːʀ] brother
frisquet, **-ette** [friske, -ɛt] chilly
les **frites** [frit] *f.* French fried pota-
toes, French fries
froid, **-e** [frwa, frwad] cold; **avoir**

froid to be (*or* feel) cold; **pren-
dre froid** to catch a chill; **il fait
froid** it is cold (weather)
le **froid** [frwa] cold
le **fromage** [frɔmaːʒ] cheese
froncer [frɔsɛ] (*nous fronçons*) to
wrinkle; **froncer les sourcils**
to frown
la **frontière** [frɔ̃tjɛːʀ] border
frotter [frɔtɛ] to rub
le **fruit** [fru] piece of fruit; les
fruits fruit
fruitier, **-ière** [fruɪtjɛ, -jɛːʀ] fruit-
bearing; un **arbre fruitier** fruit
tree
fuir [fuiːʀ] to fly, to slip by, to
avoid, to shun
la **fumée** [fyme] smoke
fumer [fyme] to smoke
furieux, **-ieuse** [fyʀjɔ, -jɔːz] fur-
ious
la **futur** [fytyːʀ] future (*tense*); le
futur antérieur future perfect;
le **futur du passé** future in the
past; le **futur antérieur du
passé** future perfect in the past

G

Gabrielle [gabʀi(j)ɛl] *proper noun*
gâcher [gɔʃɛ] to waste
gagner [gãʃɛ] to earn, to win
gai, **-e** [gɛ] gay, cheerful, merry
gaïement [gemã] gaily, cheerfully,
merrily
Galles [gal]: le **pays de Galles**
Wales
gallois, **-e** [galwa, -waːz] Welsh
galoper [galɔpɛ] to gallop
le **gant** [gã] glove
le **garage** [garaːʒ] garage
garantir [garãtiːʀ] to guarantee
le **garçon** [garsɔ̃] boy, waiter
garder [garde] to keep, to mind
la **gare** [gaːʀ] station
gargariser [gargarize]: **se gar-
gariser** to gargle
la **Garonne** [garɔn] the Garonne

la **Gaspésie** [gaspezi] the Gaspé
gaspiller [gaspije] to squander, to waste
gâter [gate] to spoil
 le **gâteau**, -x [gato] cake
gauche [go:ʃ] left
gaucher, -ère [goʃe, -ɛ:R] left-handed
Gaulle [go:l]: le **général de Gaulle**
 Gaulle General de Gaulle
 le **gaz** [gɑ:z] gas
 le **géant** [ʒeɑ̃] giant
geler [ʒele] (il *gèle*) to freeze
gémir [ʒemi:R] to groan
 le **gendre** [ʒɑ̃:dr] son-in-law
gêner [ʒene] (*h.v.*) to be in the way, to hinder, to embarrass
 le **général**, -aux [ʒenerɑl, -ʁo] general
général, -e (-aux) [ʒenerɑl, -ʁo] general
généralement [ʒenerɑlmɑ̃] generally, usually
généreux, -euse [ʒenerøʃ, -ø:z] generous
Genève [ʒənɛ:v] *m.* Geneva
Geneviève [ʒənvje:v] Genevieve
 le **genou**, -x [ʒənu] knee
 le **genre** [ʒɑ̃:R] kind
 les **gens** [ʒɑ̃] *m.* people; les **jeunes gens** young people, young men
gentil, -ille [ʒɑ̃ti, -ij] nice
 la **géographie** [ʒeɔɡrafi] geography
 la **géométrie** [ʒeɔmetri] geometry
géométrique [ʒeɔmetrik] geometrical
Georges (*for English kings* **George**) [ʒɔRʒ] George
 la **Georgie** [ʒɔRʒi] Georgia
Georgienne [ʒɔRʒjen]: la **baie Georgienne** Georgian Bay
 le **gérant** [ʒerɑ̃] manager
 le **gigot** [ʒigo] (roast) leg of lamb
Gilbert [ʒilbe:R] Gilbert
 la **girafe** [ʒiraf] giraffe
 la **glace** [glas] mirror, window (*of car, train, etc.*), ice, ice cream
glacé, -e [glase] icy, as cold as ice
glacial, -e (-als) [glasjal] icy

glissant, -e [glisɑ̃, -ɑ:t] slippery
glisser [glise] to slip, to slide
 le **golf** [gɔlf] golf
 la **gomme** [gɔm] eraser, rubber
 la **gorge** [gɔRʒ] throat
gourmand, -e [gurmɑ̃, -ɑ:d] fond of sweet things
 le **goût** [gu] taste; **avoir bon goût** to taste good, to have good taste;
avoir mauvais goût to taste bad, to have poor taste
goûter [gute] to taste
 le **goûter** [gute] snack, lunch (*between meals*)
 la **goutte** [gut] drop
 le **gouvernement** [guvɛrnəmɑ̃] government
 la **grammaire** [gram(m)ɛ:R] grammar
grand, -e [grɑ̃, grɑ̃:d] big, large, great, tall, grown up; le **grand film** main feature
grand-chose [grɑ̃ʃo:z] *m.* **pas grand-chose** not much
 la **Grande-Bretagne** [grɑ̃dbʁɛtaɲ] Great Britain
 la **grandeur** [grɑ̃dœ:R] size
grandir [grɑ̃di:R] to grow up
 la **grand-mère** (*pl.* **grand-mères**) [grɑ̃mɛ:R] grandmother
 le **grand-père** (*pl.* **grands-pères**) [grɑ̃pɛ:R] grandfather
 la **grange** [grɑ̃:ʒ] barn
 la **grappe** [grap] bunch (*of grapes*)
gras, **grasse** [gra, grɑ:s] fat
 le **gratte-ciel** [gratsjel] (*invar.*) skyscraper
grave [gra:v] grave, serious
gravement [gravmɑ̃] seriously
 la **gravure** [gravu:R] engraving; la **gravure sur bois** woodcut
grec, **grecque** [grek] Greek
 la **Grèce** [gres] Greece
grêler [grele] (*h.v.*) to hail
grelotter [grəlɔte] to shiver
 le **grenier** [grɛnje] attic
 la **grève** [gre:v] strike; **se mettre en grève** to go on strike, to strike
 le **grille-pain** [grijpɛ̃] (*invar.*) toaster

griller [gʁijɛ] to toast, (*of bulb*) to burn out
la grippe [gʁip] influenza, flu
gris, -e [gʁi, gʁiːz] grey; **il fait gris** it is cloudy
le Groenland [ɡʁœnlɑ̃ːd] Greenland
groenlandais, -e [ɡʁœnlɑ̃de, -ɛːz] Greenland (*adj.*); **un Groenlandais, une Groenlandaise** a Greenlander
gronder [ɡʁɔ̃de] to scold
gros, grosse [ɡʁo, ɡʁoːs] big; **une grosse pluie** a heavy rain; **un gros rhume** a bad cold
le gros [ɡʁo] wholesale; **au prix de gros** wholesale
la grosseur [ɡʁosœːR] size
la grossièreté [ɡʁosjɛʁte] rudeness
grossir [ɡʁosiːR] to gain weight, to get fat
le groupe [ɡʁup] group
la guêpe [ɡɛp] wasp
guère [ɡɛːR]: **ne . . . guère** hardly (any), scarcely (any), not much, not many
guérir [ɡɛriːR] to cure, to get well
la guérison [ɡɛrizɔ̃] recovery
la guerre [ɡɛːR] war; **en guerre** at war
le guide [gid] guide
Guillaume [ɡijoːm] William
les guillemets [ɡijmɛ] *m.* quotation marks
Guy [gi] Guy
la gymnastique [zimnastik] gymnastics; **la salle de gymnastique** (*pl. salles de gymnastique*) gymnasium

H

(* denotes an aspirate *h*)

habile [abil] clever
habiller [abiʃɛ] to dress; **s'habiller** to dress, to get dressed
les habits [abi] *m.* clothes
un habitant [abitɑ̃] inhabitant
habiter [abite] to live, to live in

une habitude [abityd] habit; **prendre l'habitude de** to get into the habit of; **d'habitude** usually
habituel, -elle [abitɥɛl] customary
habituer [abitɥɛ] to accustom; **s'habituer** to get accustomed (*or used*)
la *hache [aʃ] axe
le *hachis [aʃi] minced steak
la *haie [ɛ] hedge
la *haine [ɛn] hatred
Hambourg [ɑ̃buːR] *m.* Hamburg
le *hangar [ɑ̃gaːR] hangar
le *haricot [ariko] bean; **le haricot vert** green bean, string bean
le *hasard [azaːR] chance
***hausser** [ose] to raise; **hausser les épaules** to shrug one's shoulders
***haut, -e** [o, oːt] high
la *hauteur [otœːR] height
le *haut-parleur (*pl. haut-parleurs*) [oparlœːR] loud-speaker
La *Havane [avan] Havana
Le *Havre [ɑːvr] Le Havre
Hawaii [awaji] Hawaii; **les îles Hawaii** the Hawaiian Islands
La *Haye [ɛ] the Hague
Hélène [elɛn] Helen
l'herbe [ɛʁb] *f.* grass; **la mauvaise herbe** weed
une héroïne [ɛʁɔ̃n] heroine
l'héroïsme [ɛʁɔ̃sm] *m.* heroism
le *héros [ɛʁo] hero
hésiter [ezite] to hesitate
le *hêtre [ɛtʁ] beech (tree)
une heure [œːR] hour; **à quelle heure?** at what time? **à six heures** at six o'clock; **à l'heure** on time; **de bonne heure** early; **l'heure d'affluence** (*pl. heures d'affluence*) rush hour; **tout à l'heure** a little while ago, a few minutes ago, in a little while, in a few minutes
heureusement [œʁøzmɑ̃] fortunately
heureux, -euse [œʁø, -øːz] happy, fortunate, lucky

hier [jɛːR] yesterday; **hier soir** last night
Hippolyte [ipɔlit] *proper noun*
 une **histoire** [istwaːR] history, story
 un **hiver** [ivɛːR] winter; **en plein hiver** in the middle of (the) winter
 le ***hockey** [ɔkɛ] hockey
 ***hollandais**, -e [ɔlɑ̃dɛ, -ɛːz] Dutch
 la ***Hollande** [ɔlɑ̃d] Holland
 le ***homard** [ɔmaːR] lobster
 un **homme** [ɔm] man; un **homme de bien** (*pl. hommes de bien*) good man; un **homme d'affaires** businessman
 la ***Hongrie** [ɔgri] Hungary
 ***hongrois**, -e [ɔgrwa, -aːz] Hungarian
honnête [ɔnɛt] honest
 un **honneur** [ɔnœːR] honour; **faire honneur à** to do credit (*or*) justice to
 la ***honte** [ɔːt] shame; **avoir honte** to be (*or*) feel ashamed
 ***honteux**, -euse [ɔtɔ, -øːz] shameful, ashamed
 un **hôpital** [ɔpital, opital] (*pl. hôpitaux* [ɔpito, opito]) hospital
 le ***hoquet** [ɔkɛ] hiccups
 une **horloge** [ɔRlɔːʒ] clock
 une **horreur** [ɔRˈœːR] horror; **avoir horreur de** to loathe
horrible [ɔRˈibl] horrible
 un **hôte** [oːt] host
 un **hôtel** [ɔtɛl, otɛl] hotel
 une **hôtesse** [otɛs] hostess
 la ***housse** [us] slip cover
 l'**huile** [uil] *f.* oil
 ***huit** [uit] eight; **huit jours a week**
 une **huître** [uitR] oyster
 l'**humour** [ymœːR] *f.* humour; **de bonne humeur** good-tempered; **de mauvaise humeur** ill-tempered
humide [ymid] moist, damp
 l'**humidité** [ymidite] *f.* humidity, moisture, dampness
 ***hurler** [yrle] to howl, to yell

***Huron** [yRɔ̃]: le **lac Huron** Lake Huron
 l'**hydrogène** [idrɔʒɛn] *m.* hydrogen
 un **hymne** [imn] song, hymn; l'**hymne national** (*pl. hymnes nationaux*) national anthem

I

un **iceberg** [isberg] iceberg
ici [isi] here
idéal, -e (-aux) [ideal, -eo] ideal, perfect
 une **idée** [ide] idea
 un **idiotisme** [idjɔtism] idiom
 une **île** [il] island
illustrer [ilystre] to illustrate
 une **image** [imaːʒ] picture; un **livre d'images** picture-book; **sage comme une image** as good as gold
imaginer [imaʒine] to imagine; **s'imaginer** to imagine
immense [immũːs] immense
immensément [immũsemũ] immensely
 un **immeuble** [immœbl] apartment building (*or*) house
 un **immigrant** [immigrũ] immigrant
imparfait, -e [ɛ̃parfɛ, -ɛt] imperfect
impatiemment [ɛ̃pasjamũ] impatiently
impatient, -e [ɛ̃pasjã, -jãːt] impatient
impatienter [ɛ̃pasjãte] to make (s.o.) impatient; **s'impatienter** to get (*or*) become impatient
impératif, -ive [ɛ̃peratif, -iːv] imperative
 un **imperméable** [ɛ̃permeabl] raincoat
important, -e [ɛ̃pɔrtã, -ãːt] important
importer [ɛ̃pɔrte] to import
importer [ɛ̃pɔrte] (*defective verb*) to be of importance, to matter; **n'importe lequel (laquelle)** any

- one (at all); **n'importe où** anywhere (at all); **n'importe quel(le)** any (at all); **n'importe qui** anyone (at all); **n'importe quoi** anything (at all)
- impossible** [ɛ̃pɔsibl] impossible
- imprévu, -e** [ɛ̃prevy] unexpected
- incapable** [ɛ̃kapabl] incapable
- un **incendie** [ɛ̃sɥdi] fire
- un **incident** [ɛ̃sidɥ] incident
- incliner** [ɛ̃kline] to bow
- incroyable** [ɛ̃krwajabl] incredible, unbelievable
- incroyablement** [ɛ̃krwajabləmɥ] incredibly, unbelievably
- l'**Inde** [ɛ̃:d] *f.* India
- indéfini, -e** [ɛ̃defini] indefinite
- indéfiniment** [ɛ̃definimɥ] indefinitely
- indépendant, -e** [ɛ̃depɥdɥ, -ɥ:t] independent
- l'**indicatif** [ɛ̃dikatif] *m.* indicative
- indien, -ienne** [ɛ̃djɛ, -jɛn] Indian
- une **indigestion** [ɛ̃diʒestjɔ̃] indigestion
- indiquer** [ɛ̃dike] to indicate, to tell of
- un **individu** [ɛ̃dividy] individual, fellow
- une **industrie** [ɛ̃dystri] industry
- inébranlable** [inebrɥlabl] unshakeable
- inévitable** [inevitabl] inevitable
- inévitablement** [inevitabləmɥ] inevitably
- inexact, -e** [inegzakt] inaccurate
- inférieur, -e** [ɛ̃ferjœ:R] inferior, lower
- infester** [ɛ̃feste] to infest
- une **infirmière** [ɛ̃firmjɛ:R] nurse
- informer** [ɛ̃fɔrmɛ] to inform
- un **ingénieur** [ɛ̃ʒenjœ:R] engineer
- inhabitable** [inabitabl] uninhabitable
- inquiet, -ète** [ɛ̃kjɛ, -ɛt] worried
- inquiéter** [ɛ̃kjete] (*j'inquiète*) to worry; **s'inquiéter** to worry
- un **insecte** [ɛ̃sekt] insect
- insister** [ɛ̃siste] to insist
- installer** [ɛ̃stale] to install
- un **instant** [ɛ̃stɥ] instant; **à chaque instant** always
- une **instruction** [ɛ̃stryksjɔ̃] instruction, direction
- insuffisant, -e** [ɛ̃syfizɥ, -ɥ:t] insufficient, inadequate
- insupportable** [ɛ̃syɔptabl] unbearable
- l'**intelligence** [ɛ̃tel(l)izɥ:s] *f.* intelligence
- intelligent, -e** [ɛ̃tel(l)izɥ, -ɥ:t] intelligent
- intense** [ɛ̃tɥ:s] intense, heavy (*of traffic, shelling*)
- intensément** [ɛ̃tɥsemɥ] intensely
- une **intention** [ɛ̃tɥsjɔ̃] intention; **avoir l'intention de** to intend to, to mean to
- interdire** [ɛ̃terdi:R] to forbid
- intéressant, -e** [ɛ̃teresɥ, -ɥ:t] interesting
- intéresser** [ɛ̃terese] (*h.v.*) to interest; **s'intéresser à** to be (*or become*) interested in
- un **intérêt** [ɛ̃tere] interest
- international, -e (-aux)** [ɛ̃ternasjonal, -no] international
- interprète** [ɛ̃terpret] *m.f.* interpreter
- une **interrogation** [ɛ̃terɔgasjɔ̃] interrogation, questioning; **le point d'interrogation** (*pl. points d'interrogation*) question mark
- interroger** [ɛ̃terɔʒe] (*nous interrogeons*) to question
- interrompre** [ɛ̃terɔ:pr] to interrupt
- inutile** [inytil] useless
- inventer** [ɛ̃vɥte] to invent
- un **inventeur** [ɛ̃vɥtœ:R] inventor
- une **invitation** [ɛ̃vitasjɔ̃] invitation
- un **invité, une invitée** [ɛ̃vite] guest; **l'invité(e) d'honneur** (*pl. invités(e)s d'honneur*) guest of honour
- inviter** [ɛ̃vite] to invite
- l'**Irak** [irak] *m.* Iraq
- irakien, -ienne** [irakjɛ, -jɛn] Iraqi

P'Iran [irɑ̃] *m.* Iran
iranien, -ienne [iranjɛ̃, -jɛn] Iranian
Irène [irɛn] Irene
irlandais, -e [irlɑ̃dɛ, -ɛ:z] Irish; un **Irlandais** Irishman; une **Irlandaise** Irishwoman
P'Irlande [irlɑ̃:d] *f.* Ireland
P'ironie [irɔni] *f.* irony
irrégulier, -ière [irɛgyljɛ, -jɛ:R] irregular
Isabelle [izabɛl] Isabel
P'Islande [islɑ̃:d] *f.* Iceland
islandais, -e [islɑ̃dɛ, -ɛ:z] Icelandic; un **Islandais**, une **Islandaise** an Icelander
Israël [israɛl] *m.* Israel
P'Italie [itali] *f.* Italy
italien, -ienne [italjɛ̃, -jɛn] Italian
P'italique [italik] *m.* italic(s)

J

Jacqueline [ʒaklin, ʒaklin] *proper noun*
Jacques [ʒɑ:k] James
jaloux, -ouse [ʒalu, -u:z] jealous
la Jamaïque [ʒamaik] Jamaica
jamais [ʒamɛ̃] ever; **ne . . . jamais** never; **ne . . . plus jamais** never again
la jambe [ʒɑ:b] leg
le jambon [ʒɑ̃bɔ̃] ham
janvier [ʒɑ̃vjɛ] *m.* January
le Japon [ʒapɔ̃] Japan
japonais, -e [ʒapɔ̃nɛ, -ɛ:z] Japanese
la jaquette [ʒakɛt] (*woman's*) jacket
le jardin [ʒardɛ̃] garden; le **jardin potager** vegetable garden
le jardinage [ʒardina:ʒ] gardening
le jardinier [ʒardinjɛ] gardener
jaune [ʒo:n] yellow
Java [ʒava] *m.* Java
javanais, -e [ʒavanɛ, -ɛ:z] Javanese
Jean [ʒɑ̃] John
Jeanne [ʒan, ʒɑ:n] Jane, Jean, Joan
Jérusalem [ʒeryzalem] *m.* Jerusalem
Jésus-Christ [ʒɛzykʁi] Jesus Christ
jeter [ʒɛtɛ] (*je jette*) to throw, to throw away (*or out*); **jeter un coup d'œil** to cast a glance, to glance
le jeu, -x [ʒø] game
le jeudi [ʒødi] Thursday
jeune [ʒœn] young; le **jeune homme** (*pl.* **jeunes gens**) young man
la jeunesse [ʒœnɛs] youth
la joie [ʒwa] joy
joindre [ʒwɛ:dr] to join, to fold (*one's hands*), to enclose (*sth. in a letter*)
joli, -e [ʒoli] pretty
Joséphine [ʒozefin] Josephine
la joue [ʒu] cheek
jouer [ʒwɛ] to play, to perform
le jouet [ʒwɛ] toy
le joueur [ʒwœ:R] player
jouir [ʒwi:R] to enjoy
le jour [ʒu:R] day; le **jour de l'an** New Year's Day; **en plein jour** in broad daylight
le journal, -aux [ʒurnal, -no] newspaper
journaliste [ʒurnalist] *m.f.* journalist, reporter
la journée [ʒurnɛ] day
joyeusement [ʒwajøzmɑ̃] joyfully, merrily
joyeux, -euse [ʒwajø, -ø:z] joyful, merry
juger [ʒyʒɛ] to judge
juif, juive [ʒɥif, -i:v] Jewish; un **Juif** a Jew; une **Juive** a Jewess
juillet [ʒɥijɛ] *m.* July
juin [ʒɥɛ̃] *m.* June
Jules [ʒyl] Julius
Julie [ʒyli] Julia
Julien [ʒyljɛ̃] Julian
les jumeaux, les jumelles [ʒymo, -ɛl] twins
la jupe [ʒyp] skirt

jurer [ʒyRE] to swear
le jus [ʒy] juice
jusqu'à [ʒyska] as far as, until;
jusqu'à ce que until; **jusqu'au**
jour où until; **jusqu'au moment**
où until
juste [ʒyst] right, just
la justice [ʒystis] justice

K

Kiki [kiki] *familiar diminutive of*
Jacqueline
le kilo [kilo] kilo

L

là [la] there; **par là** that way
là-bas [labu] over there
labourer [labure] to plough
le lac [lak] lake; **les Grands Lacs** the
 Great Lakes
lâcher [laʃe] to let go (of)
laid, -e [le, lɛd] ugly
la laine [len] wool
laisser [lese] (*h.v.*) to leave, to let;
laisser tomber to drop; **se**
laisser aller dans un fauteuil
 to sink into an armchair
le lait [le] milk
le laitier [letje] milkman
la laitue [lety] lettuce
la lame [lam] blade
la lampe [lã:p] lamp, light; **la lampe**
de poche (*pl. lampes de poche*)
 flashlight
lancer [lãse] (*nous lançons*) to throw
la langue [lã:g] tongue, language
le lapin [lapɛ] rabbit
le lard [la:R] bacon
large [larʒ] wide
la largeur [larʒœ:R] width
la larme [larm] tear
Larousse [larus] *proper noun*
lasser [lose] to weary; **se lasser** to
 tire, to get tired
le latin [latɛ] Latin
le lavabo [lavabo] washbasin

laver [lave] to wash; **se laver** to
 wash, to get washed
la leçon [læsɔ̃] lesson
la lecture [lɛkty:R] reading
légal, -e (-aux) [legal, -go] legal
léger, -ère [leʒe, -e:R] light, slight
légalement [leʒERMã] lightly,
 slightly
le légume [legym] vegetable
le lendemain [lãdmɛ̃] the day after,
 the next day; **du jour au lende-**
main overnight
lent, -e [lã, lã:t] slow
lentement [lãtmã] slowly
Léonard de Vinci [leɔnar də
 vɛsi] Leonardo da Vinci
lequel, laquelle [ləkɛl, lakɛl] (*pl.*
lesquels, lesquelles [ləkɛl]) (*rel.*
pron.) who, whom, which; (*inter-*
rog. pron.) which, which one
la lessive [lesi:v] washing
letton, -onne [letɔ̃, -ɔn] Lettish;
le letton Lettish (*i.e., language*)
la Lettonie [letɔni] Latvia
la lettre [letR] letter
leur, leurs [lœR] their
le leur, la leur [lœ:R] theirs
lever [ləve] (*je lève*) to raise; **se**
lever to get up, to stand up, to
 rise
le lever [ləve] rising; **le lever du**
soleil (*pl. levers du soleil*)
 sunrise
la lèvre [lɛ:vr] lip
la liaison [ljɛzɔ̃] liaison
la liberté [libɛrte] liberty
la librairie [libreri] bookstore
libre [libR] free
le lieu, -x [ljø] place
le lièvre [ljɛ:vr] hare
la ligne [lin] line; **«à la ligne»** (*in*
dictation) "new paragraph"
le lilas [lila] lilac
la lime [lim] file; **la lime à ongles**
 nail-file
la limite [limit] limit
Limoges [limɔ:ʒ] *m.* Limoges
le linge [lɛ:ʒ] piece of linen, under-
 wear, clothes (*i.e., laundry*);

- blanc(he) comme un linge** as white as a sheet
- liquide** [likid] liquid
- le **liquide** [likid] liquid
- lire** [li:R] to read
- Lisbonne** [lizbən] *m.* Lisbon
- lisible** [lizibl] legible
- lisiblement** [lizibləmã] legibly
- la **liste** [list] list
- le **lit** [li] bed
- la **littérature** [literaty:R] literature
- la **Lituanie** [litqani] Lithuania
- lituanien, -ienne** [litqanjê, -jen] Lithuanian
- le **livre** [li:vR] book
- la **livre** [li:vR] pound
- livrer** [livre] to deliver
- locataire** [ləkate:R] *m.f.* roomer
- loger** [ləʒe] (*nous logeons*) to put up, to stay (*at hotel, etc.*)
- la **loi** [lwa] law
- loin** [lwê] far, far away
- la **Loire** [lwa:R] the Loire
- Londres** [lɔ:dr] *m.* London
- long, longue** [lɔ, lɔ:g] long; **le long de** along
- longtemps** [lɔtã] a long time, long
- longuement** [lɔgmã] at length
- la **longueur** [lɔgœ:R] length
- louer** [lwe] to rent
- Louise** [lwi:z] Louise
- la **Louisiane** [lwi:ʒan] Louisiana
- le **loup** [lu] wolf; **avoir une faim de loup** to be as hungry as a wolf
- lourd, -e** [lu:R, lurd] heavy; **il fait lourd** it is sultry
- le **loyer** [lwaje] rent
- la **lumière** [lymje:R] light
- le **lundi** [lœdi] Monday
- la **lune** [lyn] moon
- les **lunettes** [lynɛt] *f.* glasses
- le **luxe** [lyks] luxury
- le **Luxembourg** [lyksãbu:R] Luxembourg
- luxembourgeois, -e** [lyksãburʒwa, -a:z] (of) Luxembourg; un **Luxembourgeois, une Luxembourgeoise** a Luxemburger
- Lyon** [ljɔ] *m.* Lyons

M

- la **machine** [maʃin] machine; la **machine à coudre** (*pl. machines à coudre*) sewing-machine; la **machine à écrire** (*pl. machines à écrire*) typewriter; la **machine à laver** (*pl. machines à laver*) washing-machine
- Madagascar** [madagaska:R] *m.* Madagascar
- madame** [madam] madam; **mesdames** [medam] ladies
- Madeleine** [madlen] Madeline
- mademoiselle** (*pl. mesdemoiselles*) [madmwazel, medmwazel] miss
- le **magasin** [magazê] store
- le **magazine** [magazin] magazine
- mai** [mɛ] *m.* May
- maigre** [megr] thin
- maigrir** [megri:R] to reduce, to get thin; **maigrir de dix livres** to lose ten pounds
- la **main** [mɛ] hand
- le **Maine** [men] Maine
- maintenant** [mɛtã] now
- le **maire** [me:R] mayor
- le **maïs** [mais] corn
- mais** [mɛ] but; **mais oui!** of course! **mais si!** of course! **mais non!** of course not!
- la **maison** [mezɔ] house; **à la maison** home, at home; **dans la maison** in the house, indoors
- le **maître** [metR] master; le **maître de danse** (*pl. maîtres de danse*) dancing teacher
- la **maîtresse** [metres] mistress; la **maîtresse de danse** (*pl. maîtresses de danse*) dancing teacher
- la **majorité** [majɔrite] majority
- majuscule** [majyskyl]: la (**lettre**) majuscule capital (letter)
- mal** [mal] badly; **plus mal** worse; **pas mal (de)** quite a lot (of), quite a few (of)
- le **mal** (*pl. maux*) [mal, mo] pain; le **mal de mer** seasickness;

faire mal à to hurt; **avoir mal** (à) to have a pain (in)
malade [malad] *m.f.* patient
malade [malad] ill, sick
la **maladie** [maladi] illness, sickness, disease
malgache [malgaʃ] Madagascan
malgré [malgre] in spite of;
malgré que in spite of the fact that
le **malheur** [malœ:ʀ] misfortune, bad luck
malheureux, -euse [malœʀø, -ø:z] unhappy, unfortunate
malhonnête [malønɛt] dishonest
la **malle** [mal] trunk
Malte [malt] *f.* Malta
maman [mamā] mum(my), mom(my), mother
la **manche** [mā:ʃ] sleeve
manger [māʒe] (*nous mangeons*) to eat; **faire manger qn** to feed s.o.
le **Manitoba** [manitəba] Manitoba
le **manque** [mā:k] lack
manquer [māke] to miss, to be missing, to be absent, to lack;
ne pas manquer de to be sure to, not to fail to
le **manteau, -x** [māto] (*woman's long*) coat
le **maquillage** [makija:ʒ] make-up
maquiller [makije] to make up;
se maquiller to use make-up
le **marchand** [marʃā] dealer
la **marche** [marʃ] walking, walk
le **marché** [marʃe] market; **bon marché** (*invar.*) cheap; **meilleur marché** (*invar.*) cheaper
marcher [marʃe] to walk, to work, to run, to go
le **mardi** [mardi] Tuesday
la **marée** [mare] tide
Marguerite [margørit] Margaret
le **mari** [mari] husband
le **mariage** [marja:ʒ] marriage, wedding
Marianne [marjan] Marian
Marie [mari] Mary

marié, -e [marje] married; le **marié** (bride)groom; la **mariée** bride
marier [marje] to marry; **se marier** to marry, to get married
le **marin** [marē] sailor
la **marine** [marin] navy; **bleu marine** (*invar.*) navy blue
le **Maroc** [marək] Morocco
marocain, -e [marəkē, -ɛn] Moroccan
la **marque** [mark] make (*of car, etc.*)
mars [mars] *m.* March
Marseille [marsej] *m.* Marseilles
la **Marseillaise** [marsejɛ:z] the Marseillaise
le **marteau, -x** [marto] hammer
Marthe [mart] Martha
la **Martinique** [martinik] Martinique
le **matelas** [matla] mattress
le **match** (*pl. matches*) [matʃ] game
les **mathématiques** [matematik] *f.* mathematics
la **matière** [matje:ʀ] material, matter, subject (*of curriculum*); la **matière première** raw material
le **matin** [matē] morning
la **matinée** [matine] morning
Maurice [møris] Maurice
mauvais, -e [møvɛ, -ɛ:z] bad, wrong; **plus mauvais(e)** worse; **de mauvaise humeur** ill-tempered; la **mauvaise herbe** weed; **il fait mauvais** the weather is bad
le **mécanicien** [mekanisjē] mechanic
méchant, -e [mɛʃā, -ā:t] bad, nasty
mécontent, -e [mekõtā, -ā:t] displeased, dissatisfied
Médard [meda:ʀ] *proper noun*
le **médecin** [medsē] doctor
la **médecine** [medsin] medicine;
faire sa médecine to study medicine
le **médicament** [medikamā] medicine
la **Méditerranée** [mediter'ane] the Mediterranean

Médor [medo:R] *m.* Fido
 la **méfiance** [mefjã:s] mistrust
méfier [mefje]: **se méfier de** to mistrust, to beware of
meilleur, -e [mejœ:R] better; le meilleur, la meilleure the best
 le **mélange** [melã:ʒ] mixture
mélanger [melãʒe] (*nous mélangions*) to mix
 le **melon** [mɛlɔ̃] melon
 le **membre** [mã:bR] member
même [mɛm] (*adj.*) same, very
même [mɛm] (*adv.*) even
 la **mémoire** [memwa:R] memory
menacer [mənase] (*nous menaçons*) to threaten
 le **ménage** [mena:ʒ] housework
mener [mənɛ] (*je mène*) to lead, to take
 le **mensonge** [mãsɔ̃:ʒ] lie
mentir [mãti:R] to lie
 le **menton** [mãtɔ̃] chin
 le **menu** [mɛny] menu
 la **mer** [mɛ:R] sea; **en pleine mer** on the open sea; **au bord de la mer** at the seaside
merci [mɛrsi] thank you
 le **mercredi** [mɛrkʁɛdi] Wednesday
 le **mercure** [mɛrky:R] mercury
 la **mère** [mɛ:R] mother
mériter [mɛrite] to deserve
 la **merveille** [mɛrvɛj] marvel, wonder; **à merveille** marvellously, wonderfully (well)
merveilleux, -euse [mɛrvɛjɔ̃, -ø:z] marvellous
merveilleusement [mɛrvɛjɔ̃zmã] wonderfully, marvellously
mesurer [mɛzyʁɛ] to measure;
Combien mesurez-vous? How tall are you?
 le **métal, -aux** [metal, -to] metal
 la **méthode** [metɔd] method
 le **métier** [metje] occupation, profession
 le **mètre** [mɛtʁ] metre, yard (*approx.*)
 le **métro** [metro] subway; **en métro** by subway

mettre [mɛtʁ] to put, to put on (*clothing*), to set (*the table*), to take (*time*); **mettre de côté** to save; **mettre en marche** to start (*a motor, etc.*); **mettre qn en retard** to make s.o. late; **se mettre à** to begin (*or start*) to, to set about; **se mettre à table** to sit down to lunch (*dinner, etc.*); **se mettre en robe longue** to wear a long dress
 le **meuble** [mœbl] piece of furniture; les meubles furniture
Mexico [meksiko] *m.* Mexico City
 le **Mexique** [mɛksik] Mexico
mexicain, -e [mɛksikɛ̃, -ɛn] Mexican
Michel [miʃɛl] Michael
mi [mi]: **à mi-chemin** half-way
midi [midi] *m.* noon
 le **miel** [mjɛl] honey
 le **mien, la mienne** [mjɛ̃, mjɛn] mine
mieux [mjø] better; le mieux best; **faire de son mieux** to do one's best; **il ferait mieux de . . .** he had better . . .
 le **milieu, -x** [miljø] middle
 le **mille** [mil] mile
 un **milliard** [milja:R] a billion
 un **millier** [milje] (about) a thousand; des milliers thousands
 un **million** [miljø̃] a million
 le **millionnaire** [miljøne:R] millionaire
mince [mɛ:s] thin, slim
 la **mine** [min] appearance; **avoir bonne mine** to look well; **avoir mauvaise mine** to look ill
 la **mine** [min] mine
 le **ministre** [ministr] minister; le premier ministre prime minister
minuit [minɥi] *m.* midnight
minuscule [minyskyl] small, tiny; la (*lettre*) minuscule small letter
 la **minute** [minyt] minute
 le **miracle** [mira:kl] miracle
 la **misère** [mize:R] poverty

- le **Mississipi** [misisiɥi] the Mississippi
- la **mite** [mit] moth
- modeler** [mødle] (*je modèle*) to mould, to shape; la **pâte à modeler** plasticine
- moindre** [mwê:dr] less, lesser; le (la) **moindre** the least (*adj.*)
- le **moineau**, -x [mwano] sparrow
- moins** [mwê] less; **de moins en moins** less and less; **moins de** less, fewer; le **moins** least (*adv.*); **au moins** at least; le **moins de fautes possible** as few mistakes as possible; **à moins que** unless
- le **mois** [mwa] month
- la **moitié** [mwatje] half; **à moitié** half (*adv.*)
- le **moment** [mômâ] moment, time; **un bon moment** quite a while; **pour le moment** for the time being; **au moment où** just when, just as; **jusqu'au moment où** until
- mon**, **ma**, **mes** [mô, ma, me] my
- le **monde** [mô:d] world; **avoir du monde** to have company; **beau-coup de monde** a (great) many people; **tout le monde** everybody, everyone; **pas grand monde** not (very) many people; **faire le tour du monde** to take a trip around the world; **vieux (vieille) comme le monde** as old as the hills
- Monique** [mônîk] Monica
- la **monnaie** [mônê] change (*i.e.*, money)
- monotone** [mônôtôn] monotonous
- monsieur** [môsjø] (*pl. messieurs* [mesjø]) gentleman, sir
- le **mont** [mô] mount
- la **montagne** [môtap] mountain
- Montcalm** [môkalm] *proper noun*
- monter** [môte] to go (*or come*) up(stairs), to carry (*or bring or take*) up(stairs), to get on (*a train, etc.*), to get in (*a car, etc.*);
- monter sur qch.** to get up on sth.
- la **montre** [mô:tr] watch
- Montréal** [môreal] *m.* Montreal
- la **montre-bracelet** (*pl. montres-bracelets*) [môtrəbraslɛ] wrist-watch
- montrer** [môtre] to show; **se montrer** to appear
- moquer** [møke]: **se moquer de** to make fun of
- le **morceau**, -x [mørso] piece, lump (*of sugar*)
- mordre** [môrdR] to bite
- mort**, -e [mø:R, mœrt] dead
- la **mort** [mø:R] death
- le **mort** [mø:R] dead man
- la **morte** [mœrt] dead woman
- la **morue** [mœry] cod
- Moscou** [mœsku] *m.* Moscow
- le **mot** [mo] word
- le **moteur** [môtœ:R] motor, engine
- la **motocyclette** [môtəsiklɛt] motor-cycle
- mou**, **mol**, **molle**, **mous**, **molles** [mu, mœl] soft
- la **mouche** [muʃ] fly
- moucher** [muʃe] to wipe (s.o.'s) nose; **se moucher** to blow (*or wipe*) one's (*own*) nose
- le **mouchoir** [muʃwa:R] handkerchief
- mouiller** [muje] to wet
- mourir** [muri:R] to die; **mourir de faim** to starve; **mourir de peur** to be frightened to death
- la **mousse** [mus] foam; la **mousse de caoutchouc** foam rubber
- la **moustache** [mustaʃ] moustache
- la **moustiquaire** [mustike:R] mosquito net, screen
- le **moustique** [mustik] mosquito
- la **moutarde** [mutard] mustard
- le **mouton** [mutô] sheep
- le **moyen** [mwajê] means, way
- le **mur** [my:R] wall
- mûr**, -e [my:R] ripe
- mûrir** [myri:R] to ripen
- le **musée** [myze] museum

- le **musicien**, la **musicienne** [myzisiʒjẽ, -jen] musician
 la **musique** [myzik] music
mutuel, **-elle** [mytɥɛl] mutual
mutuellement [mytɥɛlmɑ̃] mutually

N

- nager** [nazɛ] (*nous nageons*) to swim
naître [nɛtr] to be born
Napoléon [napɔlɛɔ̃] Napoleon
 la **nappe** [nap] tablecloth
nasal, **-e (-aux)** [nazal, -zo] nasal
 la **natation** [natasiɔ̃] swimming
 la **nation** [nasjɔ̃] nation
national, **-e (-aux)** [nasjonal, -no] national
 la **nationalité** [nasjonalite] nationality
 la **nature** [naty:r] nature
naturel, **-elle** [natyrel] natural
naval, **-e (-als)** [naval] naval
 le **navet** [navɛ] turnip
 le **navigateur** [navigatœ:r] navigator
nécessaire [nesesɛ:r] necessary
néerlandais, **-e** [neerlɑ̃dɛ, -ɛ:z] Dutch
négatif, **-ive** [negatif, -i:v] negative
négliger [neglizɛ] (*nous négligeons*) to neglect
 la **neige** [nɛ:ʒ] snow
neiger [nɛʒɛ] (*il neigeait*) to snow
néo-zélandais, **-e** [neozelɑ̃dɛ, -ɛ:z] New Zealand (*adj.*); un **Néo-Zélandais**, une **Néo-Zélandaise** a New Zealander
n'est-ce pas? [nɛspɑ̃] are(n't) you?, have(n't) they?, did(n't) he?, etc.
nettement [nɛtmɑ̃] definitely
nettoyer [netwaʒɛ] (*je nettoie*) to clean
neuf, **neuve** [nœf, nœ:v] new
 le **neveu**, **-x** [nəvø] nephew
 le **nez** [nɛ] nose
ni [ni] nor; **ni . . . ni . . .** neither . . . nor . . .
Nicolas [nikɔla] Nicholas
 le **nid** [ni] nest
 la **nièce** [njɛs] niece
nier [nje] to deny
 le **Nil** [nil] the Nile
 la **noce** [nɔs] wedding; le **cadeau de nocés** wedding present
Noël [nɔɛl] *m.* Christmas
 le **nœud** [nø] knot
noir, **-e** [nwa:r] black; **il fait noir** it is dark
 le **nom** [nɔ̃] name; le **petit nom** first name
 le **nombre** [nɔ̃:br] number
nommer [nɔmɛ] to name, to appoint
 le **nord** [nɔ:r] north
 la **Norvège** [nɔrvɛ:ʒ] Norway
norvégien, **-ienne** [nɔrveʒjẽ, -jen] Norwegian
 la **note** [nɔt] mark
notre, **nos** [nɔtr, no] our
 le **nôtre**, la **nôtre** [no:tr] ours
nourissant, **-e** [nur:isɑ̃, -ɑ̃:t] nourishing
 la **nourriture** [nur:ity:r] food
nouveau, **nouvel**, **nouvelle**, **nouveaux**, **nouvelles** [nuvo, nuvel] new; **de nouveau** again
 le **Nouveau-Brunswick** [nuvobrœz-wik] New Brunswick
 le **Nouveau-Mexique** [nuvomɛksik] New Mexico
 la **nouvelle** [nuvel] (piece of) news; les **nouvelles** news; **recevoir (or avoir) des nouvelles de** to hear from
 la **Nouvelle-Écosse** [nuvelekɔs] Nova Scotia
 La **Nouvelle-Orléans** [nuvelɔrleɑ̃] New Orleans
 la **Nouvelle-Zélande** [nuvelzelɑ̃:d] New Zealand
novembre [nɔvɑ̃:br] *m.* November

le **noyau**, **-x** [nwajɔ] stone (*of fruit*)
noyer [nwaje] (*je noie*) to drown;
se noyer to drown, to be
 drowned
nu, **-e** [ny] bare
 le **nuage** [nʏa:ʒ] cloud
nuageux, **-euse** [nʏaʒø, -ø:z]
 cloudy
 la **nuit** [nʏi] night; **la nuit** at night;
cette nuit tonight, last night;
en pleine nuit in the middle
 of the night; **il fait nuit** it is
 dark
nul, **nulle** [nyl] no, (*adj.*); **nulle**
 part nowhere
 le **numéro** [nymɛʁɔ] number
nuptial, **-e** (**-aux**) [nypsja], **-jo**]
 nuptial, bridal
 le **nylon** [nilɔ̃] nylon

O

obéir [əbei:R] to obey
 un **objet** [əbzɛ] object, article
l'obligeance [əbliʒɑ:s] *f.* kindness;
avoir l'obligeance de to be so
 kind as to
obliger [əbliʒɛ] (*nous obligeons*) to
 oblige, to force, to make
obscur, **-e** [əpsky:R] obscure, dark
l'obscurité [əpskyʁite] *f.* darkness
 un **obstacle** [əpstakl] obstacle
obstiner [əpstine]: **s'obstiner** to
 persist
 une **occasion** [əkazjɔ̃] opportunity;
d'occasion second-hand
occupé, **-e** [əkype] occupied, busy
occuper [əkype] to occupy; **s'oc-**
cuper to busy oneself; **s'occuper**
de to see to, to mind, to look
 after
 un **océan** [əseɑ̃] ocean
octobre [əktɔbr] *m.* October
 une **odeur** [ədœ:R] odour, smell
 un **œil** [œj] (*pl. yeux* [jø]) eye; **aux**
yeux bleus blue-eyed; le **coup**
d'œil (*pl. coups d'œil*) glance

un **œuf** [œf] (*pl. œufs* [ø]) egg; un
œuf sur le plat (*pl. œufs sur le*
plat) fried egg; un **œuf poché**
 poached egg; un **œuf brouillé**
 scrambled egg; un **œuf à la**
coque (*pl. œufs à la coque*)
 (soft-)boiled egg
 une **œuvre** [œ:vʁ] work
 un **office** [ɔfis] (church) service
 un **officier** [ɔfisje] officer
offrir [ɔfri:R] to offer; **s'offrir qch.**
 to treat oneself to sth.
 une **oie** [wa] goose
 un **oignon** [ɔnɔ̃] onion
 un **oiseau**, **-x** [wazo] bird
 une **olive** [ɔli:v] olive
olympique [ɔlɛ̃pik] Olympic
 une **omelette** [ɔmlɛt] omelette
on [ɔ̃] one, we, you, they, people
 un **oncle** [ɔ̃:kl] uncle
 un **ongle** [ɔ̃:gl] nail (*of finger or toe*)
l'Ontario [ɔ̃taʁjo] *m.* Ontario
 une **opération** [ɔpɛʁasjɔ̃] operation
opérer [ɔpɛʁɛ] (*j'opère*) to operate
 une **opinion** [ɔpinjɔ̃] opinion
opposer [ɔpoze] to oppose; **s'op-**
poser à to oppose
l'or [ɔ:R] *m.* gold
 un **orage** [ɔʁa:ʒ] (thunder) storm;
il fait de l'orage it is stormy
 une **orange** [ɔʁɑ̃:ʒ] orange
 un **orchestre** [ɔʁkestr] orchestra
ordinaire [ɔʁdine:R] ordinary
ordonner [ɔʁdɔnɛ] to order
 un **ordre** [ɔʁdʁ] order; **en ordre** in
 order, tidy
 une **oreille** [ɔʁɛj] ear
 un **oreiller** [ɔʁɛje] pillow
 les **oreillons** [ɔʁɛjɔ̃] *m.* mumps
organiser [ɔʁganize] to organize
original, **-e** (**-aux**) [ɔʁiʒinal, -no]
 original
 un **orphelin**, une **orpheline** [ɔʁfɛlɛ̃,
 -in] orphan
 un **orteil** [ɔʁtej] toe
l'orthographe [ɔʁtɔɡraf] *f.* spelling
 un **os** [ɔs] (*pl. os* [o]) bone
oser [oze] to dare
ôter [ote] to take away, to take off

- ou [u] or
 où [u] where
 oublier [ubli(j)e] to forget
 l'ouest [west] *m.* west
 un ours [urs] bear
 ouvert, -e [uvɛ:r, -ɛrt] open,
 unlocked
 un ouvre-boîtes [uvrəbwat] (*invar.*)
 can opener
 un ouvrier [uvri(j)e] workman
 ouvrir [uvri:r] to open, to turn on
 l'oxygène [øksizɛn] *m.* oxygen

P

- le Pacifique [pasifik] the Pacific
 la pagaie [pagɛ] paddle
 payer [pagejɛ] (*h.v.*) (*je paye*,
je paie) to paddle
 la page [pa:ʒ] page; à la page up to
 date
 le pain [pɛ̃] bread, loaf; le petit pain
 roll; le pain grillé toast; le
 pain d'épice gingerbread
 la paire [pɛ:r] pair
 la paix [pɛ] peace; en paix at
 peace
 le Pakistan [pakistɑ̃] Pakistan
 pakistanais, -e [pakistanɛ, -ɛ:z]
 Pakistani
 pâle [pa:l] pale
 le pamplemousse [pɑ̃pləmus] grape-
 fruit
 le panier [panjɛ] basket
 la panne [pan] breakdown
 le pansement [pɑ̃smɑ̃] bandage, dres-
 sing
 panser [pɑ̃sɛ] to bandage, to
 dress
 le pantalon [pɑ̃talɔ̃] (pair of) trou-
 sers
 la pantoufle [pɑ̃tufl] slipper
 papa [papa] dad(dy), father
 le papier [papjɛ] paper, document;
 le papier à lettres note-paper
 Pâques [pa:k] *m. sing.* Easter
 le paquet [pakɛ] package, parcel

- par [par] per, by, through; par la
 fenêtre out of the window
 le paragraphe [paragraf] paragraph
 le Paraguay [paraʒɛ] Paraguay
 paraguayen, -enne [paraʒɛjɛ,
 -jen] Paraguayan
 paraître [paretr] to appear, to
 seem
 le parapluie [paraplui] umbrella
 le parc [park] park
 parce que [parskɑ̃] because
 le pardessus [pardəsɥ] overcoat
 le pardon [pardɔ̃] pardon; demander
 pardon à qn to beg s.o.'s pardon
 pardonner [pardɔnɛ] to pardon,
 to forgive
 pareil, pareille [parej] alike,
 similar; une chose pareille a
 thing like that
 la parenthèse [parɑ̃tɛ:z] parenthe-
 sis, bracket
 les parents [parɑ̃] *m.* parents, rel-
 atives
 la paresse [parɛs] laziness
 paresseux, -euse [parɛsø, -ø:z]
 lazy
 parfait, -e [parfɛ, -ɛt] perfect
 parfaitement [parfɛtmɑ̃] perfectly
 parfois [parfwa] sometimes
 le parfum [parfœ] perfume
 parier [parjɛ] to bet
 Paris [pari] *m.* Paris
 parisien, -ienne [parizjɛ, -jen]
 Parisian
 parler [parle] to speak, to talk;
 parler de to tell of, to mention;
 entendre parler de to hear
 of (*or about*)
 parmi [parmi] among
 la parole [parɔl] word
 la part [pa:r] share
 partager [partaʒɛ] (*nous parta-*
geons) to share
 le participe [partisip] participle
 particulier, -ière [partikyljɛ,
 -je:r] particular, private
 la partie [parti] part; faire une
 partie (*de tennis, etc.*) to have a
 game (*of tennis, etc.*); faire

partie de to be part of, to be on
(a team)

partir [parti:R] to leave, to go, to go off, to go away, (of engine) to start; **partir en courant** to run off (or away)

partout [partu] everywhere; **partout ailleurs** anywhere else, everywhere else; **partout où** wherever

pas [pa] not; **pas du tout** not at all
le **passager** [pasaʒe, pasaʒe] passenger

passé, -e [pase] past

le **passé** [pase] past; le **passé composé** present perfect; le **passé simple** past historic

le **passport** [paspo:R] passport

passer [pase] to pass, to go over, to go through (the customs), to cross (the border), to try (an examination), to write (an examination), to spend (time), to drop in; le **film passe à huit heures** the film comes on at eight o'clock; **se passer** to happen, to be going on; **se passer de** to do without, to get along without

passif, -ive [pasif, -i:v] passive

passionnant, -e [pasjonã, -ã:t] exciting

le **pasteur** [pastœ:R] minister

la **pâte** [pa:t] paste, dough; la **pâte à modeler** plasticine

patiemment [pasjamã] patiently

la **patience** [pasjã:s] patience

patient, -e [pasjã, -ã:t] patient

le **patin** [patẽ] skate; le **patin à roulettes** roller skate

le **patinage** [patina:ʒ] skating; **faire du patinage** to go skating

patiner [patine] to skate

la **patinoire** [patinwa:R] (skating) rink

la **pâtisserie** [putisʀi, patisʀi] pastry

le **patron**, la **patronne** [patrõ, -õn] patron saint

le **patron** [patrõ] boss

la **patte** [pat] paw, foot, leg

Paul [põl] Paul

pauvre [po:VR] poor

payer [peʒe] (h.v.) (je paye, je paie) to pay, to pay for; **se payer qch.** to treat oneself to sth., to afford

le **pays** [pe(j)i] country

les **Pays-Bas** [pe(j)iba] m. the Netherlands

le **paysage** [pe(j)iza:ʒ] landscape

la **peau, -x** [po] skin

la **pêche** [peʃ] fishing; **aller à la pêche** to go fishing

la **pêche** [peʃ] peach

le **pêcher** [peʃe] peach tree

le **pêcheur** [peʃœ:R] fisherman

le **peigne** [peɲ] comb

peindre [pẽ:dr] to paint

la **peine** [pen] difficulty, trouble; **valoir la peine** to be worth while; **ce n'est pas la peine** it isn't worth while

le **peintre** [pẽ:tr] painter

la **peinture** [pẽty:R] paint, painting

Pékin [pekẽ] m. Peking (Peiping)

peler [põle] (je pèle) to peel

la **pelle** [põl] shovel

la **pelouse** [põlu:z] lawn

penché, -e [pãʃe] leaning

pencher [pãʃe] to bend, to lean

pendant [pãdã] during, for; **pendant que** while

pendre [pã:dr] to hang

penser [pãse] to think, to plan, to intend, to expect

pensionnaire [pãsjõnɛ:R] m.f. boarder

la **Pennsylvanie** [pensilvani] Pennsylvania

le **pentagone** [pẽtagõ] pentagon

la **Pentecôte** [pãtkõ:t] Whitsun(tide)

le **pépin** [pepẽ] seed, pip

perdre [pẽdr] to lose, to spare, to waste; **perdre pied** to get out of one's depth; **se perdre** to get lost, to lose one's way

le **père** [pe:R] father

perfectionner [pẽfeksjõne] to improve

perfide [pẽfid] perfidious

- la **perle** [pɛʁl] pearl
 la **permanente** [pɛʁmanɑ̃:t] permanent (wave)
permettre [pɛʁmɛtʁ] to permit, to allow
 le **permis** [pɛʁmi] permit; le **permis de conduire** (*invar.*) driver's license
 la **permission** [pɛʁmisjɔ̃] permission
 le **Pérou** [pɛʁu] Peru
 le **perron** [pɛʁ.ɔ̃] steps (*in front of a building*)
 la **Perse** [pɛʁs] Persia
perse [pɛʁs] Persian
persister [pɛʁsiste] to persist
 le **personnage** [pɛʁsɔna:ʒ] character (*in literature*)
 la **personne** [pɛʁsɔn] person; les **grandes personnes** grown-ups
personne [pɛʁsɔn] *m.* nobody, no one
personnel, -elle [pɛʁsɔnɛl] personal
persuader [pɛʁsqadɛ] to persuade
 la **perte** [pɛʁt] loss, waste
péruvien, -ienne [pɛʁyvjɛ̃, -jɛn] Peruvian
peser [pɛʒɛ] (*je pèse*) to weigh
petit, -e [pɛti, -it] little, small
 la **petite-fille** (*pl. petites-filles*) [pɛtitifij] granddaughter
 le **petit-fils** (*pl. petits-fils*) [pɛtifis] grandson
 les **petits-enfants** [pɛtizɑ̃fɑ̃] *m.* grandchildren
 le **pétrole** [pɛtʁɔl] (crude) oil
peu [pø] little, few, not much, not many; **un peu** a little
 le **peuple** [pœpl] people
 la **peur** [pœ:r] fear; **avoir peur** to be afraid
peut-être [pøtɛtʁ] perhaps, maybe
 le **phare** [fa:r] headlight
 la **pharmacie** [farmasi] drugstore
 le **pharmacien** [farmasjɛ̃] druggist
Philippe [filip] Philip
philippin, -e [filipɛ̃, -in] Philippine; un **Philippin** a Filipino; une **Philippine** a Filipina
 les **Philippines** [filipin] *f.* the Philippines
 la **photo** [fɔto] (*abbreviation of photographie*) photo, picture
photogénique [fɔtɔʒɛnik] photogenic
 le **photographe** [fɔtɔɡraf] photographer
 la **photographie** [fɔtɔɡrafi] photograph, picture
photographier [fɔtɔɡrafje] to photograph
photographique [fɔtɔɡrafik] photographic; un **appareil photographique** camera
 le **photomètre** [fɔtɔmɛtʁ] exposure meter
 la **phrase** [fʁa:z] sentence
 la **physique** [fizik] physics
 le **piano** [pjano] piano
 la **pièce** [pjes] room, play, piece
 le **pied** [pje] foot; **aller à pied** to walk; **avoir pied** to be within one's depth; **perdre pied** to get out of one's depth
Pierre [pje:r] Peter
 la **pierre** [pje:r] stone, rock
 le **pigeon** [piʒɔ̃] pigeon
 la **pile** [pil] pile
 le **pilote** [pilɔt] pilot
 la **pilule** [pilyl] pill
 le **pin** [pɛ̃] pine (tree)
 le **pique-nique** (*pl. pique-niques*) [piknik] picnic
piquer [pike] to sting
 la **piqûre** [piky:r] sting, bite; la **piqûre de moustique** (*pl. piqûres de moustique*) mosquito bite
pire [pi:r] worse
 la **piscine** [pisin] (swimming) pool
Pise [pi:z] *m.* Pisa
 la **pitié** [pitje] pity; **avoir pitié de** to have pity on, to pity
 le **placard** [plaka:r] clothes-closet, cupboard
 la **place** [plas] place, room, seat, square
placer [plase] (*nous plaçons*) to place

le **plafond** [plafɔ̃] ceiling
 la **plage** [plaʒ] beach
plaindre [plɛ̃:dr] to pity; **se plaindre** to complain
 la **plaine** [plɛn] plain
plaire [plɛ:r] to please; **s'il te plaît, s'il vous plaît** please; **se plaire** to like it (*somewhere*)
 le **plaisir** [plezi:r] pleasure; **faire plaisir à** to please
 la **planche** [plɑ̃ʃ] plank
 le **plancher** [plɑ̃ʃe] floor
 la **plante** [plɑ̃:t] plant
planter [plɑ̃te] to plant
 le **plat** [pla] dish
 la **plate-bande** (*pl. plates-bandes*) [platbɑ̃:d] flower bed
pleurer [plœre] to weep, to cry
pleuvoir [plœvwa:r] to rain; **pleuvoir à torrents** to pour; **pleuvoir à verse** to pour
plier [pli(j)e] to fold, to bend
 le **plomb** [plɔ̃] lead
 le **plombier** [plɔ̃bjɛ] plumber
 le **plongeoir** [plɔ̃ʒwa:r] diving board
plonger [plɔ̃ʒe] (*nous plongeons*) to dive
 la **pluie** [plɥi] rain
 la **plupart** [plypa:r] most
 le **pluriel** [plyrjɛl] plural
plus [ply] more; **de plus en plus** more and more; **Plus . . . plus . . .** The more . . . the more . . . ; **deux fois plus grand(e)** twice as big; le **plus** most; un **air des plus monotones** a most monotonous tune; **ne . . . plus** not any more, no more, not again; **ne . . . plus jamais** never again
plusieurs [plyzjœ:r] several
 le **plus-que-parfait** [plyskəparfɛ] past perfect (tense)
plutôt [plyto] rather
 le **pneu, -s** [pnø] tire; le **pneu crevé** punctured tire
 la **poche** [pɔʃ] pocket
pocher [pɔʃe] to poach
 la **poêle** [pwa:l] frying-pan
 le **poème** [pœm] poem

le **poète** [pœt] poet
 le **poids** [pwa] weight
 le **poignet** [pwaɲɛ] wrist
 le **point** [pwɛ̃] point, mark, period; les **deux points** colon; le **point de vue** (*pl. points de vue*) point of view; le **point d'exclamation** (*pl. points d'exclamation*) exclamation mark; le **point d'interrogation** (*pl. points d'interrogation*) question mark; les **points de suspension** points of suspense
 la **pointe** [pwɛ̃:t] point (*of a needle, etc.*)
 le **point-virgule** (*pl. points-virgules*) [pwɛ̃virgyl] semicolon
 le **point et virgule** [pwɛ̃ te virgyl] (*pl. points et virgules* [pwɛ̃ ze virgyl]) semicolon
 la **poire** [pwa:r] pear
 le **poirier** [pwarjɛ] pear tree
 le **pois** [pwa] pea; les **petits pois** green peas
 le **poisson** [pwasɔ̃] fish; le **poisson rouge** goldfish
 la **poitrine** [pwatrin] chest
 le **poivre** [pwa:vr] pepper
poli, -e [pɔli] polite
 la **police** [pɔlis] police
policier, -ière [pɔlisjɛ, -jɛ:r] police (*adj.*); le **roman policier** detective story
poliment [pɔlimɑ̃] politely
politique [pɔlitik] political
 la **Pologne** [pɔlɔɲ] Poland
polonais, -e [pɔlɔnɛ, -ɛ:z] Polish; un **Polonais, une Polonaise** a Pole
 le **polygone** [pɔligɔn] polygon
 la **pomme** [pɔm] apple; la **tarte aux pommes** apple pie
 la **pomme de terre** (*pl. pommes de terre*) [pɔm də tɛ:r] potato
 le **pommier** [pɔmjɛ] apple tree
 le **pompier** [pɔɲpjɛ] fireman
pondre [pɔ̃:dr] to lay (*eggs*)
 le **pont** [pɔ̃] bridge
 le **porc** [pɔ:r] pork

la **porcelaine** [pɔʁsələ̃] porcelain, china
 le **port** [pɔːʀ] port
portatif, -ive [pɔʁtatif, -i:v] portable
 la **porte** [pɔʁt] door
 le **portefeuille** [pɔʁtəføj] billfold, wallet
porter [pɔʁte] to carry, to take, to wear; **il se porte bien** he is well
 le **porteur** [pɔʁtœ:ʀ] porter
 la **portière** [pɔʁtjɛ:ʀ] door (*of a car, a train, etc.*)
 le **portrait** [pɔʁtʀɛ] portrait
portugais, -e [pɔʁtyge, -ɛ:z] Portuguese
 le **Portugal** [pɔʁtygal] Portugal
 la **pose** [po:z] exposure
poser [poze] to put down, to ask (*a question, a riddle*)
posséder [pɔsede] (*je possède*) to possess, to own
 la **possibilité** [pɔsibilite] possibility
possible [pɔsibl] possible; **le plus vite possible** as quickly as possible
postal, -e (-aux) [pɔstal, -to] postal; **la carte postale** postcard
 le **poste** [pɔst] set (*radio, television*), job
 la **poste** [pɔst] post office; **mettre à la poste** to post
 le **pot** [po] jug, jar; **sourd(e) comme un pot** as deaf as a post
 le **potage** [pɔta:ʒ] soup
potager [pɔtaʒɛ]: **le jardin potager** vegetable garden
 la **poubelle** [pubɛl] garbage can
 le **pouce** [pus] thumb
 le **poulain** [pulɛ̃] colt
 la **poule** [pul] hen
 le **poulet** [pule] chicken
 la **poupée** [pupe] doll
pour [pur] for, in order to; **pour que** so that, in order that
pourquoi [purkwa] why
pourrir [pur:i:ʀ] to rot, to go bad
poursuivre [pursɥi:vʀ] to pursue, to chase
pourtant [purtɑ̃] yet, however

pourvu que [purvy kə] provided (that)
pousser [puse] to grow, to push;
pousser un cri to utter a cry;
pousser un soupir to heave a sigh
 la **poussière** [pusjɛ:ʀ] dust
poussiéreux, -euse [pusjɛʀø, -ø:z] dusty
pouvoir [puvwa:ʀ] to be able, can, may; **il (or cela or ça) se peut que . . .** it is possible that . . .
précédent, -e [presedɑ̃, -ɑ̃:t] preceding
précéder [presede] (*je précède*) to precede
précipiter [presipite] to precipitate; **se précipiter** to rush
précis, -e [presi, -i:z] precise
précisément [presizemɑ̃] precisely
préférer [prefere] (*je préfère*) to prefer
premier, -ière [prəmje, -jɛ:ʀ] first; **la matière première** raw material; **en première (classe)** first class (*adv.*)
prendre [prɑ̃:dr] to take, to make (*a decision*); **s'y prendre** to go about it
 le **prénom** [prenɑ̃] first name
préparer [prepare] to prepare, to get (sth.) ready; **se préparer** to prepare, to get (oneself) ready
près [pre] near; **près de** near, close to; **à peu près** about
 le **présent** [prezɑ̃] present
présenter [prezɑ̃te] to present, to introduce; **se présenter à un examen** to try an examination
 le **président** [prezidɑ̃] president
presque [presk] almost; **presque pas** hardly
pressé, -e [prese] in a hurry
prêt, -e [pre, pret] ready
prétendre [pretɑ̃:dr] to claim
prêter [prete] (*h.v.*) to lend
prévoir [prevwa:ʀ] to expect, to foresee
prier [pri(j)e] to request, to beg

la **prière** [pri(j)ɛːR] prayer, request, entreaty
 le **prince** [prɛːs] prince
 la **princesse** [prɛsɛs] princess
 le **printemps** [prɛtɑ̃] spring
 la **prise** [priːz] capture
 la **prison** [prizɔ̃] prison, jail
 le **prisonnier** [prizɔ̃nje] prisoner
 le **prix** [pri] price, prize
 probable [prɔbabl] probable, likely; **peu probable** unlikely
 probablement [prɔbabləmɑ̃] probably
 le **problème** [prɔblɛm] problem
 le **prochain**, **-e** [prɔʃɛ̃, -ɛn] next
 le **procurer** [prɔkyʁe] to get; **se procurer** to get
 le **professeur** [prɔfɛsœːR] teacher
 la **profession** [prɔfɛsjɔ̃] profession
 le **profiter** [prɔfite]: **profiter de** to take advantage of
 le **profond**, **-e** [prɔfɔ̃, -ɔ̃d] deep; **peu profond(e)** shallow
 le **profondément** [prɔfɔ̃demɑ̃] deeply, soundly
 la **profondeur** [prɔfɔ̃dœːR] depth
 le **programme** [prɔɡʁam] programme
 le **progrès** [prɔɡʁɛ] progress; **faire des progrès** to make progress
 le **projecteur** [prɔʒɛktœːR] projector
 le **projet** [prɔʒɛ] plan
 la **promenade** [prɔmnad] walk; la **promenade à pied** (*pl. promenades à pied*) walk; la **promenade en bateau** (*pl. promenades en bateau*) boat ride; la **promenade en voiture** (*pl. promenades en voiture*) drive
 le **promener** [prɔmnɛ] (*je promène*) to take (s.o.) for a walk; **se promener** to go for a walk
 la **promesse** [prɔmɛs] promise
 le **promettre** [prɔmɛtʁ] to promise
 le **pronominal**, **-e** (**-aux**) [prɔnɔminal, -nɔ] pronominal
 le **prononcer** [prɔnɔ̃se] (*nous prononçons*) to pronounce, to deliver (*a speech*), to utter

la **prononciation** [prɔnɔ̃sjasjɔ̃] pronunciation
 le **propos** [prɔpo]: **à propos** by the way
 le **proposer** [prɔpoze] to propose, to suggest
 le **propre** [prɔpʁ] (*before noun*) own, (*after noun*) clean
 le **propriétaire** [prɔpʁi(j)etɛːR] *m.f.* landlord, landlady
 le **prospecteur** [prɔspɛktœːR] prospector
 le **protéger** [prɔtɛʒɛ] (*je protège, nous protégeons*) to protect
 le **protestant**, **-e** [prɔtɛstɑ̃, -ɑ̃t] Protestant
 le **prouver** [pruve] to prove
 la **Provence** [prɔvɑ̃ːs] Provence
 la **province** [prɔvɛːs] province
 le **prudemment** [prydɑmɑ̃] cautiously
 la **prudence** [prydɑːs] prudence, caution; **avec prudence** cautiously
 le **prudent**, **-e** [prydɑ̃, -ɑ̃t] cautious
 la **prune** [pryn] plum
 le **pruneau**, **-x** [pryno] prune
 le **prunier** [prynje] plum tree
 le **public**, **-ique** [pyblik] public
 le **public** [pyblik] public; **en public** in public
 le **publier** [pybli(j)ɛ] to publish
 le **puis** [pɥi] then, next
 le **puisque** [pɥisk(ə)] since, as
 le **puissamment** [pɥisamɑ̃] powerfully
 le **puissant**, **-e** [pɥisɑ̃, -ɑ̃t] powerful
 le **pull-over** (*pl. pull-overs*) [puloːvɛːR, pulɔvœːR] pull-over
 le **punir** [pyniːR] to punish
 la **purée** [pyʁe] mash; la **purée de pommes de terre** mashed potatoes
 le **pyjama** [piʒama] pyjamas

Q

la **qualité** [kalite] quality
 le **quand** [kɑ̃] when

quant à [kāta] as for
 la **quantité** [kātite] quantity
 une **quarantaine** [karāten] (about) forty
 le **quart** [ka:r] quarter; **trois quarts d'heure** three quarters of an hour
que [kə] that, what, whom, which;
que de . . . ! what a lot of . . . !
ne . . . que only, nothing but, not until
Québec [kebek] *m.* Quebec (City);
 le **Québec** (the province of) Quebec
quel, quelle [kəl] what, which, what a . . . ! **quel(le) que . . .** whatever . . .
quelque [kəl(ə)] some; **quelques** some, a few; **quelque . . . que** however . . . ; **quelque(s) . . . que** whatever . . .
quelque chose [kəlka ʃo:z] *m.* something, anything
quelquefois [kəlkaʃwa] sometimes
quelque part [kəlka:pa:r] somewhere, anywhere
quelques-uns, quelques-unes [kəl-kəzœ, -zyn] some, a few
quelqu'un [kəlkaœ] someone, somebody, anyone, anybody
qu'est-ce qui [keski] what
 la **question** [kestjɔ̃] question
 la **queue** [kø] tail; **faire la queue** to line up
qui [ki] who, whom, that, which;
qui que . . . whoever . . . , whomever . . .
 une **quinzaine** [kẽzen] (about) fifteen
quitter [kite] to leave
quoi [kwa] what; **il n'y a pas de quoi** don't mention it, you are welcome; **quoi que . . .** whatever . . .
quoique [kwak(ə)] although

R

le **raccommodage** [Rakomoda:ʒ]
 mending, darning

raccommoder [Rakomode] to mend, to darn
 le **raccourci** [Rakursi] short cut
raccrocher [Rakrɔʃe] to hang up
 la **racine** [Rasin] root
raconter [Rakôte] to tell, to relate
 le **radiateur** [Radjatœ:r] radiator
 la **radio** [Radjo] radio; **à la radio** on the radio
 le **radis** [Radi] radish
 les **rafraîchissements** [RafREʃismũ] *m.* refreshments
 le **raisin** [REZɛ̃] grapes
 la **raison** [REZɔ̃] reason; **perdre la raison** to lose one's reason, to go out of one's mind; **avoir raison** to be right
raisonnable [REZɔnabl] reasonable
pas raisonnable unreasonable
rajeunir [Raʒœni:r] to rejuvenate, to make (s.o.) look younger
ralentir [Rālūti:r] to slow down
ramasser [Ramase] to pick up, to gather
ramener [Ramne] (*je ramène*) to bring back, to take back
ramer [Rame] to row
ranger [Rāʒe] (*nous rangeons*) to put away, to tidy
rapide [Rapid] fast, swift
rappeler [Raple] (*je rappelle*) to call back, to remind; **se rappeler** to recall, to remember
rapporter [Rapôte] to bring (*or* take) back, to bring (*or* take) home; **se rapporter à** to refer to
 la **raquette** [Rakɛt] racket
rare [Ra:r, Ra:r] rare, scarce
rarement [Rarmũ] seldom
raser [Rāze] to shave; **se raser** to shave (oneself)
 le **rasoir** [Rāzwa:r] razor
Raspail [Raspaj] *proper noun*
rasseoir [Raswa:r] to reseat (s.o.); **se rasseoir** to sit down again
rassis [Rasi]: le **pain rassis** stale bread
raté, -e [Rate] unsuccessful
rater [Rate] to miss, to fail

rattraper [Ratrape] to overtake,
to catch up with
ravi, -e [Ravi] delighted
ravissant, -e [Ravisã, -ã:t] ravish-
ing, lovely
le **rayon** [Rɛjɔ̃] department
récemment [Resamã] recently
récent, -e [Resã, -ã:t] recent
le **récepteur** [Resɛptœ:R] receiver
la **recette** [Rɛsɛt] recipe
recevoir [Rəsəvwɑ:R] to receive,
to get, to entertain; **être reçu(e)**
to pass (*at school*)
réchauffer [Rɛʃɔfe] to (re)heat; se
réchauffer to warm oneself
la **récolte** [Rɛkɔlt] harvest, crop;
faire la récolte du blé to har-
vest the wheat
recommander [Rəkɔmãde] to rec-
ommend
recommencer [Rəkɔmãse] to begin
(*or start*) again
la **récompense** [Rɛkɔpã:s] reward
la **reconnaissance** [Rəkɔnɛsã:s] grati-
tude
reconnaissant, -e [Rəkɔnɛsã, -ã:t]
grateful
reconnaître [Rəkɔnɛtr] to recog-
nize
le **record** [Rəkɔ:R] record
recoudre [RɛkudɔR] to sew on
(again)
redescendre [Rɛdesũ:dr] to go
(*or come*) down(stairs) again,
to descend again, to carry
(*or take or bring*) down(stairs)
again
redoubler [Rɛdublɛ] to redouble;
redoubler sa classe to repeat
one's year
refaire [Rɛfɛ:R] to do (over) again,
to make again
réfléchir [Rɛflɛʃi:R] to reflect, to
think, to think over
le **réfrigérateur** [Rɛfrizɛratœ:R] re-
frigerator
refroidir [Rɛfrwadi:R] to cool, to
grow cold; **se refroidir** to cool
off, to get cold

réfugier [Rɛfyʒje]: **se réfugier** to
take refuge
refuser [Rɛfyze] to refuse
regarder [Rɛgarde] to look, to
look at, to watch
le **régime** [Rɛʒim] diet; **au régime**
on a diet
la **règle** [Rɛgl] rule, ruler
le **règne** [Rɛɲ] reign
régner [Rɛɲɛ] (*je règne*) to reign
le **regret** [Rɛgrɛ] regret
regretter [Rɛgrɛtɛ] (*h.v.*) to re-
gret, to be sorry
régulier, -ière [Rɛgylje, -jɛ:R]
regular
régulièrement [Rɛgyljɛrmã]
regularly
la **reine** [Rɛn] queen
rejeter [Rɛʒtɛ] (*je rejette*) to throw
back, to reject
rejoindre [Rɛʒwɛ:dr] to (re)join
to overtake
réjouir [Rɛʒwi:R] to gladden; **se**
réjouir de to rejoice over, to
look forward to, to be glad about
relire [Rɛli:R] to read again
remarquer [Rɛmarke] to notice
remercier [Rɛmɛrsje] to thank
remettre [Rɛmɛtr] to put back, to
put on again, to postpone, to
hand in; **remettre les pieds** to
set foot again; **se remettre** to
get better; **se remettre d'un**
rhume to get over a cold
remonter [Rɛmɔ̃tɛ] to go (*or come*)
up(stairs) again; to carry (*or*
bring or take) up(stairs) again;
to wind (*a watch*)
remplacer [Rũplɛsɛ] (*nous rem-
plaçons*) to replace
remplir [Rũpli:R] to fill
remporter [Rũpɔ̃rtɛ] to take back
(with one), to win (*a prize, a*
victory)
le **renard** [Rɛnɑ:R] fox
rencontrer [Rũkɔ̃trɛ] to meet, to
run (*or come*) across
le **rendez-vous** [Rũdevu] (*invar.*) ap-
pointment; **avoir rendez-vous**

- to have an appointment; **prendre rendez-vous** to make an appointment
- rendre** [Rû:dr] to render, to make, to give back; **se rendre** to make one's way; **se rendre compte de** to realize
- René** [Rəne] *proper noun*
- reneiger** [Rəneʒe] (*h.v.*) (*il reneigeait*) to snow again
- renoncer** [Rənɔ̃se] (*nous renonçons*) to renounce, to give up
- renseigner** [Rûseɲe] (*h.v.*) to inform; **mal renseigné(e)** misinformed
- le **renseignement** [Rûseɲmā] (item of) information; les **renseignements** information
- rentrer** [Rûtre] to enter again, to go (*or come*) in again, to go (*or come*) back, to go (*or come*) home, to return (home), to get home, to carry (*or bring or take*) in (again), to put in (again); **rentrer le ventre** to pull in one's stomach; **rentrer dans (un camion, etc.)** to run into (a truck, etc.)
- renverser** [Rûverse] to knock down (*or over*), to spill, to upset
- la **réparation** [Repaʁasjɔ̃] repair, repairing; **être en réparation** to be being repaired
- réparer** [Repaʁe] to repair
- repartir** [Rəparti:R] to leave (*or depart or go away*) again
- le **repas** [Rəpa] meal
- repasser** [Rəpase] to pass again, to iron
- repentir** [Rəpûti:R]: **se repentir** to repent
- répéter** [Repete] (*je répète*) to repeat, to rehearse
- la **répétition** [Repetisjɔ̃] repetition, rehearsal
- repleuvoir** [Rəplœvwa:R] to rain again
- répondre** [Repɔ̃:dr] to answer, to reply
- la **réponse** [Repɔ̃:s] answer, reply
- le **repos** [Rəpo] rest
- reposer** [Rəpoze] to lie, to rest; **se reposer** to rest, to take a rest
- reprendre** [Rəprû:dr] to take again, to take back; **reprendre connaissance** to regain consciousness, to come to
- reprocher** [Rəprɔʃe] to reproach, to blame; **reprocher qch. à qn** to find fault with s.o. for sth.
- la **république** [Repyblik] republic
- le **réservoir** [Rezɛrvwa:R] tank
- la **résistance** [Rezistâ:s] resistance
- resonner** [Rəsəne] to ring again
- résoudre** [Rezudr] to solve, to determine, to decide, to resolve
- respecter** [Respekte] to respect
- la **responsabilité** [Respɔ̃sabilite] responsibility
- responsable** [Respɔ̃sabl] responsible
- ressembler** [Rəsûble] to resemble, to look like, to be like
- ressortir** [Rəsörti:R] to go (*or come*) out again, to carry (*or bring or take*) out again
- le **restaurant** [Restɔ̃râ] restaurant
- le **reste** [Rest] rest, remainder
- rester** [Reste] to stay, to remain, to be left
- le **résultat** [Rezylta] result
- le **retard** [Rəta:R] delay; **être en retard** to be late; **mettre qn en retard** to make s.o. late; **avoir du retard** to be late (*of train, etc.*)
- retarder** [Rətarde] to delay, (*of watch*) to be slow
- retenir** [Rətni:R] to hold back, to retain, to reserve, to remember
- retomber** [Rətɔ̃be] to fall (down) again
- le **retour** [Rətu:R] return; **être de retour** to be back
- retourner** [Rəturne] to go (*or get*) back, to return, to turn over; **se retourner** to turn around, to turn over

rétrécir [REtɹɛsi:R] to shrink
retrouver [Rɛtɹuvɛ] to find
 (again), to meet; **se retrouver** to meet
 la **réunion** [REynjɔ̃] meeting
 la **Réunion** [REynjɔ̃] Réunion
réunir [REyni:R] to unite; **se réunir** to get together, to meet
réussir [REysi:R] to succeed, to make a good job of
 le **rêve** [RE:v] dream
réveiller [REveje] (*h.v.*) to wake(n), to wake up; **se réveiller** to wake(n), to wake up
révéler [REvele] (*je révèle*) to reveal, to disclose
revenir [Rɛvni:R] to come again (*or back*), to return; **je n'en reviens pas** I can't get over it
rêver [REve] (*h.v.*) to dream
revoir [Rɛvwa:R] to see again; **au revoir** good-bye
 le **revolver** [REvɔlvɛ:R] revolver
 le **rez-de-chaussée** [REdʃɔse] (*invar.*) ground floor
 le **Rhin** [Rɛ̃] the Rhine
 le **Rhône** [RO:n] the Rhône
 la **rhubarbe** [Rybarb] rhubarb
 le **rhume** [Rym] cold
riche [Riʃ] rich
 le **rideau**, **-x** [Rido] curtain
ridicule [Ridikiyl] ridiculous
rien [Rjɛ̃] nothing, not anything; **cela ne fait rien** that doesn't matter; **Est-ce que ça ne vous fait rien?** Do you mind?
rincer [Rɛ̃se] (*nous rinçons*) to rinse
rire [Ri:R] to laugh
risquer [Riske] to risk, to run the risk
 le **rival**, **-aux** [Rival, -vo] rival
 la **rive** [Ri:v] bank, shore
 la **rivière** [Rivjɛ:R] river
 le **riz** [Ri] rice
 la **robe** [Rɔb] dress; la **robe de chambre** (*pl. robes de chambre*) dressing-gown, bath-robe
 le **robinet** [Rɔbine] tap
 La **Rochelle** [Rɔʃɛl] La Rochelle

les **Rocheuses** [Rɔʃø:z] *f.* the Rockies
 Roger [Rɔʒɛ] Roger
 le **roi** [Rwa] king
 le **roman** [Rɔmɑ̃] novel
Rome [Rɔm] *m.* Rome
rompre [Rɔ:pr] to break, to break off
rond, **-e** [Rɔ̃, Rɔ̃:d] round
ronfler [Rɔ̃fle] to snore
ronger [Rɔ̃ʒɛ] (*nous rongeons*) to gnaw; **se ronger les ongles** to bite one's nails
 la **rose** [RO:z] rose
rose [RO:z] pink
 le **rôti** [Rɔti, Rɔti] roast
rôtir [Rɔti:R, Rɔti:R] to roast
 la **roue** [Ru] wheel
rouge [RU:ʒ] red
 le **rouge** [RU:ʒ] red; le **rouge à lèvres** lipstick
 la **rougeole** [RUʒɔl] measles
 la **rougeur** [RUʒœ:R] redness; les **rougeurs** rash
rouillé, **-e** [RUje] rusty, rusted
rouler [Rule] to roll, to wrap (up)
 la **Roumanie** [Rumani] Rumania
roumain, **-e** [Rumɛ̃, -ɛn] Rumanian
 la **route** [rut] road, way, highway, route; **en route** on the way
roux, rousse [Ru, Ruʃ] red, red-haired, red-headed
 la **rubéole** [Rybeɔl] German measles
 la **ruche** [Ryʃ] (bee)hive
 la **rue** [Ry] street
 le **ruisseau**, **-x** [RUiso] stream
russe [Rys] Russian
 la **Russie** [Rysi] Russia

S

le **sable** [sa:bl] sand
 le **sac** [sak] bag; le **sac à main** (*pl. sacs à main*) purse
sage [sa:ʒ] good, well-behaved;
sage comme une image as good as gold

- saigner** [seɲe] (*h.v.*) to bleed
saint, -e [sɛ̃, sɛ̃:t] holy
 le **saint, la sainte** [sɛ̃, sɛ̃:t] saint
Sainte-Hélène [sɛ̃tɛlɛn] St. Helena
 le **Saint-Laurent** [sɛ̃lɔʁɑ̃] the St. Lawrence
Saint-Malo [sɛ̃malo] *m.* Saint-Malo
saisir [sezi:ʀ] to seize
 la **saison** [sezɔ̃] season
 la **salade** [salad] salad
 le **salaire** [sale:ʀ] salary
sale [sal] dirty
salé, -e [sale] salted, salty
salir [sali:ʀ] to make dirty
 la **salle** [sal] hall, audience; la **salle à manger** (*pl. salles à manger*) dining-room; la **salle de bains** bathroom; la **salle de gymnastique** (*pl. salles de gymnastique*) gymnasium
 le **salon** [salɔ̃] living-room
 le **samedi** [samdi] Saturday
 le **sandwich** (*pl. sandwiches, sandwiches*) [sɑ̃dwitʃ] sandwich; le **sandwich aux œufs** egg sandwich
 le **sang** [sɑ̃] blood
sans [sɑ̃] without; **sans lui** if it weren't for him, if it hadn't been for him; **sans . . . ni** without . . . or; **sans que** without
 la **santé** [sɑ̃te] health; **en bonne santé** in good health; **en mauvaise santé** in poor health
 la **Sardaigne** [sardɛɲ] Sardinia
sarde [sard] Sardinian
 la **Saskatchewan** [saskatʃəwan] Saskatchewan
satisfaire [satisfe:ʀ] to satisfy, to grant
 la **sauce** [so:s] gravy
 la **saucisse** [sosis] sausage
 le **saucisson** [sosisɔ̃] bologna
 le **saumon** [somɔ̃] salmon
sauter [sote] to jump, to skip (= to omit); **sauter à la corde** to skip
 la **sauterelle** [sotrɛl] grasshopper, locust
sauver [sove] to save, to rescue
savoir [savwa:ʀ] to know, to know how, can
 le **savon** [savɔ̃] soap
 la **scène** [sɛn] stage; **entrer en scène** to come on the stage
 la **scie** [si] saw
 la **science** [sjɑ̃:s] science; les **sciences** science
scolaire [skɔlə:ʀ] school (*adj.*)
 le **sculpteur** [skyltœ:ʀ] sculptor
sec, sèche [sek, seʃ] dry
sécher [seʃe] (*je sèche*) to dry
second, -e [səɡɔ̃, -ɑ̃:d] second; **en seconde (classe)** second class (*adv.*)
 la **seconde** [səɡɔ̃:d] second
 le **secours** [səku:ʀ] help
 le **secret** [səkrɛ] secret
secret, -ète [səkrɛ, -ɛt] secret
secrétaire [səkrɛtɛ:ʀ] *m.f.* secretary
 la **Seine** [sɛn] the Seine
 le **séjour** [seʒu:ʀ] stay, sojourn
 le **sel** [sɛl] salt
selon [səlɔ̃] according to
 la **semaine** [səmɛn] week; **en semaine** during the week
semblable [sɑ̃blabl] similar
 le **semblant** [sɑ̃blɑ̃] appearance; **faire semblant de** to pretend to
sembler [sɑ̃ble] to seem
semer [səme] (*je sème*) to sow
 la **sensation** [sɑ̃sasjɔ̃] sensation; **faire sensation** to create a sensation, to make a hit
sentir [sɑ̃ti:ʀ] to feel, to smell; **se sentir (bien, triste, etc.)** to feel (well, sad, etc.)
septembre [septɑ̃:br] *m.* September
sérieusement [serjɔzmɑ̃] seriously
sérieux, -ieuse [serjɔ, -ø:z] serious; **prendre au sérieux** to take seriously
 le **serpent** [serpɑ̃] snake
 la **serrure** [ser'y:ʀ] lock

le **service** [sɛrvis] service, favour;
rendre **service** to be of service,
to be useful, to be a help

la **serviette** [sɛrvjet] (table-)napkin,
towel

servir [sɛrvir] to serve; **servir à**
to be used for; **servir de** to
serve as, to act as; **se servir** to
help oneself; **se servir de** to use
seul, **-e** [sœl] alone, only, single;
tout(e) seul(e) all by myself, etc.

seulement [sœlmɑ̃] only

si [si] so, much, whether, if, yes
(contradicting a negation)

la **Sicile** [sisil] Sicily

sicilien, **-ienne** [sisiljɛ̃, -jɛn] Sici-
lian

le **siècle** [sjɛkl] century

le **sien** [sjɛ̃] his, hers; la **sienne** [sjɛn]
his, hers

la **sieste** [sjɛst] afternoon nap

la **signature** [sinaty:R] signature

le **signe** [sin] sign, gesture; **faire signe**
à qn to motion (or beckon or
wave) to s.o.

signer [sinɛ] to sign

le **silence** [silɑ̃:s] silence

silencieusement [silɑ̃sjøzmɑ̃]
silently

silencieux, **-ieuse** [silɑ̃sjø, -jø:z]
silent

simple [sɛ:pl] simple; le **passé**
simple past historic

simplement [sɛplɑ̃mɑ̃] simply,
merely

le **singe** [sɛ:ʒ] monkey

Sirius [sirjys] *m.* Sirius

la **situation** [sitqasjɔ̃] situation, posi-
tion, job

situer [sitɥɛ] to situate

le **ski** [ski] ski, skiing; **faire du ski**
to go skiing

slovaque [slɔvak] Slovak

la **sœur** [sœ:R] sister

soi [swa] oneself

la **soie** [swa] silk

la **soif** [swaf] thirst; **avoir soif** to be
(or feel) thirsty; **donner soif à**
qn to make s.o. thirsty

soigner [swɑ̃ʒɛ] to treat, to attend
soigneusement [swɑ̃ʒøzmɑ̃] care-
fully

soigneux, **-euse** [swɑ̃ʒø, -ø:z]
careful

le **soin** [swɛ̃] care; **avec soin** care-
fully

le **soir** [swa:R] evening; **le soir** in the
evening; **hier soir** last night

la **soirée** [swa:ʁɛ] evening, (evening)
party; la **soirée dansante** dance

une **soixantaine** [swasɑ̃tɛn] (about)
sixty

le **soldat** [solda] soldier

le **soleil** [sɔlɛj] sun; **il fait du soleil**
it is sunny

solide [sɔlid] solid, strong

solidement [sɔlidmɑ̃] solidly, firm-
ly, securely

sombre [sɔ̃:br] dark; **il fait som-**
bre it is dull, it is (a) dark (day)

le **sommeil** [sɔmɛj] sleep; **avoir som-**
meil to be (or feel) sleepy;
la **maladie du sommeil** sleeping-
sickness

le **sommet** [sɔmɛ] peak

son, **sa**, **ses** [sɔ̃, sa, se] his, her, its

le **son** [sɔ̃] sound

sonner [sɔnɛ] to ring

la **sonnette** [sɔnɛt] doorbell, bell
(of telephone, etc.)

la **sorte** [sɔʁt] sort, kind; **de sorte**
que in order that, so that

la **sortie** [sɔʁti] exit

sortir [sɔʁti:R] to go (or come) out,
to leave, to get out, to take (or
carry or bring or put) out

le **sou**, **-s** [su] cent

le **souci** [susi] worry, care; **se faire**
du souci to worry

la **soucoupe** [sukup] saucer

souffler [sufle] to blow

souffrir [sufʁi:R] to suffer

le **souhait** [swɛ] wish

souhaiter [swɛtɛ] (*h.v.*) to wish

soulager [sulazɛ] (*nous soulageons*)
to relieve

le **soulagement** [sulazmɑ̃] relief

soulever [sulvɛ] (*je soulève*) to lift

- soupçonner** [supsɔne] to suspect
 la **soupe** [sup] soup
souper [supe] to have supper
 le **souper** [supe] supper
 le **soupir** [supi:r] sigh
 le **sourcil** [sursi] eyebrow; **froncer**
 les sourcils to frown
sourd, -e [su:r, surd] deaf;
 sourd(e) comme un pot as deaf
 as a post
souriant, -e [surjã, -ã:t] smiling
sourire [suri:r] to smile
 le **sourire** [suri:r] smile
 la **souris** [suri] mouse
 sous [su] under, in the reign of
 le **souvenir** [suvni:r] memory
 souvenir [suvni:r]: **se souvenir**
 de to remember
 souvent [suvã] often
 le **souverain** [suvrẽ] sovereign
soviétique [sovjetik] Soviet
spécial, -e (-aux) [spesjal, -jo]
 special
spécialiste [spesjalist] *m.f.* specialist
 le **sport** [spɔ:r] sport
sportif, -ive [spɔrtif, -i:v] fond of
 sports
stationner [stasjone] to park
Strasbourg [strazbu:r] *m.* Stras-
 bourg
 le **stylo** [stilo] (fountain) pen; le
 stylo à bille (*pl.* **stylos à bille**)
 ball-point pen
 le **subjonctif** [sybʒɔktif] subjunctive
 succéder [syksede] (*je succède*) to
 succeed
 le **succès** [sykse] success
 la **succursale** [sykyrsal] branch (*of*
 a store, etc.)
 le **sucré** [sykr] sugar
 le **sud** [syd] south
 sud-africain, -e [sydafrikẽ, -en]
 South African; **l'Union Sud-**
 Africaine *f.* the Union of South
 Africa
 sud-américain, -e [sydamerikẽ,
 -en] South American
 la **Suède** [syed] Sweden
- suédois**, -e [syedwa, -a:z] Swed-
 ish; un **Suédois**, une **Suédoise**
 a Swede
suffire [syfi:r] to suffice, to be
 sufficient, to be enough
suffisamment [syfizamã] suffi-
 ciently
suffisant, -e [syfizã, -ã:t] sufficient
suggérer [sygzere] (*je suggère*) to
 suggest
 la **suggestion** [sygzestjɔ] suggestion
 le **suicide** [sqisid] suicide
suicider [sqiside]: **se suicider** to
 commit suicide
 la **Suisse** [sqis] Switzerland
 suisse [sqis] Swiss
 la **Suisseuse** [sqises] Swiss woman
 la **suite** [sqit] continuation; **tout de**
 suite right now, right away
suivant, -e [sqivã, -ã:t] following,
 next
suivre [sqi:vr] to follow, to take
 (*a course, treatment*)
 le **sujet** [syʒe] subject, topic; **au**
 sujet de about
Sumatra [symatra] *f.* Sumatra
superbe [syperb] superb, splendid
supérieur, -e [syperjæ:r] super-
 ior, upper, better; le **lac Supé-**
 rieur Lake Superior
superstitieux, -ieuse [syperstisjɔ,
 -ø:z] superstitious
 un **supplice** [syplis] torture
supplier [sypli(j)e] to beg, to en-
 treat
supporter [syporte] to support, to
 stand, to endure
supposer [sypoze] to suppose
supprimer [syprime] to suppress,
 to do away with
sur [syR] on, about
sûr, -e [sy:r] sure
sûrement [syrmã] surely
surcomposé [syrkôpoze]: le **passé**
 surcomposé double compound
 present perfect
surmener [syrmæne] (*je surmène*)
 to overwork; **se surmener** to
 overwork (oneself)

surmonter [syrmõte] to overcome
(*an obstacle*)
surpris, -e [syɾpri, -i:z] surprised
la **surprise** [syɾpri:z] surprise
surtout [syrtu] especially
suspendre [sypã:dr] to hang up
la **suspension** [sypãsjõ] suspension
Suzanne [syzan] Susan
sympathique [sẽpatik] congenial
la **Syrie** [siɾi] Syria
syrien, -ienne [siɾjẽ, -jen] Syrian

T

la **table** [tabl] table; **être à table** to
be at lunch (at dinner, *etc.*)
le **tableau, -x** [tablo] picture; le
tableau (noir) (black)board
la **tablette** [tablet] slab; la **tablette
de chocolat** (*pl. tablettes de
chocolat*) chocolate bar
le **tabouret** [taburẽ] stool
la **tache** [taʃ] spot, stain
la **tâche** [ta:ʃ] task
tâcher [taʃe] to try, to attempt
la **taille** [taj] height, size
tailler [taje] to cut, to clip, to
prune, to sharpen (*a pencil*)
le **tailleur** [tajœ:R] tailor, (*woman's*)
suit
taire [tẽ:R] to keep secret; **se taire**
to be (*or* keep) quiet, to be silent
le **tambour** [tãbu:R] drum
la **Tamise** [tami:z] the Thames
tant [tã] so much, so many; **tant
que** as long as
la **tante** [tã:t] aunt
taper [tape] to type
le **tapis** [tapi] rug, carpet
taquiner [takine] to tease
tard [ta:R] late
tarder [tarde] to delay; **ne pas
tarder** (*à faire*) not to be long
(*in doing*), to soon (*do*)
tardif, -ive [tardif, -i:v] late,
backward
la **tarte** [tart] pie

la **tartelette** [tartølet] tart; la **tarte-
lette aux amandes** almond tart
la **tasse** [ta:s] cup; la **tasse à thé** (*pl.
tasses à thé*) teacup
le **taxi** [taksi] taxi; **en taxi** by taxi
la **Tchécoslovaquie** [tʃekõsløvaki]
Czechoslovakia
tchécoslovaque [tʃekõsløvak]
Czechoslovakian
tchèque [tʃek] Czech
tel, telle [tel] such
le **télégramme** [telegɾam] telegram
la **télégraphie** [telegɾafi] telegraphy
le **téléphone** [telefõ] telephone; le
coup de téléphone (*pl. coups
de téléphone*) telephone call
téléphoner [telefõne] to telephone
la **télévision** [televizjõ] television
tellement [telmã] so, so much, so
many
la **température** [tãperaty:R] tem-
perature
la **tempête** [tãpet] storm; la **tempête
de neige** (*pl. tempêtes de neige*)
snowstorm
le **temps** [tã] time, weather; **de temps
en temps** from time to time,
now and then; **à temps** in time;
combien de temps how long;
il est (grand) temps it is (high)
time; **il fait beau temps** it is
fine weather
la **tendance** [tãdã:s] tendency; **avoir
tendance à** to tend to, to have
a tendency to
tendre [tũ:dr] tender
tendrement [tãdɾãmã] tenderly
tenir [tøni:R] to hold, to hold out,
to keep (*a promise*); **tenir à** to be
anxious to; **se tenir droit(e)** to
stand up straight
le **tennis** [tenis] tennis
la **tente** [tũ:t] tent
tenter [tãte] to try, to tempt
terminer [tẽmine] to terminate,
to finish
le **terrain** [tẽr:ẽ] piece of ground
la **terre** [tẽ:R] earth; **par terre** on the
ground, on the floor

- Terre-Neuve** [tɛʁnœ:v] *f.* New-foundland
- la **terreur** [tɛʁœ:r] terror, dread
- terrible** [tɛʁibl] terrible
- terriblement** [tɛʁibləmɑ̃] terribly
- le **testament** [tɛstamɑ̃] will
- la **tête** [tɛt] head
- têtu, -e** [tɛty] stubborn
- le **thé** [tɛ] tea
- le **théâtre** [tɛɑ:tr] theatre
- la **théière** [tɛjɛ:r] teapot
- Thérèse** [tɛʁɛz] Teresa
- le **thermos** [tɛrmɔs] thermos (bottle)
- le **ticket** [tikɛ] ticket
- le **tien, la tienne** [tjɛ̃, tjɛn] yours
- le **tiers** [tjɛ:r] third
- le **timbre** [tɛ:br] stamp
- timide** [timid] shy
- tirer** [tɪʁ] to pull, to let off (*fire-works*); **tirer la langue** to put out (*or stick out*) one's tongue
- le **tiret** [tɪʁɛ] dash
- le **tiroir** [tɪrwa:r] drawer
- le **tissu** [tisy] material
- la **toilette** [twalet] toilet; **faire sa toilette** to get washed
- le **toit** [twa] roof
- tolérer** [tɔləʁɛ] (*je tolère*) to tolerate
- la **tomate** [tɔmat] tomato
- tomber** [tɔbɛ] to fall (down); **tomber de sommeil** to be dead tired; **faire tomber** to knock down (*or over*)
- ton, ta, tes** [tɔ̃, ta, tɛ] your
- la **tondeuse** [tɔ̃dø:z] lawn-mower
- tondre** [tɔ̃:dʁ] to mow
- tonner** [tɔnɛ] to thunder
- le **tonnerre** [tɔnɛ:r] thunder
- le **torchon** [tɔʁʃɔ̃] tea-towel
- torride** [tɔʁ'id] torrid; **il fait une chaleur torride** it is awfully hot
- le **tort** [tɔ:r] fault, wrong; **avoir tort** to be wrong
- la **tortue** [tɔʁty] tortoise
- tôt** [to] soon, early
- toucher** [tuʃɛ] to touch, to cash (*a cheque*); **toucher à** to touch, to meddle with
- toujours** [tuʒu:r] always; **pour toujours** for ever, for good
- le **tour** [tu:r] circuit; **faire un tour** to take (*or go for*) a walk; **faire le tour d'un pays** to tour a country; **faire le tour du monde** to take a trip around the world
- la **tour** [tu:r] tower
- touriste** [turist] *m.f.* tourist; **en classe touriste** tourist class (*adv.*)
- le **tourne-disques** [turnədisk] (*invar.*) record player
- tourner** [turnɛ] to turn, to revolve, (*of factory*) to operate
- la **Toussaint** [tusɛ̃] All Saints' Day; la **veille de la Toussaint** Hal-lowe'en
- tousser** [tuse] to cough
- tout** [tu] *m.* all, everything; **de tout** anything and everything
- tout, toute, tous, toutes** [tu, tut, tu(s), tut] all, whole, every;
- tous** [tu] **les jours** every day;
- ils sont tous** [tus] **partis** they have all left; **tous** [tus] **sont partis** all have left; **tou(te)s les deux** both
- tout** [tu] (*adv.*) all, quite; **tout à fait** quite, entirely; **tout à coup** suddenly; **tout de suite** at once, immediately; **tout à l'heure** a little while ago, a few minutes ago, in a little while, in a few minutes
- la **toux** [tu] cough
- traduire** [tradɥi:r] to translate
- le **train** [trɛ̃] train; **être en train de faire qch.** to be doing sth.
- traire** [trɛ:r] to milk
- le **trait** [trɛ̃] stroke; le **trait d'union** (*pl. traits d'union*) hyphen
- le **traité** [trɛtɛ] treaty
- le **traitement** [trɛtmɑ̃] treatment
- le **tram** [tram] streetcar; **en tram** by streetcar
- la **tranche** [trɑ̃:s] slice
- tranquille** [trɑ̃kil] calm, still, quiet; **laissez-moi tranquille** leave me alone

tranquillement [trākil̥mā] calmly, quietly, peacefully
transporter [trāspɔrte] to transport, to take, to carry
 le **travail**, **-aux** [travaj, -vo] work
travailler [travaje] to work
 la **traversée** [traverse] crossing
traverser [traverse] to cross
 le **tréma** [trema] diaeresis
trembler [trāble] to tremble, to shake
 une **trentaine** [trāten] (about) thirty
très [tre] very
tricher [triʃe] to cheat
tricoter [trikote] to knit
 la **trigonométrie** [trigɔnɔmetri] trigonometry
triste [trist] sad
troisième [trwɔzjem] third; **en troisième** (classe) third class (*adv.*)
Trois-Rivières [trwɔrivje:r] *m. sing.* Three Rivers
tromper [trɔpe] to deceive, to take in; **se tromper** to be mistaken, to be wrong
trompeur, **-euse** [trɔpœ:r, -ø:z] deceptive
trop [*final in word group* tro; *in liaison* trɔp; *otherwise* trɔ] too, too much, too many
 le **trottoir** [trɔtwa:r] sidewalk
 le **trou**, **-s** [tru] hole
trouer [true] to make a hole; **des chaussettes trouées** socks with holes in them
trouver [truve] to find, to get, to think; **Comment trouvez-vous . . . ?** How do you like . . . ?
se trouver to be (situated)
 le **truc** [tryk] gadget
 la **truite** [truɪt] trout
 la **T.S.F.** [tesɛf] (= *télégraphie sans fil*) radio
tuer [tue] to kill
 la **tulipe** [tylip] tulip
 la **Tunisie** [tynizi] Tunisia
tunisien, **-ienne** [tynizjɛ, -jen] Tunisian

turc, **turque** [tyrk] Turkish; un **Turc**, une **Turque** a Turk
 la **Turquie** [tyrki] Turkey
 le **tuyau**, **-x** [tɥijo] pipe, tube; le **tuyau d'arrosage** (*pl.* **tuyaux d'arrosage**) garden hose

U

un **uniforme** [ynifɔrm] uniform
 une **union** [ynjɔ] union; l'**Union soviétique** the Soviet Union
unique [ynik] only
unir [yni:r] to unite
 une **université** [yniversite] university
 l'**uranium** [yranjɔm] *m.* uranium
urgent, **-e** [yʁʒɑ, -ɑ:t] urgent
 l'**Uruguay** [yrygɛ] *m.* Uruguay
uruguayen, **-enne** [yrygejɛ, -jen] Uruguayan
user [yze] to wear out
 une **usine** [yzin] factory
utile [ytil] useful
utiliser [ytilize] to put to use, to use

V

les **vacances** [vakɑ:s] *f.* vacation, holidays; **en vacances** on vacation, on holiday
vacciner [vaksine] to vaccinate, to inoculate
 la **vache** [vaʃ] cow
vaincre [vɛ:kr] to conquer, to overcome
 la **vaisselle** [vesɛl] dishes
 la **valise** [vali:z] suitcase, bag
 la **vallée** [vale] valley
valoir [valwa:r] to be worth; **valoir cher** (*invar.*) to be worth a great deal; **valoir la peine** to be worth while; **il vaut mieux** it is better; **autant vaut** one may as well
vanter [vāte] to praise; **se vanter** to boast
Varsovie [varsɔvi] *m.* Warsaw

le **veau**, -x [vø] calf, veal
 la **veille** [vej] the day before; la
 veille de la Toussaint Hal-
 lowe'en
 veiller [veje] (*h.v.*) to stay up;
 veiller à to see (to it)
 le **vélo** [velo] bicycle
 le **velours** [velu:r] velvet
 le **vendeur** [vǔdœ:r] salesman
 la **vendeuse** [vǔdø:z] sales-lady,
 sales-girl
 vendre [vǔ:dr] to sell; **à vendre**
 for sale; **se vendre** to sell
 le **vendredi** [vǔdrɛdi] Friday
 le **Vénézuéla** [venɛzɥɛla] Venezuela
vénézuélien, -ienne [venɛzɥɛljɛ,
 -ɛn] Venezuelan
venir [vəni:r] to come; **venir**
 chercher to come and get, to
 come for, to meet (*at the station,*
 etc.); **venir de faire qch.** to
 have just done sth.
Venise [vəni:z] *m.* Venice
 le **vent** [vǔ] wind; **en plein vent**
 right out in the wind; **il fait**
 du vent it is windy; **il fait un**
 vent terrible it is terribly windy
 la **vente** [vǔ:t] sale; la **vente aux**
 enchères auction sale
 le **ventre** [vǔ:tr] abdomen, "stomach"
 le **verbe** [verb] verb
 vérifier [verifje] to verify, to check
 la **vérité** [verite] truth
 le **Vermont** [vermɔ̃] Vermont
 le **verre** [vɛ:r] glass
 vers [vɛr] towards, (at) about
 Versailles [versaj] *m.* Versailles
 verser [vɛrsɛ] to pour, to shed
 (*tears*)
 la **version** [versjɔ̃] version
 vert, -e [vɛ:r, vɛrt] green
 le **vestiaire** [vestje:r] coat-closet
 le **veston** [vestɔ̃] coat (*of a man's*
 suit); le **veston de sport** (*pl.*
 vestons de sport) sports jacket
 le **veuf** [vœf] widower
 veuillez [vœje] (*imperative of vou-*
 loir): **veuillez vous asseoir**
 kindly (*or please*) be seated

la **veuve** [vœ:v] widow
 vexer [vɛksɛ] to vex, to annoy
 la **viande** [vjǔ:d] meat
 la **victoire** [viktwa:r] victory
 vide [vid] empty
 vider [vide] to empty
 la **vie** [vi] life, living
 le **vicillard** [vjɛja:r] old man
 vieillir [vejji:r] to age, to get old
Vienne [vjɛn] *m.* Vienna
vieux, vieil, vieille, vieux, vieil-
 les [vjø, vej] old; **vieux (vieille)**
 comme le monde as old as the
 hills; **vivre vieux (vieille)** to live
 to an old age; **se faire vieux**
 (**vieille**) to get old; **vieux jeu**
 (*invar.*) old-fashioned
vif, vive [vif, vi:v] lively, keen,
 bright, vivid
vilain, -e [vilɛ, -ɛn] nasty
 le **village** [vila:ʒ] village
 la **ville** [vil] town, city; **en ville**
 downtown
 le **vin** [vɛ] wine
 le **vinaigre** [vinɛgr] vinegar
 une **vingtaine** [vɛtɛn] (about) twenty,
 a score
 violemment [vjɔlamɑ̃] violently
 violent, -e [vjɔlə, -ɑ:t] violent
 la **violette** [vjɔlət] violet
 le **violon** [vjɔlə̃] violin
 la **Virginie** [virʒini] Virginia; la
 Virginie de l'Ouest West Vir-
 ginia
 la **visite** [vizit] visit, call, visitor,
 caller
 visiter [vizite] to visit
 le **vison** [vizɔ̃] mink
 la **vitamine** [vitamin] vitamin
 vite [vit] quickly, fast
 la **vitesse** [vites] speed, gear; **en**
 vitesse quickly; **à toute vitesse**
 at full speed; **changer de vitesse**
 to change gear; la **limite de**
 vitesse (*pl. limites de vitesse*)
 speed limit
 la **vitre** [vitr] window (pane)
 la **vitrine** [vitrin] (store) window;
 en vitrine in the (store) window

vivre [vi:vR] to live
 le **vœu**, -x [vø] vow, wish
voici [vwasi] here is, here are, this is, these are
voilà [vwala] there is, there are, that is, those are
 la **voile** [vwal] sail; le **bateau à voile(s)** sailboat
voir [vwa:R] to see; **je ne peux pas le voir** I can't stand the sight of him
voisin, -e [vwazɛ̃, -in] neighbour-ing
 le **voisin**, la **voisine** [vwazɛ̃, -in] neighbour
 la **voiture** [vwaty:R] car, carriage
 la **voix** [vwa] voice; **à voix haute** aloud; **à haute voix** aloud; **à voix basse** in a low voice, in an undertone
 le **vol** [vɔl] theft
 le **volant** [vɔlɑ̃] (steering-)wheel
 le **volcan** [vɔlkɑ̃] volcano
voler [vɔle] to rob, to steal, to fly
 le **voleur** [vɔlœ:R] thief, robber
 la **Volga** [vɔlga] the Volga
 la **volonté** [vɔlɔ̃te] will; **montrer de la bonne volonté** to be co-operative
volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje] willingly, gladly, readily
 le **volume** [vɔlym] volume
 le **vote** [vɔt] vote, voting; le **droit de vote** franchise
voter [vɔte] to vote
votre, **vos** [vɔtr, vo] your
 le **vôtre**, la **vôtre** [vo:tr] yours

vouloir [vulwa:R] to wish, to want, to be willing; **quand vous voudrez** when(ever) you like; **je veux bien** I am willing, I don't mind; **je voudrais bien** I'd like to; **en vouloir à qn** to have a grudge against s.o.
 le **voyage** [vwaja:ʒ] trip; le **voyage d'affaires** business trip; **en voyage (d'affaires)** on a (business) trip
voyager [vwajaze] (*nous voyageons*) to travel
 le **voyageur** [vwajaʒœ:R] traveller, passenger
 la **voyelle** [vwajel] vowel
vrai, -e [vrɛ] (*before noun*) real, genuine, (*after noun*) true
vraiment [vrɛmɑ̃] really
 la **vue** [vy] view, sight

W

le **wagon-restaurant** (*pl. wagons-restaurants*) [vagɔ̃ʁestɔ̃ʁɑ̃] dining-car
 le **week-end** (*pl. week-ends*) [wikɛ̃d] weekend

Y

yugoslave [jugɔsla:v] Yugoslav
 la **Yugoslavie** [jugɔslavi] Yugoslavia

Z

zéro [zɛro] *m.* zero

- NOTE 1. When the definite article forms part of the name of a city, as in **Le Havre, La Havane, etc.**, the gender of the name is obvious. In the case of names of cities not including the definite article there is no fixed rule for gender. One often finds examples of a name treated as masculine by one author and feminine by another. As there is, however, in simple conversation, a tendency to treat all such names of cities as masculine, they are so shown in this vocabulary.
- NOTE 2. The initials *S.T.P.* which frequently occur in this vocabulary refer to the section *Special Translation Problems*.

English-French Vocabulary

A

- able: to be able to** pouvoir
about *See S.T.P. 1*
above all avant tout, surtout
abroad à l'étranger
absence une absence
absent absent, -e; **to be absent (from school)** manquer (l'école)
absolute absolu, -e
absolutely absolument
to abstain (from) s'abstenir (de)
abstract abstrait, -e
abundant abondant, -e
abundantly abondamment
accent un accent
accident un accident; **car accident** un accident d'auto (*pl.* accidents d'auto)
to accompany accompagner
according to selon, d'après
to accuse (s.o. of) accuser (qn de)
to accustom (s.o. to) habituer (qn à); **to become accustomed (to)** s'habituer (à)
to ache faire mal (à)
across: to run across (= *to meet*) rencontrer; **to run across the street** traverser la rue en courant
act un acte
to act (= *to take action*) agir
to act (in a play) jouer
to act as servir de
active actif, -ive
actor un acteur
actress une actrice
acute aigu, aiguë
address une adresse
to admire admirer
to admit admettre
to adopt adopter
to adore adorer
advantage un avantage; **to take advantage of** profiter de
adventure une aventure
advertisement une annonce
advice le conseil, les conseils
to advise s.o. to do sth. conseiller à qn de faire qch.; **Who could advise them?** Qui pourrait les conseiller?
affirmative affirmatif, -ive
to afford sth. se payer qch.; **to afford** to avoir les moyens de
afraid: to be afraid (of, to) avoir peur (de); **to make s.o. afraid** faire peur à qn
Africa l'Afrique, *f.*
African africain, -e; **an African** un Africain, une Africaine
after *See S.T.P. 2*
afternoon un après-midi (*invar.*); **in the afternoon** l'après-midi; **at two o'clock in the afternoon** à deux heures de l'après-midi; **afternoon nap** la sieste
again *See S.T.P. 3*
against contre
to age vieillir
age l'âge *m.*; **to be the same age (as)** avoir le même âge (que); **to seem like ages** paraître une éternité
ago il y a; **a month ago** il y a un mois; **a few minutes ago** tout à l'heure; **that was many years ago** il y a de cela bien des années
to agree *See S.T.P. 4*
agreement un accord
ahead: straight ahead tout droit
air l'air *m.*; **in the open (air)** en plein air
airman un aviateur
airplane un avion
airport un aéroport

- Alabama** l'Alabama *m.*
Alaska l'Alaska *m.*
Albania l'Albanie *f.*
Albanian albanais, -e; **an Albanian** un Albanais, une Albanaise; **Albanian** (*i.e., language*) l'albanais *m.*
Alberta l'Alberta *m.*
algebra l'algèbre *f.*
Algeria l'Algérie *f.*
Algerian algérien, -ienne; **an Algerian** un Algérien, une Algérienne
Algiers Alger *m.*
alike: to be alike se ressembler
all tout, toute, tous, toutes; (= *everything*) tout *m.*; **not at all** ne . . . pas du tout; **nothing at all** ne . . . rien du tout
All Saints' Day la Toussaint
to allow (s.o. to do sth.) permettre (à qn de faire qch.), laisser (qn faire qch.)
almond une amande; **almond tree** un amandier
almost presque; **I almost fell** j'ai failli tomber; **I have almost finished** j'ai presque fini
alone seul, -e (*after noun*); **to leave alone** *See S.T.P. 31a*
along (the river) le long de (la rivière)
along: to get along (together) s'entendre; **to get along without** se passer de
aloud à voix haute, à haute voix
alphabet un alphabet
Alps les Alpes *f.*
already déjà
also aussi
although bien que (*subjunctive*), quoique (*subjunctive*)
alumin(i)um l'aluminium *m.*
always toujours, à chaque instant
Amazon (the) l'Amazone *m.*
ambition l'ambition *f.*
America l'Amérique *f.*
American américain, -e; **an American** un Américain, une Américaine
among parmi
amount la quantité; (*of money*) la somme; **a fair amount (of)** pas mal (de)
to amuse amuser; **to amuse oneself (doing sth.)** s'amuser (à faire qch.)
amusement la distraction
amusing amusant, -e
amusingly d'une façon amusante
ancient ancien, -ienne (*after noun*)
and et
Andrew André *m.*
angle un angle
angry fâché, -e, en colère; **to get angry** se fâcher, se mettre en colère; **to get angry at sth., at (or with) s.o.** se fâcher de qch., contre qn; **to make (s.o.) angry** fâcher qn, mettre qn en colère
ankle la cheville
anniversary un anniversaire
to announce annoncer (*nous annonçons*)
to annoy agacer (*nous agaçons*), vexer
annoying ennuyeux, -euse, agaçant, -e, vexant, -e
another *See S.T.P. 5*
answer la réponse; **answer paper** la copie
to answer (s.o., sth.) répondre (à qn, à qch.)
ant la fourmi
Antarctic Ocean (the) l'océan Antarctique *m.*
anthem un hymne
antique une antiquité
anxious: to be (very) anxious to tenir (beaucoup) à; **to be (very) anxious that** tenir (beaucoup) à ce que (*subjunctive*)
any (adj.): any book (at all) n'importe quel livre; **any one (at all)** n'importe lequel; **any house (at all)** n'importe quelle maison; **any one (at all)** n'importe laquelle; (*For other expressions, see 4.2, 4.5, 4.6, 4.7, 4.9, 4.10*)
any (pron.) en
anybody quelqu'un; **anybody (at**

- all** n'importe qui; **not . . . anybody** ne . . . personne
anyone quelqu'un; **anyone (at all)** n'importe qui; **not . . . anyone** ne . . . personne
anything quelque chose; (= *everything*) tout; **anything (at all)** n'importe quoi; **anything and everything** de tout; **as easy as anything** facile comme tout, simple comme bonjour
anywhere quelque part; **anywhere (at all)** n'importe où; **not . . . anywhere** ne . . . nulle part
apart: **to take apart** démonter
apartment un appartement; **apartment house (or building)** un immeuble
to apologize (for) s'excuser (de); **to apologize (to s.o.)** faire des excuses (à qn)
apostrophe une apostrophe
to appeal: **that doesn't appeal to me** cela ne me dit rien; **Does that appeal to you?** Est-ce que cela vous dit quelque chose?
to appear paraître, apparaître, se montrer; **to appear on the stage** entrer en scène
appearance l'apparence *f.*
appetite un appétit; **to have a good appetite** avoir bon appétit; **to give s.o. an appetite, to whet s.o.'s appetite** mettre qn en appétit
to applaud applaudir
apple la pomme; **apple tree** le pommier
application la demande; **application for a job** la demande d'emploi (*pl.* demandes d'emploi)
to apply (to) s'adresser (à)
to appoint nommer
appointment le rendez-vous (*invar.*); **to give an appointment** donner rendez-vous; **to have an appointment** avoir rendez-vous; **to make an appointment** prendre rendez-vous
to approve approuver
approximate approximatif, -ive
apricot un abricot
April avril *m.*
Arab arabe; **an Arab** un Arabe, une Arabe
Arabia l'Arabie *f.*
Arabic arabe; **Arabic (i.e., language)** l'arabe *m.*
architect un architecte
Arctic Ocean (the) l'océan Arctique *m.*
Argentina l'Argentine *f.*
Argentine argentin, -e; **an Argentine** un Argentin, une Argentine
argument la discussion, la dispute; (= *reasoning*) un argument
Arizona l'Arizona *m.*
Arkansas l'Arkansas *m.*
arm le bras
armchair le fauteuil
army une armée
around autour de; **to take a trip around the world** faire le tour du monde
to arouse (s.o.'s) pity, to arouse pity (in s.o.) faire pitié (à qn)
to arrange arranger (*nous arrangeons*)
to arrest arrêter
arrival une arrivée
to arrive arriver
article (= *thing*) un objet; (*in newspaper, grammar*) un article
artificial artificiel, -ielle
artist l'artiste *m.f.*
as *See S.T.P. 6*
Ascension Day l'Ascension *f.*
ashamed: to be (or feel) ashamed (of, to) avoir honte (de)
ash-tray le cendrier
Asia l'Asie *f.*
Asiatic asiatique; **an Asiatic** un Asiatique, une Asiatique
to ask *See S.T.P. 7*
asleep: to fall asleep s'endormir
asparagus les asperges *f.*
aspirin **tablet** le cachet d'aspirine (*pl.* cachets d'aspirine)
to assassinate assassiner

to **assert** affirmer
 to **associate with** s.o. fréquenter qn
 to **assume** admettre

Assumption: (the Feast of) the
Assumption l'Assomption *f.*

to **assure** assurer
 to **astonish** étonner
astonishing étonnant, -e
Athens Athènes *m.*
athlete un athlète
Atlantic (the) l'Atlantique *m.*
attack une attaque
 to **attack** attaquer
 to **attempt (to)** essayer (*j'essaye, j'essaie*)
 (de), tâcher (de)

to **attend (a meeting)** assister (à une
 réunion); to **attend school** fré-
 quenter l'école

attention l'attention *f.*; to **pay**
attention (to) faire attention (à)

attic le grenier

to **attract** attirer
auction sale la vente aux enchères
audience la salle, le public

August août *m.*

aunt la tante

Australia l'Australie *f.*

Australian australien, -ienne; **an**
Australian un Australien, une
 Australienne

Austria l'Autriche *f.*

Austrian autrichien, -ienne; **an**
Austrian un Autrichien, une Au-
 trichienne

author un auteur

autumn un automne; **in (the)**
autumn en automne

available disponible

to **avoid (doing sth.)** éviter (de faire
 qch.)

awake réveillé, -e; to **keep** s.o.
awake empêcher qn de dormir

away (= *gone*) parti, -e; to **go away**
 partir, s'en aller; **far away (from)**
 loin (de); **right away** tout de

suite; to **do away with** supprimer;
 to **give away** donner

awful terrible

awfully terriblement; **it is awfully**

hot il fait terriblement chaud, il
 fait une chaleur torride (*or ter-*
rible)

axe la hache

B

baby le bébé

bachelor le célibataire

back le dos

back: to **be back** être de retour; to
call back rappeler (*je rappelle*); to
get back *See S.T.P. 19f*; to **go**
back rentrer, retourner

bacon le lard

bad mauvais, -e; **a bad storm** un
 gros orage; (**It's too bad!** (C'est)
 dommage!; to **go bad** pourrir

bad (= *ill-behaved*) méchant, -e

badly mal; to **feel badly (about**
doing sth.) être ennuyé(e) (de
 faire qch., d'avoir fait qch.)

bag le sac; (= *suitcase*) la valise

baggage les bagages *m.*

baker le boulanger

baker's shop la boulangerie

ball la balle; (= *football, basketball*)
 le ballon

ball-point pen le stylo à bille (*pl.*
 stylos à bille)

banana la banane

bandage le pansement

to **bandage** panser

bank la banque; (*of river*) la rive

bankrupt: to **go bankrupt** faire
 faillite

bar (*of chocolate*) la tablette

barber le coiffeur

bare nu, -e

to **bark (at)** aboyer (*il aboie*) (après)

barn la grange

baseball (*the game*) le baseball; (*the*
ball) la balle

basis le fond

basket le panier

bath le bain; (= *bathtub*) la bai-
 gnoire

- bathing-suit** le costume de bain (*pl.* costumes de bain); **in a** (*or one's*) **bathing-suit** en costume de bain;
bathing-trunks le caleçon de bain
bathing; **to go bathing** se baigner
bath-robe la robe de chambre (*pl.* robes de chambre); **in a** (*or one's*) **bath-robe** en robe de chambre
bathroom la salle de bains
bath-tub la baignoire
battle la bataille
B.C. (= *before Christ*) av. J.-C. (= *avant Jésus-Christ*)
to be être, se trouver; **to be well** se porter bien, aller bien; **to be sixteen** (*years old*) avoir seize ans
beach la plage
bean le haricot
bear un ours
to beat battre
Beatrice Béatrice
beautiful beau, bel, belle, beaux, belles
beauty la beauté
because parce que; **because of** à cause de
to beckon to s.o. to do sth. faire signe à qn de faire qch.
to become devenir; **What became of her?** Qu'est-ce qu'elle est devenue?
bed le lit; **flower bed** la plate-bande (*pl.* plates-bandes); **to go to bed** se coucher; **to go up to bed** monter se coucher
bee une abeille
beech (*tree*) le hêtre
beef le bœuf
beehive la ruche
beet la betterave; **as red as a beet** rouge comme une écrevisse
before *See S.T.P. 8*
to beg s.o. to do sth. prier qn de faire qch., supplier qn de faire qch.
to begin (*to*) commencer (*nous commençons*) (à *or de*), se mettre (à)
beginning le commencement, le début
begonia le bégonia
to behave se conduire; **to behave** (= *to behave well*) se conduire bien
behind derrière
Belgian belge; **a Belgian** un Belge, une Belge
Belgium la Belgique
to believe croire; **to believe in ghosts** croire aux fantômes
to belong (*to*) appartenir (à), faire partie (de)
belt la ceinture
bench le banc
to bend plier; **to bend one's head** pencher la tête
Bermuda les Bermudes *f.*
berth la couchette
beside à côté de
best (*adj.*) meilleur, -e; (*adv.*) le mieux; **to do one's best** faire de son mieux
to bet parier
better (*adj.*) meilleur, -e; **to get better** se remettre
better (*adv.*) mieux; **it is better to** il vaut mieux; **to do better to** faire mieux de; **you had better . . .** vous feriez mieux de . . .
between entre
Bible la Bible
bicycle la bicyclette, le vélo; **by bicycle** à (*or en*) bicyclette, à (*or en*) vélo
big grand, -e; (= *heavy, bulky*) gros, grosse
bill la note, la facture; (*in restaurant*) une addition; (= *banknote*) le billet
billfold le portefeuille
billion un milliard (de)
biology la biologie
birch (*tree*) le bouleau, -x
bird un oiseau, -x
birthday un anniversaire, la fête
bit le bout; **a bit of information** un petit renseignement
to bite mordre; **to bite one's nails** se ronger (*nous nous rongeons*) les ongles

- bitter** amer, -ère
black (*adj.*) noir, -e
black (*noun*) le noir
blackboard le tableau noir (*pl.* tableaux noirs)
Black Forest la Forêt-Noire
blade la lame
blanket la couverture
to **bleed** saigner; to **bleed again** ressaigner
to **bless** bénir
blessing la bénédiction
blind aveugle
blindly aveuglément
blood le sang
blossom la fleur; **in blossom** en fleur
blotter le buvard
blouse la blouse
blow le coup; **blows are falling thick and fast** il pleut des coups
to **blow** souffler; to **blow one's nose** se moucher
blue (*adj.*) bleu, -e; **blue-eyed** aux yeux bleus; **navy blue** bleu marine (*invar.*); **sky-blue** bleu ciel (*invar.*)
blue (*noun*) le bleu
board (= *blackboard*) le tableau, -x
board: on board à bord (de)
to **boast** (of) se vanter (de)
boat le bateau, -x; **by boat** par bateau; **a boat ride** une promenade en bateau
body le corps
to **boil** (*intrans.*) bouillir, (*trans.*) faire bouillir; to **boil with rage** bouillir de colère; **a boiled egg** un œuf à la coque (*pl.* œufs à la coque)
Bolivia la Bolivie
Bolivian bolivien, -ienne; **a Bolivian** un Bolivien, une Bolivienne
bologna le saucisson
bomb la bombe; **hydrogen bomb** la bombe à hydrogène (*pl.* bombes à hydrogène)
bone un os; (*in fish*) une arête
book le livre
bookstore la librairie
border la frontière
to **bore** ennuyer (*j'ennuie*), embêter;
to **be** (or *get*) **bored** s'ennuyer, s'embêter
boring embêtant, -e, ennuyeux, -euse
born: to be born naître
Bornean bornéen, -enne; **a Bornean** un Bornéen, une Bornéenne
Borneo Bornéo *m.*
to **borrow** (sth. from s.o.) emprunter (qch. à qn)
boss le patron
both tous les deux, toutes les deux;
both (of) these books ces deux livres
to **bother** gêner, déranger (*nous dérangeons*)
bottle la bouteille
boulevard le boulevard
bouquet le bouquet
to **bow one's head** incliner la tête
box la boîte
boy le garçon
bracelet le bracelet
bracket la parenthèse; **square bracket** le crochet
brake le frein; to **put the brakes on** mettre les freins
branch la branche; (*of bank, etc.*) la succursale
brand-new tout neuf, toute neuve, tout neufs, toutes neuves
brave brave (*after noun*)
Brazil le Brésil
Brazilian brésilien, -ienne; **a Brazilian** un Brésilien, une Brésilienne
bread le pain
to **break** (*trans.*) casser, (*intrans.*) se casser
to **break off** (*engagement, etc.*) rompre
breakdown la panne
to **break down** avoir une panne, rester en panne
breakfast le petit déjeuner; to **be at breakfast** être à table; to **have breakfast** déjeuner; **I don't want any breakfast** je ne veux pas déjeuner

breath: out of breath essoufflé, -e
bride la mariée
bridegroom le marié
bridge le pont
brief bref, brève
briefly brièvement
bright brillant, -e; (*of room, etc.*) clair, -e; (*of colour*) vif, vive
brilliant brillant, -e
brilliantly brillamment
to **bring** *See S.T.P. 9*
to **bring back** *See S.T.P. 9*
to **bring down**(stairs) descendre; to **bring down**(stairs) again re-descendre
to **bring in** (again) rentrer
to **bring out** sortir; to **bring out** again ressortir
to **bring up**(stairs) monter; to **bring up**(stairs) again remonter
British Columbia la Colombie britannique
broad: in broad daylight en plein jour
broom le balai
brother le frère
brother-in-law le beau-frère (*pl.* beaux-frères)
brown (*adj.*) brun, -e; **brown bread** le pain bis; **brown sugar** la cassonade
brown (*noun*) le brun
brush la brosse
to **brush** brosser
Brussels Bruxelles *m.*
buckwheat le blé noir
buffet le buffet
to **build** construire
bulb (= *light bulb*) une ampoule
Bulgaria la Bulgarie
Bulgarian bulgare; **a Bulgarian** un Bulgare, une Bulgare; **Bulgarian** (*i.e., language*) le bulgare
to **bump** cogner
bunch of grapes la grappe de raisin (*pl.* grappes de raisin)
to **burn** brûler
to **burn out** (*of bulb*) claquer, griller
bus (*in city*) un autobus, (*between*

cities) un autocar; **by bus** en autobus, en autocar; **on the bus** dans l'autobus, dans l'autocar
business les affaires *f.*; **to mind one's own business** s'occuper de ses affaires
businessman un homme d'affaires
busy (**doing sth.**) occupé(e) (à faire qch.); **a busy street** une rue fréquentée; **a busy port** un port actif
to **busy oneself** (**doing sth.**) s'occuper (à faire qch.)
but mais
butcher le boucher
butcher shop, butcher store la boucherie
butter le beurre
button le bouton
to **buy** (**sth. from s.o.**) acheter (*j'achète*) (qch. à qn)
buyer un acheteur
by par; **by working** en travaillant; **by three o'clock** avant trois heures; **by hand** à la main; **I did it (all) by myself** je l'ai fait tout seul (toute seule)

C

cabbage le chou, -x
cabin la cabane; (*on ship*) la cabine
cage la cage
Cairo Le Caire
cake le gâteau, -x; **chocolate cake** le gâteau au chocolat (*pl.* gâteaux au chocolat)
calf le veau, -x
California la Californie
call: telephone call le coup de téléphone (*pl.* coups de téléphone)
to **call** appeler (*j'appelle*); **he is called John** il s'appelle Jean; **to call back** rappeler
camera un appareil (photographique)

- camp** le camp; **at camp** au camp
can la boîte; **can opener** un ouvre-boîtes (*invar.*)
can (*vb.*) See *S.T.P.* 10
Canada le Canada
Canadian canadien, -ienne; **a Canadian** un Canadien, une Canadienne
canary le canari
to **cancel** décommander
candidate le candidat
candy les bonbons *m.*; **a candy** un bonbon
canoe le canoë; **by canoe** en canoë
cap la casquette
capable (of) capable (de)
capital (of a country, etc.) la capitale;
capital (letter) la (lettre) majuscule
capture la prise
car la voiture, une auto; **by car** en voiture, en auto
card la carte
cardboard le carton; **cardboard box** le carton
care le soin; **to take good care** (of) prendre bien soin (de)
to **care** (= *to wish*) vouloir; **I don't care** cela m'est égal
careful soigneux, -euse; **to be careful** (of) faire attention (à); **to be careful** to faire attention de; **Be careful!** Fais attention!, Faites attention!, Attention!
carefully avec soin, soigneusement;
to think sth. over carefully bien réfléchir à qch.
carrot la carotte
to **carry** porter; **to be carried away** (*by enthusiasm, etc.*) s'emballer
to **carry** (= *to transport*) transporter
to **carry down**(stairs) descendre; **to carry down**(stairs) again redescendre
to **carry in** (again) rentrer
to **carry out** sortir; **to carry out** again ressortir
to **carry up**(stairs) monter; **to carry up**(stairs) again remonter
carving-knife le couteau à découper (*pl.* couteaux à découper)
case le cas; **in case it rains** au cas où il pleuvrait
cash: to pay cash payer comptant
to **cash** toucher
castle le château, -x
cat le chat, la chatte
to **catch** attraper; **to catch a chill** prendre froid; **to catch** (a) cold s'enrhumer, attraper un rhume;
to catch fire prendre feu; **to catch sight of** apercevoir
to **catch up with** rattraper
cathedral la cathédrale
catholic catholique
cauliflower le chou-fleur (*pl.* choux-fleurs)
cause la cause
to **cause** causer; **to cause s.o. to do sth.** See *Lesson 33*
cautious prudent, -e
cautiously prudemment, avec prudence
to **cease** (doing sth.) cesser (de faire qch.)
cedilla la cédille
ceiling le plafond
to **celebrate sth.** fêter qch., célébrer (*je célèbre*) qch.; **all Paris was celebrating** tout Paris était en fête
celery le céleri
cellar la cave
cent le sou, -s
central central, -e (-aux); **Central America** l'Amérique centrale *f.*
centre le centre
century le siècle
certain (of, to) certain(e) (de) (*For position, see 15.10*)
certainly certainement
to **certify** certifier
Ceylon Ceylan *m.*
chair la chaise
chalk la craie
chance le hasard; (= *possibility*) la chance; **by** (any) **chance** par hasard

- championship** le championnat
change le changement; (*i.e.*, money) la monnaie
to **change** See *S.T.P. 11*
chap le bonhomme (*pl.* bonshommes)
chapter le chapitre
character le caractère; (*in literature*) le personnage
charming charmant, -e
charmingly d'une façon charmante
to **chase** poursuivre
to **chat** causer
to **chat** bavarder
cheap bon marché (*invar.*); **cheaper** meilleur marché (*invar.*)
to **cheat** tricher
to **check** (= *to verify*) vérifier; to **check baggage** faire enregistrer des bagages
check la joue
cheerful gai, -e
cheerfully gaiement
cheese le fromage
chemistry la chimie
cheque le chèque; to **write a cheque** faire un chèque
cherry la cerise; **cherry tree** le cerisier
chest la poitrine
chesterfield le canapé
chicken le poulet
child l'enfant *m.f.*
childhood une enfance
Chile le Chili
Chilean chilien, -ienne; a **Chilean** un Chilien, une Chilienne
chill: to **catch a chill** prendre froid
chilly frisquet, -ette; **it** (*i.e.*, the weather) **is chilly** il fait frisquet
chin le menton
china la porcelaine
China la Chine
Chinaman (a) un Chinois
Chinese chinois, -e; a **Chinese woman** une Chinoise; **Chinese** (*i.e.*, language) le chinois; **Chinese porcelain** la porcelaine de Chine
chocolate le chocolat; **chocolate bar** la tablette de chocolat (*pl.* ta-
blettes de chocolat); **chocolate éclair** un éclair au chocolat (*pl.* éclairs au chocolat)
to **choose** choisir
chop la côtelette
Christ le Christ
Christmas Noël *m.*; **Christmas Day** le jour de Noël; **Merry Christmas!** Joyeux Noël!
Christopher Columbus Christophe Colomb
chrysanthemum le chrysanthème
cigarette la cigarette
circumflex circonflexe
Cingalese cingalais, -e; a **Cingalese man** un Cingalais; a **Cingalese woman** une Cingalaise
circumstance la circonstance; **in (or under) those circumstances** dans ces circonstances-là
circus le cirque
city la ville
civilian civil, -e; **in civilian clothes** en civil
civilization la civilisation
to **claim (to)** prétendre
clarinet la clarinette
class la classe; **in class** en classe; **first class** (*adv.*) en première (classe); **second class** (*adv.*) en seconde (classe); **third class** (*adv.*) en troisième (classe); **cabin class** (*adv.*) en classe cabine; **tourist class** (*adv.*) en classe touriste
class-mate le (la) camarade de classe (*pl.* camarades de classe)
clean propre (*after noun*)
to **clean** nettoyer (*je nettoie*)
clear clair, -e
to **clear the table** débarrasser la table
clearly clairement
clever habile
climate le climat
to **cling (to)** s'accrocher (à)
to **clip** tailler
clock une horloge
to **close** fermer
close (to) près (de); to **come close to drowning** faillir se noyer

- closet: coat-closet** le vestiaire
cloth le tissu
clothes les habits *m.*; (*underwear, shirts, blouses, etc.*) le linge; **in civilian clothes** en civil
clothes-brush la brosse à habits
clothes-closet le placard
cloud le nuage
cloudy nuageux, -euse; **it** (*i.e., the weather*) **is cloudy** il fait gris
club le club
coal le charbon
coast la côte
coat (*of man's suit*) le veston; (*woman's long coat*) le manteau, -x
coat-closet le vestiaire
coat-hanger le cintre
cocoa le cacao
cod la morue; **cod fishing** la pêche de la morue
coffee le café
coffee pot la cafetière
cold *See S.T.P. 12*
to collapse s'écrouler
collision la collision
colon le deux-points, les deux points
Colorado le Colorado
colour la couleur; **What colour is the book?** De quelle couleur est le livre?
coloured de couleur
colt le poulain
Columbia la Colombie
Columbian colombien, -ienne; **a Columbian** un Colombien, une Colombienne
column la colonne
comb le peigne
combat le combat
to come venir; **the postman comes** le facteur passe; **to come again** revenir; **to come and see** venir voir
to come back revenir
to come down(stairs) descendre; **to come down(stairs) again** redescendre
to come for venir chercher
to come home rentrer
to come in entrer; **to come in again** rentrer
to come on: the film comes on at eight o'clock le film passe à huit heures
to come out sortir; **to come out again** ressortir
to come to (= *to regain consciousness*) reprendre connaissance
to come up(stairs) monter; **to come up(stairs) again** remonter
to come with s.o. accompagner qn, venir avec qn
comfortable (*of thing*) confortable; (*of person*) à l'aise, bien
to command (s.o. to do sth.) ordonner (à qn de faire qch.)
to commit commettre; **to commit suicide** se suicider
committee le comité
company la compagnie; **to keep s.o. company** tenir compagnie à qn; **to have company** (*i.e., guests*) avoir du monde
to complain (of, about) se plaindre (de)
to complete compléter (*je complète*)
complete complet, -ète
completely complètement
complicated compliqué, -e
composition la composition
concert le concert
condition (= *state*) un état; **in good condition** en bon état; **in better condition** en meilleur état; **in poor condition** en mauvais état
conditional le conditionnel
conduct la conduite
confess avouer
to confide (sth. to s.o.) confier qch. à qn; **to confide in s.o.** se confier à qn
confidence la confiance; **to have confidence (in)** avoir confiance (en, dans)
congenial sympathique
congested (with) encombré(e) (de)
to congratulate s.o. (on) féliciter qn (de)
Connecticut le Connecticut
to conquer vaincre

- consciousness** la connaissance; **to lose consciousness** perdre connaissance; **to regain consciousness** reprendre connaissance
to consent (to) consentir (à)
to consider estimer, considérer (*je considère*)
to consist of se composer de; **consisting of** composé(e) de
to constitute constituer
construction la construction
to consult consulter
to content oneself (with) se contenter (de)
to continue (to) continuer (à or de)
contract le contrat
to contradict contredire
convention le congrès
conversation la conversation
to convince convaincre
cook le cuisinier, la cuisinière
to cook cuire
cooking la cuisine
cool frais, fraîche; **it** (*i.e., the weather*) **is cool** il fait frais
to cool off se refroidir
co-operative: to be co-operative montrer de la bonne volonté
Copenhagen Copenhague *m.*
to copy copier
corn le maïs
corner le coin
to correct corriger (*nous corrigeons*)
correspondence la correspondance
corridor le couloir
Corsica la Corse
Corsican corse; **a Corsican** un Corse, une Corse
to cost coûter
cotton le coton
cough la toux
to cough tousser
could *See S.T.P. 13*
to count (on) compter (sur)
country (= *nation*) le pays; (*in contrast to city*) la campagne; **in the country** à la campagne
couple le couple; **a couple of minutes** deux minutes
courage le courage
courageous courageux, -euse; brave (*after noun*)
courageously avec courage, courageusement
course: of course évidemment; **Of course!** Mais oui!; (*contradicting a negation*) **Mais si!**; **Of course not!** Mais non!
course: to take a course (in) suivre un cours (de)
cousin le cousin, la cousine
to cover (with) couvrir (de)
to cover up (with) couvrir (de)
cow la vache
to crash (*of plane*) s'écraser
crayfish une écrevisse
crazy fou, folle
cream la crème
credit: to do credit (to), to be a credit (to) faire honneur (à)
Crete la Crète
crime le crime
crisis la crise
to criticize critiquer
crop la récolte
cross la croix; **the Military Cross** la Croix de guerre
to cross traverser
crossing la traversée
crowd la foule
cruel cruel, -elle
to crush écraser
cry le cri
to cry pleurer
to cry (out) s'écrier
Cuban cubain, -e; **a Cuban** un Cubain, une Cubaine
cuckoo le coucou
cucumber le concombre
cup la tasse
cupboard le placard
to cure guérir
curious curieux, -ieuse
current le courant
curtain le rideau, -x
cushion le coussin
customary habituel, -elle
customer le client, la cliente

customs la douane

cut la coupe; **short cut** le raccourci

to **cut** couper

to **cut off** couper

to **cut out** découper

Cypriot cypriote; **a Cypriot** un Cypriote, une Cypriote

Cyprus Chypre *f.*

Czech tchèque; **a Czech** un Tchèque, une Tchèque; **Czech** (*i.e.*, *language*) le tchèque

Czechoslovakia la Tchécoslovaquie

Czechoslovakian tchécoslovaque

D

dad(dy) papa

to **damage** endommager (*nous endommageons*), abîmer

damp humide; **it** (*i.e.*, *the weather*) **is damp** il fait humide

dance (= *party*) le bal (*pl.* *bals*), la soirée dansante

dancing; there is dancing on danse

dance teacher le maître de danse (*pl.* *maîtres de danse*), la maîtresse de danse (*pl.* *maîtresses de danse*)

Dane (a) un Danois, une Danoise

danger le danger; **in (great) danger** en (grand) danger; **in mortal danger, in danger of one's life** en danger de mort

dangerous dangereux, -euse

Danish danois, -e; **Danish** (*i.e.*, *language*) le danois

to **dare (to)** oser

Danube (the) le Danube

dark sombre; (*of colour*) foncé, -e; (*of person*) brun, -e; **it is (a) dark (day)** il fait sombre; **it is (a) dark (night)** il fait noir; **it is dark** (= *it is night*) il fait nuit

darkness l'obscurité *f.*

dash le tiret

date (*day, month, year*) la date; **up to**

date (on) au courant (de)

date (= *appointment*) le rendez-vous

(*invar.*); **to have a date with s.o.** avoir rendez-vous avec qn

date (*fruit*) la datte

daughter la fille

daughter-in-law la belle-fille (*pl.* *belles-filles*)

day *See S.T.P. 14*

daylight: in broad daylight en plein jour; **it is day(light)** il fait jour

to **dazzle** éblouir

dead mort, -e; **to be dead tired** tomber de fatigue

deaf sourd, -e; **deaf in one ear** sourd(e) d'une oreille

deal: a great deal (of) beaucoup (de)

to **deal: to have to deal with s.o.** avoir affaire à qn

dealer le marchand

dear cher, chère (*For position, see 15.10*); **Oh dear!** Quel ennui!

death la mort; **as pale as death** pâle comme la mort (*or* un mort)

debt la dette; **to run into debt** faire des dettes

December décembre *m.*

decent (= *good*) brave (*before noun*)

deceptive trompeur, -euse

to **decide (to)** décider (de); **to decide** on se décider pour

decision la décision; **to make a decision** prendre une décision

decisive décisif, -ive

to **declare** déclarer

deep profond, -e; **How deep is ...?** Quelle est la profondeur de ...?

deeply profondément

defender le défenseur

definite défini, -e

definitely nettement

to **defy (s.o. to do sth.)** défier (qn de faire qch.)

degree le degré

delicious délicieux, -ieuse

delighted (with, to) enchanté(e) (de), ravi(e) (de)

delightful charmant, -e

to **deliver** livrer; **to deliver a speech**

- prononcer (*nous prononçons*) un discours
- to **demand** exiger (*nous exigeons*)
- democracy** la démocratie
- Denmark** le Danemark
- Dennis** Denis
- dentist** le dentiste
- to **deny** nier
- to **depart** partir; to **depart again** repartir
- department** le rayon; **toy department** le rayon des jouets
- departure** le départ
- to **depend** (on) dépendre (de)
- to **depress** déprimer
- depth** la profondeur; to **be within one's depth** avoir pied; to **be out of (or beyond) one's depth** ne pas avoir pied; to **get out of (or beyond) one's depth** perdre pied
- deputy mayor** un adjoint
- to **descend** descendre; to **descend again** redescendre
- to **describe** décrire
- to **deserve** (to) mériter (de)
- desire** le désir
- to **desire** (to) désirer
- desk** le bureau, -x
- despair** le désespoir
- to **despair** (of) désespérer (*je désespère*) (de)
- desperate** désespéré, -e
- desperately** désespérément
- dessert** le dessert
- to **destroy** détruire
- detail** le détail (*pl.* détails)
- detective story** le roman policier
- to **dethrone** détrôner
- to **devote** consacrer
- diaeresis** le tréma
- diameter** le diamètre
- diamond** le diamant
- dictionary** le dictionnaire
- to **die** mourir
- diet** le régime; **on a diet** au régime; to **go on a diet** se mettre au régime
- difference** la différence
- different** différent, -e (*For position, see 15.10*)
- differently** différemment
- difficult** difficile
- difficulty** la difficulté, la peine; **with difficulty** avec difficulté
- to **digest** digérer (*je digère*)
- to **dine** dîner; to **dine out** dîner en ville
- dining-car** le wagon-restaurant (*pl.* wagons-restaurants)
- dining-room** la salle à manger (*pl.* salles à manger)
- dinner** le dîner; to **be at dinner** être à table; to **have dinner** dîner; **I don't want any dinner** je ne veux pas dîner
- dint**: **by dint of** à force de
- diphtheria** la diphthérie
- to **direct** diriger (*nous dirigeons*)
- dirty** sale; to **make sth. dirty** salir qch.
- to **disappear** disparaître
- to **disappoint** décevoir
- disappointed** déçu, -e
- to **disapprove** désapprouver
- to **discourage** décourager (*nous décourageons*); to **become (or get) discouraged** se décourager
- to **discover** découvrir
- to **disguise** déguiser
- dish** le plat
- dishes** la vaisselle
- dishonest** malhonnête
- to **disillusion** désillusionner
- to **dislike** (to) détester
- to **disobey** (s.o.) désobéir (à qn)
- disorder** le désordre; **in disorder** en désordre
- displeased** (at, with, to) mécontent(e) (de)
- dissatisfied** (at, with, to) mécontent(e) (de)
- to **distribute** distribuer
- District of Columbia** le District de Columbia
- to **distrust sth., s.o.** se méfier de qch., de qn
- to **disturb** déranger (*nous dérangeons*)
- ditch** le fossé
- to **dive** plonger (*nous plongeons*)
- diving board** le plongeur

- divorced** divorcé, -e
 to **do** faire; **What's to be done?** Que faire? **Do keep quiet!** Tais-toi donc!, Taisez-vous donc!
doctor le médecin, le docteur
document le papier
dog le chien, la chienne
doll la poupée
dollar le dollar
door la porte; (*of car, train, etc.*) la portière
doorbell la sonnette; **the doorbell is ringing** on sonne
double compound present perfect le passé surcomposé
doubt le doute; **no doubt** sans doute
 to **doubt s.o., sth.** douter de qn, de qch.
doubtful douteux, -euse
doubtless sans doute
doughnut le beignet
downstairs en bas; **to come (or go) downstairs** descendre
downtown en ville
dozen la douzaine (de); **half a dozen** une demi-douzaine (de)
draughtsman le dessinateur
draughty: it is draughty il y a des courants d'air
 to **draw** dessiner; **to draw s.o.'s attention to sth.** faire remarquer qch. à qn
drawer le tiroir
dream le rêve; **to have a dream** faire un rêve
 to **dream (of)** rêver (de)
dress la robe; **evening dress** la robe du soir; **in an evening dress** en robe du soir; **in a short dress** en robe courte; **in a long dress** en robe longue
 to **dress (trans.)** habiller, (*intrans.*) s'habiller; **to get dressed** s'habiller
 to **dress up (trans.)** déguiser, (*intrans.*) se déguiser
dressings (*in turkey, etc.*) la farce
dressings-gown la robe de chambre (*pl.* robes de chambre); **in a (or one's) dressings-gown** en robe de chambre
dressmaker la couturière
 to **drink** boire
 to **drive** conduire; **to drive (in) a nail** enfoncer (*nous enfonçons*) un clou
driver's license le permis de conduire (*invar.*)
drop la goutte
 to **drop** laisser tomber
 to **drop in (= to come)** passer
 to **drown (trans.)** noyer (*je noie*), (*intrans.*) se noyer
druggist le pharmacien
drugstore la pharmacie
drum le tambour
 to **dry** sécher (*je sèche*); **to dry the dishes** essuyer (*j'essuie*) la vaisselle
dry sec, sèche; **it (i.e., the weather) is dry** il fait sec
duck le canard
dull: it (i.e., the weather) is dull il fait sombre
during pendant
dust la poussière
 to **dust** épousseter (*j'époussette*)
dusty poussiéreux, -euse
Dutch hollandais, -e; **a Dutchman** un Hollandais; **a Dutchwoman** une Hollandaise; **Dutch (i.e., language)** le hollandais

E

- each** chaque; **each (one)** chacun, -e
each other: they need each other ils ont besoin l'un de l'autre, elles ont besoin l'une de l'autre; (*For each other with pronominal vbs., see 23.4, 23.5, 23.8*)
ear une oreille
earlier plus tôt
early de bonne heure, tôt; **it is early** il est tôt
 to **earn** gagner
earth la terre
earthenware la faïence
ease la facilité; **with ease** avec facilité; **to feel at ease** se sentir à l'aise

- east** (*noun*) l'est *m.*; **east of** à l'est de
east (*adj.*) est (*invar.*); **east wind** le vent d'est
Easter Pâques *m. sing.*; **Easter Monday** le lundi de Pâques
easy facile; **as easy as anything** facile comme tout, simple comme bonjour
to **eat** manger (*nous mangeons*); **to eat a meal** (*breakfast, etc.*) prendre un repas (le petit déjeuner, *etc.*)
éclair un éclair
Ecuador l'Équateur *m.*
Ecuadorian équatorien, -ienne; **an Ecuadorian** un Équatorien, une Équatorienne
Edinburgh Édimbourg *m.*
Edmund Edmond
Edward Édouard
effective efficace
effort un effort
egg un œuf
eggplant une aubergine
Egypt l'Égypte *f.*
Egyptian égyptien, -ienne; **an Egyptian** un Égyptien, une Égyptienne
either . . . or ou . . . ou; **I don't like tea or coffee either** je n'aime pas le thé ni le café non plus
elbow le coude
to **elect** élire
election les élections *f.*
electric électrique
electrician un électricien
electricity l'électricité *f.*
elegance l'élégance *f.*
elegant élégant, -e
elegantly élégamment, avec élégance
elephant un éléphant
elevator un ascenseur
Elizabeth Élisabeth
else: something else, anything else autre chose *m. pron.*; **somebody else, someone else, anybody else, anyone else** quelqu'un d'autre; **nothing else** ne . . . rien d'autre; **nobody else, no one else** ne . . . personne d'autre; **somewhere else** ailleurs; **nowhere else** ne . . . nulle part ailleurs
elsewhere ailleurs
to **embark** s'embarquer
to **embarrass** gêner
employee un employé, une employée
empty vide
to **empty** vider
to **enclose sth. in a letter** joindre qch. à une lettre
to **encourage** (*s.o. to do sth.*) encourager (*nous encourageons*) (qn à faire qch.)
end (*tangible*) le bout, (*intangible*) la fin; **to put an end to** mettre fin à
to **end** finir
ending la fin
enemy un ennemi
energetically avec énergie
energy l'énergie *f.*
engaged fiancé, -e
engagement les fiançailles *f.*
engine le moteur
engineer un ingénieur
England l'Angleterre *f.*
English anglais, -e; **English** (*i.e., language*) l'anglais *m.*; **in** (*good*) **English** en (bon) anglais; **an Englishman** un Anglais; **an Englishwoman** une Anglaise
to **enjoy: Did you enjoy the concert?** Est-ce que le concert vous a plu? **to enjoy good health** jouir d'une bonne santé; **to enjoy oneself** s'amuser
to **enlarge** agrandir
to **enlist** s'engager (*nous nous engageons*)
enormous énorme
enormously énormément
enough assez (*de*); **old enough to understand** assez âgé(e) pour comprendre; **to be enough** suffire
to **enter** entrer (*dans*); **to enter again** rentrer (*dans*)
to **entertain** recevoir; **to do no entertaining** ne recevoir personne
enthusiasm l'enthousiasme *m.*
enthusiastic enthousiaste; **to become**

- very enthusiastic** (over sth.)
s'emballer (pour qch.)
- entire** entier, -ière
- to **entreat** (s.o. to do sth.) supplier
(qn de faire qch.)
- entreaty** la prière
- envelope** une enveloppe
- envious: to make s.o. envious** faire
envie à qn
- equation** une équation
- equidistant (from)** à égale distance
(de)
- eraser** la gomme
- escalator** un escalier roulant
- to **escape (death)** échapper (à la mort);
to **escape (from prison)** s'échap-
per (de prison), s'évader (de
prison)
- Eskimo** esquimau, -x (*fem. usually
same as masc., occasionally esqui-
maude*); **Eskimo** (*i.e., language*)
l'esquimau *m.*
- Estonia** l'Estonie *f.*
- Estonian** estonien, -ienne; **an Esto-
nian**, un Estonien, une Estonienne;
Estonian (*i.e., language*) l'estonien
m.
- ether** l'éther *m.*
- Ethiopia** l'Éthiopie *f.*
- Ethiopian** éthiopien, -ienne; **an
Ethiopian** un Éthiopien, une
Éthiopienne
- Europe** l'Europe *f.*
- European** européen, -enne; **a Euro-
pean** un Européen, une Euro-
péenne
- even** même, encore
- evening** *See S.T.P. 15*
- ever** jamais; **for ever** pour toujours;
ever since (*prep.*) depuis, (*con-
junction*) depuis que; **What ever
can that be?** Qu'est-ce que cela
peut bien être?
- everlasting** éternel, -elle
- every** tous les, toutes les; **every
morning** tous les matins; **every
ten minutes** toutes les dix minutes
- everybody** tout le monde, chacun
(*See 14.10*)
- everyone** tout le monde, chacun
(*See 14.10*)
- everything** tout *m.*; **anything and
everything** de tout
- everywhere** partout
- evident** évident, -e
- to **evoke** évoquer
- exact** exact, -e
- exactly** exactement
- to **exaggerate** exagérer (*j'exagère*)
- exam(ination)** un examen
- example** un exemple; **for example**
par exemple
- excellent** excellent, -e
- exceptional** exceptionnel, -elle
- exceptionally** exceptionnellement
- to **exchange** échanger (*nous échangeons*)
- to **excite** exciter; **to get excited** s'ex-
citer
- exciting** passionnant, -e
- to **exclaim** s'écrier
- exclamation mark** le point d'excla-
mation (*pl. points d'exclamation*)
- exclusive** (*of club, etc.*) fermé, -e
- to **excuse** excuser
- exercise** un exercice
- to **exhaust** épuiser
- exhibition** une exposition
- to **exist** exister
- exit** la sortie
- expansion** l'expansion *f.*
- to **expect** *See S.T.P. 16*
- expense** la dépense, les frais *m.*;
- expenses** les dépenses, les frais
- expensive** cher, chère (*after noun*); **to
be expensive** coûter cher (*invar.*)
- experience** une expérience
- experiment** une expérience
- to **explain** expliquer
- explanation** une explication
- to **explore** explorer
- explosion** une explosion
- to **export** exporter
- exposure** (*in photography*) la pose; **to
give the wrong exposure** se
tromper de pose
- exposure meter** un photomètre
- to **express** exprimer
- extraordinary** extraordinaire

extraordinarily extraordinairement
eye un œil (*pl.* yeux)

F

face la figure
factory une usine
 to **fail** (*in mathematics, etc.*) échouer
 (*en mathématiques, etc.*)
 to **fail** (= *to go bankrupt*) faire faillite
 to **fail: not to fail to do sth.** ne pas
 manquer de faire qch.
failure: my pictures are a failure
 mes photos sont ratées
 to **faint** s'évanouir
fair la foire
fair: a fair amount (*of*) pas mal (*de*)
fair-haired blond, -e; aux cheveux
 blonds
fairy la fée; **fairy tale** le conte de
 fées
faithful fidèle
fall la chute; (= *autumn*) un automne
 to **fall** tomber; **to fall asleep** s'en-
 dormir
 to **fall down** tomber; **to fall down**
 again retomber
false faux, fausse
familiar familier, -ière; **to be fami-
 liar** (*i.e., acquainted*) **with sth.**
 connaître qch.
family la famille
famous célèbre, fameux, -euse; **fa-
 mous for** célèbre par
 to **fancy sth.** avoir envie de qch.
far (*from*) loin (*de*); **far away**
 (*from*) loin (*de*); **as far as**
Montreal jusqu'à Montréal; **Did**
you go as far as the others
 (*went*)? Êtes-vous allé aussi loin
 que les autres?; **how far** *See*
S.T.P. 27d
farm la ferme
farmer le fermier
fast vite; **my watch is (five minutes)**
fast ma montre avance (*de cinq*
minutes)

fat (*of person*) gros, grosse; (*of*
animal) gras, grasse; **to get fat**
 grossir, engraisser
fatal fatal, -e (*m.pl.* fatals)
father le père
father-in-law le beau-père (*pl.*
beaux-pères)
fatigue la fatigue
fault (= *shortcoming*) le défaut; (= *responsibility*) la faute; **What fault**
do you find with him? Qu'est-
 ce que vous lui reprochez?
favour le service
fear la peur, la crainte; **for fear of**
 de peur de; **for fear that** de peur
 que (*subjunctive*)
 to **fear** craindre
Feast of the Assumption (*the*)
 l'Assomption *f.*
feature: main feature le grand film
February février *m.*
 to **feed s.o.** donner à manger à qn,
 faire manger qn
 to **feel** sentir; **to feel ill** (*happy, etc.*)
 se sentir malade (*heureux, etc.*);
to feel ashamed (*of*) avoir honte
 (*de*); **to feel cold** avoir froid;
to feel hot avoir chaud; **to feel**
hungry avoir faim; **to feel like**
doing sth. avoir envie de faire
 qch.; **to feel sleepy** avoir som-
 meil; **to feel thirsty** avoir soif;
to feel warm avoir chaud; **to**
make s.o. feel cold donner froid
 à qn; **to make s.o. feel hot** donner
 chaud à qn; **to make s.o. feel**
hungry donner faim à qn; **to**
make s.o. feel like doing sth.
 donner à qn envie de faire qch.;
to make s.o. feel sleepy donner
 sommeil à qn; **to make s.o. feel**
thirsty donner soif à qn
feeling une émotion *f.*; **with feeling**
 avec émotion
feelingly avec émotion
fellow le bonhomme (*pl.* bons-
 hommes), un individu
festival la fête
few peu (*de*); **a few** (*adj.*) quelques;

- a few** (*pron.*) quelques-uns, quelques-unes; **quite a few** pas mal (de)
- fewer** moins (de)
- Fido** Médor *m.*
- field** le champ
- fig** la figue
- to fight** (*intrans.*) se battre
- figure** la figure
- Filipino** (a) un Philippin; **a Filipina** une Philippine
- to fill** (**with**) remplir (de)
- film** le film
- final**, **final**, -e (*m.pl.* finals)
- finally** finalement; **he finally left** il a fini par partir, il est parti finalement
- financial** financier, -ière
- to find** trouver; **to find again** retrouver
- fine** beau, bel, belle, beaux, belles; **it** (*i.e., the weather*) **is fine** il fait beau (temps)
- fine** (*of sand, etc.*) fin, -e
- finger** le doigt
- to finish** finir, terminer; **to finish doing sth.** finir de faire qch.
- Finland** la Finlande
- Finn** (a) un Finlandais, une Finlandaise
- Finnish** finlandais, -e; **Finnish** (*i.e., language*) le finnois
- fire** le feu, -x; (= *conflagration*) un incendie; **to catch fire** prendre feu
- fireman** le pompier
- fireside: by the fireside** devant la cheminée
- fireworks** les feux d'artifice *m.*
- first** *See S.T.P. 17*
- fish** le poisson
- fisherman** le pêcheur
- fishing** la pêche; **fishing-rod** la canne à pêche (*pl.* cannes à pêche); **to go fishing** aller à la pêche
- to fix** arranger (*nous arrangeons*); **to fix s.o.'s hair** coiffer qn; **to fix one's** (*i.e., one's own*) **hair** se coiffer
- fixed** (*i.e., not moving*) fixe
- flag** le drapeau, -x
- flashlight** la lampe de poche (*pl.* lampes de poche)
- flatly** carrément
- to flatter** flatter
- to flee** fuir, s'enfuir
- floor** le plancher; **on the floor** par terre
- floor** (= *story*) un étage; **ground floor** le rez-de-chaussée (*invar.*)
- Florida** la Floride
- flour** la farine
- flower** la fleur; **in flower** en fleur; **flower bed** la plate-bande (*pl.* plates-bandes)
- flu** la grippe
- fluent** courant, -e; **to be fluent in French** parler couramment le français
- fluently** couramment
- to fly** voler; **Did you fly?** Avez-vous pris l'avion?; **time flies** le temps fuit (*or* passe)
- to fly away** s'envoler
- flying** volant, -e
- foam rubber** la mousse de caoutchouc
- fog** le brouillard
- foggy: it** (*i.e., the weather*) **is foggy** il fait du brouillard, il y a du brouillard
- to fold** plier
- to follow** suivre; **to follow again** res-suivre
- fond: to be very fond of s.o., sth.** aimer beaucoup qn, qch.; **to be very fond of sweet things** être très gourmand(e); **to be very fond of sports** être très sportif (sportive)
- food** la nourriture, un aliment
- foot** le pied; **on foot** à pied; **on one's feet** debout; **to set foot again** remettre les pieds
- football** (*the game*) le football; (*the ball*) le ballon
- for** *See S.T.P. 18*
- to forbid** (**s.o. to do sth.**) défendre (à qn de faire qch.), interdire (à qn de faire qch.)

to **force** (s.o. to do sth.) obliger (qn à faire qch).

forecast: rain is forecast on annonce de la pluie

foreign étranger, -ère

foreigner un étranger, une étrangère

forest la forêt

to **forget** (to) oublier (de)

to **forgive** sth. pardonner qch.; to

forgive s.o. pardonner à qn; to

forgive s.o. for sth. pardonner qch. à qn

fork la fourchette

form la forme; **in** (good) **form** en (bonne) forme

former ancien, -ienne (*before noun*);

the former (*of two*) celui-là, celle-là, (*of two groups*) ceux-là, celles-là

formerly autrefois

Formosa Formose *f.*

fortunate heureux, -euse

fortune la fortune; **to make a** (*or one's*) **fortune** faire fortune

forward: to look forward to doing sth. se réjouir de faire qch.

fountain pen le stylo

fox le renard

to **frame** encadrer

franc le franc

France la France

Frances Française

franchise le droit de vote

Frank François

frank franc, franche

frankly franchement

Fred(erick) Frédéric

free libre

to **freeze** geler (*il gèle*); (*of food*) congeler (*je congèle*)

French français, -e; **French** (*i.e., language*) le français; **in** (good)

French en (bon) français; **French**

fries les frites *f.*; **a Frenchman** un

Français; **a Frenchwoman** une

Française

French-speaking de langue française

frequent fréquent, -e

frequently fréquemment

fresh frais, fraîche

Friday le vendredi

friend un ami, une amie

fries: French fries les frites *f.*

to **frighten** s.o. faire peur à qn, effrayer (*j'effraye, j'effraie*) qn; to

get frightened s'effrayer

from de

front: in front of devant

to **frown** froncer (*nous fronçons*) les sourcils

frozen gelé, -e; (*of food*) congelé, -e

fruit les fruits *m.*; **fruit tree** un arbre fruitier

to **fry an egg** faire un œuf sur le plat;

a fried egg un œuf sur le plat (*pl. œufs* sur le plat)

frying-pan la poêle

full plein, -e; **to write sth. in full** écrire qch. en toutes lettres; **at**

full speed à toute vitesse

fun: to make fun of se moquer de

funeral un enterrement

funny drôle, comique; **a funny** smell une drôle d'odeur

fur la fourrure

furious furieux, -ieuse

furniture les meubles *m.*

future l'avenir *m.*; **in the future** à l'avenir

future (*the tense*) le futur; **future in the past** le futur du passé; **future**

perfect le futur antérieur; **future**

perfect in the past le futur antérieur du passé

G

gaily gaiement

to **gain weight** grossir

to **gallop** galoper

game le jeu, -x; (*sporting event*) le match (*pl. matches*); **a game of**

tennis une partie de tennis

garage le garage

garbage can la poubelle

- garden** le jardin; **vegetable garden** le jardin potager; **garden hose** le tuyau d'arrosage (*pl.* tuyaux d'arrosage)
gardener le jardinier
gardening le jardinage
to **gargle** se gargariser
garlic l'ail *m.*
Garonne (the) la Garonne
gas le gaz
gas(oline) l'essence *f.*
Gaspé (the) la Gaspésie
to **gather** ramasser
gay gai, -e
gears: to change gears changer de vitesse
general le général, -aux
generous généreux, -euse
Geneva Genève *m.*
Genevieve Geneviève
gentle doux, douce; **as gentle as a lamb** doux (douce) comme un agneau
gentleman le monsieur (*pl.* messieurs)
gently doucement
genuine vrai, -e (*before noun*)
geography la géographie
geometrical géométrique
geometry la géométrie
George Georges; (of English kings) George
Georgia la Georgie
Georgian Bay la baie Georgienne
German allemand, -e; **a German** un Allemand, une Allemande;
German (i.e., language) l'allemand *m.*; **German measles** la rubéole
Germany l'Allemagne *f.*
to **get** See *S.T.P. 19*
ghost le fantôme
giant le géant
gift le cadeau, -x
gingerbread le pain d'épice
giraffe la girafe
girl la fille, la jeune fille; **little girl** la petite fille
to **give** donner
to **give away** donner
to **give back** rendre
to **give in (to)** céder (*je cède*) (à)
to **give up (sth.)** renoncer (*nous renonçons*) (à qch.), abandonner (qch.)
glad content, -e; **to be glad (to)** être content(e) (de), se réjouir (de)
to **glance at s.o., at sth.** jeter un coup d'œil à qn, sur qch.
glass le verre
glasses (= eyeglasses) les lunettes *f.*
glitter briller
glove le gant
glue la colle
to **go** aller, se rendre; (*of watch, etc.*) marcher; (= *to leave*) partir; **the school I go to** l'école que je fréquente; **to go and see** aller voir
to **go about it** s'y prendre
to **go away** partir, s'en aller; **to go away again** repartir
to **go back** rentrer, retourner
to **go bad** pourrir
to **go down** descendre; **to go down again** redescendre
to **go for (= to fetch)** aller chercher
to **go home** rentrer
to **go in** entrer (dans); **to go in again** rentrer (dans)
to **go near s.o., sth.** s'approcher de qn, de qch.
to **go on (doing sth.)** continuer (à or de faire qch.)
to **go on (= to happen)** se passer
to **go out** sortir; **to go out again** ressortir; **to go out of one's mind** perdre la raison
to **go out (of light, fire)** s'éteindre
to **go up** monter; **to go up again** remonter; **to go up to bed** monter se coucher
to **go with s.o.** accompagner qn, aller avec qn
goal le but
God Dieu *m.*
gold l'or *m.*; **as good as gold (i.e., well-behaved)** sage comme une image

- goldfish** le poisson rouge
golf le golf
good bon, bonne; **good for nothing** bon(ne) à rien; **good in French** fort(e) en français; **good morning** bonjour; **good afternoon** bonjour; **good evening** bonsoir; **good night** bonsoir, bonne nuit; **for good** (= *for ever*) pour toujours; **it's a good thing that . . .** il est heureux que (*subjunctive*)
good (= *capable*) capable
good (= *decent*) brave (*before noun*)
good (= *upright*): **a good man** un homme de bien
good (= *well-behaved*) sage; **as good as gold** sage comme une image
good (*noun*) le bien; **that will do him good** cela lui fera du bien
good-bye au revoir
goodness la bonté; **Goodness!** Mon Dieu!
good-tempered de bonne humeur
goose une oie
government le gouvernement
grammar la grammaire
grandchild le petit-fils, la petite-fille
grandchildren les petits-enfants *m.*
granddaughter la petite-fille (*pl.* petites-filles)
grandfather le grand-père (*pl.* grands-pères)
grandmother la grand-mère (*pl.* grand-mères)
grandson le petit-fils (*pl.* petits-fils)
to **grant a wish** satisfaire un désir
grapefruit le pamplemousse
grapes le raisin
grass l'herbe *f.*
grasshopper la sauterelle
grateful (to *s.o.* for *sth.*) reconnaissant(e) (à qn de qch.)
gratefully avec reconnaissance
gratitude la reconnaissance
gravy la sauce
great grand, -e; **a great deal** (of) beaucoup (de); **a great many** beaucoup (de)
- Great Britain** la Grande-Bretagne
great-grandfather un arrière-grand-père (*pl.* arrière-grands-pères)
great-grandmother une arrière-grand-mère (*pl.* arrière-grand-mères)
Great Lakes (the) les Grands Lacs *m.*
Greece la Grèce
Greek grec, grecque; **a Greek** un Grec, une Grecque; **Greek** (*i.e.*, *language*) le grec
green (*adj.*) vert, -e; **green beans** les haricots verts *m.*; **green peas** les petits pois *m.*
green (*noun*) le vert
Greenland le Groenland; (*adj.*) groenlandais, -e
Greenlander un Groenlandais, une Groenlandaise
to **greet s.o.** dire bonjour à qn
grey (*adj.*) gris, -e
grey (*noun*) le gris
to **groan** gémir
grocer un épicier
grocery store une épicerie
ground la terre; **on the ground** par terre; **piece of ground** le terrain; **ground floor** le rez-de-chaussée (*invar.*)
group le groupe
to **grow** (*trans.*) cultiver, (*intrans.*) pousser
to **grow up** grandir
grown up (*adj.*) grand, -e
grown-up (*noun*) la grande personne
grudge: to have a grudge against s.o. en vouloir à qn
to **guarantee** garantir
guard: to be on one's guard (against) se méfier (de)
to **guess** deviner
guest un invité, une invitée; **guest of honour** l'invité(e) d'honneur (*pl.* invité(e)s d'honneur)
guide le guide
guilty (of) coupable (de)
gymnasium la salle de gymnastique (*pl.* salles de gymnastique)

H

- habit** une habitude; **to get into the habit (of)** prendre l'habitude (de)
Hague (the) La Haye
to hail grêler
hair les cheveux *m.*
hair-do la coiffure
hairdresser le coiffeur, la coiffeuse
half *See S.T.P. 20*
hall la salle; (= *corridor*) le couloir
Hallowe'en la veille de la Toussaint
ham le jambon
Hamburg Hambourg *m.*
hammer le marteau, -x
hand la main; **to give s.o. a hand** (*i.e., to help*) donner un coup de main à qn
to hand in remettre
handkerchief le mouchoir
handsome beau, bel, belle, beaux, belles
handwriting une écriture
to hang pendre
to hang (up) suspendre; **to hang up (the receiver)** raccrocher (le récepteur)
hangar le hangar
hanger: coat-hanger le cintre
to happen *See S.T.P. 21*
happiness le bonheur
happy (to) heureux (heureuse) (de); **Happy New Year!** Bonne (et heureuse) année!
hard *See S.T.P. 22*
hard to please difficile
hardly ne . . . guère, ne . . . presque pas, à peine; **I can hardly wait to** . . . je suis impatient(e) de . . .
hare le lièvre
to harvest sth. faire la récolte de qch.
to hasten to do sth. se dépêcher de faire qch.
hat le chapeau, -x
to hate (to) détester
hatred la haine
Havana La Havane
to have avoir; **to have to** devoir, falloir; **to have sth. to do** avoir qch. à faire; **to have s.o. do sth., to have sth. done** *See Lesson 33*
Havre (Le) Le Havre
Hawaiian Islands (the) les îles Hawaïi (*or* Hawaï) *f.*
hay le foin
head la tête
headlight le phare
health la santé; **in good health** en bonne santé; **in better health** en meilleure santé; **in poor health** en mauvaise santé
to hear *See S.T.P. 23*
heart le cœur; **by heart** par cœur
heat la chaleur
to heat (*house, water, etc.*) chauffer; (*food that has become cold*) réchauffer
heater: water heater le chauffe-eau (*invar.*)
to heave a sigh pousser un soupir
heavy lourd, -e; (*of traffic, shelling, etc.*) intense; **a heavy cold** un gros rhume; **a heavy rain** une grosse pluie
hedge la haie
height (*of building*) la hauteur; (*of person*) la taille
Helen Hélène
hello bonjour, bonsoir; (*on telephone*) allô
help: to be a great help (to) rendre bien service (à)
to help *See S.T.P. 24*
hen la poule
Henry Henri
her (*adj.*) son, sa, ses
here ici; **in here** ici; **here is, here are** voici
hero le héros
heroine une héroïne
heroism l'héroïsme *m.*
hers *See 13.8, 13.9, 13.10, 13.11*
herself (*with pronominal vb.*) se; **she did it herself** elle l'a fait elle-même; **she did it (all) by herself** elle l'a fait toute seule
to hesitate (to) hésiter (à)
hiccups le hoquet

to **hide** (sth. from s.o.) cacher (qch. à qn)
 to **hide** (*intrans.*) se cacher
high haut, -e; **it is high time** (to) il est grand temps (de)
highway la route
hill (*on road*) la côte
himself (*with pronominal vb.*) se; **he did it himself** il l'a fait lui-même; **he did it (all) by himself** il l'a fait tout seul
 to **hinder** gêner
his (*adj.*) son, sa ses
his (*pron.*) *See* 13.8, 13.9, 13.10, 13.11
history l'histoire *f.*
hit: to make a hit faire sensation
 to **hit sth., s.o.** donner un coup à qch., à qn; frapper qch., qn
hockey le hockey; **hockey stick** la crosse de hockey (*pl.* crosses de hockey)
 to **hold** tenir
 to **hold out** (= *to resist*) tenir
hole le trou, -s; **socks with holes in them** des chaussettes trouées
holiday *See* S.T.P. 25
Holland la Hollande
hollow creux, creuse
home: at home à la maison, chez moi (toi, *etc.*); **to bring home** ramener, rapporter (*See* S.T.P. 9); **to come (or get or go or return) home** rentrer
homework le devoir, les devoirs; **French homework** un devoir de français
honest honnête
honey le miel
honour un honneur
hope l'espoir *m.*
 to **hope (to)** espérer (*j'espère*); **I only hope it doesn't rain!** Pourvu qu'il ne pleuve pas!
horror l'horreur *f.*
horse le cheval, -aux
horseback: on horseback à cheval
hose: garden hose le tuyau d'arrosage (*pl.* tuyaux d'arrosage)
hospital un hôpital, -aux

host un hôte
hostess une hôtesse
hot *See* S.T.P. 26
hotel un hôtel
hour une heure; **half an hour** une demi-heure (*pl.* demi-heures)
house la maison
housework le ménage
how *See* S.T.P. 27
however cependant, pourtant; **however rich he may be** quelque (or si) riche qu'il soit
 to **howl** hurler
huge énorme
Hungarian hongrois, -e; **a Hungarian** un Hongrois, une Hongroise; **Hungarian** (*i.e., language*) le hongrois
Hungary la Hongrie
hunger la faim
hungry: to be (or feel) hungry avoir faim; **to be as hungry as a wolf** avoir une faim de loup; **to make s.o. hungry, to make s.o. feel hungry** donner faim à qn
hunting la chasse; **to go hunting** aller à la chasse
hurry: to be in a hurry (to) être pressé(e) (de)
 to **hurry (to do sth.), to hurry (and do sth.)** se dépêcher (de faire qch.); **to hurry home** se dépêcher de rentrer
 to **hurt** (s.o.) faire mal (à qn), blesser (qn)
husband le mari
hydrogen l'hydrogène *m.*; **hydrogen bomb** la bombe à hydrogène (*pl.* bombes à hydrogène)
hyphen le trait d'union (*pl.* traits d'union)

I

ice la glace; **as cold as ice** glacé, -e
iceberg un iceberg
ice cream la glace
Iceland l'Islande *f.*

Icelander (an) un Islandais, une Islandaise
Icelandic islandais, -e; **Icelandic** (*i.e.*, *language*) l'islandais *m.*
icy glacial, -e (*m.pl.* glacials)
Idaho l'Idaho *m.*
idea une idée
idiom un idiotisme
if si; **if I were you** à votre place; **if it were not for . . .**, **if it had not been for . . .** sans . . .; **If only it doesn't rain!** Pourvu qu'il ne pleuve pas!
ill malade; **to look ill** avoir mauvaise mine, avoir l'air malade
Illinois l'Illinois *m.*
illness la maladie
ill-tempered de mauvaise humeur
to imagine imaginer, s'imaginer
immediately tout de suite
immense immense
immensely immensément
immigrant un immigrant, une immigrante
impatient (to do sth.) impatient(e) (de faire qch.); **to become (or get) impatient (with s.o., with sth.)** s'impatiser (contre qn, de qch.)
impatiently impatiemment
imperative impératif, -ive
imperfect imparfait, -e
to import importer
important important, -e
impossible impossible
to improve perfectionner
in (an hour, etc.) *See S.T.P. 28*
inaccurate inexact, -e
inadequate insuffisant, -e
incapable (of) incapable (de)
incident un incident
incredible incroyable
incredibly incroyablement
indefinite indéfini, -e
indefinitely indéfiniment
independent indépendant, -e
India l'Inde *f.*
Indian indien, -ienne; **an Indian** un Indien, une Indienne

Indiana l'Indiana *m.*
Indian Ocean (the) l'océan Indien *m.*
indicative l'indicatif *m.*
indigestion une indigestion; **to get indigestion** avoir une indigestion
individual un individu
indoors dans la maison
to induce s.o. to do sth. décider qn à faire qch.
industry une industrie
inevitable inévitable
inferior (to) inférieur(e) (à)
infested (with) infesté(e) (de)
to inform s.o. of sth. faire part à qn de qch.
information le renseignement, les renseignements
inhabitant un habitant
to injure one's health s'abîmer la santé
ink l'encre *f.*
to inoculate vacciner
insane fou, folle
insect un insecte
to insist on sth. insister sur qch.; **to insist on doing sth.** vouloir absolument faire qch.; **to insist that s.o. do sth.** exiger (*nous exigeons*) que qn fasse qch., vouloir absolument que qn fasse qch., insister pour que qn fasse qch.
to install installer
instead of au lieu de
instruction une instruction
intelligence l'intelligence *f.*
intelligent intelligent, -e
to intend to do sth. penser faire qch., avoir l'intention de faire qch.
intense intense
intensely intensément
intention une intention
interest un intérêt
to interest intéresser; **to be or become interested in** s'intéresser à
interesting intéressant, -e
international international, -e (-aux)
interpret l'interprète *m.f.*

to **interrupt** interrompre
 to **introduce** présenter
 to **invent** inventer
 inventor un inventeur
 invitation une invitation
 to **invite s.o. (to do sth.)** inviter qn
 (à faire qch.); to **invite s.o. to
 dinner** inviter qn à dîner
Iowa l'Iowa *m.*
Iran l'Iran *m.*
Iranian iranien, -ienne; **an Iranian**
 un Iranien, une Iranienne
Iraq l'Irak *m.*
Iraqi irakien, -ienne; **an Iraqi** un
 Irakien, une Irakienne
Ireland l'Irlande *f.*
Irene Irène
Irish irlandais, -e; **an Irishman** un
 Irlandais; **an Irishwoman** une
 Irlandaise
iron le fer; (*for ironing*) le fer (à
 repasser)
 to **iron** repasser
irony l'ironie *f.*
irregular irrégulier, -ière
irritable: to become irritable
 s'énervier
Isabel Isabelle
island une île
Israel Israël *m.*
Israeli israélien, -ienne; **an Israeli**
 un Israélien, une Israélienne
Italian italien, -ienne; **an Italian**
 un Italien, une Italienne; **Italian**
 (*i.e., language*) l'italien *m.*
italic italique; **in italics** en itali-
 que(s)
Italy l'Italie *f.*
item of information le renseigne-
 ment
its son, sa ses

J

jacket le veston; (*woman's*) la ja-
 quette
jail la prison; **in jail** en prison

jam la confiture
Jamaica la Jamaïque
James Jacques
Jane Jeanne
January janvier *m.*
Japan le Japon
Japanese japonais, -e; **a Japanese**
 man un Japonais; **a Japanese**
 woman une Japonaise; **Japanese**
 (*i.e., language*) le japonais
jar le pot
Javanese javanais, -e; **a Javanese**
 man un Javanais; **a Javanese**
 woman une Javanaise
jealous jaloux, -ouse
Jean Jeanne
Jerusalem Jérusalem *m.*
Jesus Christ Jésus-Christ
Jew le Juif
jewelry les bijoux *m.*; **jewelry store**
 la bijouterie
Jewess la Juive
Jewish juif, juive
Joan Jeanne
job la situation; **a job as (a) sales-**
 man un poste de vendeur; **to**
 make a good job of sth. réussir
 qch.
John Jean
 to **join** joindre; **to join s.o.** rejoindre qn
Josephine Joséphine
journalist journaliste *m.f.*
joy la joie
joyful joyeux, -euse
joyfully joyeusement, avec joie
jug la cruche
juice le jus
Julia Julie
Julius Caesar Jules César
July juillet *m.*
 to **jump** sauter; **to jump again** res-
 sauter
June juin *m.*
just (*adj.*) juste
just (*adv.*): **just in time (for, to)**
 juste à temps (pour); **Just a**
 moment! Attends!, Attendez!; **he**
 has just left il vient de partir;
 to like one thing just as well as

another aimer autant une chose qu'une autre; **to be just about to** être sur le point de; **just as I was leaving** au moment même où je partais
justice la justice; **to do justice to** (a meal, etc.) faire honneur à (un repas, etc.)

K

Kansas le Kansas
keen vif, vive
to keep garder; **to keep a promise** tenir une promesse; **to keep s.o. company** tenir compagnie à qn; **to keep s.o. from doing sth.** empêcher qn de faire qch.; **to keep s.o. awake** empêcher qn de dormir; **not to be able to keep (oneself) from doing sth.** ne pas pouvoir s'empêcher de faire qch.; **to keep quiet** se taire
to keep (on) doing sth. continuer à (or de) faire qch.
Kentucky le Kentucky
kettle la bouilloire
key la clef, la clé
to kill tuer
kilo le kilo
kind le genre, la sorte
kind aimable; **to be so kind as to** avoir l'obligeance de
kindly: Kindly be seated Veuillez vous asseoir
king le roi
kitchen la cuisine
knee le genou, -x
kneeling à genoux
knife le couteau, -x
to knit tricoter
to knock down renverser
to knock over faire tomber
knot le nœud; **to tie a knot** faire un nœud
to know See S.T.P. 29
to know how (to do sth.) savoir (faire

qch.); **Do you know how he did it?** Savez-vous comment il l'a fait?

Korea la Corée

Korean coréen, coréenne; **a Korean** un Coréen, une Coréenne; **Korean** (i.e., language) le coréen

L

lack le manque; **for lack of** faute de
ladder une échelle
lady la dame; **young lady** la demoiselle
lake le lac; **the Great Lakes** les Grands Lacs; **Lake Superior** le lac Supérieur; **Lake Michigan** le lac Michigan; **Lake Huron** le lac Huron; **Lake Erie** le lac Érié; **Lake Ontario** le lac Ontario
lamb un agneau, -x; **(roast) leg of lamb** le gigot
to land (of plane) atterrir; (= to disembark) débarquer
landlady la propriétaire
landlord le propriétaire
landscape le paysage
language la langue
lap les genoux m.
large grand, -e
last dernier, -ière (For position, see 15.10); **at last** enfin
to last durer
late See S.T.P. 30
Latin le latin
latter: the latter celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci
Latvia la Lettonie
to laugh (at) rire (de)
law la loi; (as subject of study) le droit
lawn la pelouse
lawn-mower la tondeuse
lawyer un avocat
to lay (eggs) pondre
laziness la paresse
lazy paresseux, -euse
lead le plomb

- to **lead** mener (*je mène*), conduire; (*of life*) mener
leaf la feuille
to **lean** sth. (*against* sth.) appuyer (*j'appuie*) qch. (contre qch.); to **lean** (*intrans.*) **on**, **against** s'appuyer sur, contre; to **lean over**, **towards** se pencher sur, vers
leaning appuyé, -e, penché, -e;
the leaning tower la tour penchée
to **learn** (to) apprendre (à)
least (*adj.*) moindre; (*adv.*) le moins
leather le cuir
to **leave** *See S.T.P. 31*
left *See S.T.P. 32*
left-handed gaucher, -ère
leg la jambe; (*of small animal, insect*) la patte; (*of table, chair*) le pied; (*roast*) **leg of lamb** le gigot
legible lisible
lemon le citron
lemonade la citronnade
to **lend** prêter
length la longueur; to **write at greater length** écrire plus longuement
Leonardo da Vinci Léonard de Vinci
less moins (de); **The less . . . the less . . .** Moins . . . moins . . .
lesson la leçon; to **be a lesson** to servir de leçon à
let (*auxiliary vb.*) *See 32.23*
to **let s.o. do sth.** laisser qn faire qch.; to **let s.o. know sth.** faire savoir qch. à qn
to **let go** (*of s.o., of sth.*) lâcher (qn, qch.)
to **let off** (*fireworks*) tirer
Lett letton, lettonne; **a Lett** un Letton, une Lettonne
letter la lettre
Lettish le letton
lettuce la laitue
liaison la liaison
library la bibliothèque
lid le couvercle
lie le mensonge
to **lie** mentir
to **lie down** se coucher; (= *to rest*) s'allonger (*nous nous allongeons*), s'étendre
life la vie
to **lift** soulever (*je soulève*)
light la lumière; (= *traffic light*) le feu, -x; **traffic lights** les feux de circulation
light léger, -ère; (*of colour*) clair, -e; **it is light** (*of day*) il fait clair
to **light** allumer
light bulb une ampoule
to **lighten**: **it is lightening** il fait des éclairs, il y a des éclairs
lightning les éclairs *m.*; **there is lightning** il fait des éclairs, il y a des éclairs
like comme; to **be like s.o., sth.** ressembler à qn, à qch.; to **feel like doing sth.** avoir envie de faire qch.; **a thing like that** une chose pareille; **things have been like that for a year** les choses en sont là depuis un an; **What is . . . like?** Comment est . . . ?
to **like** *See S.T.P. 33*
likely probable; **not (very) likely** peu probable
lilac le lilas
limit la limite
to **limp** boiter
line la ligne
to **line up** faire la queue
lipstick le rouge à lèvres
liquid (*adj.*) liquide
liquid (*noun*) le liquide
Lisbon Lisbonne *m.*
list la liste
to **listen** (to) écouter
literature la littérature
Lithuania la Lituanie
Lithuanian lituanien, -ienne; **a Lithuanian** un Lituanien, une Lituanienne; **Lithuanian** (*i.e., language*) le lituanien
little *See S.T.P. 34*
to **live** vivre; **Long live . . . !** Vive(nt) . . . !

to **live** (= *to dwell*) habiter; **to live in an apartment** habiter un appartement
lively vif, vive
living la vie
living-room le salon
loaf (of bread) le pain
to **loathe** (sth., **doing sth.**) avoir horreur (de qch., de faire qch.)
lobster le homard
lock la serrure
to **lock** fermer à clef
locust la sauterelle
Loire (the) la Loire
London Londres *m.*
long *See S.T.P. 35*
longer: no longer ne . . . plus
to **look** *See S.T.P. 36*
to **look at s.o., at sth.** regarder qn, qch.
to **look for s.o., for sth.** chercher qn, qch.
to **look forward to doing sth.** se réjouir de faire qch.
to **lose** perdre; **to lose one's way** se perdre, s'égarer; **to get lost** se perdre, s'égarer
lot: a lot (of), lots (of) beaucoup de; **quite a lot (of)** pas mal (de); **What a lot of . . .!** Que de . . .!
loud (adj.): a loud noise un grand bruit; **a loud voice** une voix forte
loud (adv.) fort
loudly fort
loud-speaker le haut-parleur (*pl.* haut-parleurs)
Louisiana la Louisiane
to **love (doing sth.)** adorer (faire qch.)
lovely beau, bel, belle, beaux, belles
low bas, basse
lower inférieur, -e
luck la chance; **to bring (good) luck (to s.o.)** porter bonheur (à qn); **to bring bad luck (to s.o.)** porter malheur (à qn); **to try one's luck** tenter sa chance
lucky: to be lucky (to) avoir de la chance (de); **it's lucky that . . .** il est heureux que (*subjunctive*)

lump (of sugar) le morceau, -x
lunch le déjeuner; (*light refreshments*) le goûter; **to be at lunch** être à table; **to have lunch** déjeuner; **I don't want any lunch** je ne veux pas déjeuner
Luxemburg le Luxembourg
luxury le luxe
Lyons Lyon *m.*

M

Madagascan malgache; **a Madagascan** un Malgache, une Malgache
madam madame
Madeline Madeleine
magazine le magazine
mahogany l'acajou *m.*
mail le courrier
main feature le grand film
Maine le Maine
make (of car, etc.) la marque
to **make** *See S.T.P. 37*
make-up le maquillage; **to use make-up** se maquiller
mailbox la boîte aux lettres
Malta Malte *f.*
man un homme
to **manage sth.** diriger (*nous dirigeons*) qch.; **to manage to do sth. (i.e., to succeed)** arriver à faire qch.; **to manage to do sth. (i.e., to arrange things so as to)** s'arranger pour faire qch.
manager le gérant
Manitoba le Manitoba
many *See S.T.P. 38*
map la carte
maple (tree) un érable; **maple sugar** le sucre d'érable
March mars *m.*
Margaret Marguerite
Marian Marianne
mark (= point) le point; (*total for examination*) la note
market le marché
marriage le mariage; **marriage blessing** la bénédiction nuptiale
to **marry** *See S.T.P. 39*

- Marseilles** Marseille *m.*
Martha Marthe
Martinique la Martinique
marvellous merveilleux, -euse
marvellously merveilleusement, à merveille
Mary Marie
Maryland le Maryland
mashed potatoes la purée de pommes de terre
Massachusetts le Massachusetts
master le maître
match une allumette
material (= *cloth*) le tissu; **raw material** la matière/première
mathematics les mathématiques *f.*;
in mathematics en mathématiques
matriculation le baccalauréat
matter: **What's the matter with him?** Qu'est-ce qu'il a? **it's a matter of** il s'agit de; **no matter how (hard) I try** j'ai beau essayer
to matter: **that doesn't matter** cela ne fait rien
mattress le matelas
may *See S.T.P. 40*
May mai *m.*
maybe peut-être
mayor le maire; **deputy mayor** un adjoint
meal le repas; **to eat a meal** prendre un repas
to mean vouloir dire, signifier; **What does that mean?** Qu'est-ce que cela veut dire (*or* signifie)? **What do you mean?** Qu'est-ce que vous voulez dire?
to mean to avoir l'intention de
measles la rougeole; **German measles** la rubéole
meat la viande
mechanic le mécanicien
medicine (*the science*) la médecine; (= *remedy*) le médicament; **to study medicine** faire sa médecine
Mediterranean (the) la Méditerranée
meek: **as meek as a lamb** doux (douce) comme un agneau
to meet *See S.T.P. 41*
meeting la réunion
melon le melon
to melt fondre
memory (*the faculty*) la mémoire; (*the thing remembered*) le souvenir
to mend raccommoder
mending le raccommodage
to mention s.o., sth. parler de qn, de qch.; **Don't mention it** (*in answer to thanks*) Il n'y a pas de quoi
menu le menu
mercury le mercure
merely simplement; **he merely smiled** il s'est contenté de sourire
merry joyeux, -euse; **the more the merrier** plus on est de fous, plus on rit
metal le métal, -aux
method la méthode
metre le mètre
Mexican mexicain, -e; **a Mexican** un Mexicain, une Mexicaine
Mexico le Mexique
Mexico City Mexico *m.*
Michael Michel
Michigan le Michigan
middle le milieu, -x; **in the middle of the night** en pleine nuit; **in the middle of (the) summer** en plein été; **in the middle of (the) winter** en plein hiver
midnight minuit *m.*
might *See S.T.P. 42*
mild doux, douce; **it** (*i.e., the weather*) **is mild** il fait doux
mile le mille; **to do fifty (miles an hour)** faire du cinquante (à l'heure)
milk le lait
to milk traire
milkman le laitier
million un million (de)
millionaire le millionnaire
minced steak le hachis
mind: **to change one's mind** changer d'avis; **to make up one's mind (to)** se décider (à)
to mind *See S.T.P. 43*

- mine** (*noun*) la mine
mine (*pron.*) See 13.8, 13.9, 13.10, 13.11
minister (*in church*) le pasteur; (*in government*) le ministre
mink le vison
Minnesota le Minnesota
minute la minute; **a few minutes ago, in a few minutes** tout à l'heure
miracle le miracle
mirror la glace
misinformed mal renseigné(e)
to **mislay** égarer
to **miss** See S.T.P. 44
Miss mademoiselle, Mademoiselle, Mlle
Mississippi (*the state*) le Mississippi
Mississippi (*the*) le Mississip(p)i
Missouri le Missouri
mistake la faute, une erreur; **mistake in pronunciation** la faute de prononciation; **by mistake** par erreur
mistaken: to be mistaken se tromper
mistrust la méfiance
to **mistrust sth., s.o.** se méfier de qch., de qn
mistrustful: to be mistrustful (of) se méfier (de)
to **mix** mélanger (*nous mélangeons*)
mixture le mélange
moist humide
moisture l'humidité *f.*
moment le moment; **Just a moment!** Attends!, Attendez!
Monday le lundi
money l'argent *m.*
Monica Monique
monotonous monotone
Montana le Montana
month le mois
Montreal Montréal *m.*
mood: in a good mood de bonne humeur
moon la lune
moonlight: it is moonlight il fait clair de lune
more See S.T.P. 45
morning See S.T.P. 46
Moroccan marocain, -e; **a Moroccan** un Marocain, une Marocaine
Morocco le Maroc
mortal mortel, -elle; **in mortal danger** en danger de mort
Moscow Moscou *m.*
mosquito le moustique; **mosquito bite** la piqûre de moustique (*pl.* piqûres de moustique)
most See S.T.P. 47
moth la mite
mother la mère, maman
mother-in-law la belle-mère (*pl.* belles-mères)
to **motion to s.o. to do sth.** faire signe à qn de faire qch.
motorcycle la motocyclette; **by motorcycle** à (*or en*) motocyclette
mountain la montagne; **mountain air** l'air de la montagne
Mount Etna le mont Etna
Mount Everest le mont Everest
mouse la souris
moustache la moustache
mouth la bouche
to **move** bouger (*nous bougeons*); (*to another house*) déménager (*nous déménageons*)
to **move in** emménager (*nous emménageons*)
to **move out** déménager (*nous déménageons*)
to **mow** tondre
Mr. monsieur, Monsieur, M.
Mrs. madame, Madame, Mme
much See S.T.P. 48
mud la boue
muddy boueux, -euse
mumps les oreillons *m.*
to **murder** assassiner
murderer un assassin
museum le musée
mushroom le champignon
music la musique
musician le musicien, la musicienne
must devoir, falloir; **one must not** il ne faut pas

mustard la moutarde
my mon, ma, mes
myself (*with pronominal vb.*) me; **I did it myself** je l'ai fait moi-même; **I did it (all) by myself** je l'ai fait tout seul (toute seule)

N

nail le clou, -s; (*of finger, toe*) un ongle
 to **nail** clouer
nail-file la lime à ongles
name le nom; **first name** le prénom, le petit nom; **surname** le nom de famille (*pl.* noms de famille); **What is the name of . . . ?** Comment s'appelle(nt) . . . ? Quel est le nom de . . . ?
 to **name** nommer
nap: afternoon nap la sieste
napkin la serviette; **table-napkin** la serviette
Napoleon Napoléon
narrow étroit, -e
nasal nasal, -e (-aux)
nasty méchant, -e, vilain, -e
nation la nation
national national, -e (-aux)
nationality la nationalité
natural naturel, -elle
nature la nature
naval naval, -e (*m.pl.* navals)
navigator le navigateur
navy la marine
navy blue bleu marine (*invar.*)
near près de; **to come (or go) near (s.o., sth.)** s'approcher (de qn, de qch.)
nearly presque; **I (very) nearly fell** j'ai failli tomber; **I have (very) nearly finished** j'ai presque fini
Nebraska le Nebraska
necessary nécessaire; **it is necessary** to il faut, il est nécessaire de; **it is not necessary to** il n'est pas nécessaire de
neck le cou, -s

necklace le collier
 to **need (s.o., sth., to do sth.)** avoir besoin (de qn, de qch., de faire qch.)
needle une aiguille
negative négatif, -ive
 to **neglect (to)** négliger (*nous négligeons*) (de)
neighbour le voisin, la voisine
neither . . . nor ne . . . ni . . . ni;
neither am I, neither can I, etc. (ni) moi non plus
nephew le neveu, -x
nerves: to get on s.o.'s nerves énerver qn
nest le nid
Netherlands (the) les Pays-Bas *m.*
Nevada le Nevada
never ne . . . jamais
new See *S.T.P. 49*
New Brunswick le Nouveau-Brunswick
New England la Nouvelle-Angleterre
Newfoundland Terre-Neuve *f.*
New Hampshire le New Hampshire
New Jersey le New Jersey
New Mexico le Nouveau-Mexique
New Orleans La Nouvelle-Orléans
news la nouvelle, les nouvelles
newspaper le journal, -aux
New Year's Day le jour de l'an
New York (State) l'État de New York *m.*
New Zealand la Nouvelle-Zélande; (*adj.*) néo-zélandais, -e
New Zealander (a) un Néo-Zélandais, une Néo-Zélandaise
next See *S.T.P. 50*
nice (of person) gentil, -ille; **a nice lunch** un bon déjeuner; **a nice evening** une bonne soirée, une soirée agréable; **a nice garden** un joli jardin; **a nice letter** une gentille lettre
nicely bien, gentiment
niece la nièce
Nicholas Nicolas

Night *See S.T.P. 51*

nile (the) le Nil

no (*adj.*) *See 17.3*; **no more** ne . . . plus

nobody ne . . . personne

noise le bruit

noisy bruyant, -e

none: **none of the boys** aucun des garçons; **there is (or are) none** il n'y en a pas; **there is (or are) none left** il n'en reste plus

nonsense: **to talk nonsense** dire des bêtises

noon midi *m.*

no one ne . . . personne

nor ni; **nor am I, nor can I, etc.** (ni) moi non plus

north (*noun*) le nord; **north of** au nord de

north (*adj.*) nord (*invar.*); **north wind** le vent du nord

North Africa l'Afrique du Nord *f.*

North America l'Amérique du Nord *f.*

North Carolina la Caroline du Nord

North Dakota le Dakota du Nord

Northern Canada, Northern Italy, etc. le nord du Canada, le nord de l'Italie, *etc.*

Norway la Norvège

Norwegian norvégien, -ienne; **a Norwegian** un Norvégien, une Norvégienne; **Norwegian** (*i.e., language*) le norvégien

nose le nez

notebook le cahier

note-paper le papier à lettres

nothing ne . . . rien; **nothing but . . .** ne . . . que . . .

to notice s.o. remarquer qn; **to notice sth.** remarquer qch., s'apercevoir de qch.

nourishing nourrissant, -e

Nova Scotia la Nouvelle-Écosse

novel le roman

November novembre *m.*

now maintenant; **now that . . .** maintenant que . . .; **right now** tout de suite

nowhere ne . . . nulle part; **nowhere else** ne . . . nulle part ailleurs

nuisance: **What a nuisance (to . . .)** ! Quel ennui (de . . .) !

number *See S.T.P. 52*

nurse une infirmière

nylon le nylon

O

oak (tree) le chêne

oats l'avoine *f.*

to obey (s.o.) obéir (à qn)

to oblige s.o. to do sth. obliger (*nous obligeons*) qn à faire qch.

obscure obscur, -e

obstacle un obstacle

obvious évident, -e

obviously évidemment

occupation le métier, la profession

to occupy occuper

o'clock: **one o'clock** une heure; **two**

o'clock deux heures; **twelve**

o'clock midi, minuit

October octobre *m.*

odd bizarre

off: **to have a day off** avoir congé;

to take sth. off sth. *See S.T.P. 85b*

to offer (to do sth.) offrir (de faire qch.)

office le bureau, -x

officer un officier

often souvent; **how often** *See S.T.P. 27b*

Ohio l'Ohio *m.*

oil l'huile *f.*

Oklahoma l'Oklahoma *m.*

old *See S.T.P. 53*

old-fashioned (of thing) démodé, -e; (*of person*) vieux jeu (*invar.*)

olive une olive

Olympic Games (the) les Jeux Olympiques *m.*

omelette une omelette

on sur; (*of light*) allumé, -e; **on the street** dans la rue; **on the train (streetcar, plane, bus)** dans le train (le tram, l'avion, l'autobus, l'autocar); **on the highway** sur la

- route; **on the boat** sur le bateau; **on the other side** de l'autre côté; **on the radio (television, the telephone)** à la radio (à la télévision, au téléphone); **on my trip** pendant mon voyage; **on arriving** en arrivant; **to be on a team** faire partie d'une équipe; **to live on (vegetables, etc.)** vivre de (légumes, etc.)
- once** une fois; **at once** tout de suite
- one** un, une; **the blue one** le bleu, la bleue; **the one who** *See* 11.6, 11.7, 11.8
- one another: they need one another** ils ont besoin les uns des autres, elles ont besoin les unes des autres; (*For one another with pronominal vbs., see* 23.4, 23.5, 23.8)
- oneself (with pronominal vb.)** se; **one can do it oneself** on peut le faire soi-même; **(all) by oneself** tout seul
- onion** un oignon
- only** *See* S.T.P. 54
- Ontario** l'Ontario *m.*
- open** ouvert, -e; **in the open (air)** en plein air; **on the open sea** en pleine mer
- to open** ouvrir
- to operate (of surgeon)** opérer (*j'opère*); (*of machine*) fonctionner; (*of factory*) tourner
- operation** une opération
- opinion** une opinion; **in my opinion** à mon avis; **to change one's opinion** changer d'opinion
- opportunity** une occasion
- to oppose s.o., sth.** s'opposer à qn, à qch.
- opposite (adj.)** contraire
- opposite (prep.)** en face de
- or** ou; **without . . . or** sans . . . ni
- orange** une orange
- orchestra** un orchestre
- order** un ordre; (*for purchase of sth.*) la commande; **to give the orders** (= *to be in command*) commander; **in order** en ordre; **out of order** (*of telephone*) en dérangement; **in order to** pour, afin de; **in order that** pour que (*subjunctive*), afin que (*subjunctive*), de sorte que (*subjunctive*)
- to order (a meal, etc.)** commander
- to order (s.o. to do sth.)** ordonner (à qn de faire qch.)
- ordinary** ordinaire
- Oregon** l'Orégon *m.*
- to organize** organiser
- original** original, -e (-aux); premier, -ière (*after noun*)
- orphan** un orphelin, une orpheline
- other** autre
- otherwise** autrement
- ought: you ought to do it** vous devriez le faire; **you ought to have done it** vous auriez dû le faire; **You ought to** (= *I wish you could*) **see him!** Il faut le voir! **You ought to have** (= *I wish you could have*) **seen him!** Il fallait le voir!
- our** notre, nos
- ours** *See* 13.8, 13.9, 13.10, 13.11
- ourselves (with pronominal vb.)** nous
- we did it ourselves** nous l'avons fait nous-mêmes; **we did it (all) by ourselves** nous l'avons fait tout seuls (toutes seules)
- out (= absent)** sorti, -e; **out of the window** par la fenêtre; **to dine out** dîner en ville
- out of** *See* S.T.P. 85
- out(side)** dehors
- oven** le four
- over (= finished)** fini, -e, terminé, -e; **over there** là-bas; **to think it over** y réfléchir; **it (i.e., the temperature) is over eighty** il y a plus de quatre-vingts; **he is over eighty** il a plus de quatre-vingts ans; **before (the) winter is over** avant la fin de l'hiver; **to get over (a cold, etc.)** se remettre (d'un rhume, etc.); **I can't get over it (i.e., my surprise)!** Je n'en reviens pas!; **to fall asleep over one's work** s'endormir sur son travail

overcoat le pardessus
 to **overcome** (*obstacles*) vaincre, sur-
 monter
 to **overeat** trop manger
overnight du jour au lendemain
 to **overwork** (*trans.*) surmener (*je sur-
 mène*), (*intrans.*) se surmener
 to **owe** (*sth. to s.o.*) devoir (qch. à qn)
own propre (*before noun*); **I make my
 own dresses** je fais mes robes moi-
 même
 to **own** posséder (*je possède*)
oxygen l'oxygène *m.*
oyster une huître

P

Pacific (the) le Pacifique
 to **pack** (*trunk, etc.*) faire
package le paquet
paddle la pagaie
 to **paddle** payer (*je paye, je paie*)
page la page
pain la douleur; **to have a pain**
 (*in*) avoir mal (à)
paint la peinture
 to **paint** peindre; **to paint a house**
white peindre une maison en
 blanc
painter le peintre
pair la paire; **a pair of trousers** un
 pantalon
Pakistan le Pakistan
Pakistani pakistanais, -e; **a**
Pakistani un Pakistanais,
 une Pakistanaise
pale pâle; **pale with fear** pâle de
 peur
pancake la crêpe
paper le papier; (= *newspaper*) le
 journal, -aux
parade le défilé
paragraph le paragraphe; "**new
 paragraph**" (*in dictation*) « à la
 ligne »
Paraguay le Paraguay
Paraguyan paraguayen, -enne; **a**
Paraguyan un Paraguayen, une
 Paraguayenne

parcel le colis, le paquet
pardon le pardon; **to beg s.o.'s
 pardon** demander pardon à qn
parents les parents *m.*
Parisian parisien, -ienne; **a Paris-
 ian** un Parisien, une Parisienne
park le parc
 to **park** stationner
part la partie; **to be part (of)** faire
 partie (de)
participle le participe
party la soirée
 to **pass** passer; **to pass again** repasser;
to pass (*on an examination*) être
 reçu(e); **to pass on a hill** doubler
 dans une côte; **to pass the time**
doing sth. s'amuser à faire qch.
passenger (*on train, streetcar, bus*) le
 voyageur; (*on boat, on plane, in car*)
 le passager
passive passif, -ive
passport le passeport
past passé, -e; **past historic** le passé
 simple; **past perfect** le plus-que-
 parfait; **second past perfect** le
 passé antérieur
pastry la pâtisserie
patience la patience; **to lose pa-
 tience** perdre patience
patient (*i.e., sick person*) malade *m.f.*;
 (*when not sick*) le client, la cliente
patient (*adj.*) patient, -e
patiently patiemment, avec pa-
 tience
patron saint le patron, la patronne
 to **pay** payer (*je paye, je paie*); **to pay**
s.o. payer qn; **to pay for sth.**
 payer qch.; **to pay s.o. for sth.**
 payer qch. à qn; **to pay s.o. to do**
sth. payer qn pour faire qch.;
to pay attention (to) faire at-
 tention (à)
peace la paix; **at peace** en paix
peaceful tranquille
peacefully tranquillement
peach la pêche; **peach tree** le
 pêcher
peak le sommet
peanut la cacahuète

pear la poire; **pear tree** le poirier
pearl la perle
peas les pois *m.*; **green peas** les petits pois
to **peel** peler (*je pèle*)
Peking, Peiping Pékin *m.*
pen (= *fountain pen, ball-point pen*) le stylo
pencil le crayon
pen-knife le canif
Pennsylvania la Pennsylvanie
pentagon le pentagone
people *See S.T.P. 55*
pepper le poivre
to **perceive** s.o. apercevoir qn; **to perceive sth.** s'apercevoir de qch.; **to perceive that . . .** s'apercevoir que . . .
perfect parfait, -e, idéal, -e (-aux)
perfectly parfaitement
perfidious Albion la perfide Albion
to **perform** jouer
perfume le parfum
perhaps peut-être
period le point
permanent (= *permanent wave*) la permanente; **to have** (*i.e., to get*) **a permanent** se faire faire une permanente
permission (to do sth.) la permission (de faire qch.)
to **permit (s.o. to do sth.)** permettre (à qn de faire qch.)
Persia la Perse
Persian perse; **a Persian** un Perse, une Perse
Persian rug le tapis de Perse
to **persist (in doing sth.)** persister (à faire qch.)
personal personnel, -elle
to **persuade** s.o. persuade qn; **to persuade s.o. to do sth.** décider qn à faire qch., persuader à qn de faire qch.
Peru le Pérou
Peruvian péruvien, -ienne; **a Peruvian** un Péruvien, une Péruvienne
pet (animal) un animal familier (*pl. animaux familiers*)

Peter Pierre
Philip Philippe
Philippine philippin, -e
Philippines les Philippines *f.*
photogenic photogénique
to **photograph** photographier
photographer le photographe
physics la physique
piano le piano
to **pick** cueillir
to **pick out** (= *to choose*) choisir
to **pick up** ramasser; **to pick up the receiver** décrocher (le récepteur)
picnic le pique-nique (*pl. pique-niques*); **to have a picnic** faire un pique-nique
picture le tableau, -x; (*in book*) une image; (= *photograph*) la photo-graphie; (= *drawing*) le dessin; (= *movie*) le film; **to have one's picture taken** se faire photographier
picture-book le livre d'images
pie la tarte; **apple pie** la tarte aux pommes
piece *See S.T.P. 56*
pig le cochon
pigeon le pigeon
pile la pile
pill la pilule
pillow un oreiller
pilot le pilote
pin une épingle
pine (tree) le pin
pineapple un ananas
pink (*adj.*) rose
pink (*noun*) le rose
pip le pépin
Pisa Pise *m.*
pit (*in fruit*) le noyau, -x
pitcher (= *jug*) la cruche
pity la pitié; **to have pity** (on s.o.) avoir pitié (de qn); **to arouse** (s.o.'s) **pity**, **to arouse pity** (in s.o.) faire pitié (à qn); **it's a pity** (to) c'est dommage (de); **it's a pity that . . .** c'est dommage que (*subjunctive*)
to **pity** s.o. avoir pitié de qn, plaindre

- qn; **he is to be pitied** il est à plaindre
place un endroit; (= *position*) la place; **in place** en place; **to take place** avoir lieu
to **place** placer (*nous plaçons*)
plain la plaine
plan le projet
to **plan** to penser, compter
plane un avion; **on the plane** dans l'avion; **to travel by plane** voyager en (*or par*) avion; **to send s.o., sth. by plane** envoyer qn, qch. par avion
plank la planche
plant la plante
to **plant** planter
plasticine la pâte à modeler
plate une assiette
play le jeu; (= *drama*) la pièce
to **play** See *S.T.P.* 57
player le joueur
pleasant agréable; **a pleasant smile** un sourire aimable
pleasantly agréablement; **to speak, to smile, pleasantly** parler, sourire, aimablement
please s'il te plaît, s'il vous plaît
to **please s.o.** plaire à qn, faire plaisir à qn; **hard to please** difficile
pleased (with, to) content(e) (de)
pleasure le plaisir; **with pleasure** avec plaisir
plenty (of) bien (du, de la, de l', des)
to **plough** labourer
plum la prune; **plum tree** le prunier
plumber le plombier
plural le pluriel
to **poach** pocher
pocket-knife le couteau de poche (*pl.* couteaux de poche)
poem le poème
poet le poète
point le point; (*of knife, etc.*) la pointe; **point of view** le point de vue (*pl.* points de vue); **points of suspense** les points de suspension
Poland la Pologne
Pole (a) un Polonais, une Polonaise
policeman un agent de police (*pl.* agents de police)
Polish polonais, -e; **Polish (i.e., language)** le polonais
polite poli, -e
politely poliment
political politique
polygon le polygone
pond un étang
pool (= *swimming pool*) la piscine
poor pauvre (*For position, see 15.10*); **in poor health** en mauvaise santé; **in poor condition** en mauvais état
poorly (= *badly*) mal
porcelain la porcelaine
pork le porc; **pork chop** la côtelette de porc (*pl.* côtelettes de porc)
port le port
portable portatif, -ive
porter le porteur
portrait le portrait
Portugal le Portugal
Portuguese portugais, -e; **a Portuguese man** un Portugais; **a Portuguese woman** une Portugaise; **Portuguese (i.e., language)** le portugais
to **possess** posséder (*je possède*)
possession la possession; **to take possession (of)** prendre possession (de)
possibility la possibilité
possible possible; **as quickly as possible** le plus vite possible; **as few mistakes as possible** le moins de fautes possible
to **post** mettre à la poste
postcard la carte postale
poster une affiche
postman le facteur
post office le bureau de poste (*pl.* bureaux de poste)
to **postpone** remettre
potato la pomme de terre (*pl.* pommes de terre)
pound la livre; **half a pound** une demi-livre

to **pour** verser; (*of rain*) pleuvoir à torrents, pleuvoir à verse
poverty la misère
powerful puissant, -e
powerfully puissamment
to **practise** (**doing sth.**) s'exercer (*nous exerçons*) (à faire qch.)
prayer la prière
to **precede** précéder (*je précède*)
preceding précédent, -e
precise précis, -e
precisely précisément
to **prefer** (**to do sth.**) préférer (*je préfère*) (faire qch.), aimer mieux (faire qch.); **to prefer one thing to another** préférer une chose à une autre, aimer mieux une chose qu'une autre
to **prepare** préparer; **to prepare to do sth.** se préparer à faire qch.
present (*adj.*) présent, -e
present (*noun*) le présent; **at present** à présent; (= *gift*) le cadeau, -x
to **present** présenter
present perfect le passé composé
President of France (**the**) le président de la République
to **pretend** (**to**) faire semblant (de)
pretty joli, -e
to **prevent** (**s.o. from doing sth.**) empêcher (qn de faire qch.)
prewar d'avant-guerre (*invar.*)
price le prix
priest le curé
prime minister le premier ministre
prince le prince; **the Prince of Wales** le prince de Galles
Prince Edward Island l'île du Prince-Édouard
princess la princesse
prison la prison; **in prison** en prison
prisoner le prisonnier, la prisonnière
private particulier, -ière
prize le prix
probable probable
probably probablement
problem le problème
profusely abondamment

programme le programme
progress le progrès; **to make progress** faire des progrès
projector le projecteur
promise la promesse; **to keep a promise** tenir une promesse
to **promise** (**to**) promettre (de)
pronominal pronominal, -e (-aux)
to **pronounce** prononcer (*nous prononçons*)
properly bien, convenablement
prospector le prospecteur
to **protect** protéger (*je protège*)
protestant protestant, -e
protruding ears les oreilles décollées
proud (**of sth., to do sth.**) fier, fière (de qch., de faire qch.)
to **prove** prouver
Provence la Provence
provided (**that**) pourvu que (*subjunctive*)
province la province
prune le pruneau, -x
to **prune** tailler
public (*adj.*) public, -ique
public (*noun*) le public; **in public** en public
to **publish** publier
publisher un éditeur
to **pull** tirer
to **pull in one's stomach** rentrer le ventre
to **pull** (**out**) arracher
pull-over le pull-over (*pl. pull-overs*)
pumpkin la citrouille
puncture le pneu crevé; **to have a puncture** crever (*je crève*); **to have two punctures** crever deux fois
to **punish** punir
pupil l'élève *m.f.*
purchase un achat
purpose: **on purpose** exprès
purse le sac (à main); **purses** les sacs (à main)
to **pursue** poursuivre
to **push** pousser
to **put** mettre

to **put away** ranger (*nous rangeons*)
 to **put back** remettre
 to **put down** (= *to lower*) baisser;
 (= *to set down*) déposer, poser
 to **put in**: to **put the car in** rentrer la
 voiture
 to **put on** (*clothing, etc.*) mettre
 to **put out** sortir; (*of light, fire*) éteindre;
 to **put out one's tongue** tirer la
 langue
 to **put up** (= *to lift*) lever; (= *to build*)
 construire; to **put up at a hotel**
 descendre à un hôtel, loger (*nous*
logeons) à un hôtel
pyjamas le pyjama; **in one's py-**
jamas en pyjama

Q

quality la qualité
 to **quarrel** se disputer
quarter le quart; **a quarter of an**
hour un quart d'heure; **three**
quarters of an hour trois quarts
 d'heure
Quebec (City) Québec *m.*
Quebec (the province) le Québec, la
 province de Québec
queen la reine
queer drôle, bizarre; **a queer smell**
 une drôle d'odeur
question la question; **it is a question**
 of il s'agit de; **the question is**
whether . . . il s'agit de savoir si . . .
question mark le point d'interro-
 gation (*pl.* points d'interrogation)
 to **question s.o.** interroger (*nous inter-*
rogeons) qn
quickly vite, en vitesse
quiet tranquille; **to be (or keep)**
quiet se taire
quite (= *rather*) assez; (= *complete-*
ly) tout, tout à fait; **quite a few**
 pas mal (de); **quite a lot (of)**
 pas mal (de); **quite a while** un
 bon moment
quotation marks les guillemets *m.*

R

rabbit le lapin
race la course
racket la raquette
radiator le radiateur
radio la T.S.F. (= *télégraphie sans*
fil); **on the radio** à la T.S.F., à la
 radio; **radio set** le poste de T.S.F.,
 le poste de radio (*pl.* postes de
 T.S.F., postes de radio)
radish le radis
rail: to travel by rail voyager en
 chemin de fer; **to send sth. by**
rail envoyer qch. par chemin de
 fer
railway le chemin de fer (*pl.* che-
 mins de fer)
rain la pluie
 to **rain** pleuvoir; **to rain again** re-
 pleuvoir
raincoat un imperméable
raise une augmentation; **to get a**
raise recevoir (*or* avoir) une
 augmentation, être augmenté(e)
 to **raise** lever (*je lève*); **to raise the rent**
 augmenter le loyer
rare rare
rash les rougeurs *f.*
raspberry la framboise
rather assez; **rather than** plutôt que
ravishing ravissant, -e
raw cru, -e; **raw material** la ma-
 tière première
razor le rasoir
 to **read** lire
reading la lecture
ready (to) prêt(e) (à); **to get sth.**
ready préparer qch.; **to get**
ready (to do sth.) se préparer (à
 faire qch.)
real vrai, -e (*before noun*)
 to **realize sth.** se rendre compte de
 qch.; **to realize that . . .** se
 rendre compte que . . .
really vraiment
reason la raison
 to **recall** (= *to remember*) se rappeler
 to **receive** recevoir

- receiver** le récepteur
recent récent
recently récemment
recipe la recette
to **recognize** reconnaître
to **recommend** (**that s.o. do sth.**) recommander (à qn de faire qch.)
record le disque; (*in sports, etc.*) le record
record player le tourne-disques (*invar.*)
recovery la guérison
red (*adj.*) rouge; (*of hair*) roux
red (*noun*) le rouge
red-haired roux, rousse
red-headed roux, rousse
to **reduce** (= *to lose weight*) maigrir
to **refer to** se rapporter à
referee un arbitre
to **refrain: not to be able to refrain from doing sth.** ne pas pouvoir s'empêcher de faire qch.
refreshments les rafraîchissements *m.*
refrigerator le réfrigérateur
refuge: to take refuge se réfugier
to **refuse** (**to**) refuser (*de*)
to **regain consciousness** reprendre connaissance
regret le regret
to **regret** (**doing sth., to do sth.**) regretter (*de faire qch.*)
regular régulier, -ière
regularly régulièrement
to **rehearse** répéter (*je répète*)
rehearsal la répétition
reign le règne; **in the reign of** sous
to **reign** régner (*je règne*)
to **reject** rejeter (*je rejette*)
to **rejoice** (**to do sth.**) se réjouir (*de faire qch.*)
relative le parent, la parente
to **relax** se détendre
relief le soulagement
to **relieve** soulager (*nous soulageons*)
to **remain** rester
to **remember sth.** se rappeler (*je me rappelle*) qch., se souvenir de qch., retenir qch.; **to remember s.o.** se rappeler qn (*but see 9.2*), se souvenir de qn; **to remember to do sth.** penser à faire qch.; **to remember having done sth.** se rappeler avoir fait qch., se souvenir d'avoir fait qch.
to **remind s.o. of sth.** rappeler (*je rappelle*) qch. à qn
to **remove** enlever (*j'enlève*)
rent le loyer
to **rent** louer; **for rent** à louer
repair la réparation
to **repair** réparer; **the car is being repaired** la voiture est en réparation
to **repeat** répéter (*je répète*); **to repeat a year** redoubler une classe
to **repent** se repentir
to **replace** remplacer (*nous remplaçons*)
reply la réponse
to **reply** répondre
report: it is reported that . . . See 20.12
reporter journaliste *m.f.*
to **reproach s.o. for doing sth.** reprocher à qn d'avoir fait qch.
republic la république
request la demande, la prière
to **request sth.** demander qch.; **to request s.o. to do sth.** prier qn de faire qch.
to **rescue** sauver
to **reserve** retenir
to **resign** donner sa démission, démissionner
resistance la résistance
to **resolve** (**to**) résoudre (*de*)
to **respect** respecter
responsibility la responsabilité
responsible (**for**) responsable (*de*)
rest (= *remainder*) le reste, les autres
rest (= *repose*) le repos; **to take a rest** se reposer
to **rest** se reposer
result le résultat
to **retain** retenir
return le retour
to **return** *See S.T.P. 58*
to **reveal** révéler (*je révèle*)

to **revolve** tourner
Rhine (the) le Rhin
Rhode Island le Rhode Island
Rhône (the) le Rhône
rhubarb la rhubarbe
rice le riz
rich riche; **to get rich** s'enrichir
rid; **to get rid of** se débarrasser de
riddle la devinette; **to ask s.o. a riddle** poser une devinette à qn
ridiculous ridicule
right See *S.T.P.* 59
right away, **right now** tout de suite
ring la bague
to **ring** sonner; **to ring again** resonner
rink la patinoire
to **rinse** rincer (*nous rinçons*)
ripe mûr, -e
to **ripen** mûrir
risk le risque; **to run the risk of doing sth.** risquer de faire qch.
to **risk** (one's life) risquer (sa vie);
to risk doing sth. risquer de faire qch.
rival le rival, -aux, la rivale
river la rivière; (**great**) **river** (*flowing into sea*) le fleuve
road la route
roast le rôti; **roast leg of lamb** le gigot
to **roast** rôtir
to **rob** voler
rock la pierre
Rocky Mountains (the) les montagnes Rocheuses; **the Rockies** les Rocheuses
roll le petit pain
roller skates les patins à roulettes *m.*
Roman Catholic catholique
roof le toit
room la pièce; (= *bedroom*) la chambre; **living-room** le salon; **dining-room** la salle à manger (*pl.* salles à manger)
room (= *space*) la place
roomer locataire *m.f.*
root la racine
rope la corde
rose la rose

round rond, -e
route la route
to **row** ramer
to **rub** frotter
to **rub out** effacer (*nous effaçons*)
rubber le caoutchouc; (= *eraser*) la gomme
rudeness la grossièreté
rug le tapis
rule la règle
ruler la règle
Rumania la Roumanie
Rumanian roumain, -e; **a Rumanian** un Roumain, une Roumaine;
Rumanian (*i.e., language*) le roumain
to **run** courir; (*of liquids*) couler; (*of machine*) marcher; **to run into debt** faire des dettes; **to run the risk of doing sth.** risquer de faire qch.; **How often does the bus run?** Il y a un autobus tous les combien?
to **run across** (= *to meet*) rencontrer;
to run across the street traverser la rue en courant
to **run into** (= *to collide with*) rentrer dans
to **run off** partir en courant
to **run over** (= *to knock down*) écraser;
to get run over se faire écraser
to **rush** se précipiter
rush hour l'heure d'affluence (*pl.* heures d'affluence) *f.*
Russia la Russie
Russian russe; **a Russian** un Russe, une Russe; **Russian** (*i.e., language*) le russe
rusted rouillé, -e
rusty rouillé, -e

S

sad triste
sailboat le bateau à voile(s)
sailor le marin
saint le saint, la sainte; **All Saints' Day** la Toussaint

- salad** la salade
salary le salaire
sale la vente; **for sale** à vendre
sales-lady la vendeuse
salesman le vendeur
salmon le saumon
salt le sel
salted salé, -e
same même; **to do the same** en faire autant; **that's (or it's) all the same to me** cela m'est égal
sand le sable
sandwich le sandwich (*pl.* sandwiches *or* sandwichés)
Sardinia la Sardaigne
Sardinian sarde; **a Sardinian** un Sarde, une Sarde
Saskatchewan la Saskatchewan
to satisfy satisfaire, contenter
satisfied (with, to) content(e) (de)
Saturday le samedi
saucepan la casserole
saucer la soucoupe
sausage la saucisse
to save sauver; (= *to save money*) faire des économies; **to save money** mettre de l'argent de côté; **to save time** gagner du temps
to say dire
scarce rare
scarcely à peine
to scare s.o. faire peur à qn; **to be scared (of, to)** avoir peur (de); **to be scared stiff** avoir une peur bleue
scarf une écharpe
scent le parfum
scholarship la bourse
school une école; **at school** à l'école; **at school** (= *in class*) en classe
school (adj.) scolaire
schoolbook le livre de classe (*pl.* livres de classe)
science la science, les sciences
scissors les ciseaux *m.*
to scold gronder
Scotch écossais, -e; **a Scotchman** un Écossais; **a Scotchwoman** une Écossaise
Scotland l'Écosse *f.*
Scottish écossais, -e
to scramble brouiller
screen un écran; (*on window*) la moustiquaire
sculptor le sculpteur
sea la mer; **on the open sea** en pleine mer
seasick: to be seasick avoir le mal de mer
seaside le bord de la mer
season la saison
seat (in theatre, train, etc.) la place
to seat s.o. asseoir qn; **to ask s.o. to be seated** faire asseoir qn
second (adj.) second, -e, deuxième;
second past perfect le passé antérieur
second (unit of time) la seconde
second-hand d'occasion
secret (adj.) secret, -ète
secret (noun) le secret
secretary secrétaire *m.f.*
securely solidement
to see voir; **to see again** revoir; **to see to sth.** s'occuper de qch.; **to see (to it) that . . .** veiller à ce que (*subjunctive*)
seed (= pip) le pépin
to seek (to) chercher (à)
to seem sembler, paraître
Seine (the) la Seine
to seize s.o., sth. saisir qn, qch., s'emparer de qn, de qch.; **to seize again** ressaisir
seldom rarement; **we seldom go out** nous sortons rarement, il est rare que nous sortions; **it is seldom that . . .** il est rare que (*subjunctive*)
selection le choix
selfish égoïste
to sell (trans.) vendre, (*intrans.*) se vendre
semicolon le point-virgule (*pl.* points-virgules), le point et virgule (*pl.* points et virgules)
to send envoyer; **to send word** faire dire
to send back renvoyer

- to **send** for envoyer chercher
sensation la sensation; to **create a sensation** faire sensation
sentence la phrase
September septembre *m.*
serious grave, sérieux, -ieuse
seriously gravement, sérieusement;
seriously ill gravement malade;
to talk seriously parler sérieusement; **to take s.o., sth. seriously** prendre qn, qch. au sérieux
to **serve** servir; to **serve again** resservir
service le service; (*in church*) l'office *m.*; to **be of (great) service (to s.o.)** rendre (bien) service (à qn)
set (*radio, television*) le poste
to **set** (*of sun*) se coucher; to **set the table** mettre la table
to **set about** se mettre à
to **settle** (*intrans.*) s'établir
several plusieurs
to **sew** coudre
to **sew on** coudre; to **sew on again** recoudre
sewing-machine la machine à coudre (*pl.* machines à coudre)
to **shake hands (with s.o.)** donner la main (à qn)
shallow peu profond(e)
shameful honteux, -euse
Shanghai Changhaï *m.*
share la part; (*of stock*) une action
to **share** partager (*nous partageons*)
sharp: to be sharp (*of knife, etc.*) couper bien; **at six o'clock sharp** à six heures précises
to **sharpen** (*knife, etc.*) aiguiser; (*pencil*) tailler
to **shave** (*trans.*) raser, (*intrans.*) se raser
to **shed tears** verser des larmes
sheep le mouton
sheet le drap; **as white as a sheet** blanc(he) comme un linge
shelling le bombardement
shirt la chemise
to **shiver** grelotter
to **shock** choquer
shoe la chaussure
shoemaker le cordonnier
to **shoot** tuer
shop la boutique
shopping: to do one's shopping faire ses courses
shore la rive
short court, -e, bref, brève; **short of** à court de (*invar.*); **short cut** le raccourci
should *See S.T.P. 60*
shoulder une épaule
shout le cri
to **shout** crier
shovel la pelle
show (= *movies*) le cinéma
to **show** montrer; to **show s.o. over sth.** faire visiter qch. à qn
to **show s.o. in** faire entrer qn
shower (*of rain*) une averse; (= *bath*) la douche
to **shrink** rétrécir
shrub un arbuste
to **shrug one's shoulders** hausser les épaules
to **shut** fermer
shy timide
Sicilian sicilien, -ienne; **a Sicilian** un Sicilien, une Sicilienne
Sicily la Sicile
sick malade
sickness la maladie
side le côté; **on the other side** de l'autre côté
sideboard le buffet
sidewalk le trottoir
sight la vue; to **catch sight of s.o., sth.** apercevoir qn, qch; **I can't stand the sight of him** je ne peux pas le voir
to **sign** signer
signature la signature
silence le silence; **in silence** en silence
silent silencieux, -ieuse
silk la soie
silver l'argent *m.*
silverware l'argenterie *f.*
similar pareil, -eille, semblable
simple simple

- simply** simplement; **you simply must** . . . vous devez absolument . . .
- since** *See S.T.P. 61*
- to **sing** chanter
- singer** le chanteur, la chanteuse
- single** seul, -e; (= *unmarried*) célibataire
- sink** un évier
- to **sink** couler; **to sink into an arm-chair** se laisser aller dans un fauteuil
- sir** monsieur
- sister** la sœur
- sister-in-law** la belle-sœur (*pl.* belles-sœurs)
- to **sit** s'asseoir; **sitting** (= *seated*) assis, -e
- to **sit down** s'asseoir; **to sit down again** se rasseoir; **to sit down to breakfast (to lunch, to dinner)** se mettre à table
- situated** situé, -e; **to be situated** se trouver, être situé(e)
- size (of object)** la grandeur, la grosseur; (*of person*) la taille
- skate** le patin
- to **skate** patiner
- skating** le patinage; **to go skating** faire du patinage
- skiing: to go skiing** faire du ski
- skin** la peau, -x
- to **skip** sauter à la corde; (= *to omit*) sauter
- skipping-rope** la corde à sauter (*pl.* cordes à sauter)
- skirt** la jupe
- sky** le ciel (*pl.* cieux)
- sky-blue** bleu ciel (*invar.*)
- sky-scraper** le gratte-ciel (*invar.*)
- to **slam** claquer
- sleep** le sommeil; **to go to sleep** s'endormir
- to **sleep** *See S.T.P. 62*
- sleepers: to be a light sleeper** avoir le sommeil léger
- sleeping-sickness** la maladie du sommeil
- sleepy: to be (or feel) sleepy** avoir sommeil; **to make s.o.**
- sleepy** donner sommeil (à qn); **to make s.o. feel sleepy** donner sommeil (à qn)
- sleeve** la manche; **in (one's) shirt-sleeves** en bras de chemise
- slice** la tranche
- to **slide** glisser
- slightest** moindre
- slightly** légèrement
- slim** mince
- slip (article of clothing)** la combinaison
- to **slip** glisser
- slip cover** la housse
- slipper** la pantoufle; **in one's slippers** en pantoufles
- slippery** glissant, -e
- Slovak** slovaque; **a Slovak** un Slovaque, une Slovaque; **Slovak (i.e., language)** le slovaque
- slow** lent, -e; **my watch is (five minutes) slow** ma montre retarde (de cinq minutes)
- slowly** lentement
- to **slow down** ralentir
- small** petit, -e; **small letter** la (lettre) minuscule
- smart** (= *elegant*) chic (*fem. same as masc.*)
- smell** une odeur
- to **smell** sentir
- smile** le sourire
- to **smile** sourire
- smiling** souriant, -e
- smoke** la fumée
- to **smoke** fumer
- snake** le serpent
- to **snatch sth. from s.o.** arracher qch. à qn
- to **sneeze** éternuer
- to **snore** ronfler
- snow** la neige
- to **snow** neiger (*il neigeait*); **to snow again** reneiger
- snowball** la boule de neige (*pl.* boules de neige)
- snow-man** le bonhomme de neige (*pl.* bonshommes de neige)
- snowstorm** la tempête de neige (*pl.* tempêtes de neige)

- so** *See S.T.P. 63*
soap le savon
sock la chaussette
soft mou, molle; (*of voice, music*) doux, douce
softly doucement
soldier le soldat
to solve résoudre
some (*adj.*): **some** (*other*) **day** un (autre) jour; **some** (*other*) **time** une (autre) fois; (*For other cases, see 4.2, 4.5, 4.6, 4.7, 4.9*)
some (*pron.*) *See 8.6, 8.7, 14.11*
somebody quelqu'un
someone quelqu'un
something quelque chose *m.*
sometimes quelquefois, parfois
somewhere quelque part; **some-where** else ailleurs
son le fils
song la chanson
son-in-law le gendre
soon bientôt; **he soon did it** il n'a pas tardé à le faire; **as soon as** dès que, aussitôt que
sooner (= *earlier*) plus tôt
sore: to have a sore throat avoir mal à la gorge; **my eyes are sore** j'ai mal aux yeux
sorry: to be sorry (*to*) regretter (*de*); **to be very sorry** (*to*) regretter beaucoup (*de*), être désolé(e) (*de*)
sort la sorte
sound le son, le bruit
soundly: to sleep soundly dormir profondément
soup la soupe, le potage
south (*noun*) le sud; **south of** au sud de
south (*adj.*) sud (*invar.*); **south wind** le vent du sud
South Africa l'Afrique du Sud *f.*
South African sud-africain, -e
South America l'Amérique du Sud *f.*
South American sud-américain, -e
South Carolina la Caroline du Sud
South Dakota le Dakota du Sud
sovereign le souverain
Soviet Union (*the*) l'Union soviétique *f.*
to sow semer (*je sème*); **to sow again** ressemer
Spain l'Espagne *f.*
Spaniard (*a*) un Espagnol, une Espagnole
Spanish espagnol, -e; **Spanish** (*i.e., language*) l'espagnol *m.*
to spare (= *to lose*) perdre
sparrow le moineau, -x
to speak parler; **to speak well of** dire du bien de
speaker le conférencier
special spécial, -e (-aux)
specialist spécialiste *m.f.*
species une espèce
spectre le spectre
speech le discours
speed la vitesse; **at full speed** à toute vitesse
to spell épeler (*j'épelle*); **How do you spell the word . . . ?**, **How is the word . . . spelt?** Comment s'écrit le mot . . . ?
spelling l'orthographe *f.*
to spend (*time*) passer; (*money*) dépenser; **to spend time doing sth.** passer du temps à faire qch.
spider une araignée
to spill renverser
spinach les épinards *m.*
spite: in spite of malgré; **in spite of the fact that** malgré que (*sub-junctive*)
to splash éclabousser
splendid superbe
to spoil gâter; **to spoil s.o.'s appetite** couper l'appétit (à qn)
spoon la cuiller
spoonful la cuillerée
sports jacket le veston de sport (*pl.* vestons de sport)
spot (= *stain*) la tache
to sprain fouler
spring le printemps; **in** (*the*) **spring** au printemps
to squander gaspiller
square (*adj.*) carré, -e

- square** (*geom. figure*) le carré; (*in city*) la place
squirrel un écureuil
stage la scène
stain la tache
stairs un escalier
stale (*of bread*) rassis
stamp le timbre
to **stand** (= *to endure*) supporter, tolérer (*je tolère*); **I can't stand the sight of him** je ne peux pas le voir
to **stand up** se lever; **to stand up straight** se tenir droit(e)
standing debout (*invár.*)
star une étoile
to **start** (*to*) commencer (*nous commençons*) (à *or* de), se mettre (à); **to start the engine** mettre le moteur en marche; **the engine starts** le moteur part
to **starve** (*to death*) mourir de faim
States (*the*) (= *the United States*) les États-Unis *m.*
station la gare
stay le séjour
to **stay** rester; **to stay to dinner** rester (à) dîner; **to stay at a hotel** descendre (*or* loger) à un hôtel
to **stay up** veiller
steak le bifteck
to **steal** (*sth. from s.o.*) voler (qch. à qn)
steel l'acier *m.*
steering-wheel le volant
Stephen Étienne
steps (*in front of building*) le perron
stick le bâton; **hockey stick** la crosse de hockey (*pl.* crosses de hockey)
to **stick** coller
to **stick out one's tongue** tirer la langue
to **stifle** étouffer; **it's stifling** on étouffe; **it's stifling (ly hot)** il fait une chaleur étouffante
still encore
to **sting** piquer
stingy avare
St. Helena Sainte-Hélène *f.*
St. Lawrence (*the*) le Saint-Laurent
stocking le bas
stone la pierre; (*of cherry, etc.*) le noyau, -x
stool le tabouret
stop un arrêt
to **stop** (*trans.*) arrêter, (*intrans.*) s'arrêter; **to stop doing sth.** s'arrêter de faire qch., cesser de faire qch.
store le magasin; **store window** la vitrine
storm un orage
stormy; **it** (*i.e., the weather*) **is stormy** il fait de l'orage, il y a de l'orage
story une histoire; (*of building*) un étage
stove (= *kitchen stove*) la cuisinière
straight droit, -e; **in a straight line** en ligne droite; **in straight lines** en lignes droites; **straight ahead** tout droit
strange étrange
strawberry la fraise
stream le ruisseau, -x
street la rue; **on the street** dans la rue
streetcar le tram; **by streetcar** en tram
to **stretch out** (= *to hold out*) avancer (*nous avançons*)
strike la grève; **on strike** en grève; **to go on strike** se mettre en grève
to **strike** (= *to hit*) frapper; (= *to go on strike*) se mettre en grève
string la ficelle
strong fort, -e; (= *resistant*) solide
stubborn têtu, -e
student un étudiant, une étudiante
study l'étude *f.*
to **study** étudier; **to study law** faire son droit; **to study medicine** faire sa médecine
stuffing (*in turkey, etc.*) la farce
stupid bête
to **stutter** bégayer (*je bégaye, je bégaye*)
subject (*of curriculum*) la matière; (*of conversation, of sentence*) le sujet; **to change the subject** parler d'autre chose, changer de sujet, changer de conversation

- subjunctive** le subjonctif
suburbs la banlieue
subway (= *underground railway*) le métro; **by subway** en métro
 to **succeed** *See S.T.P. 64*
success le succès
such tel, telle; (*followed by adj.*) si; **in such a way that** de façon (à ce) que (*subjunctive*)
suddenly brusquement, tout à coup
 to **suffer** souffrir
sufficient suffisant, -e; **to be sufficient** suffire
sufficiently suffisamment
sugar le sucre; **brown sugar** la cassonade
 to **suggest** (**doing sth.**) proposer (de faire qch.), suggérer (*je suggère*) (de faire qch.)
suggestion la suggestion
suicide le suicide; **to commit suicide** se suicider
suit (*for man*) le complet; (*for woman*) le tailleur; **in a** (*woman's*) **suit** en tailleur
 to **suit s.o.** convenir à qn
suitcase la valise
sultry lourd, -e; **it** (*i.e., the weather*) **is sultry** il fait lourd
summer un été; **in (the) summer** en été
sun le soleil; **in the sun** au soleil; (**right**) **out in the sun** en plein soleil
sunburned: to get sunburned attraper un coup de soleil
Sunday le dimanche
sun-glasses les lunettes de soleil *f.*
sunny: it (*i.e., the weather*) **is sunny** il fait du soleil, il y a du soleil
sunrise le lever du soleil
sunset le coucher du soleil
superior supérieur, -e; **Lake Superior** le lac Supérieur
superstitious superstitieux, -ieuse
supper le souper; **to have supper** souper; **I don't want any supper** je ne veux pas souper
 to **supply** (**s.o. with sth.**) fournir (qch. à qn)
 to **suppose** supposer; **Suppose we go (or went) there?** Si nous y allions?
sure (to) sûr(e) (de); **Be sure to . . .** Ne manquez pas de . . .
surgeon le chirurgien
surprise la surprise
 to **surprise** étonner; surprendre; **to be surprised (at)** s'étonner (de)
surprising étonnant, -e, surprenant, -e
surprisingly étonnamment
 to **surround** entourer; **surrounded by** entouré(e) de
Susan Suzanne
 to **suspect sth.** se douter de qch.; **to suspect s.o. of sth.** soupçonner qn de qch.
 to **swallow** avaler
swamped with work débordé(e) de travail
 to **swear** jurer
Swede (a) un Suédois, une Suédoise
Sweden la Suède
Swedish suédois, -e; **Swedish** (*i.e., language*) le suédois
 to **sweep** balayer (*je balaye, je balaie*)
 to **sweep away** (= *to carry off*) emporter
sweet doux, douce; **to smell sweet** sentir bon (*invar.*); **fond of sweet things** gourmand, -e
swift rapide
 to **swim** nager (*nous nageons*)
swimming la natation; **to go (in) swimming** se baigner
swimming pool la piscine
Swiss suisse; **a Swiss** un Suisse, une Suissesse
Switzerland la Suisse
Syria la Syrie

T

table la table
tablecloth la nappe

- taffy** le caramel
tailor le tailleur
to take *See S.T.P. 65*
to take apart démonter
to take away *See S.T.P. 66*
to take back *See S.T.P. 67*
to take down(stairs) descendre; **to take down**(stairs) again redescendre
to take in (again) rentrer; **to take in boarders** prendre des pensionnaires
to take in (= *to deceive*) tromper
to take off *See S.T.P. 68*
to take sth. off sth. *See S.T.P. 85b*
to take out *See S.T.P. 69*
to take sth. out of sth. *See S.T.P. 85c*
to take up(stairs) monter; **to take up**(stairs) again remonter
tale le conte; **fairy tale** le conte de fées
to talk parler; **to talk nonsense** dire des bêtises
talkative bavard, -e
tall grand, -e; **How tall is he?** Combien mesure-t-il?
to tan brunir
tank le réservoir
tap le robinet
tart la tartelette
taste le goût; **to have good taste** avoir bon goût; **to have poor taste** avoir mauvais goût
to taste goûter; **to taste good** avoir bon goût; **to taste bad** avoir mauvais goût
tasteless: to be tasteless ne pas avoir de goût
taxi le taxi; **by taxi** en taxi
tea le thé; **tea-towel** le torchon
to teach enseigner; **to teach s.o. sth.** enseigner qch. à qn, apprendre qch. à qn; **to teach s.o. (how) to do sth.** apprendre à qn à faire qch.
teacher le professeur
teacup la tasse à thé (*pl.* tasses à thé)
team une équipe
teapot la théière
tear la larme
to tear déchirer
to tear up déchirer
to tease taquiner
tedious ennuyeux, -euse
telegram le télégramme
telephone le téléphone; **on the telephone** au téléphone; **telephone call** le coup de téléphone (*pl.* coups de téléphone); **telephone number** le numéro de téléphone (*pl.* numéros de téléphone)
to telephone (s.o.) téléphoner (à qn)
television la télévision; **on television** à la télévision; **television set** le poste de télévision (*pl.* postes de télévision)
to tell *See S.T.P. 70*
to tell of (= *to indicate*) indiquer
temperature la température
tempted (to) tenté(e)(de)
to tend to avoir tendance à
tendency la tendance; **to have a tendency** to avoir tendance à
tender tendre
tenderloin le filet
Tennessee le Tennessee
tennis le tennis
tent la tente
Teresa Thérèse
terrible terrible
terribly terriblement; **it** (*i.e., the weather*) **is terribly windy** il fait (*or il y a*) un vent terrible
terror la terreur
Texas le Texas
Thames (the) la Tamise
than que; (*followed by a numeral, see 16.31*)
to thank (s.o. for sth.) remercier (qn de qch.); **thank you** merci
that (*adj.*) ce, cet, cette; (*for stressed form, see 11.2*); **that one** celui-là, celle-là
that (*dem. pron.*) *See 11.6, 11.29, 11.30, 11.31, 11.32, 11.33*; **that is why . . .** c'est pour cela que . . ., c'est pourquoi . . ., voilà pourquoi . . .

- that** (*rel. pron.*) See 12.2, 12.4, 12.7, 12.8, 12.13
- to **thaw** dégeler (*il dégèle*)
- theatre** le théâtre; (= *motion-picture theatre*) le cinéma
- theft** le vol
- their** leur, leurs
- theirs** See 13.8, 13.9, 13.10, 13.11
- themselves** (*with pronominal vb.*) se; **they did it themselves** ils l'ont fait eux-mêmes, elles l'ont fait elles-mêmes; **they did it (all) by themselves** ils l'ont fait tout seuls, elles l'ont fait toutes seules
- then** (= *at that time*) à ce moment-là, alors; (= *next*) puis, ensuite
- there** là, y; **there is, there are** (*pointing out*) voilà, (*not pointing out*) il y a
- therefore** donc, aussi
- thermos (bottle)** le thermos
- these** (*adj.*) ces; (*for stressed form, see 11.2*)
- these** (*pron.*) ceux-ci, celles-ci; (*see also 11.27*)
- thick** épais, épaisse; **blows are falling thick and fast** il pleut des coups
- thief** le voleur
- thin** (*of person*) maigre; (*of thing*) mince; **to get thin** maigrir
- thing** la chose; **it's a good thing that** . . . il est heureux que (*subjunctive*)
- to **think** See S.T.P. 71
- third** (*i.e., fraction*) le tiers
- thirsty: to be (or feel) thirsty** avoir soif; **to make s.o. thirsty** donner soif à qn; **to make s.o. feel thirsty** donner soif à qn
- this** (*adj.*) ce, cet, cette; (*for stressed form, see 11.2*); **this one** celui-ci, celle-ci
- this** (*pron.*) See 11.26, 11.27, 11.28
- those** (*adj.*) ces; (*for stressed form, see 11.2*)
- those** (*pron.*) ceux-là, celles-là; (*see also 11.32*); **those who** . . . ceux (celles) qui . . . ; **those of** . . . ceux (celles) de . . .
- to **thrash** battre
- thread** le fil
- to **threaten (to)** menacer (*nous menaçons*) (de); **to threaten s.o. with sth.** menacer qn de qch.
- Three Rivers** Trois-Rivières *m.*
- throat** la gorge
- through** par; **to go through the customs** passer la douane
- to **throw** jeter (*je jette*), lancer (*nous lançons*)
- to **throw away** jeter (*je jette*)
- to **throw back one's shoulders** effacer (*nous effaçons*) les épaules
- to **throw out** (= *to throw away*) jeter (*je jette*)
- to **throw out one's chest** bomber la poitrine
- thumb** le pouce
- to **thunder** tonner
- Thursday** le jeudi
- ticket** (*for theatre, train, etc.*) le billet; (*for streetcar, bus*) le ticket
- tide** la marée; **at high tide** à marée haute; **at low tide** à marée basse
- tidy** en ordre
- to **tidy** ranger (*nous rangeons*)
- tie** la cravate
- to **tie** attacher; **to tie a knot** faire un nœud
- till** See S.T.P. 72
- time** See S.T.P. 73
- time-table** un emploi du temps (*pl. emplois du temps*)
- tin** (= *can*) la boîte
- tire** le pneu, -s
- to **tire** (*trans.*) fatiguer, (*intrans.*) se fatiguer
- to **tire of** se lasser de, se fatiguer de
- tired** fatigué, -e; **to be dead tired** tomber de fatigue; **I'm tired of . . .** j'en ai assez de . . . ; **to get tired (of)** se fatiguer (de); **to make s.o. tired** fatiguer (qn)
- tiresome** embêtant, -e
- tiring** fatigant, -e
- toad** le crapaud
- toast** le pain grillé
- to **toast** griller

- toaster** le grille-pain (*invar.*)
today aujourd'hui
toe un orteil
together ensemble; **to get together** se réunir
to tolerate tolérer (*je tolère*)
tomato la tomate
tomorrow demain; **tomorrow morning** demain matin; **tomorrow afternoon** demain après-midi; **tomorrow night** demain soir; **the day after tomorrow** après-demain
tongue la langue
tonight *See S.T.P. 51a, 51c*
too trop; **too much** trop (de); **too many** trop (de); **too tired to work** trop fatigué(e) pour travailler
tooth la dent
tooth-brush la brosse à dents
topic le sujet
tortoise la tortue
torture le supplice
to touch toucher; (= *to meddle with*) toucher à
tough dur, -e
to tour faire le tour de
tourist touriste *m.f.*
towards vers
towel la serviette; (**hand-towel**) un essuie-mains (*invar.*); **tea-towel** le torchon
tower la tour
town la ville
toy le jouet
traffic la circulation; **traffic lights** les feux de circulation *m.*
train le train; **on the train** dans le train; **to travel by train** voyager en train (*or* en chemin de fer); **to go, to come, by train** aller, venir, par le train
to translate (into) traduire (en)
to travel voyager (*nous voyageons*)
to treat oneself to sth. se payer (*je me paye, je me paie*) qch., s'offrir qch.
treatment le traitement; **to take treatment** suivre un traitement; **to get treatment (from)** se faire soigner (par)
- treaty** le traité
tree un arbre
to tremble trembler
tremendous énorme
trigonometry la trigonométrie
trip le voyage; **on a trip** en voyage; **on a business trip** en voyage d'affaires; **to take a trip** faire un voyage; **to take a trip around the world** faire le tour du monde
troubled ennuyé, -e
trousers le pantalon; **a pair of trousers** un pantalon
trout la truite
truck le camion
true vrai, -e (*after noun*)
trunk la malle; (*of car*) le coffre
to trust s.o., sth. faire confiance à qn, à qch., se fier à qn, à qch.; **not to trust s.o., sth.** se méfier de qn, de qch.
truth la vérité
to try (to) tâcher (de), essayer (*j'essaye, j'essaie*) (de); **to try an examination** passer un examen; **to try one's matriculation** se présenter au baccalauréat; **to try one's luck** tenter sa chance
to try on essayer (*j'essaye, j'essaie*)
to try out essayer (*j'essaye, j'essaie*)
Tuesday le mardi
tulip la tulipe
tune un air; **to sing out of tune** chanter faux
Tunisia la Tunisie
Tunisian tunisien, -ienne; **a Tunisian** un Tunisien une Tunisienne
Turk (a) un Turc, une Turque
turkey la dinde
Turkey la Turquie
Turkish turc, turque; **Turkish (i.e., language)** le turc
to turn around (trans.) retourner, (*intrans.*) se retourner
to turn off (tap, electricity) fermer; (*engine*) arrêter; (*water, radio*) fermer, arrêter; (*oven*) éteindre; (*gas*) fermer, éteindre

- to **turn on** ouvrir; (*radio*) mettre (en marche); (*oven*) allumer; **to turn on the light(s)** allumer
 to **turn over** (*trans.*) retourner, (*in-trans.*) se retourner
 to **turn round** *See to turn around*
turnip le navet
 to **tutor s.o. (in)** donner à qn des leçons particulières (*de*)
Twelfth Night l'Épiphanie *f.*
twice deux fois
twins les jumeaux, les jumelles
 to **type** taper
typewriter la machine à écrire (*pl.* machines à écrire)
typing la dactylographie
typist dactylo(*graphe*) *m.f.*

U

- ugly** laid, -e
umbrella le parapluie
umpire un arbitre
unbearable insupportable
uncle un oncle
unconscious sans connaissance
under sous; **under those circumstances** dans ces circonstances-là
 to **understand** comprendre
 to **undertake sth.** entreprendre qch.;
to undertake to do sth. se charger (*nous nous chargeons*) de faire qch.; **to undertake** (= *to promise*) **to do sth.** s'engager (*nous nous engageons*) à faire qch.
undertone: in an undertone à voix basse
 to **undo** défaire
 to **undress** (*trans.*) déshabiller, (*intrans.*) se déshabiller
uneasy inquiet, -ète
unexpected imprévu, -e
 to **unfold** déplier
unhappy malheureux, -euse
uniform un uniforme; **in uniform** en uniforme
uninhabitable inhabitable
Union of South Africa (the)
 l'Union Sud-Africaine *f.*

- united** uni, -e; **the United States** les États-Unis; **the United Nations** les Nations Unies
university une université
unless à moins que (*subjunctive*)
unlikely peu probable
unlocked ouvert, -e
unpleasant désagréable
unreasonable: he is unreasonable il n'est pas raisonnable
unshakeable inébranlable
untidy en désordre
until *See S.T.P. 74*
unusual extraordinaire
up to date à la page; **up to date on sth.** au courant de qch.
upper supérieur, -e
 to **upset** (*physically*) renverser; (*emotionally*) bouleverser
uranium l'uranium *m.*
urgent urgent, -e
Uruguay l'Uruguay *m.*
Uruguayan uruguayen, -enne; **a Uruguayan** un Uruguayen, une Uruguayenne
use, used *See S.T.P. 75*
useful utile; **to be (very) useful (to s.o.)** rendre (bien) service (à qn)
useless inutile
usual courant, -e; **more than usual** plus que d'habitude
usually d'habitude, généralement
Utah l'Utah *m.*
 to **utter** (*a sigh, etc.*) pousser; (*a name*) prononcer

V

- vacation** les vacances *f.*; **on (one's) vacation** en vacances
 to **vaccinate** vacciner
vacuum-cleaner un aspirateur
vain: to do sth. in vain avoir beau faire qch.
valley la vallée
veal le veau
vegetable le légume; **vegetable garden** le jardin potager

velvet le velours
Venezuela le Vénézuéla
Venezuelan vénézuélien, -ienne; **a Venezuelan** un Vénézuélien, une Vénézuélienne
Venice Venise *m.*
verb le verbe
Vermont le Vermont
version la version
very (*adv.*) très
very (*adj.*) même (*after noun*)
victory la victoire
Vienna Vienne *m.*
view la vue
village le village
vinegar le vinaigre
violent violent, -e
violently violemment
violet la violette
violin le violon
Virginia la Virginie
visit la visite
to **visit** s.o. aller voir qn, venir voir qn;
to visit a place visiter un endroit
vitamin la vitamine
vivid (*of colour*) vif, vive
voice la voix; **in a low voice** à voix basse
volcano le volcan
Volga (the) la Volga
volume le volume
to **vote** voter
vowel la voyelle

W

to **wait** (**for s.o., for sth.**) attendre (qn, qch.); **to wait till (or until)** *See S.T.P. 72b*
waiter le garçon
to **wake(n)** (*trans.*) réveiller, (*intrans.*) se réveiller
to **wake up** *See to wake(n)*
Wales le pays de Galles; **the Prince of Wales** le prince de Galles
walk (= *walking*) la marche; (= *stroll*) la promenade; **to go for**

a walk se promener (*je me promène*), faire une promenade, faire un tour
to **walk** *See S.T.P. 76*
to **walk down** (**the street, etc.**) descendre (la rue, *etc.*)
wall le mur
wallet le portefeuille
to **want** (**to**) vouloir, désirer; **you are wanted on the telephone** on vous demande au téléphone
war la guerre; **at war** en guerre; **the Hundred Years' War** la guerre de Cent Ans
warm *See S.T.P. 77*
to **warm** réchauffer
Warsaw Varsovie *m.*
to **wash** (*trans.*) laver, (*intrans.*) se laver; **to get washed** se laver, faire sa toilette
washbasin le lavabo
washing la lessive
washing-machine la machine à laver (*pl.* machines à laver)
Washington (*the state*) le Washington
wasp la guêpe
waste la perte
to **waste** (*time*) perdre; (*money*) gaspiller; (*materials*) gâcher
watch la montre; **wrist-watch** la montre-bracelet (*pl.* montres-bracelets)
to **watch** regarder
water l'eau *f.*
to **water** arroser
to **wave** (**to s.o. to do sth.**) faire signe (à qn de faire qch.)
wax la cire
way *See S.T.P. 78*
weak faible
to **wear** porter; **to wear a long dress** se mettre en robe longue; **to be wearing a long dress** être en robe longue
weary fatigué, -e
weather le temps; **the weather is fine** il fait beau (temps), le temps est beau
wedding le mariage; **wedding**

- present** le cadeau de nocces (*pl.* cadeaux de nocces)
Wednesday le mercredi
weed la mauvaise herbe
week la semaine; **in** (*or during*) **the week** en semaine
weekend le week-end (*pl.* week-ends)
to weigh peser (*je pèse*)
weight le poids; **to gain weight** grossir
welcome: you are welcome (*i.e., a welcome guest*) vous êtes le bienvenu, la bienvenue, *etc.*; (*in answer to thanks*) il n'y a pas de quoi
well bien; **well (then)** eh bien; **to speak well of** dire du bien de;
to get well guérir; **to look well** avoir bonne mine; **to do well** (to **keep quiet**, *etc.*) faire bien (de se taire, *etc.*); **one may as well do it** autant (vaut) le faire; **to like one thing just as well as another** aimer autant une chose qu'une autre
well-done (*of meat*) bien cuit(e); **too well-done** trop cuit(e)
west (*noun*) l'ouest *m.*; **west of** à l'ouest de
west (*adj.*) ouest (*invar.*); **west wind** le vent d'ouest
West Virginia la Virginie de l'Ouest
to wet mouiller; **to get wet** se mouiller; **to get one's feet wet** se mouiller les pieds
what (*interrog. adj.*) quel(s), quelle(s)
what (*interrog. pron.*) *See 10.6, 10.7, 10.8, 10.9, 10.10, 10.11, 10.15;*
So what? Et (puis) après?
what (*rel. pron.*) *See 11.21, 12.16*
What! Comment! What a (big) house! Quelle (grande) maison!
whatever *See 32.18*
wheat le blé
wheel la roue
when quand; **one day when . . .** un jour que . . .
whenever chaque fois que; **when-**
ever you like quand vous voudrez
where où; I don't know where to start je ne sais pas par où commencer
wherever partout où
to whet s.o.'s appetite mettre qn en appétit
whether si
which (*interrog. adj.*) quel(s), quelle(s); **which one** lequel, laquelle
which (*interrog. pron.*) lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles
which (*rel. pron.*) *See 12.2, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 12.7, 12.10, 12.11, 12.13, 12.14, 12.15*
while pendant que; **quite a while** un bon moment; **to be worth while** (*doing sth.*) valoir (*or être*) la peine (de faire qch.)
whipped cream la crème fouettée
whipping cream la crème à fouetter
white (*adj.*) blanc, blanche
white (*noun*) le blanc
Whit Monday le lundi de Pentecôte
who (*interrog.*) *See 10.1, 10.2, 10.3*
who (*rel.*) *See 12.2, 12.4, 12.7, 12.8*
whoever (= *the one who*) celui qui;
whoever you are qui que vous soyez
whole entier, -ière, tout, -e
wholesale au prix de gros
whom (*interrog.*) qui
whom (*rel.*) *See 12.7, 12.8*
whose (*interrog.*) *See 10.5*
whose (*rel.*) *See 12.8, 12.9, 12.13*
why pourquoi; **that is why . . .** c'est pour cela que . . ., c'est pourquoi . . ., voilà pourquoi . . .
wide large; **How wide is . . .?** Quelle est la largeur de . . .?
widow la veuve
widowed veuf, veuve
widower le veuf
wife la femme
will la volonté; (= *testament*) le testament
will (*vb.*) *See S.T.P. 79*

William Guillaume
willing: to be willing (to) vouloir bien
 to **win** gagner; **to win a victory** remporter une victoire
wind le vent; **north wind** le vent du nord; **south wind** le vent du sud; **east wind** le vent d'est; **west wind** le vent d'ouest; (**right**) **out in the wind** en plein vent
 to **wind** (*watch, etc.*) remonter
window la fenêtre; (*of car, etc.*) la glace; (**store**) **window** la vitrine; **in the (store) window** en vitrine
window pane la vitre
windy: it (i.e., the weather) is windy il fait (*or* il y a) du vent; **it is terribly windy** il fait (*or* il y a) un vent terrible
wine le vin
wing une aile
winter un hiver; **in (the) winter** en hiver
 to **wipe** essuyer (*j'essuie*)
Wisconsin le Wisconsin
wise: you were wise to . . . vous avez bien fait de . . .
wish le désir, le souhait, le vœu
 to **wish to do sth.** désirer faire qch., vouloir faire qch.; **to wish s.o. sth.** souhaiter qch. à qn
with avec; **to groan with pain** gémir de douleur; **to write with one's left hand** écrire de la main gauche; **What did you do with your book?** Qu'avez-vous fait de votre livre?
withered fané, -e
without sans; **to do (or get along) without sth.** se passer de qch.; **without (his knowing, etc.)** sans que (*subjunctive*)
wolf le loup
woman la femme
 to **wonder** se demander
wonderful merveilleux, -euse, épasant, -e
wonderfully (well) à merveille
wood le bois

woodcut la gravure sur bois
wool la laine
word le mot; **to send word** faire dire
work le travail, -aux; (*of literature, art, etc.*) une œuvre
 to **work** travailler; (*of machine*) fonctionner, marcher
workman un ouvrier
world le monde; **Where in the world can he be?** Où peut-il bien être?
worn-out usé, -e
worried inquiet, -ète
worry le souci
 to **worry** (*trans.*) inquiéter (*j'inquiète*), (*intrans.*) se faire du souci, s'inquiéter; **to worry about** s'inquiéter de (*or* au sujet de)
worse (*adj.*) pire, plus mauvais(e)
worse (*adv.*) plus mal, moins bien
worth: to be worth valoir; **to be worthwhile (doing sth.)** valoir (*or* être) la peine (de faire qch.)
would *See S.T.P. 80*
 to **wound** blesser
 to **wrap (up)** emballer; **to wrap s.o., sth. (up) in a blanket** rouler qn, qch. dans une couverture
 to **write (to s.o. to do sth.)** écrire (à qn de faire qch.); **to write a cheque** faire un chèque; **to write an examination** passer un examen
wrist le poignet; **wrist-watch** la montre-bracelet (*pl.* montres-bracelets)
writer un écrivain
writing (= *handwriting*) une écriture
wrong *See S.T.P. 81*
Wyoming le Wyoming

Y

to **yawn** bâiller
year *See S.T.P. 82*
yellow (*adj.*) jaune
yellow (*noun*) le jaune

yes oui; (*contradicting a negation*) **si**
yesterday hier; **the day before**
yesterday avant-hier

yet See *S.T.P.* 83

young jeune; **young men** les jeunes
 gens *m.*

your ton, ta, tes; votre, vos

yours See 13.8, 13.9, 13.10, 13.11

yourself (*with pronominal vb.*) te,
 vous; **Do it yourself** Fais-le toi-

même, Faites-le vous-même; **Did**

you do it (all) by yourself?

L'as-tu fait tout seul (toute seule)?,

L'avez-vous fait tout seul (toute
 seule)?

yourselves (*with pronominal vb.*) vous;

Do it yourselves Faites-le vous-
 mêmes

youth la jeunesse

Yugoslav yougoslave; **a Yugoslav**
 un Yougoslave, une Yougoslave;

Yugoslav (*i.e., language*) le yougo-
 slave

Yugoslavia la Yougoslavie

Z

zero zéro *m.*

zipper la fermeture éclair (*pl.*
 fermetures éclair)

Index

Index

Adjectives

- comparative form. *See* Comparative Form of Adjectives
- feminine forms, Appendix 7
- masculine forms, Appendix 6
- position. *See* Position of Adjectives
- superlative form. *See* Superlative Form of Adjectives

Adverbs

- comparative form. *See* Comparative Form of Adverbs
- formation, Appendix 8
- superlative forms. *See* Superlative Form of Adverbs

Agreement of the Past Participle

- faire** causative, 24.10
- impersonal verbs, 24.9
- preceding direct object, 24.4 to 24.8, 24.11, 24.12
- subject, 24.13, 24.14

Auxiliary verbs

- avoir**, 24.1, 24.3
- être**, 24.2, 27.2, 33.18

Cardinal Numbers, Appendix 10

Comparative Form of Adjectives

- comparative same as superlative, 16.18
- equality, 16.4, 16.5, 16.6, 16.9
- inferiority, 16.2, 16.3, 16.10, 16.11
- superiority, 16.7, 16.8, 16.10, 16.11, 16.12
- types of comparison, 16.1

Comparative Form of Adverbs

- comparative same as superlative, 16.33
- equality, 16.23, 16.24, 16.29
- inferiority, 16.21, 16.22, 16.28, 16.29
- superiority, 16.25, 16.26, 16.28, 16.29, 16.30
- than*, 16.31
- types of comparison, 16.20

Conditional Mood

- regular forms, Appendix 23
- uses, 20.8, 20.11 to 20.14, 30.12, 31.6, 31.8, 31.11, 32.17

Conditional Sentences, 21.1 to 21.4

Date, Appendix 15

Definite Article

- adjectival phrases, 5.14
- apposition, 6.10, 6.11
- cities, towns, villages, 3.2, 3.7, 3.9
- continents, 3.1, 3.5, 3.9, 3.11, 3.12
- cost, 2.1, 2.2
- countries, 3.1, 3.4, 3.5, 3.6, 3.9, 3.11, 3.12
- date, 1.10
- days of the week, 1.6
- distributive expressions, 2.1 to 2.4
- forms, Appendix 1
- general sense, 1.2
- income, 2.1, 2.2
- islands, 3.1, 3.3, 3.5, 3.6, 3.7, 3.9, 3.11, 3.12
- languages, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5
- meals, 1.3
- modified abstract nouns in adverbial phrases, 6.4
- modified geographical names, 3.8, 3.9
- months, 1.8
- negative, 4.11, 4.12
- number, 2.18
- parts of the body, 2.5 to 2.14
- phrases composed of a preposition (**à**, **en**, **par**) and a noun, 6.5 to 6.8
- profession, *etc.* 2.15, 5.5
- proper names of persons, 2.15, 2.17
- provinces, 3.1, 3.5, 3.11, 3.12, 3.13
- quantity, 5.11, 5.12
- rank, 2.15
- religious festivals, 1.9
- seasons, 1.7

- specific persons or things, 1.1
- speed, 2.3
- states, 3.1, 3.5, 3.11, 3.12, 3.13
- streets used adverbially, 6.9
- subjects of study, 1.3, 1.5
- titles (of persons), 2.15, 2.16
- titles of books, *etc.*, 6.9
- Demonstrative Adjective**
 - forms, 11.1
 - repetition, 11.3
 - stressed, 11.2
- Demonstrative Pronouns**
 - ça.** *See cela*
 - ce** as antecedent of a relative pronoun, 11.18
 - ce** in a formula of stress, 11.22 to 11.25
 - ce** meaning *that*, 11.29
 - ce** meaning *this*, 11.26
 - ce** summing up a clause, 11.21, 12.5
 - ce** versus **il(s)**, **elle(s)**, 11.10 to 11.13, 11.15
 - ce** with subject infinitive, 11.19, 11.20
 - ceci**, 11.28
 - cela**, 11.17, 11.30, 11.31, 11.33
 - celui**, *etc.*, 11.6 to 11.9
 - forms, 11.4, 11.5
 - that is . . . , those are . . .* 11.32, 11.33
 - this is . . . , these are . . .* 11.27, 11.28
- Depuis** (and Equivalents)
 - depuis** replaced by **pendant**, 22.4, 22.9
 - imperfect, 22.7, 22.8, 22.10, 22.11
 - past perfect, 22.8, 22.10, 22.11
 - present, 22.1, 22.2, 22.3, 22.5, 22.6
 - present perfect, 22.3, 22.5, 22.6
- Dimensions**, Appendix 16
- Disjunctive Pronouns**
 - compound object, 9.12, 9.13, 9.14
 - compound subject, 7.3, 7.4
 - direct object, 9.5
 - indirect object, 9.2, 9.3, 9.5, 9.6, 9.8, 9.9
 - object of an unexpressed verb, 9.10
 - object of a preposition, 9.17
 - object stressed for contrast, 9.15
 - object stressed for exclusion, 11.24
 - subject of an unexpressed verb, 7.1, 7.2
 - subject stressed for contrast, 7.5
 - subject stressed for exclusion, 11.23
- Double Compound Present Perfect**
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - use, 19.22, 19.23
- En.** *See* Personal Pronoun Objects
- Faire** Causative
 - agent, 33.5
 - agreement of the past participle, 33.1
 - English active form, 33.1, 33.2, 33.3, 33.10 to 33.15
 - English passive form, 33.4 to 33.9, 33.16, 33.17, 33.18
 - faire** versus **obliger**, 33.19, 33.20
 - position of adverbs (other than negative), 33.3
 - position of negative words, 33.2
 - position of objects (other than negative), 33.1, 33.4, 33.6, 33.17
 - pronominal verbs, 33.10 to 33.18
 - subject of infinitive in the indirect form, 33.6 to 33.9, 33.11 to 33.15
- Fractions, Appendix 12
- Future Tense**
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - uses, 20.1 to 20.5
- Future in the Past**
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - uses, 20.8, 20.9
- Future Perfect Tense**
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - uses, 20.6, 20.7
- Future Perfect in the Past**
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - uses, 20.8, 20.9
- Geographical Names**, Appendix 9
- Imperative Mood**, Appendix 23
- Imperfect Subjunctive**
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - uses, 34.3
- Imperfect Tense**
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - uses, 19.8, 19.9, 19.11, 19.12, 19.14, 19.15, 19.16
- Impersonal Verbs**
 - forms used, 25.1

- personal verbs used impersonally, 25.14
- dégeler**, 25.9
- être**, 25.12
- faire**, 25.10, 25.11
- falloir**, 25.2, 25.3, 25.4
- geler**, 25.9
- grêler**, 25.7
- il s'agit de**, 25.13
- il se peut que**, 25.13
- manquer**, 25.5, 25.6
- neiger**, 25.7, 25.8
- pleuvoir**, 25.7, 25.8
- rester**, 25.5, 25.6
- tonner**, 25.7
- y avoir**, 25.5, 25.10
- Indefinite Article**
- adjectival phrases, 5.13
- adjective preceding a noun, 4.6 to 4.9
- advertisements, 6.9
- apposition, 6.10
- compound prepositions terminating in **de**, 5.8
- forms, Appendix 2
- modified abstract noun, 4.4, 6.4
- ne . . . ni . . . ni**, 5.9
- negative, 4.10, 4.12 to 4.16
- parts of the body, 2.14
- phrases composed of a preposition (**à**, **en**, **par**) and a noun, 6.5 to 6.8
- phrases composed of a verb and a singular noun, 6.1, 6.2
- profession, *etc.*, 5.1 to 5.4
- quantity, 5.6, 5.7, 5.11
- sans**, 5.9, 5.10
- sans . . . ni**, 5.9
- signs, 6.9
- titles of books, *etc.*, 6.9
- unmodified abstract noun in adverbial phrases, 6.3
- unspecified persons or things, 4.1
- verbal phrases terminating in **de**, 5.8
- Indefinite Pronouns**
- list, 14.1
- autre chose**, 14.6, 14.7
- chacun**, 14.10, 14.11
- on**, 14.2 to 14.5
- personne**, 14.6, 14.7
- quelque chose**, 14.6, 14.7
- quelques-uns**, 14.11
- quelqu'un**, 14.6, 14.7
- rien**, 14.6, 14.7
- tout** (invariable), 14.8, 14.9
- tout** (as adverb), 14.16, 14.17
- tout, toute, tous, toutes**, 14.12 to 14.15
- Infinitive**
- active infinitive in French for passive infinitive in English, 28.16
- adjectives with **à** before an infinitive, 28.13
- adjectives with **de** before an infinitive, 28.14
- après** plus the perfect infinitive, 28.14
- forms, Appendix 23
- infinitive replacing a clause, 28.17
- object of a preposition, 28.3
- par**, 28.11
- pour**, 28.6, 28.15
- subject, 11.15, 28.2
- subjective completion, 28.2, 28.12
- verbs with **à** before an infinitive, 28.7, 28.8, 28.11
- verbs with **de** before an infinitive, 28.9, 28.10, 28.11
- verbs with no preposition before an infinitive, 28.5
- Interrogation with est-ce que**
- position of **est-ce que**, 18.2
- use, 18.1, 18.4
- with **je** in the present indicative, 18.3
- Interrogation without est-ce que**
- intonation, 18.11
- inversion, 18.5 to 18.10
- use, 18.1, 18.4
- with **je** in the present indicative, 18.3
- Interrogative Adjective**
- forms, Appendix 3
- uses, 10.5, 10.12, 10.13
- Interrogative Pronouns**
- direct object, 10.4, 10.9, 10.10, 10.14, 10.15
- forms, Appendix 3
- object of a preposition, 10.4, 10.11, 10.14, 10.15
- subject, 10.1, 10.6, 10.10, 10.14, 10.15
- subjective completion, 10.2, 10.3, 10.7, 10.8, 10.15

Inversion (Interrogative), 18.5 to 18.10

Inversion (Non-Interrogative)

à peine, 18.14, 18.15

aussi, 18.14, 18.15

parenthetical statement, 18.13

peut-être, 18.14, 18.15

sans doute, 18.14, 18.15

Irregular Verbs, Appendix 25

Liaison, Appendix 19

Mood (definition), Appendix 22

Mute *E*, Appendix 20

Negation

adjectives, 17.3

adverbs, 17.2

form, 17.1, 17.5, 17.6, 17.7

non plus, 17.12

omission of **pas**, 17.8

position, 17.1, 17.9, 17.10, 17.11

pronouns, 17.4

Numbers

cardinal, Appendix 10

ordinal, Appendix 11

Ordinal Numbers, Appendix 11

Orthographic Changes, Appendix 24

Partitive Article

adjectival phrases, 5.13

adjective preceding a noun, 4.5

advertisements, 6.9

compound prepositions terminating in **de**, 5.8

forms, Appendix 2

modified abstract nouns, 4.4, 6.4

ne . . . ni . . . ni, 5.9

negative, 4.10, 4.12, 4.13, 4.15, 4.16

noun subject, 4.3

phrases composed of a preposition (**à**, **en**, **par**) and a noun, 6.5, 6.6

phrases composed of a verb and a singular noun, 6.1

quantity, 4.2, 5.6, 5.7, 5.11

sans (. . . **ni**), 5.9

signs, 6.9

unmodified abstract nouns in adverbial phrases, 6.3

verbal phrases terminating in **de**, 5.8

Passive Voice

by, 27.7

expressed by **on**, 27.3, 27.9, 27.10, 27.11

expressed by the reflexive, 27.3 to 27.6

formation, 27.2, 27.8; Appendix 23

Past Historic

regular forms, Appendix 23

use, 34.1

Past Participle

agreement in compound tenses. *See*

Agreement of the Past Participle

use as an adjective, 27.1

Past Perfect Subjunctive

regular forms, Appendix 23

uses, 34.3, 34.4

Past Perfect Tense

regular forms, Appendix 23

uses, 19.20, 19.21, 19.24

Perfect Participle, Appendix 23

Personal Pronoun Objects

compound object, 9.12, 9.13, 9.14

direct object in the disjunctive form, 9.5

en, 8.6 to 8.10

first person, 8.1

indirect object in the disjunctive form, 9.2, 9.3, 9.5, 9.6, 9.8, 9.9

le, **la**, **les** as the subjective completion, 9.19, 9.20

object of an unexpressed verb, 9.10

object of a preposition, 9.17

position following a verb, 9.7

position preceding a verb, 9.1

second person, 8.1

stressed for contrast, 9.15

stressed for exclusion, 11.24

third person (non-reflexive), 8.2, 8.3, 9.4

third person (reflexive), 8.4

y, 8.11 to 8.14, 9.4

Personal Pronoun Subjects

compound subject, 7.3, 7.4

stressed for contrast, 7.5

stressed for exclusion, 11.23

verb not expressed, 7.1, 7.2

Possessive Adjectives

agreement, 13.1

forms, Appendix 5

- mon, ton, son**, with a feminine noun, 13.2
- parts of the body, 2.5, 2.7, 2.8, 2.10 to 2.13
- repetition, 13.5
- son, sa, ses** (meaning), 13.3
- stressed, 13.4
- Possessive Pronouns
 - forms, Appendix 5
 - function, 13.8
 - ... *of mine, etc.*, 13.11
 - ... *is mine, etc.*, 13.6, 13.9, 13.10
- Position of Adjectives
 - ancien**, 15.10
 - beau**, 15.3, 15.8
 - bon**, 15.3, 15.4, 15.8
 - brave**, 15.10
 - certain**, 15.10
 - cher**, 15.10
 - dernier**, 15.10
 - différent**, 15.10
 - gentil**, 15.3, 15.8
 - grand**, 15.3, 15.8, 15.9, 15.14
 - gros**, 15.3, 15.8
 - jeune**, 15.3, 15.8
 - joli**, 15.3, 15.8
 - mauvais**, 15.3, 15.8
 - même**, 15.10
 - nouveau**, 15.3, 15.8; Special Translation Problems 49b, 49c
 - pauvre**, 15.10
 - petit**, 15.3, 15.8
 - premier**, 15.10
 - prochain**, 15.11; Special Translation Problems 50a
 - propre**, 15.10
 - seul**, 15.10
 - vieux**, 15.3, 15.8
 - vilain**, 15.3, 15.8
 - vrai**, 15.10
 - other adjectives, 15.2, 15.5, 15.6
 - two or more adjectives, 15.12 to 15.15
 - with a proper noun, 15.7
- Present Participle
 - adjectival use, 29.2
 - adverbial use, 29.4
 - English present participle expressed by the French infinitive or a clause, 29.5
 - functions, 29.1
 - participial use, 29.3
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
- Present Tense
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - uses, 19.1 to 19.17
- Present Perfect Tense
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - uses, 19.10, 19.13, 19.17, 19.18, 19.19
- Pronominal Verbs
 - accidental pronominals, 23.7
 - reciprocal pronominals, 23.4, 23.5, 23.8
 - reflexive pronominals, 23.2, 23.3
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - true pronominals, 23.6
 - types, 23.1, 23.9
- Punctuation, Appendix 17
- Redundant **ne**, 16.3, 16.8, 16.22, 16.26, 30.3, 30.8, 30.9, 32.2
- Reflexive Verbs. *See* Pronominal Verbs
- Regular Verbs, Appendix 23
- Relative Pronouns
 - antecedent **ce**, 11.18, 12.3
 - direct object, 12.4, 12.5
 - dont**, 12.8, 12.9, 12.13, 12.14, 12.15
 - forms, Appendix 4
 - function, 12.1
 - object of a preposition (persons), 12.6 to 12.9
 - object of preposition (things), 12.10, 12.11, 12.13 to 12.16
 - où**, 12.11, 12.12, 12.15
 - subject, 12.2, 12.3
 - subjective completion, 12.4
- Second Past Perfect
 - regular forms, Appendix 23
 - use, 34.2
- Semi-auxiliary Verbs
 - definition, 26.1
 - aller**, 26.2
 - devoir**, 26.4 to 26.7
 - faillir**, 26.12, 26.13
 - pouvoir**, 26.8 to 26.11
 - venir de**, 26.3
- Subjunctive Mood
 - adjective clauses, 32.10 to 32.17
 - conjunctions, 32.1 to 32.9

- doubt, 30.11, 30.12, 30.13
- feeling, 30.7 to 30.10
- impersonal verbs, 31.9 to 31.16
- indefinite expressions, 32.18, 32.19, 32.20
- main clauses, 32.21 to 32.28
- negation, 30.11, 30.12, 30.13
- regular forms, Appendix 23
- saying, thinking, 31.1 to 31.8
- subjunctive versus conditional, 30.12, 31.8, 31.11, 31.16, 32.17
- subjunctive versus indicative, 30.2, 31.1 to 31.7, 31.12 to 31.15, 32.3, 32.6, 32.8, 32.12, 32.14, 32.15, 32.19
- tenses, 30.1, 34.3, 34.4
- wishing, ordering, *etc.*, 30.3 to 30.6
- Superlative Form of Adjectives
 - formation, 16.13 to 16.16
 - in* following a superlative, 16.17
 - most* (= *very* or *extremely*), 16.19
- Superlative Form of Adverbs, 16.32
- Syllabification, Appendix 18
- Tense
 - definition, Appendix 22
 - list, Appendix 22
- Time
 - length of time, Appendix 13
 - time of day, Appendix 14
- Verb
 - irregular verbs, Appendix 25
 - list of tenses, Appendix 22
 - mood (definition), Appendix 22
 - orthographic changes, Appendix 24
 - regular verbs, Appendix 23
 - tense (definition), Appendix 22
 - voice (definition), Appendix 22
- Voice (definition), Appendix 22
- Vowel Harmony, Appendix 21
- Y.** *See* Personal Pronoun Objects

